BSc

Syllabuses and Regulations
(4-year curriculum)

2017-18

Faculty of Science
The University of Hong Kong
This booklet includes information on:

- **BSc Degree curriculum and graduation requirements**

- **List of courses and descriptions**
  A full list of Science courses and descriptions include information on course code, title, credit value, contents, semester offered, teaching and learning activities, assessment methods and grade descriptors.

- **Majors & Minors**
  Details of the Science Majors and Minors available for students.

- **Degree regulations**
  Rules that cover curriculum requirements and progression in curriculum, selection of courses, assessment, advanced standing, grading system and degree honours classification.

- **Teaching weeks**
  Teaching weeks show the dates of semesters, University holidays, revision and examination periods.

Further Information detailing instructions on the selection of courses, grading, graduation requirements, honours classification, application for advanced standing and exemption, etc, can be found in the *Handbook for BSc Students* available at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current

Updates on BSc Syllabuses and Regulations can be found at http://webapp.science.hku.hk/sr4/servlet/enquiry
## CONTENTS

| SECTION I | BSc Degree Curriculum and Graduation Requirements | 1 - 4 |
| SECTION II | Capstone Requirement for Science Students | 5 |
| SECTION III | Credit Unit Statement of BSc Degree Curriculum | 6 - 7 |
| SECTION IV | List of BSc Courses and English and Chinese language courses on offer in 2017-18 and 2018-19 | 8 - 65 |
| SECTION V | Equivalency of HKDSE and other qualifications | 66 |
| SECTION VI | Science Majors 2017-18 | 67 - 265 |
| SECTION VII | Science Minors 2017-18 | 266 - 391 |

### List of Science Majors 2017-18

- Major in Astronomy ............................................................. 67
- Major in Biochemistry .......................................................... 80
- Major in Biological Sciences .................................................. 92
- Major in Chemistry .............................................................. 104
- Major in Decision Analytics ................................................. 116
- Major in Earth System Science .............................................. 128
- Major in Ecology & Biodiversity .......................................... 140
- Major in Environmental Science .......................................... 152
- Major in Food & Nutritional Science ..................................... 164
- Major in Geology ............................................................... 176
- Major in Mathematics ......................................................... 188
- Major in Mathematics / Physics .......................................... 200
- Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology.......................... 218
- Major in Physics ............................................................... 230
- Major in Risk Management .................................................. 242
- Major in Statistics ............................................................. 254

### List of Science Minors 2017-18

- Minor in Actuarial Studies .................................................. 266
- Minor in Astronomy ............................................................ 267
- Minor in Biochemistry ......................................................... 273
- Minor in Chemistry ............................................................ 279
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics .................. 285
- Minor in Earth Sciences ...................................................... 297
- Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity .......................................... 303
- Minor in Environmental Science ......................................... 309
- Minor in Food & Nutritional Science .................................... 315
- Minor in Marine Biology .................................................... 322
- Minor in Mathematics ......................................................... 333
- Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology......................... 339
- Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming .... 351
- Minor in Physics ............................................................... 357
- Minor in Plant Science ....................................................... 362
- Minor in Risk Management .................................................. 374
- Minor in Statistics ............................................................ 380
### SECTION VIII
Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements

Double Counting of Courses in Double Majors, Major-Minor or Double Minors

### SECTION IX
Course Descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Subject</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biomedical Sciences</td>
<td>394</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biological Sciences</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>487</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>489</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>527</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earth Sciences</td>
<td>528</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>563</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Science Faculty</td>
<td>643</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>649</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SECTION X
Degree Regulations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Regulations</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Regulations for the Degree of Bachelor of Science</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Regulations for First Degree Curricula</td>
<td>712</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SECTION XI
Teaching Weeks

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teaching Weeks</td>
<td>731</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BSc Degree Curriculum and
Graduation Requirements
1. A BSc Degree Curriculum

The Faculty of Science offers a number of Science majors leading to the award of a BSc degree.

All students admitted to the 6901 BSc programme under the 4-year curriculum are required to complete at least one Science major out of the 16 Science majors as the primary major for the award of the BSc degree. In addition to the primary Science major, students may take a second major or a minor in a Science or non-Science discipline. Students should note that some non-Science majors and minors may require students to have achieved a minimum academic result before they are allowed to enroll in them.

(a) A typical BSc curriculum for students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ in 2012-13 or thereafter

To complete the BSc degree curriculum, you have to pass at least 240 credits, equivalent to 40 6-credit courses, normally spread over 4-years of full-time study. A BSc curriculum typically comprises:
- 16 courses for the Science major including 2 Science Foundation courses, Disciplinary courses and capstone courses (96 credits)
- 2 English courses and 1 Chinese course for university language requirements (18 credits)
- 6 common core courses in 4 Areas of Inquiry (36 credits)
- A choice of 15 courses as elective courses, or to fulfill the requirements of a minor or a second major (90 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option A</th>
<th>Curriculum requirements (240 credits)</th>
<th>Option B</th>
<th>Students taking one Science major and one minor</th>
<th>Option C</th>
<th>Students taking double majors (one Science major and a 2nd major)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Students taking one Science major |                       | Students taking one Science major and one minor |                       | Students taking double majors (one Science major and a 2nd major) |}

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Primary Science Major</th>
<th>96 credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2 Science Foundation courses (SCNC1111 &amp; SCNC1112, taken in Year 1), 13 Disciplinary courses and 1 Capstone course</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Common Core Courses</th>
<th>36 credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6 courses in 4 Areas of Inquiry (at least 1 and not more than 2 courses from each AoI)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language Courses</th>
<th>18 credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>English: 12 credits [6 credits in Core University English (CAES1000), taken in Year 1) and 6 credits in English in the Discipline(CAES9820, taken in Year 2)]</td>
<td>Chinese: 6 credits (CSCI9001, taken in Year 3)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Electives</th>
<th>90 credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>To make up the 240 total credits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The Common Core Curriculum is designed to provide key common learning experience for all HKU students and to broaden their horizons beyond their chosen disciplinary fields of study. It focuses on issues that have been, and continue to be, of deeply profound significance to mankind, the core intellectual skills that all HKU undergraduates should acquire and the core values that they should uphold. The Common Core Curriculum is divided into four Areas of Inquiry (AoIs): (1) Scientific and Technological Literacy; (2) Humanities; (3) Global Issues; (4) China: Culture, State and Society. Students have to pass 36 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, comprising at least one and not more than two courses from each Area of Inquiry with not more than 24 credits of courses being selected within one academic year except where candidates are required to make up for failed credits. Common Core courses should be completed normally within the first three years of their BSc study and cannot be extra taken as free electives.

2. BSc Graduation Requirements and Honours Classification (for students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ in 2012-13 or thereafter)

(a) Award of a BSc degree

To be eligible for the award of the degree of Bachelor of Science, students must fulfill the following requirements:

(i) Satisfied the requirements in UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;*  
(ii) Passed not fewer than 240 credits, comprising 96 credits of the required courses as prescribed in the major programme of the BSc degree curriculum.
UG5 specifies that students have to successfully complete:

(a) 12 credits in English language enhancement, including 6 credits in Core University English\(^1\) (i.e. CAES1000) and 6 credits in an English in the Discipline course\(^2\) (i.e. CAES9820 Academic English for Science Students);

(b) 6 credits in Chinese language enhancement\(^3\) (i.e. CSCI9001 Practical Chinese for Science Students);

(c) 36 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, comprising at least one and not more than two courses from each Area of Inquiry\(^4\) with not more than 24 credits of courses being selected within one academic year except where candidates are required to make up for failed credits; and

(d) a capstone experience as specified in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

(b) Honours Classification

For 2012, 2013, 2014, 2014 and 2016 cohort:

Classification of honours are calculated using the cumulative grade point average CGPA as below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CGPA range</th>
<th>First Class Honours</th>
<th>Second Class Honours Division I</th>
<th>Second Class Honours Division II</th>
<th>Third Class Honours</th>
<th>Pass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For 2017 cohort or thereafter:

Classification of honours are calculated using the graduation grade point average GGPA\(^*\) as below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CGPA range</th>
<th>First Class Honours</th>
<th>Second Class Honours Division I</th>
<th>Second Class Honours Division II</th>
<th>Third Class Honours</th>
<th>Pass</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Credits granted for advanced standing in recognition of studies completed successfully elsewhere before admission to the University and credits transfer in recognition of studies completed on exchange during candidature at HKU are not included in the calculation of GPA.

\(^*\) For students in the 2017-18 intake and thereafter who have successfully completed six Common Core courses, the calculation of Graduation GPA is subject to the proviso that either five Common Core courses with the highest grades (covering all four Areas of Inquiry), or all six courses will be counted towards Graduation GPA, depending on which generates the higher Graduation GPA.

---

\(^1\) Candidates with the following qualifications shall be exempted from this requirement and should take a 6-credit elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6:

- 5** on the HKDSE English Language Paper
- tested by CAES to be of a native English speaker standard
- holder of Bachelor’s degree from an English-medium university
- achieved an overall IELTS score of no less than a 7.5 and no less than a 7 on the Reading, Speaking, Listening and Writing Tests
- achieved an overall TOEFL Internet Based Test score of no less than 102 and no less than 27 on the writing and speaking sections and no less than 24 on the listening and reading sections
- achieved a level of no less than 5 in the HL English Language A: Literature or English Language A: Language and - Literature paper or no less than 6 in the SL English Language A: Literature or English Language A: Language and Literature paper in the International Baccalaureate Diploma
- achieved an OLD Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) essay score of no less than 10 and no less than 700 on the Critical Reading and Writing Tests (before 2016) / achieved a NEW Scholastic Aptitude Test (SAT) score of no less than 37 on the Writing & Language Test and Reading Test (from 2016)
- achieved a score of no less than 5 on the Advanced Placement English Language and Composition Test or the Literature and Composition Test
- achieved an A* in the English Language, English Literature or English Language and Literature GCE English A level paper (including specification A or B, if given)

Exempted students will not be able to enroll CAES1000 via Self Service enrollment.
(a) To satisfy the English in the Discipline (ED) requirement, candidates who have passed the ED course for a Major but subsequently change that Major are required to pass the ED course for the new Major, or either of the double Majors finally declared upon graduation irrespective of whether the second Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.

(b) Candidates declaring double Majors can, if they fail in the ED course for one of the Majors, either (i) re-take and successfully complete that failed ED course, or (ii) successfully complete the ED course for the other Major, irrespective of whether the Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.

(c) Candidates who undertake studies in double Majors or double degrees are not required to take a second ED course but may be advised by the Faculty to do so.

Candidates who have not studied Chinese language during their secondary education may be exempted from this requirement and should take a 6-credit elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6.

Candidates registered for double degree studies are required to successfully complete 24 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, selecting one course from each Area of Inquiry, with the curriculum of the first degree, as appropriate.
Capstone Requirement for Science Students
Capstone experience is an integral part of the major programme which focuses on integration and application of knowledge and skills gained in the early years of study. The capstone course carries a minimum of 6 credits and students must complete this for fulfillment of the graduation requirements. Capstone course is normally taken in the senior years (year 3 or 4) of study. The earliest that a student is allowed to take a capstone course is their year 3 study. The capstone courses in each Science major may be different but a range of courses (e.g. research project, seminar, field work, internship and capstone project) is offered to suit individual student’s needs and interests. The following courses are currently recognized as capstone courses in the different majors:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BSc - Major</th>
<th>Recognized Capstone Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Biochemistry</td>
<td>1. BIOC3999 Directed studies in biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. BIOC4966 Biochemistry internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. BIOC4999 Biochemistry project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Biological Sciences</td>
<td>1. BIOL3994 Directed studies in biological sciences (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. BIOL4964 Biological sciences internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. BIOL4994 Biological sciences project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Chemistry</td>
<td>1. CHEM3999 Directed studies in chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. CHEM4911 Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. CHEM4966 Chemistry internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. CHEM4999 Chemistry project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Earth System Science</td>
<td>1. EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Ecology &amp; Biodiversity</td>
<td>1. BIOL3991 Directed studies in ecology &amp; biodiversity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. BIOL4911 Conservation science in practice (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. BIOL4991 Ecology &amp; biodiversity project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Environmental Science</td>
<td>1. ENVS3999 Directed studies in environmental science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. ENVS4955 Environmental science in practice (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. ENVS4966 Environmental science internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. ENVS4999 Environmental science project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Food &amp; Nutritional Science</td>
<td>1. BIOL3992 Directed studies in food &amp; nutritional science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. BIOL4913 Advanced practicum of food and nutrient analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. BIOL4922 Food product development and evaluation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. BIOL4962 Food &amp; nutritional science internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. BIOL4992 Food &amp; nutritional science project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. Geology</td>
<td>1. EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Mathematics</td>
<td>1. MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. Mathematics / Physics</td>
<td>1. MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5. MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6. PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7. PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8. PHYS4999 Physics project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology</td>
<td>1. BIOL3993 Directed studies in molecular biology &amp; biotechnology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2. BIOL4963 Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. BIOL4993 Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. Astronomy</td>
<td>1. PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. Physics</td>
<td>2. PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3. PHYS4999 Physics project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. Decision Analytics</td>
<td>1. STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. Risk Management</td>
<td>2. STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4. STAT4799 Statistics project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Credit Unit Statement of BSc Degree Curriculum

SECTION III

SCIENCE
SECTION III Credit Unit Statement of the BSc Degree Curriculum (4-year)

1. General guideline for contact hours requirement in the BSc Degree Curriculum

(a) A 6-credit course has around 120-180 total study hours, including contact hours, study time, assignment and assessment.
(b) About 30% of the total study hours are actual contact hours in the form of a class, e.g. lecture hours.
(c) A 6-credit course has around 36 to 45 lecture hours.
(d) For lecture-based courses, normally there will be tutorial/discussion sessions.
(e) For courses employing a non-lecture or lab-based approach, e.g. field camp, IT-based or project-based courses, students are expected to devote about 120-180 hours for a 6-credit course and 240-360 hours for a 12-credit course.

2. Credit Unit Statement of the BSc Degree Curriculum

The BSc degree curriculum consists of six major types of courses based on the learning activities. The majority of courses in the programmes are 6 credits. Examples of the contact hours requirements for the six categories of courses are described as follows.

(a) Lecture-based courses (6 credits)
Contact hours for 6-credit course: 36 hours of lectures and 12 hours of tutorial/discussion
These courses are taught predominantly by lectures and tutorials. Assessment is by a combination of examination (0-80%) and continuous assessment (20-100%). Continuous assessment tasks include written assignments (totaling no more than 8,000 words) such as essays and project reports, and oral presentations. Details of the assessment tasks can be found in the description of individual courses.

(b) Lecture with laboratory component courses (6 credits)
Contact hours for 6-credit course: 24 hours of lectures, 24 hours of laboratory and 6 hours of tutorial
These courses are taught by a combination of lectures and laboratory/practical sessions. Assessment is by a combination of examination (0-70%) and continuous assessment (30-100%). Continuous assessment tasks include written assignments (totaling no more than 8,000 words) such as essays, laboratory reports, and project reports, and oral presentations. Details of the assessment tasks can be found in the description of individual courses.

(c) Laboratory and Workshop courses (6 credits)
Contact hours: 48 hours of laboratory or workshop and 12 hours of tutorial
These courses aim at enriching the student’s research skills and encourage group work through hands-on activities in which science research is introduced. Students are expected to spend an additional 100 hours on self-study, preparation work for the laboratory, and writing reports. Continuous assessment tasks (100%) include written assignments (totaling no more than 8,000 words) such as laboratory report for each experiment (normally no more than 10 experiments) and essays. Details of the assessment tasks can be found in the description of individual courses.

(d) Project-based courses (6 and 12 credits)
These courses aim at providing students with an opportunity to pursue their own research interest under the supervision of a teacher. The teacher normally meets with the student weekly to discuss project progress. Assessment task is normally through research reports or a dissertation (totaling no more than 10,000 words for a 6-credit course and 20,000 words for a 12-credit course). Oral presentation will form part of the assessment. Details of the assessment tasks can be found in the description of individual courses.
(e) **Field camps (6 credits)**

Contact hours: at least 72 hours in the field

These courses aim at giving practical experience in a variety of contexts. Fieldwork may be conducted locally or overseas during reading week or summer. Fieldwork courses have a small number of lecture hours but are predominately practical in nature. Assessment tasks (100%) normally include the following outputs (totaling no more than 8,000 words): field assignments and reports (normally no more than 10 field assignments). Details of the assessment tasks can be found in the description of individual courses.

(f) **Internship (6 credits)**

Students have to undertake at least 160 hours of internship work

Internships aim to offer students the opportunity to gain work experience related to their major of study. The teacher meets with the student regularly to discuss work progress. Students have to undertake at least 160 hours of internship work arranged formally. Assessment tasks (100%) normally include the following outputs: a written report of no more than 2000 words and feedback from the internship supervisor and an oral presentation on students’ internship experience. Details of the assessment tasks can be found in the description of individual courses.

3. **The types of courses in the 16 Science Majors and 17 Science Minors are as follows:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Majors/Minors</th>
<th>Type of Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lecture-based</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Actuarial Studies (Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Astronomy (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biochemistry (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biological Sciences (Major)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Computational &amp; Financial Mathematics (Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision Analytics (Major)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earth Sciences (Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earth System Science (Major)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ecology &amp; Biodiversity (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Environmental Science (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Food &amp; Nutritional Science (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geology (Major)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marine Biology (Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics / Physics (Major)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operations Research &amp; Mathematical Programming (Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physics (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant Science (Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Risk Management (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistics (Major &amp; Minor)</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The above different categories of courses follow the unified Credit Unit Statement of the BSc curriculum.
List of BSc Courses and English and Chinese language courses on offer in 2017-18 and 2018-19
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credit</th>
<th>Pre-requisite</th>
<th>Available in</th>
<th>Semester offered in 2017-2018</th>
<th>Exam. held in 2017-2018</th>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Course Coordinator</th>
<th>Major / Minor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOC2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOC1600 or BIOC1110 or ENG2120; and Not for students who have passed in BIOC2220 or MEDE2301, or have already enrolled in these courses.</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Dec</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Prof N S Wong, Biomedical Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Biochemistry (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012); Minor in Biochemistry (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary corequisite courses in Biochemistry Major including BIOC2600 and BIOC3401. This capstone course is for biochemistry Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2, 3, No exam</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>36</td>
<td>Prof J D Huang, Biomedical Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Biochemistry (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4611</td>
<td>Advanced biochemistry II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOC3601; and BIOL3404 or CHEM2441; and Pass in BIOC4610, or already enrolled in this course</td>
<td>N N ---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Prof D Chan, Biomedical Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Biochemistry (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4612</td>
<td>Molecular biology of the gene</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOC3601 or BIOC3401 or BIOC3402 or BIOC3404 or BBMS2007</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Prof K S E Cheah, Biomedical Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Biochemistry (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

" Availability of courses in 2018-2019 is subject to change. 
### List of BSc Courses

|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------|---|---|------|-----|-----|----|-----|-------------------|-----------------------------------|

### School of Biological Sciences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y/N</td>
<td>Start</td>
<td>End</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Major(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2101</td>
<td>Principles of food chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dec</td>
<td>Dr J C Y Lee, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Food &amp; Nutritional Science (2017)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List of BSc Courses**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Y/N Requirement</th>
<th>Exam Date</th>
<th>Lecturer</th>
<th>Co-requisites</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>New (Y/N)</td>
<td>New Year</td>
<td>Old (Y/N)</td>
<td>Old Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Description</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Lecturer</td>
<td>Major Courses</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
<td>Grain production and utilization</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in any level 2 BIOL course</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof H Corke, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211</td>
<td>Nutrigenomics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOC2900 or BIOL2220</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr K C Tan-Un, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3215</td>
<td>Principles of dietary assessment</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2102</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 No exam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr J C Y Louie, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3216</td>
<td>Food waste management</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2101 or BIOL3201</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr O Habimana, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217</td>
<td>Food, environment and health</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL 2101 or BIOL3201</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr T. Sobko, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3218</td>
<td>Food hygiene and quality control</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2101 or BIOL3201 or BIOL3203</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Not for student who have passed in BIOL3208</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr O Habimana, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3301</td>
<td>Marine biology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2306 or ENVS2002</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr M Yasuhara, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3302</td>
<td>Systematics and phylogenetics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL1309 and Any level 2 BIOL course</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof R M K Saunders, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>Prerequisite(s)</td>
<td>Co-requisite(s)</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Duration</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Year Pass Requirement</td>
<td>Exam Requirement</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Department</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Hours</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Semester</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3501</td>
<td>Evolution</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2306</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Dr. M. Sun, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3502</td>
<td>Conservation genetics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2306 or BIOL3303 or BIOL3408</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Dr. M. Sun, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3503</td>
<td>Endocrinology: human physiology II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2103</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Dr. C. B. Chan, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture and restoration</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2103 or BIOL2306 or BIOL3301 or BIOL3303</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Dr. T. Venglesen, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
<td>Examination Status</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3991</td>
<td>Directed studies in ecology &amp; biodiversity</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core / elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major.</td>
<td>Y N 0 No exam</td>
<td>Prof G A Williams, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Y N 0 No exam</td>
<td>Prof G A Williams, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3992</td>
<td>Directed studies in food &amp; nutritional science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core / elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Food &amp; Nutritional Science Major.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 No exam</td>
<td>Dr O Habimana, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 No exam</td>
<td>Dr O Habimana, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3993</td>
<td>Directed studies in Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core / elective courses in the Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology Major.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 No exam</td>
<td>Dr W K Yip, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 No exam</td>
<td>Dr W K Yip, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3994</td>
<td>Directed studies in biological sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core / elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Biological Sciences Major.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 No exam</td>
<td>Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 No exam</td>
<td>Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4201</td>
<td>Public health nutrition</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3201 or BIOL3202</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May 90</td>
<td>Dr J M F Wan, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May 90</td>
<td>Dr J M F Wan, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4202</td>
<td>Nutrition and sports performance</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3202</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May 30</td>
<td>Dr T Sobko, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May 30</td>
<td>Dr T Sobko, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4204</td>
<td>Diet, brain function and behavior</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3204, or already enrolled in this course</td>
<td>N N --- --- 30</td>
<td>Dr E T S Li, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>N N --- --- 30</td>
<td>Dr E T S Li, Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Pass/Fail</td>
<td>Co-requisites</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>CoCC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4208</td>
<td>Meat, dairy and grain sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3201 or BIOL2101 and any level 3 BIOL course; and Not for students who have passed in BIOL3210; and Not for students who have passed in BIOL4207</td>
<td>Y Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>15 Prof N P Shah, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Food &amp; Nutritional Science (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301</td>
<td>Fish and fisheries</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3301 or BIOL3303</td>
<td>Y N</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>40 Prof Y J Sadovy, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Biological Sciences (2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (BIOL2103 or BIOL2306); and (ENVS3304 or any BIOL3XXX course)</td>
<td>Y Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>30 Dr B D Russell, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Exam Dates</td>
<td>Grade Points</td>
<td>Professor</td>
<td>Major in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4304</td>
<td>Ecosystem functioning and services</td>
<td>Pass in one of the following courses: BIOL3301 or BIOL3303 or BIOL3313 or BIOL3319 or ENV3019 or ENV3004 or ENV3020</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>1 Dec 30 Dr B D Russell, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4416</td>
<td>Stem cells and regenerative biology</td>
<td>Pass in BIOC3601 or BIOC3604 or BIOL3211 or BIOL3401 or BIOL3402 or BIOL3403 or BIOL3404 or BIOL3408</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>40 Dr K W Y Yuen, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4451</td>
<td>Cetacean behaviour, ecology and conservation: field research experience</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least one of the following courses: BIOL3101, BIOL3301, BIOL3313 or BIOL3320. This experiential field course is primarily for Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major students. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this experiential course is their year 3 study; and because it is conducted in early June, this course is best suited for year 3 students.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4501</td>
<td>Molecular phylogenetics and evolution</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3401 or BIOL3408</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture: business and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3109 or BIOL3203 or BIOL3301 or BIOL3303 or ENV3004 or ENV3313; and Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Ecology and Biodiversity Major or Environmental Science Major or Biological Science Major. Not for students who have passed in BIOL3505</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4861</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Ecology and Biodiversity Major. This course is for Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this course is their Year 3.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2, S</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4911</td>
<td>Conservation science in practice</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major including BIOL3303. This capstone course is for Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Name</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Co-Prerequisites</td>
<td>Year Available</td>
<td>Module Type</td>
<td>Module Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4913</td>
<td>Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) included BIOL3207 and/or BIOL3209 in the Food &amp; Nutritional Science Major.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y Y 2, S No exam 20</td>
<td>Dr J C Y Lee, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4922</td>
<td>Food product development and evaluation</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) included BIOL3203 and/or BIOL4205 in the Food &amp; Nutritional Science Major.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y Y 1 Dec 20</td>
<td>Dr M F Wang, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4964</td>
<td>Biological sciences internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Biological Sciences Major.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2, S No exam ---</td>
<td>Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Department</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4991</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity project</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above. Students are not permitted to take both BIOL3991 and BIOL4991. This capstone course is for Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Prof G A Williams, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4992</td>
<td>Food &amp; nutritional science project</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Food &amp; Nutritional Science Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above. This capstone course is for Food &amp; Nutritional Science Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Dr J C Y Louie, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Food &amp; Nutritional Science (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4993</td>
<td>Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology project</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above. This capstone course is for Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Dr W K Yip, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4994</td>
<td>Biological sciences project</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Biological Sciences Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above. This capstone course is for Biological Sciences Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Biological Sciences (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Level</td>
<td>Offered</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Centre for Applied English Studies

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Offered</th>
<th>Instructor</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAES1000</td>
<td>Core University English</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y Y 1,2</td>
<td>Dec, May --- Dr N Fong, English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAES9820</td>
<td>Academic English for science students</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y Y 1,2</td>
<td>No exam --- Ms E Law, English</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Department of Chemistry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Offered</th>
<th>Instructor</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1041</td>
<td>Foundations of chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 3 or above in HKDSE Combined Science with Chemistry component or Integrated Science, or equivalent, Students without such background but keen on taking this foundation chemistry course may approach the course coordinator for consideration. Not for students with Level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or having taken any level 1 Chemistry course or above or any equivalent Chemistry course</td>
<td>Y Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1042</td>
<td>General chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent or a pass in CHEM1041. Not for students having taken any level 1 Chemistry course (except for CHEM1041) or above or any equivalent Chemistry course.</td>
<td>Y Y</td>
<td>1,2 Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credit Hours</td>
<td>Requirements</td>
<td>Examinations</td>
<td>Tutors/Instructors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1044</td>
<td>Mathematics in chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM1042 or already enrolled in this course; and Level 2 or above in Module 1 or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1011</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May 80</td>
<td>Prof C M Che, Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2041</td>
<td>Principles of chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM1042; and Not for students who have passed in CHEM2341, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in CHEM2441, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in CHEM2541, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for Chemistry major students.</td>
<td>N N --- --- 140</td>
<td>Dr I K Chu, Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2341</td>
<td>Inorganic chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM1042; and NOT for students who have passed in CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before); Pass in CHEM1042, and Pass in CHEM1043, or already enrolled in this course; and NOT for students who have passed in CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May 120</td>
<td>Prof V W W Yam (1st sem); Dr H Y Au Yeung (2nd sem), Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2441</td>
<td>Organic chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM1042; and NOT for students who have passed in CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before); Pass in CHEM1042, and Pass in CHEM1043, or already enrolled in this course; and NOT for students who have passed in CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May 200</td>
<td>Dr X Y Li (1st sem); Prof P Chu (2nd sem), Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Co-requisites</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2443</td>
<td>Fundamentals of organic chemistry for pharmacy</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM1042; and Not for students who have passed CHEM2442, or already enrolled in this course. (This course is for BPharm students only.)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr P H Toy, Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2541</td>
<td>Introductory physical chemistry</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM1042; and NOT for students who have passed CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before) Pass in CHEM1042 and CHEM1043; and NOT for students who have passed CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr A M Y Yuen (1st sem); Dr J Y Tang (2nd sem), Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3146</td>
<td>Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques</td>
<td>Pass in any CHEM2XXX level course</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr X Li, Chemistry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Tutorial</th>
<th>Midterm</th>
<th>Final</th>
<th>Course Coordinator</th>
<th>Department</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3243</td>
<td>Introductory instrumental chemical analysis</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM2041 or CHEM2241; and Not for students who have passed CHEM3241, or have already enrolled in this course.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>Dr X Li, Chemistry</td>
<td>Minor in Chemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3244</td>
<td>Analytical techniques for pharmacy students</td>
<td>Pass in BPHM2136 (This course is for BPharm students only)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Dr X Li, Chemistry</td>
<td>Minor in Chemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3342</td>
<td>Bioinorganic chemistry</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM2341</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Prof H Z Sun, Chemistry</td>
<td>Minor in Chemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3344</td>
<td>Organic chemistry II</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM2344 has been changed to lecture-based course from semester 2, 2015-16. For Chemistry students who admitted in 2014-15 or before, they must enroll also CHEM3344 for enrolling CHEM3441 (new version without lab component) to meet the Chemistry Major requirements.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>Dec, May</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Dr X Y Li (1st sem); Prof D Yang (2nd sem), Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry</td>
<td>Minor in Biochemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3442</td>
<td>Organic chemistry of biomolecules</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM2442 or CHEM2443 or CHEM3441</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dec</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>Dr P H Toy, Chemistry</td>
<td>Major in Chemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3443</td>
<td>Organic chemistry laboratory</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM2441, and pass in CHEM3441, or already enrolled in this course; NOT for students who have passed CHEM3441 in semester 1, 2015-16, or CHEM3441 in or before 2014-2015 (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before) Pass in CHEM2441 or CHEM2442 or CHEM3443, and Pass in CHEM3441 or CHEM3442, or already enrolled in any of these two courses (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>Dec, May</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Dr A M Y Yuen, Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry Major in Chemistry</td>
<td>Minor in Chemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3445</td>
<td>Integrated laboratory</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3443 or already enrolled in this course</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>Dr A M Y Yuen, Chemistry</td>
<td>Major in Chemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in chemistry</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major including a pass in CHEM2341 or CHEM2441 or CHEM2442 or CHEM2541 or</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>Prof D L Phillips, Chemistry</td>
<td>Minor in Chemistry 2012</td>
<td>2013,2012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List of BSc Courses

---

26
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Pre-Requisites</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Exam Period</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Instructor</th>
<th>Major in Chemistry Years</th>
<th>Minor in Chemistry Years</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3146</td>
<td>This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only. This course is designed for third year students who would like to take an early experience on research. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Name</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Major In Chemistry Course</td>
<td>Minor In Chemistry Course</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4441</td>
<td>Advanced organic chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3441</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
<td>80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4443</td>
<td>Integrated organic synthesis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3441; or Pass in CHEM3441 (without lab component) and CHEM3443</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3601 or CHEM3441</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4541</td>
<td>Physical chemistry III: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3541</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4542</td>
<td>Computational chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3541 or PHYS3351</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4543</td>
<td>Advanced physical chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3541</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4544</td>
<td>Electrochemical science and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3542</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4910</td>
<td>Chemistry literacy and research</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major including CHEM3241, and CHEM3341, and CHEM3441, and CHEM3541. This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4911</td>
<td>Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Students are expected to have satisfactorily completed all introductory chemistry disciplinary core courses and at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses in the Chemistry Major.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Name</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>School or Department</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4966</td>
<td>Chemistry internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major. This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2, S</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Dr H Y Au-Yeung, Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4999</td>
<td>Chemistry project</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major including CHEM3241, and CHEM3341, and CHEM3441, and CHEM3541. This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Dr J Y Tang, Chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School of Chinese</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSC9001</td>
<td>Practical Chinese for science students</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2 Dec, May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Department of Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1020</td>
<td>Introduction to climate science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1401</td>
<td>Blue Planet</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2 Dec, May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1402</td>
<td>Principles of geology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1403</td>
<td>Geological heritage of Hong Kong</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1404</td>
<td>Early life on earth</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1405</td>
<td>Peaceful use of nuclear technologies</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Description</td>
<td>Units</td>
<td>Times</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Lecturer</td>
<td>Year(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1406</td>
<td>Introduction to the earth-life system</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences Major in Earth System Science (2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2409</td>
<td>Regional field studies</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>in EASC1401 or EASC1402; and consent of course coordinator</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2410</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in earth sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>in EASC1401</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>Pre-requisites</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Class Time</td>
<td>Lecturer</td>
<td>Major</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3405</td>
<td>Environmental remote sensing</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC2404 or EASC2406 or EASC2407 or ENV52002</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>Dr J Michalski, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Earth System Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Environmental Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minor in Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3406</td>
<td>Reconstruction of past climate</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC2401</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>Dr S H Li, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Earth System Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Geology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minor in Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3408</td>
<td>Geophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC2401 or EASC2402 or PHYS2250</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>Prof P P C Wu, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Geology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Earth System Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minor in Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3409</td>
<td>Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC3402</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Geology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minor in Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3410</td>
<td>Hydrogeology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC2402</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dec</td>
<td>Prof J J Jiao, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Earth System Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Geology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minor in Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3412</td>
<td>Earth resources</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC2402 or EASC3402</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dec</td>
<td>Prof M F Zhou, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Earth System Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Geology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minor in Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3413</td>
<td>Engineering geology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC3410 and EASC3414, or already enrolled in these courses This course is only for final year students.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>Dr L N Y Wong, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Geology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Minor in Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3414</td>
<td>Soil and rock mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in EASC3410, or already enrolled in this course</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>May</td>
<td>Prof J J Jiao, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Major in Geology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of BSc Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Exam</th>
<th>Instructor</th>
<th>Course Requirements</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EASC3418</td>
<td>Earth surface processes</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>TBC, Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Earth System Science (2017)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Pass in</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4911</td>
<td>Earth system: contemporary issues</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 No exam</td>
<td>Dr S C Chang, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4955</td>
<td>Integrated field studies</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 No exam</td>
<td>Dr J A King, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4966</td>
<td>Earth sciences internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2, S No exam</td>
<td>Dr X R Zuo, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4999</td>
<td>Earth sciences project</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>0 No exam</td>
<td>Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS1401</td>
<td>Introduction to environmental science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Y Dec</td>
<td>Dr C A Not, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3004</td>
<td>Environment, society and economics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec</td>
<td>Prof Y Q Zong, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td>Major</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in environmental science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary coreselective courses in Environmental Science Major. Cumulative GPA of 2.5 or above in Environmental Science Major. This capstone course is for Environmental Science Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 2 No exam ---</td>
<td>Dr Z H Liu, Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Environmental Science (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4955</td>
<td>Environmental science in practice</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary coreselective courses in Environmental Science Major. This capstone course is for Environmental Science Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 2 No exam 10</td>
<td>Dr M Yasuhara, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Environmental Science (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4966</td>
<td>Environmental science internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary coreselective courses in Environmental Science Major. This capstone course is for Environmental Science Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2, S No exam ---</td>
<td>Dr C Dingle, Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Environmental Science (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4999</td>
<td>Environmental science project</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary corelective courses in Environmental Science Major. This capstone course is for Environmental Science Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 0 No exam ---</td>
<td>Dr Z H Liu, Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Major in Environmental Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List of BSc Courses
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Year Requirement</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Faculty</th>
<th>Department</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1009</td>
<td>Basic mathematics for business and economics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL The course has no pre-requisite, but students are expected to have already achieved Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent. Not for students who have passed MATH1011 or MATH1013, or have already enrolled in these courses. This course is exclusively for non-Science and non-Engineering students (i.e. not for students from the Faculty of Science or Engineering).</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td>Dr Y M Chan (1st sem); Dr K H Law (2nd sem), Mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1011</td>
<td>University mathematics I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL The course has no pre-requisite, but students are expected to have achieved Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent before enrolling the course; and Not for students with Level 2 or above in Module 1 or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td>Dr H Y Zhang, Mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1009 or MATH1011; and Not for students who have passed MATH1821, or (MATH1851 and MATH1853), or have already enrolled in this course.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td>Dr C W Wong, Mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1641</td>
<td>Mathematical laboratory and modeling</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Dec, May 30</td>
<td>TBC, Mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1821</td>
<td>Mathematical methods for actuarial science I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 4 or above in HKDSE Mathematics plus Module 1, or Level 4</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Dec, May 30</td>
<td>Dr J T Chan, Mathematics BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Courses for Admission</td>
<td>Corequisites</td>
<td>Term</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1851</td>
<td>Calculus and ordinary differential equations</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1011. (This course is exclusively for Engineering students.)</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1853</td>
<td>Linear algebra, probability and statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1011. (This course is exclusively for Engineering students.)</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td>700</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2012</td>
<td>Fundamental concepts of mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH1013 or MATH1821 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853)</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2014</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus and linear algebra</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH1013 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853). Not for students who have passed MATH2822 or [MATH2101 or MATH2102 and MATH2211], or have already enrolled in these courses.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101</td>
<td>Linear algebra I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH1013 or MATH1821 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853)</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2102</td>
<td>Linear algebra II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH2101 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH1013 or MATH1821 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853)</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Name</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Time</td>
<td>Lecturer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2241</td>
<td>Introduction to mathematical analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH1013 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853) or MATH2822. Students are strongly recommended to have taken MATH2012 if they wish to take this course.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2 Dec, May</td>
<td>Dr Y M Chan, Mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3002</td>
<td>Mathematics seminar</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH2012, MATH2101, MATH2211 and MATH2241 (This course is for second year BSc students only.)</td>
<td>N N --- --- 12 TBC, Mathematics</td>
<td>Major in Mathematics (2017, 2016, 2015, 2014, 2013, 2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>List of BSc Courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)</td>
<td>Prof W K Ching, Mathematics</td>
<td>Major in Decision Analytics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3600</td>
<td>Discrete mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH1013 and any 1 of Level 2 MATH courses) or (MATH1851 and MATH1853 and any 1 of level 2 MATH courses) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)</td>
<td>Dr K H Law, Mathematics</td>
<td>Major in Decision Analytics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012); Major in Mathematics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601</td>
<td>Numerical analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or</td>
<td>Dr Z Zhang, Minor in Computational</td>
<td>Major in Decision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Name</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Major(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Tutorial</td>
<td>Exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2014 or MATH1821 and MATH2822 or STAT2601</td>
<td>Mathematics &amp; Financial Mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>(MATH2101 and MATH2211) or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3943</td>
<td>Network models in operations research</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014; Pass in MATH3001, or already enrolled in this course.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core electives in mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors, in addition to a pass in MATH2101, MATH2102, MATH2211 and MATH2241. Subject to approval by the Department. This capstone course is for Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4302</td>
<td>Algebra II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH2102 and MATH3301</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The list includes courses with specific prerequisites and examination details.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Requirements</th>
<th>Grading</th>
<th>Instructor</th>
<th>Major in Mathematics Courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501</td>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211); and Pass in (MATH3401 or MATH3403 or MATH3405). Students are strongly recommended to have taken MATH3405.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec --- Dr C W Wong, Mathematics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH3401 (having taken MATH4501 would be helpful; the course can also be taken concurrently with MATH4402).</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>--- --- --- TBC, Mathematics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH2101 and MATH2211; and Pass in MATH3901, or already enrolled in this course.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>--- --- --- Dr G Han, Mathematics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Major Requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4910</td>
<td>Senior mathematics seminar</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors including MATH301, MATH3401, and MATH3403. Subject to approval by the Department. This capstone course is for Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Prof W S Cheung, Mathematics</td>
<td>Minor in Mathematics (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4911</td>
<td>Mathematics capstone project</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors. Subject to approval by the Department. This capstone course is for Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors students only. (This course is for third and fourth year students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.)</td>
<td>Dr S P Yung, Mathematics</td>
<td>Minor in Mathematics (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4966</td>
<td>Mathematics internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors. This capstone course is for Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Dr T K Wong, Mathematics</td>
<td>Minor in Mathematics (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### List of BSc Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Approval</th>
<th>Instructor(s)</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructors</td>
<td>Department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH4302</td>
<td>Dr J Liu, Mathematics</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH3301 or MATH3600), and approval of the course coordinator</td>
<td>Prof W Zang, Mathematics</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH3901, MATH3904 and MATH4902</td>
<td>TBC, Mathematics</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH3301 and MATH3401</td>
<td>TBC, Mathematics</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH3401</td>
<td>Prof K M Tsang, Mathematics</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1050</td>
<td>Physics for engineering students</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or Combined Science with Physics</td>
<td>Prof K S Cheng, Physics</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit Hours</th>
<th>Fee Basis</th>
<th>Core Requirement</th>
<th>Prerequisite</th>
<th>Instructor(s)</th>
<th>Faculty Requirement</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1055</td>
<td>How things work</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May ---</td>
<td>Dr. M.K. Yip, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1056</td>
<td>Weather, climate and climate change</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec ---</td>
<td>Dr. K.M. Lee, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1057</td>
<td>Kitchen science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>--- ---</td>
<td>Prof. A.B. Djurisic, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1240</td>
<td>Physics by inquiry</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Not for students with level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics; and Not for students who have passed in PHYS1050, or already enrolled in this course.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1 Dec ---</td>
<td>Dr. F.K. Chow, Physics Major in Astronomy (2017, 2016, 2015); Major in Mathematics/Physics (2017, 2016, 2015); Major in Physics (2017, 2016, 2015)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2155</td>
<td>Methods in physics II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in MATH1011 or MATH1013 or MATH1851 or PHYS1150</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May ---</td>
<td>Dr. F.K. Chow, Physics Major in Astronomy (2017, 2016, 2015);</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List of BSc Courses**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Instructor</th>
<th>Major in</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2250</td>
<td>Introductory mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS1050 or PHYS1250</td>
<td>Dr M K Yip, Physics</td>
<td>Major in Mathematics/Physics (2017,2016,2015); Major in Physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3150</td>
<td>Theoretical physics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (PHYS2250 or PHYS2255 or PHYS2265) and (MATH211 or PHYS2150)</td>
<td>Prof Z D Wang, Physics</td>
<td>Major in Astronomy (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012); Minor in Physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Requirements</td>
<td>Grade</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651</td>
<td>The physical universe</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS1650 and (PHYS2250 or PHYS2265)</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Dec</td>
<td>--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COURSE CODE</td>
<td>COURSE TITLE</td>
<td>CREDITS</td>
<td>PASS IN</td>
<td>EXAM</td>
<td>PATHWAY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (3XXX level or above) disciplinary core/elective courses of the Physics Major, Mathematics/Physics, and Physics Major curriculum. This capstone course is for Astronomy, Mathematics/Physics, and Physics Majors students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Pass in</td>
<td>Co-Requisite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150</td>
<td>Computational physics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH3301 or MATH3401 or MATH3403 or MATH3405 or PHYS3150); and Pass in any three of the following courses: PHYS3350, PHYS3351, PHYS3450, PHYS3350</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH3301 or MATH3401 or MATH3403 or MATH3405 or PHYS3150); and Pass in any one of the following courses: PHYS3350, PHYS3351, PHYS3450, PHYS3350</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS3350</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4351</td>
<td>Advanced quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS3351</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS3450</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS3550</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List of BSc Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Corequisites</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Lecturer</th>
<th>Degree Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS2055 and PHYS3350</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
<td>Interstellar medium</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS3651 or (PHYS3351 and PHY3550)</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>TBC</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS3351</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966</td>
<td>Physics internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999</td>
<td>Physics project</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (3XXX level or above) disciplinary core/elective courses of the Physics Major, Mathematics/Physics Major or Astronomy Major curriculum. This capstone course is for Astronomy, Mathematics/Physics, and Physics Majors students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS4350</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS4351</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2 May</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS4450</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS4550</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of BSc Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Instructor</th>
<th>Major(s)</th>
<th>Faculty of Science</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Level Requirements</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Instructor, Department</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1113</td>
<td>The big history of our planet: a scientific perspective on everything that has ever happened</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 3 or above in at least one science subject at the pre-university level (HKDSE Physics, Chemistry, Biology, Combined/Integrated Science or equivalent); This course is not offered to students in the BSc or BA programmes.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dr W M Y Cheung, Faculty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC2121</td>
<td>Sustainable food production</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Students are expected to have passed at least 30 credits of level 1 and/or level 2 science courses. Students will also need to pass an interview in order to be enrolled in the course.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dr H S El-Nezami, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC2122</td>
<td>Marine life science: a North East Pacific perspective</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Students are expected to have passed at least 30 credits of level 1 and/or level 2 science courses. Students will also need to pass an interview in order to be enrolled in the course.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dr T Vengatesen, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC3111</td>
<td>Frontiers of science honours seminar course</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in SCNC1111, SCNC1112 and a level 2 science course. Students who participated or will participate in ORF/SRF must take this course.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dr R K W Lui, Faculty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Level Requirements</th>
<th>Exam</th>
<th>Instructor, Department</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT1600</td>
<td>Statistics: ideas and concepts</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Dr Y K Chung, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1601</td>
<td>Elementary statistical methods</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent; and Not for students with Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics Extended Module 1 or 2; and Not for students who have passed or already enrolled in any of the following courses: STAT2901, STAT1602, STAT2601, STAT1603, ECON1280</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>TBC, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Professor</th>
<th>Department</th>
<th>Course Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT1602</td>
<td>Business statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Not for students who have passed or already enrolled in any of the following courses: STAT1601, STAT2601, STAT1603, STAT2901, ECON1280 (This course is exclusive for School of Business students.)</td>
<td>Dr R W L Wong, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Minor in Risk Management (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012); Minor in Statistics (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1603</td>
<td>Introductory statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Not for students who have passed or already enrolled in any of the following courses: STAT1601, STAT2601, STAT1603, or MATH1011 or MATH1013, or already enrolled in these courses; and Not for students who have passed or already enrolled in any of these courses: STAT1602, STAT2601, STAT2901</td>
<td>Dr E K F Lam, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Major in Environmental Science (2012)</td>
<td>Major in Environmental Science: (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013); Minor in Risk Management (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012); Minor in Statistics (2017,2016,2015,2014, 2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2902</td>
<td>Financial mathematics</td>
<td>6 Pass in STAT2901, or already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3615, or already enrolled in this course.</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May --- Prof K C Yuen, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science BSc in Actuarial Science (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3605</td>
<td>Quality control and management</td>
<td>6 Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or STAT1602 or STAT2602 or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT3902</td>
<td>N Y --- --- --- --- TBC, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science Major in Statistics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3606</td>
<td>Business logistics</td>
<td>6 Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or STAT1602 and any University level 2 course or STAT2602 or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT3902; and Not for students who have passed MATH3901, or have already enrolled in this course.</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Dec --- Ms O T K Choi, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science Major in Statistics (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3609</td>
<td>The statistics of investment risk</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Pass in STAT2602, or already enrolled in this course, or Pass in STAT1603 and any University level 2 course, or Pass in STAT3902 or STAT3902, or STAT3914, and Not for students who have passed in STAT3903, or have already enrolled in this course, and Not for BSc in Actuarial Science students</td>
<td>Dr K P Wai, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3610</td>
<td>Risk management and insurance</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2601 or STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601, and Not for students who have passed in or have already enrolled in any of these courses: BIOL2102, STAT2601, STAT3901, STAT3905)</td>
<td>Dr R W L Wong, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3611</td>
<td>Computer-aided data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2601 or STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601, and Not for students who have passed in or have already enrolled in any of these courses: BIOL2102, STAT2601, STAT3901, STAT3905</td>
<td>Dr E K F Lam, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3613</td>
<td>Marketing engineering</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2601 or STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601</td>
<td>Dr C W Kwan, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3614</td>
<td>Business forecasting</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Core</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2601 or STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601, and Not for students who have passed or</td>
<td>Dr R W L Wong, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Name</td>
<td>Pass Prereq</td>
<td>Exam Prereq</td>
<td>Exam Type</td>
<td>Prereq for BSc Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Prereq for BSc Statistics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3616</td>
<td>Practical mathematics for investment</td>
<td>Pass in STAT1601 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May</td>
<td>--</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT1602 and any University level 2 course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>STAT2601 or STAT2901</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of BSc Courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Prerequisites</th>
<th>Offered</th>
<th>Mode of Delivery</th>
<th>Co-requisites</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3799</td>
<td>Directed studies in statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 12 credits of advanced level disciplinary core elective courses in the Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics Majors; and Not for students who have already enrol in STAT3799 in the academic year. This capstone course is only for students majoring in Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics, and subject to the consent of course coordinator. This course is mutually exclusive with STAT4710. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 1,2 No exam</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Prof B M G Lee, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3801</td>
<td>Life contingencies</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>(Pass in STAT2602 and STAT3616) or (Pass in STAT2602 and (Pass in STAT3902 or already enrolled in this course)) or (Pass in STAT2602 and STAT2502)</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Sec</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Prof K C Yuen, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3802</td>
<td>Statistical models</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT2901; and Not for students who have passed in STAT2602, or already enrolled in this course; and For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Sec</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Prof J F Yao, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3803</td>
<td>Stochastic models</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT2901; and Not for students who have passed in MATH3603, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3603, or have already enrolled in this course; and For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Prof J F Yao, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3804</td>
<td>Corporate finance for actuarial science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>(Pass in ACCT1101 and STAT2902) or (Pass in STAT3610 and STAT3619); and Not for students who have passed in IMA1310, or have already enrolled in this course</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Dr B Lee, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3805</td>
<td>Introduction to financial derivatives</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT2902; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3618, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in IMA2322, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in IMA3610, or have already enrolled in this course</td>
<td>Y Y 1 Sec</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Prof K C Cheung, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3806</td>
<td>Risk theory I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3603, or already enrolled in this course; or Pass in MATH3603 or STAT3603</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Prof K C Cheung, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3807</td>
<td>Linear models and forecasting</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902, or already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3603, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in STAT4601, or have already enrolled in</td>
<td>Y Y 2 May</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>Dr G L, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Name</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Internship</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3908</td>
<td>Credibility theory and loss distributions</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902 or STAT3906</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.]</td>
<td>Sec</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3909</td>
<td>Advanced life contingencies</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3901, or already enrolled in his course; and for BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[May]</td>
<td>Sec</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3910</td>
<td>Financial economics I</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902; and for students who have passed in STAT3910, or have already enrolled in his course; and for students who have passed in and have already enrolled in his course.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Sec]</td>
<td>Prof H L Yang, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3911</td>
<td>Financial economics II</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3903 or STAT3901 or STAT3910</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[May]</td>
<td>Prof H L Yang, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.]</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3951</td>
<td>Advanced contingencies</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3902; and Pass in STAT3910; and for students who have passed in STAT3910, or have already enrolled in his course; and for students who have passed in and have already enrolled in his course.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Sec]</td>
<td>Prof H L Yang, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3952</td>
<td>Investment and asset management</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3901; and for students who have passed in STAT3910, or have already enrolled in his course; and for BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>---</td>
<td>TBC, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3953</td>
<td>Fundamentals of actuarial practice</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3902; and for BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[No exam]</td>
<td>Mr P P Y Lau, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3954</td>
<td>Current topics in actuarial science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3901; or already enrolled in his course; or Pass in STAT3902; and or already enrolled in his course; and for BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>---</td>
<td>TBC, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3955</td>
<td>Survival analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3902, or already enrolled in his course; or Pass in STAT3900 or STAT3901</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[May]</td>
<td>Prof J F Xu, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3956</td>
<td>Pension funds and pension mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3902; and for BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>---</td>
<td>Prof G Ma, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
<td>Credits</td>
<td>Prerequisite(s)</td>
<td>Instructor(s)</td>
<td>Instructor's Areas of Expertise</td>
<td>Instructor's Areas of Expertise</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Description</td>
<td>Credit</td>
<td>Prerequisites</td>
<td>Enrolment</td>
<td>Exam</td>
<td>Instructor</td>
<td>Major(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4711</td>
<td>Capstone experience for actuarial science undergraduates</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in BSc(Actuarial Science) programme including (Pass in STAT3901, or already enrolled in this course, or Pass in STAT3909, or already enrolled in this course); and This capstone course is only for BSc (Actuarial Science) students and is mutually exclusive with STAT4767 and STAT4798. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>Prof G Yin, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4767</td>
<td>Actuarial science internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in BSc(Actuarial Science) programme including STAT3901; and This capstone course is only for BSc (Actuarial Science) students and is mutually exclusive with STAT4711. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>--- Dr A G Benchimol, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4798</td>
<td>Statistics and actuarial science project</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in BSc(Actuarial Science) programme including STAT3902 and STAT3907; and Pass or already enrolled in at least one of the following courses: STAT3915, STAT3911, STAT4602; and This capstone course is only for BSc (Actuarial Science) students; and subject to the consent of course coordinator. This course is mutually exclusive with STAT4711. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td>Y Y 1, 2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
<td>Prof S M S Lee, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>BSc in Actuarial Science (2017,2016,2015,2014,2013,2012)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAT3600; and Pass or already enrolled in at least one of the following courses: STAT3612, STAT3911, STAT4601, STAT4602; and Not for students who have already enrolled in STAT3799 in this academic year. This capstone course is only for students majoring in Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics; and subject to the consent of course coordinator. This course is mutually exclusive with STAT4710. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.


STAT7609  Research methods in statistics  6  Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907  Y  Y  1  Dec  ---  Dr J F Xu, Statistics & Actuarial Science

STAT7610  Advanced probability  6  Pass in STAT3603 or STAT3903  Y  Y  1  Dec  ---  Dr J Song, Mathematics

STAT7611  Computational statistics  6  Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907  Y  Y  1  Dec  ---  Prof G Yin, Statistics & Actuarial Science

STAT7614  Advanced statistical modelling  6  Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907  Y  Y  2  May  ---  Dr Y K Chung, Statistics & Actuarial Science

STAT7615  Advanced quantitative risk management and finance  6  Pass in STAT4608  Y  Y  2  May  ---  Prof W K Li, Statistics & Actuarial Science

Common Core Courses

CCH9020  Science and Technology: Lessons from China  6  NIL  Y  Y  1  Dec  120  Dr W M Y Cheung, Faculty

CCH9052  Arts, Science and Artifacts in Chinese Cultural Heritage  6  NIL  Y  Y  2  No exam  120  Prof Q A Parker, Physics

CGL9016  Feeding the World  6  NIL  Y  Y  1  No exam  120  Dr C G Akom, Faculty

CGL9033  Weapons of Mass Destruction: Science, Proliferation and Terrorism  6  NIL  Y  Y  2  No exam  120  Dr K H Lemke, Earth Sciences

CCST9102  Our Place in the Universe  6  NIL  Y  Y  2  May  126  Dr T D Wotherspoon, Faculty

CCST9103  Our Living Environment  6  NIL  Y  Y  2  No exam  120  Dr S C Chang, Earth Sciences

CCST9104  Science and Music  6  NIL  Y  Y  2  No exam  120  Prof H F Chau, Physics

CCST9107  Hidden Order in Daily Life: A Mathematical Perspective  6  NIL  Y  Y  1  No exam  120  Prof T W Ng, Mathematics
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Exam</th>
<th>Lecturer</th>
<th>Department</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CCST9018</td>
<td>Origin and Evolution of Life</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr K H Lemke, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9019</td>
<td>Understanding Climate Change</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr Z H Liu, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9021</td>
<td>Hong Kong: Our Marine Heritage</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof K M Y Leung, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9022</td>
<td>How the Mass Media Depicts Science, Technology and the Natural World</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof H F Chau, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9023</td>
<td>The Oceans: Science and Society</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr J A King, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9026</td>
<td>Scientific Revolutions: Their Continuing Impact on Our World and Society</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof Q A Parker, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9030</td>
<td>Forensic Science: Unmasking Evidence, Mysteries and Crimes</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof D L Phillips, Chemistry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9036</td>
<td>Material World: Past, Present, and Future</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof W K Chan, Chemistry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9037</td>
<td>Mathematics: A Cultural Heritage</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr B R Kane, Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9038</td>
<td>Science and Science Fiction</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof A B Djuric, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9039</td>
<td>Statistics and Our Society</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof W K Li, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9043</td>
<td>Time's Arrow</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9045</td>
<td>The Science and Lore of Culinary Culture</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr A M Y Yuen, Chemistry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9046</td>
<td>The Science of Mind-body-health Relationship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr G W Porter, Faculty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9048</td>
<td>Simplifying Complexity</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr T D Wotherspoon, Faculty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9051</td>
<td>What are We Made of - the Fundamental Nature of Matter</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Prof S Xu, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9052</td>
<td>Coffee, Cigarettes, and Alcohol</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr G W Porter, Faculty</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9054</td>
<td>War, Peace, and the Natural World</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr D M Baker, Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CCST9056</td>
<td>The Force is with You: How Things Work</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>No exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Dr F C C Ling, Physics</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Equivalency of HKDSE and other qualifications
### SECTION V  Equivalency of HKDSE and other qualifications

#### Table of Equivalence between HKDSE and Other Qualifications

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HKDSE</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Equivalent Qualification to HKDSE</th>
<th>IB</th>
<th>GCE</th>
<th>SATII</th>
<th>AP</th>
<th>Gao Kao (高考)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biology</td>
<td>3 or above</td>
<td>Biology (SL/HL)</td>
<td>Biology (AL)</td>
<td>Biology</td>
<td>Biology</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>3 or above</td>
<td>Chemistry (SL/HL)</td>
<td>Chemistry (AL)</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>3 or above</td>
<td>Physics (SL/HL)</td>
<td>Physics (AL)</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>Physics B or C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>2 or above</td>
<td>Mathematics (SL)/Mathematical Studies (SL)</td>
<td>Mathematics (AL)</td>
<td>Mathematics Level 1 or 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mathematics + (M1 or M2)</td>
<td>2 or above</td>
<td>Mathematics (HL)/Mathematical Studies (HL)</td>
<td>Pure Mathematics (AL)</td>
<td>Further Mathematics (AL)</td>
<td>Calculus AB or BC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
- HL: Higher Level
- SL: Standard Level
- AL: Advanced Level

Remarks:

For science students admitted through non-JUPAS scheme, the equivalent subject qualification(s) to HKDSE, if possessed, can be identified by the SIS for on-line course selection.

For other non-science students admitted through non-JUPAS scheme, they are still required to obtain the written approval from the Course Selection Adviser of the course offering department even they have possessed the equivalent HKDSE subject qualification(s) to meet the course prerequisite requirement. Once approval is given, they need to forward it to their home faculties to add the course on-line.
Majors offered by Science Faculty

**Majors (16)**

- Astronomy
- Biochemistry
- Biological Sciences
- Chemistry
- Decision Analytics
- Earth System Science
- Ecology & Biodiversity
- Environmental Science
- Food & Nutritional Science
- Geology
- Mathematics
- Mathematics/Physics
- Molecular Biology & Biotechnology
- Physics
- Risk Management
- Statistics
Major Title: Major in Astronomy
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The 21st century is the golden age for astronomy as space-based telescopes are being used to explore the Universe in all parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, including X-ray, ultraviolet, and infrared. The Major in Astronomy is intended for the students who would like to acquire a solid foundation on the subject. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue their interested specialization in the subject, including observational astronomy, planetary science, stellar physics, and interstellar medium. Students will attain professional knowledge in astronomy, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. In addition to preparing students for postgraduate studies as professional astronomers, astronomy training can lead to local careers in museums, weather services, and the education sectors. Beyond Hong Kong, astronomy graduates have challenging careers in aerospace, communications, energy, and computer industries, as well as in astronomical observatories and space research centers.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and frequent opportunities in field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: analyze astrophysical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and recognize moral and ethical issues related to the discipline (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Astronomy

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)
   EASC2408 Planetary geology (6)
   PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
   PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (6 Credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
   PHYS2055 Introduction to relativity (6)
   PHYS2150 Methods in physics I (6)
   PHYS2155 Methods in physics II (6)
   PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
   PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
   PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
   PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from courses in List A:
   List A
   PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
   PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
   PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
   PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
   PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)
   Plus at least 12 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List B and those courses not selected to fulfill the requirements in List A and the capstone requirement.
   List B
   PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
   PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3550</td>
<td>Statistical mechanics &amp; thermodynamics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3551</td>
<td>Introductory solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3750</td>
<td>Laser and spectroscopy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3751</td>
<td>Physics of nanomaterials (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3850</td>
<td>Waves and optics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3851</td>
<td>Atomic and nuclear physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150</td>
<td>Computational physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4351</td>
<td>Advanced quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- PHYS3999  Directed studies in physics (6)
- PHYS4966  Physics internship (6)
- PHYS4999  Physics project (12)

### Notes:
1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (‘disciplinary core’) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

5. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Astronomy
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The 21st century is the golden age for astronomy as space-based telescopes are being used to explore the Universe in all parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, including X-ray, ultraviolet, and infrared. The Major in Astronomy is intended for the students who would like to acquire a solid foundation on the subject. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue their interested specialization in the subject, including observational astronomy, planetary science, stellar physics, and interstellar medium. Students will attain professional knowledge in astronomy, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. In addition to preparing students for postgraduate studies as professional astronomers, astronomy training can lead to local careers in museums, weather services, and the education sectors. Beyond Hong Kong, astronomy graduates have challenging careers in aerospace, communications, energy, and computer industries, as well as in astronomical observatories and space research centers.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and frequent opportunities in field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: analyze astrophysical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and recognize moral and ethical issues related to the discipline (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Astronomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2408 Planetary geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Elective (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2055 Introduction to relativity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2150 Methods in physics I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2155 Methods in physics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

| Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits) |
| PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6) |
| PHYS3651 The physical universe (6) |
| PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6) |

3. Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)

| At least 12 credits selected from courses in List A: |
| List A |
| PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6) |
| PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6) |
| PHYS4652 Planetary science (6) |
| PHYS4653 Cosmology (6) |
| PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6) |
| PHYS4656 Stellar atmospheres (6) |

| Plus at least 12 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List B and those courses not selected to fulfill the requirements in List A and the capstone requirement. |
| List B |
| PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6) |
| PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6) |
| PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6) |
| PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6) |
### PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)

### PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)

### PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)

### PHYS3751 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)

### PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)

### PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)

### PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)

### PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)

### PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)

### PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)

### PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)

### PHYS4654 General relativity (6)

### PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)

### PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)

### PHYS5750 Graduate classical mechanics (6)

### PHYS5751 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)

### PHYS5755 Graduate solid state physics (6)

### PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)

### PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)

### PHYS7350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)

### PHYS7351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)

### PHYS7450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)

### PHYS7550 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)

### PHYS7551 Graduate solid state physics (6)

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

*At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:*

- PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
- PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)
- PHYS4999 Physics project (12)

### Notes:

1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfil this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240.

### Remarks:

*Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.*
**Major Title** Major in Astronomy  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015**

**Objectives:**
The 21st century is the golden age for astronomy as space-based telescopes are being used to explore the Universe in all parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, including X-ray, ultraviolet, and infrared. The Major in Astronomy is intended for the students who would like to acquire a solid foundation on the subject. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue their interested specialization in the subject, including observational astronomy, planetary science, stellar physics, and interstellar medium. Students will attain professional knowledge in astronomy, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. In addition to preparing students for postgraduate studies as professional astronomers, astronomy training can lead to local careers in museums, weather services, and the education sectors. Beyond Hong Kong, astronomy graduates have challenging careers in aerospace, communications, energy, and computer industries, as well as in astronomical observatories and space research centers.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and frequent opportunities in field activities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: analyze astrophysical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and recognize moral and ethical issues related to the discipline (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Astronomy

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
     - PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
     - PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)
     - EASC2408 Planetary geology (6)
     - PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
     - PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
     - At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
       - PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
       - PHYS2055 Introduction to relativity (6)
       - PHYS2150 Methods in physics I (6)
       - PHYS2155 Methods in physics II (6)
       - PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
       - PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
     - PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
     - PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
     - At least 12 credits selected from courses in List A:
       - **List A**
         - PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
         - PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
         - PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
         - PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
         - PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
         - PHYS4656 Stellar atmospheres (6)
       - **List B**
         - PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
         - PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
         - PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
         - PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)

---

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Astronomy

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
     - PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
     - PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)
     - EASC2408 Planetary geology (6)
     - PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
     - PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
     - At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
       - PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
       - PHYS2055 Introduction to relativity (6)
       - PHYS2150 Methods in physics I (6)
       - PHYS2155 Methods in physics II (6)
       - PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
       - PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
     - PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
     - PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
     - At least 12 credits selected from courses in List A:
       - **List A**
         - PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
         - PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
         - PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
         - PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
         - PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
         - PHYS4656 Stellar atmospheres (6)
       - **List B**
         - PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
         - PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
         - PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
         - PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966</td>
<td>Physics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999</td>
<td>Physics project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Astronomy
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The 21st century is the golden age for astronomy as space-based telescopes are being used to explore the Universe in all parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, including X-ray, ultraviolet, and infrared. The Major in Astronomy is intended for the students who would like to acquire a solid foundation on the subject. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue their interested specialization in the subject, including observational astronomy, planetary science, stellar physics, and interstellar medium. Students will attain professional knowledge in astronomy, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. In addition to preparing students for postgraduate studies as professional astronomers, astronomy training can lead to local careers in museums, weather services, and the education sectors. Beyond Hong Kong, astronomy graduates have challenging careers in aerospace, communications, energy, and computer industries, as well as in astronomical observatories and space research centers.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and frequent opportunities in field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: analyze astrophysical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and recognize moral and ethical issues related to the discipline (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Astronomy

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111  Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112  Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   PHYS1250  Fundamental physics (6)
   PHYS1650  Nature of the universe (6)
   EASC2408  Planetary geology (6)
   PHYS2250  Introductory mechanics (6)
   PHYS2255  Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
   PHYS2265  Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   PHYS3650  Observational astronomy (6)
   PHYS3651  The physical universe (6)
   PHYS3652  Principles of astronomy (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from courses in List A:
   List A
   PHYS4650  Stellar physics (6)
   PHYS4651  Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   PHYS4652  Planetary science (6)
   PHYS4653  Cosmology (6)
   PHYS4655  Interstellar medium (6)
   PHYS7650  Stellar atmospheres (6)

   Plus at least 12 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List B and those courses not selected to fulfill the requirements in List A and the capstone requirement.

   List B
   PHYS3150  Mathematical physics (6)
   PHYS3350  Classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS3351  Quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS3450  Electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS3550  Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
   PHYS3551  Introductory solid state physics (6)
   PHYS3750  Laser and spectroscopy (6)
   PHYS3751  Physics of nanomaterials (6)
   PHYS3850  Waves and optics (6)
   PHYS3851  Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
   PHYS4150  Computational physics (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4351</td>
<td>Advanced quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966</td>
<td>Physics internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999</td>
<td>Physics project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Astronomy  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The 21st century is the golden age for astronomy as space-based telescopes are being used to explore the Universe in all parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, including X-ray, ultraviolet, and infrared. The Major in Astronomy is intended for the students who would like to acquire a solid foundation on the subject. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue their interested specialization in the subject, including observational astronomy, planetary science, stellar physics, and interstellar medium. Students will attain professional knowledge in astronomy, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. In addition to preparing students for postgraduate studies as professional astronomers, astronomy training can lead to local careers in museums, weather services, and the education sectors. Beyond Hong Kong, astronomy graduates have challenging careers in aerospace, communications, energy, and computer industries, as well as in astronomical observatories and space research centers.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:
- PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and frequent opportunities in field activities in the curriculum)
- PLO 3: analyze astrophysical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and recognize moral and ethical issues related to the discipline (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)
- PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Astronomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2408</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2255</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from courses in List A:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plus at least 12 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List B and those courses not selected to fulfill the requirements in List A and the capstone requirement.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List B</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3351</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3550</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3551</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3750</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3751</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3850</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3851</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PHYS4151  Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
PHYS4350  Advanced classical mechanics (6)
PHYS4351  Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS4450  Advanced electromagnetism (6)
PHYS4550  Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS4551  Solid state physics (6)
PHYS4654  General relativity (6)
PHYS4750  Experimental physics (6)
PHYS4850  Particle physics (6)
PHYS7350  Graduate classical mechanics (6)
PHYS7351  Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS7450  Graduate electromagnetism (6)
PHYS7550  Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS7551  Graduate solid state physics (6)
PHYS7750  Nanophysics (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
PHYS3999  Directed studies in physics (6)
PHYS4966  Physics internship (6)
PHYS4999  Physics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (“disciplinary core”) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses (“disciplinary core”) in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Astronomy
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The 21st century is the golden age for astronomy as space-based telescopes are being used to explore the Universe in all parts of the electromagnetic spectrum, including X-ray, ultraviolet, and infrared. The Major in Astronomy is intended for the students who would like to acquire a solid foundation on the subject. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue their interested specialization in the subject, including observational astronomy, planetary science, stellar physics, and interstellar medium. Students will attain professional knowledge in astronomy, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. In addition to preparing students for postgraduate studies as professional astronomers, astronomy training can lead to local careers in museums, weather services, and the education sectors. Beyond Hong Kong, astronomy graduates have challenging careers in aerospace, communications, energy, and computer industries, as well as in astronomical observatories and space research centers.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and frequent opportunities in field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: analyze astrophysical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and recognize moral and ethical issues related to the discipline (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Astronomy

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)
   EASC2408 Planetary geology (6)
   PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
   PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
   PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
   PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
   PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from courses in List A:
   List A
   PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
   PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
   PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
   PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
   PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)

   Plus at least 12 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List B and those courses not selected to fulfill the requirements in List A and the capstone requirement.

   List B
   PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
   PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
   PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
   PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
   PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
   PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
   PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
   PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4351</td>
<td>Advanced quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966</td>
<td>Physics internship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999</td>
<td>Physics project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biochemistry
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Major in Biochemistry aims to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize equipping students with a general understanding of the fundamental ideas, principles and theories of biochemistry and molecular biology with particular focus on the relevance of biochemistry, molecular biology and genomics to biology, human health and disease. Elective courses extend this core knowledge to provide students with specialized insight into both basic and applied scientific endeavour in biochemistry, bioinformatics, molecular biology and molecular genetics. Throughout the curriculum there is an emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory practicals, problem-solving exercises, group-based learning, industrial experience, overseas exchange and research-based projects. These experiences are designed to develop students’ ability to read and interpret scientific data, to integrate knowledge with wider scientific theory, and to improve logical thinking and communication skills. The ultimate goal is to provide a comprehensive degree-level biochemistry education that equips students with the critical thinking, communication and analytical skills essential for them to play a leading role in society in the future.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the principles of biomolecular structure, metabolism, molecular interactions, molecular processes and their regulation, genetics and systems biology critical to contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology (by means of coursework and experiential learning)

PLO 2: apply biochemical, bioinformatics and molecular genetics technologies for new observations, measurements and analyses; and to design experiments that bring discovery and insight into the unknown (by means of laboratory-based and research project-based learning)

PLO 3: interpret and communicate scientific data and literature using appropriate scientific language (by means of literature-based coursework and debate)

PLO 4: work effectively as a team and synergize with their colleagues in a supportive manner (by means of group-based learning and by group-based problem solving)

PLO 5: recognize the interconnections of biochemistry with other disciplines in science, medicine and engineering, humanities and ethics, which are relevant for diverse working environment in the society (by means of multidisciplinary-based research projects, internship and debate)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Biochemistry

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)
   BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
   BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
   BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
   BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
   BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
   BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
   BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
   BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
   BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
   CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>'Omics' and systems biology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4145</td>
<td>Medicinal chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOC3999  Directed studies in biochemistry (6)
- BIOC4966  Biochemistry internship (6)
- BIOC4999  Biochemistry project (12)

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (‘disciplinary core’) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biochemistry
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in: 2016

Objectives:
The Major in Biochemistry aims to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize equipping students with a general understanding of the fundamental ideas, principles and theories of biochemistry with particular focus on the relevance of biochemistry, molecular biology and genomics to biology, human health and disease. Elective courses extend this core knowledge to provide students with specialized insight into both basic and applied scientific endeavour in biochemistry, bioinformatics, molecular biology and molecular genetics. Throughout the curriculum there is an emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory practicals, problem-solving exercises, group-based learning, industrial experience, overseas exchange and research-based projects. These experiences are designed to develop students’ ability to read and interpret scientific data, to integrate knowledge with wider scientific theory, and to improve logical thinking and communication skills. The ultimate goal is to provide a comprehensive degree-level biochemistry education that equips students with the critical thinking, communication and analytical skills essential for them to play a leading role in society in the future.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the principles of biomolecular structure, metabolism, molecular interactions, molecular processes and their regulation, genetics and systems biology critical to contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology (by means of coursework and experiential learning)

PLO 2: apply biochemical, bioinformatics and molecular genetics technologies for new observations, measurements and analyses; and to design experiments that bring discovery and insight into the unknown (by means of laboratory-based and research project-based learning)

PLO 3: interpret and communicate scientific data and literature using appropriate scientific language (by means of literature-based coursework and debate)

PLO 4: work effectively as a team and synergize with their colleagues in a supportive manner (by means of group-based learning and by group-based problem solving)

PLO 5: recognize the interconnections of biochemistry with other disciplines in science, medicine and engineering, humanities and ethics, which are relevant for diverse working environment in the society (by means of multidisciplinary-based research projects, internship and debate)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Biochemistry

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)
BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
BIOC2600 and BIOL2220 are mutually exclusive.
CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
BIOC3401 Molecular biology (6)
BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)
Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
BIOC3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
BIOC3403 Immunology (6)
BIOC3404 Protein structure and function (6)
BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>'Omics' and systems biology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4145</td>
<td>Medicinal chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOC3999  Directed studies in biochemistry (6)
- BIOC4966  Biochemistry internship (6)
- BIOC4999  Biochemistry project (12)

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biochemistry

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Major in Biochemistry aims to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize equipping students with a general understanding of the fundamental ideas, principles and theories of biochemistry with particular focus on the relevance of biochemistry, molecular biology and genomics to biology, human health and disease. Elective courses extend this core knowledge to provide students with specialized insight into both basic and applied scientific endeavour in biochemistry, bioinformatics, molecular biology and molecular genetics. Throughout the curriculum there is an emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory practicals, problem-solving exercises, group-based learning, industrial experience, overseas exchange and research-based projects. These experiences are designed to develop students’ ability to read and interpret scientific data, to integrate knowledge with wider scientific theory, and to improve logical thinking and communication skills. The ultimate goal is to provide a comprehensive degree-level biochemistry education that equips students with the critical thinking, communication and analytical skills essential for them to play a leading role in society in the future.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the principles of biomolecular structure, metabolism, molecular interactions, molecular processes and their regulation, genetics and systems biology critical to contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology (by means of coursework and experiential learning)

PLO 2: apply biochemical, bioinformatics and molecular genetics technologies for new observations, measurements and analyses; and to design experiments that bring discovery and insight into the unknown (by means of laboratory-based and research project-based learning)

PLO 3: interpret and communicate scientific data and literature using appropriate scientific language (by means of literature-based coursework and debate)

PLO 4: work effectively as a team and synergize with their colleagues in a supportive manner (by means of group-based learning and by group-based problem solving)

PLO 5: recognize the interconnections of biochemistry with other disciplines in science, medicine and engineering, humanities and ethics, which are relevant for diverse working environment in the society (by means of multidisciplinary-based research projects, internship and debate)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Biochemistry

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)

| Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits) |
| SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6) |
| SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6) |

| Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits) |
| CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6) |
| CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6) |
| BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6) |
| BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6) |

| Disciplinary Electives (6 credits) |
| BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6) |
| BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6) |

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

| Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits) |
| BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6) |
| BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6) |
| BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6) |
| BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6) |
| BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6) |

| Disciplinary Electives (18 credits) |
| BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6) |
| BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6) |
| BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6) |
| BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6) |
| BIOL3403 Immunology (6) |
| BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6) |
| BIOL3408 Genetics (6) |
| CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6) |
| BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6) |

Take either BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOC2600 and BIOL2220 are mutually exclusive.

Take either BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOC2600 and BIOL2220 are mutually exclusive.

Take either BIOC1600 or BIOL1110 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.

Take either BIOC1600 or BIOL1110 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.
BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology (6)  
CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)  
CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)  

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)  
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:  
BIOC3999 Directed studies in biochemistry (6)  
BIOC4966 Biochemistry internship (6)  
BIOC4999 Biochemistry project (12)  

Notes:  
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.  
2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.  
3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.  
4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.  
5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.  

Remarks:  
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biochemistry

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Major in Biochemistry aims to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize equipping students with a general understanding of the fundamental ideas, principles and theories of biochemistry with particular focus on the relevance of biochemistry, molecular biology and genomics to biology, human health and disease. Elective courses extend this core knowledge to provide students with specialized insight into both basic and applied scientific endeavour in biochemistry, bioinformatics, molecular biology and molecular genetics. Throughout the curriculum there is an emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory practicals, problem-solving exercises, group-based learning, industrial experience, overseas exchange and research-based projects. These experiences are designed to develop students’ ability to read and interpret scientific data, to integrate knowledge with wider scientific theory, and to improve logical thinking and communication skills. The ultimate goal is to provide a comprehensive degree-level biochemistry education that equips students with the critical thinking, communication and analytical skills essential for them to play a leading role in society in the future.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the principles of biomolecular structure, metabolism, molecular interactions, molecular processes and their regulation, genetics and systems biology critical to contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology (by means of coursework and experiential learning)

PLO 2: apply biochemical, bioinformatics and molecular genetics technologies for new observations, measurements and analyses; and to design experiments that bring discovery and insight into the unknown (by means of laboratory-based and research project-based learning)

PLO 3: interpret and communicate scientific data and literature using appropriate scientific language (by means of literature-based coursework and debate)

PLO 4: work effectively as a team and synergize with their colleagues in a supportive manner (by means of group-based learning and by group-based problem solving)

PLO 5: recognize the interconnections of biochemistry with other disciplines in science, medicine and engineering, humanities and ethics, which are relevant for diverse working environment in the society (by means of multidisciplinary-based research projects, internship and debate)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Biochemistry

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
   CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
   CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)
   CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
   BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
   BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
   BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
   BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
   BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
   BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
   CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
   BIOC4417 ‘Omics’ and systems biology (6)
   CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
   CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
**Science Majors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOC3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4966</td>
<td>Biochemistry internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4999</td>
<td>Biochemistry project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biochemistry

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Major in Biochemistry aims to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize equipping students with a general understanding of the fundamental ideas, principles and theories of biochemistry with particular focus on the relevance of biochemistry, molecular biology and genomics to biology, human health and disease. Elective courses extend this core knowledge to provide students with specialized insight into both basic and applied scientific endeavour in biochemistry, bioinformatics, molecular biology and molecular genetics. Throughout the curriculum there is an emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory practicals, problem-solving exercises, group-based learning, industrial experience, overseas exchange and research-based projects. These experiences are designed to develop students’ ability to read and interpret scientific data, to integrate knowledge with wider scientific theory, and to improve logical thinking and communication skills. The ultimate goal is to provide a comprehensive degree-level biochemistry education that equips students with the critical thinking, communication and analytical skills essential for them to play a leading role in society in the future.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the principles of biomolecular structure, metabolism, molecular interactions, molecular processes and their regulation, genetics and systems biology critical to contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology (by means of coursework and experiential learning)

PLO 2: apply biochemical, bioinformatics and molecular genetics technologies for new observations, measurements and analyses; and to design experiments that bring discovery and insight into the unknown (by means of laboratory-based and research project-based learning)

PLO 3: interpret and communicate scientific data and literature using appropriate scientific language (by means of literature-based coursework and debate)

PLO 4: work effectively as a team and synergize with their colleagues in a supportive manner (by means of group-based learning and by group-based problem solving)

PLO 5: recognize the interconnections of biochemistry with other disciplines in science, medicine and engineering, humanities and ethics, which are relevant for diverse working environment in the society (by means of multidisciplinary-based research projects, internship and debate)

Impermissible Combinations:

Minor in Biochemistry

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   
   **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
   
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
   
   BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)

   **Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
   
   CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)
   CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

   **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
   
   BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
   BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
   BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
   BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)

   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
   
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   
   BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
   BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
   BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
   BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
   CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   BIOL4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
   BIOL4417 ‘Omis’ and systems biology (6)
   CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
   CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfil this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biochemistry
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Major in Biochemistry aims to provide students with both basic and advanced knowledge in contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize equipping students with a general understanding of the fundamental ideas, principles and theories of biochemistry with particular focus on the relevance of biochemistry, molecular biology and genomics to biology, human health and disease. Elective courses extend this core knowledge to provide students with specialized insight into both basic and applied scientific endeavour in biochemistry, bioinformatics, molecular biology and molecular genetics. Throughout the curriculum there is an emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory practicals, problem-solving exercises, group-based learning, industrial experience, overseas exchange and research-based projects. These experiences are designed to develop students’ ability to read and interpret scientific data, to integrate knowledge with wider scientific theory, and to improve logical thinking and communication skills. The ultimate goal is to provide a comprehensive degree-level biochemistry education that equips students with the critical thinking, communication and analytical skills essential for them to play a leading role in society in the future.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: describe the principles of biomolecular structure, metabolism, molecular interactions, molecular processes and their regulation, genetics and systems biology critical to contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology (by means of coursework and experiential learning)
- **PLO 2**: apply biochemical, bioinformatics and molecular genetics technologies for new observations, measurements and analyses; and to design experiments that bring discovery and insight into the unknown (by means of laboratory-based and research project-based learning)
- **PLO 3**: interpret and communicate scientific data and literature using appropriate scientific language (by means of literature-based coursework and debate)
- **PLO 4**: work effectively as a team and synergize with their colleagues in a supportive manner (by means of group-based learning and by group-based problem solving)
- **PLO 5**: recognize the interconnections of biochemistry with other disciplines in science, medicine and engineering, humanities and ethics, which are relevant for diverse working environment in the society (by means of multidisciplinary-based research projects, internship and debate)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Biochemistry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
<td>Scientific method and reasoning (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
<td>Fundamentals of modern science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC1600</td>
<td>Perspectives in biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1042</td>
<td>General chemistry I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2441</td>
<td>Organic chemistry I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1043</td>
<td>General chemistry II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2541</td>
<td>Introductory physical chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take either CHEM1043 or CHEM2541 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

|  |
| 2. Advanced level courses (42 credits) |  |
| Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits) |  |
| BIOC3601 | Basic metabolism (6) |
| BIOC3604 | Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6) |
| BIOC3401 | Molecular biology (6) |
| BIOC4610 | Advanced biochemistry (6) |
| BIOC4613 | Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6) |
|  |
| Disciplinary Electives (12 credits) |  |
| At least 12 credits selected from the following courses: |  |
| BIOC3605 | Sequence bioinformatics (6) |
| BIOC3606 | Molecular medicine (6) |
| BIOL3202 | Nutritional biochemistry (6) |
| BIOL3402 | Cell biology and cell technology (6) |
| BIOL3403 | Immunology (6) |
| BIOL3404 | Protein structure and function (6) |
| BIOL3408 | Genetics (6) |
| CHEM3441 | Organic chemistry II (6) |
| BIOC4612 | Molecular biology of the gene (6) |
| BIOL4417 | 'Omics' and systems biology (6) |
| CHEM4145 | Medicinal chemistry (6) |
| CHEM4444 | Chemical biology (6) |
| Take either CHEM1043 or CHEM2541 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both. |  |

| 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits) |  |
| At least 6 credits selected from the following courses: |  |
### Science Majors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOC3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in biochemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4966</td>
<td>Biochemistry internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4999</td>
<td>Biochemistry project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title**: Major in Biological Sciences  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2017

**Objectives:**
This Major is designed for students seeking a broad-based training in modern biology. Students are guided in an inquiry-driven learning environment to appreciate the major biological systems at different levels of biological organization. Teaching emphasizes both core concepts and applied aspects in biological sciences. The programme is highly flexible as students can select courses according to their own interests from a wide spectrum of elective courses. At the advanced level, students are further exposed to three fundamental areas of biological sciences (genetics, molecular & cell biology; ecology, systematics and evolution; physiology and organismic biology) and will undertake experiential learning activities. The diverse learning experience exposes students to problem-based learning, and an exciting array of laboratory and field techniques. Students will also be able to acquire valuable transferable skills in analysis, organization and communication. The Biological Sciences Major applies modern scientific inquiry to prepare graduates for employment as professionals in a variety of careers or for postgraduate study.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand concepts underpinning advances in genetics, molecular & cell biology; ecology, systematics and evolution; physiology and organismic biology (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: evaluate diverse threads of enquiry in science, and identify the value of datasets and written output (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: interpret scientific data from a range of sources and explain trends observed (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: demonstrate independent and critical thinking and appreciate moral and ethical issues related to biological sciences (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate in a professional capacity with educators, business, media and the scientific community (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: be prepared to enter employment as professional scientists, educators and managers (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based, project-based and capstone learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
NIL

### Required courses (96 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   - BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Number</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3401</td>
<td>Molecular biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402</td>
<td>Cell biology and cell technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3404</td>
<td>Protein structure and function</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3408</td>
<td>Genetics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Advanced level courses (at least 42 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Electives (42 credits)**

   **(A) Genetics, molecular and cell biology (at least 12 credits selected from area A)**
   - BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   - BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   - BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)
   - BIOL3501 Evolution (6)
   - BIOL3503 Endocrinology: human physiology II (6)

   **(B) Ecology, systematics and evolution (at least 12 credits selected from area B)**
   - BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
   - BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   - BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   - BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)
   - BIOL3517 Plant physiology (6)

   **(C) Physiology and organismic biology (at least 18 credits with 6 credits from each of List I, II & III)**

   **List I**
   - BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
   - BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   - BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   - BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)
   - BIOL3503 Endocrinology: human physiology II (6)
   - BIOL3517 Plant physiology (6)
BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)

List III
BIOL3109 Environmental microbiology (6)
BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)
BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
BIOL4401 Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3994 Directed studies in biological sciences (6)
   BIOL4964 Biological sciences internship (6)
   BIOL4994 Biological sciences project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (“disciplinary core”) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses (“disciplinary core”) in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biological Sciences
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
This Major is designed for students seeking a broad-based training in modern biology. Students are guided in an inquiry-driven learning environment to appreciate the major biological systems at different levels of biological organization. Teaching emphasizes both core concepts and applied aspects in biological sciences. The programme is highly flexible as students can select courses according to their own interests from a wide spectrum of elective courses. At the advanced level, students are further exposed to three fundamental areas of biological sciences (genetics, molecular & cell biology; ecology, systematics and evolution; physiology and organismic biology) and will undertake experiential learning activities. The diverse learning experience exposes students to problem-based learning, and an exciting array of laboratory and field techniques. Students will also be able to acquire valuable transferable skills in analysis, organization and communication. The Biological Sciences Major applies modern scientific inquiry to prepare graduates for employment as professionals in a variety of careers or for postgraduate study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand concepts underpinning advances in genetics, molecular & cell biology; ecology, systematics and evolution; physiology and organismic biology (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: evaluate diverse threads of enquiry in science, and identify the value of datasets and written output (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: interpret scientific data from a range of sources and explain trends observed (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: demonstrate independent and critical thinking and appreciate moral and ethical issues related to biological sciences (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate in a professional capacity with educators, business, media and the scientific community (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: be prepared to enter employment as professional scientists, educators and managers (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based, project-based and capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)

SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)

BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. Advanced level courses (at least 42 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (42 credits)

(A) Genetics, molecular and cell biology (at least 12 credits selected from area A)
BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
BIOL3408 Genetics (6)

(B) Ecology, systematics and evolution (at least 12 credits selected from area B)
BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)
BIOL3501 Evolution (6)

(B) Physiology and organismic biology (at least 18 credits with 6 credits from each of List I, II & III)

List I
BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)
BIOL3503 Endocrinology: human physiology II (6)

List II
BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)

List III
### List II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3314</td>
<td>Plant structure and evolution</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3109</td>
<td>Environmental microbiology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3203</td>
<td>Food microbiology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3508</td>
<td>Microbial physiology and biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>Medical microbiology and applied immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3994</td>
<td>Directed studies in biological sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4964</td>
<td>Biological sciences internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4994</td>
<td>Biological sciences project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biological Sciences
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
This Major is designed for students seeking a broad-based training in modern biology. Students are guided in an inquiry-driven learning environment to appreciate the major biological systems at different levels of biological organization. Teaching emphasizes both core concepts and applied aspects in biological sciences. The programme is highly flexible as students can select courses according to their own interests from a wide spectrum of elective courses. At the advanced level, students are further allowed to specialize in areas such as microbiology, genetics & cytology, physiology & homeostasis, or diversity of life & environmental biology and undertake experiential learning activities. The diverse learning experience exposes students to problem-based learning, and an exciting array of laboratory and field techniques. Students will also be able to acquire valuable transferable skills in analysis, organization and communication. The Biological Sciences Major applies modern scientific inquiry to prepare graduates for employment as professionals in a variety of careers or for postgraduate study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand concepts underpinning advances in cell biology and genetics, physiology and systems biology, diversity of life and environmental biology, and applied biology (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: evaluate diverse threads of enquiry in science, and identify the value of datasets and written output (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: interpret scientific data from a range of sources and explain trends observed (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: demonstrate independent and critical thinking and appreciate moral and ethical issues related to biological sciences (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate in a professional capacity with educators, business, media and the scientific community (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: be prepared to enter employment as professional scientists, educators and managers (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based, project-based and capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   BIOL2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (at least 42 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (42 credits)
   Students must select at least 6 credits from each of the following area A, B, C & D:

   (A) Genetics and cell biology
   BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
   BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
   BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)
   BIOL3108 Microbial physiology (6)
   BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)

   (B) Physiology and systems biology
   BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
   BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
   BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
   BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)

   (C) Diversity of life and environmental biology
   BIOL3109 Environmental microbiology (6)
   BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3301</td>
<td>Marine biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3302</td>
<td>Systematics and phylogenetics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3303</td>
<td>Conservation biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409</td>
<td>Business aspects of biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301</td>
<td>Fish and fisheries</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>Medical microbiology and applied immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3994</td>
<td>Directed studies in biological sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4964</td>
<td>Biological sciences internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4994</td>
<td>Biological sciences project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major in Biological Sciences

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
This Major is designed for students seeking a broad-based training in modern biology. Students are guided in an inquiry-driven learning environment to appreciate the major biological systems at different levels of biological organization. Teaching emphasizes both core concepts and applied aspects in biological sciences. The programme is highly flexible as students can select courses according to their own interests from a wide spectrum of elective courses. At the advanced level, students are further allowed to specialize in areas such as microbiology, genetics & cytology, physiology & homeostasis, or diversity of life & environmental biology and undertake experiential learning activities. The diverse learning experience exposes students to problem-based learning, and an exciting array of laboratory and field techniques. Students will also be able to acquire valuable transferable skills in analysis, organization and communication. The Biological Sciences Major applies modern scientific inquiry to prepare graduates for employment as professionals in a variety of careers or for postgraduate study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand concepts underpinning advances in cell biology and genetics, physiology and systems biology, diversity of life and environmental biology, and applied biology (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: evaluate diverse threads of enquiry in science, and identify the value of datasets and written output (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: interpret scientific data from a range of sources and explain trends observed (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: demonstrate independent and critical thinking and appreciate moral and ethical issues related to biological sciences (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate in a professional capacity with educators, business, media and the scientific community (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: be prepared to enter employment as professional scientists, educators and managers (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based, project-based and capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111  Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112  Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1110  From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1111  Introductory microbiology (6)
   BIOL1309  Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2102  Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103  Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2306  Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (at least 42 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (42 credits)
   Students must select at least 6 credits from each of the following area A, B, C & D:

(A) Genetics and cell biology
   BIOL3401  Molecular biology (6)
   BIOL3402  Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3403  Immunology (6)
   BIOL3408  Genetics (6)

(B) Physiology and systems biology
   BIOL3105  Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
   BIOL3107  Plant physiology (6)
   BIOL3108  Microbial physiology (6)
   BIOL3205  Human physiology (6)
   BIOL3508  Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)

(C) Diversity of life and environmental biology
   BIOL3109  Environmental microbiology (6)
   BIOL3110  Environmental toxicology (6)
   BIOL3301  Marine biology (6)
   BIOL3302  Systematics and phylogenetics (6)

(D) Applied biology
   BIOL3303  Conservation biology (6)
   BIOL3409  Business aspects of biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4301  Fish and fisheries (6)
### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- **BIOL4401** Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)
- **BIOL3994** Directed studies in biological sciences (6)
- **BIOL4964** Biological sciences internship (6)
- **BIOL4994** Biological sciences project (12)

**Notes:**

1. BIOL1111 Introductory Microbiology is not offered from 2015-16. Students should take either BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry or BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry as a replacement, both BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Biological Sciences

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
This Major is designed for students seeking a broad-based training in modern biology. Students are guided in an inquiry-driven learning environment to appreciate the major biological systems at different levels of biological organization. Teaching emphasizes both core concepts and applied aspects in biological sciences. The programme is highly flexible as students can select courses according to their own interests from a wide spectrum of elective courses. At the advanced level, students are further allowed to specialize in areas such as microbiology, genetics & cytology, physiology & homeostasis, or diversity of life & environmental biology and undertake experiential learning activities. The diverse learning experience exposes students to problem-based learning, and an exciting array of laboratory and field techniques. Students will also be able to acquire valuable transferable skills in analysis, organization and communication. The Biological Sciences Major applies modern scientific inquiry to prepare graduates for employment as professionals in a variety of careers or for postgraduate study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand concepts underpinning advances in cell biology and genetics, physiology and systems biology, diversity of life and environmental biology, and applied biology (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: evaluate diverse threads of enquiry in science, and identify the value of datasets and written output (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: interpret scientific data from a range of sources and explain trends observed (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: demonstrate independent and critical thinking and appreciate moral and ethical issues related to biological sciences (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate in a professional capacity with educators, business, media and the scientific community (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: be prepared to enter employment as professional scientists, educators and managers (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based, project-based and capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1111 Introductory microbiology (6)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (at least 42 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (42 credits)
   Students must select at least 6 credits from each of the following area A, B, C & D:

   (A) Genetics and cell biology
   BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   BIOL3408 Genetics (6)

   (B) Physiology and systems biology
   BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)
   BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)
   BIOL3108 Microbial physiology (6)
   BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)

   Take either BIOL3108 or BIOL3508 to fulfill this 42 credits requirement, but not both.
   BIOL3108 and BIOL3508 are mutually exclusive.

   (C) Diversity of life and environmental biology
   BIOL3109 Environmental microbiology (6)
   BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
   BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)

   (D) Applied biology
   BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   BIOL3409 Business aspects of biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)
### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- BIOL4401 Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)
- BIOL3994 Directed studies in biological sciences (6)
- BIOL4964 Biological sciences internship (6)
- BIOL4994 Biological sciences project (12)

#### Notes:

1. BIOL1111 Introductory Microbiology is not offered from 2015-16. Students should take either BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry or BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry as a replacement, both BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

#### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title**
Major in Biological Sciences

**Offered to students**
admitted to Year 1 in 2012

**Objectives:**
This Major is designed for students seeking a broad-based training in modern biology. Students are guided in an inquiry-driven learning environment to appreciate the major biological systems at different levels of biological organization. Teaching emphasizes both core concepts and applied aspects in biological sciences. The programme is highly flexible as students can select courses according to their own interests from a wide spectrum of elective courses. At the advanced level, students are further allowed to specialize in areas such as microbiology, genetics & cytology, physiology & homeostasis, or diversity of life & environmental biology and undertake experiential learning activities. The diverse learning experience exposes students to problem-based learning, and an exciting array of laboratory and field techniques. Students will also be able to acquire valuable transferable skills in analysis, organization and communication. The Biological Sciences Major applies modern scientific inquiry to prepare graduates for employment as professionals in a variety of careers or for postgraduate study.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** understand concepts underpinning advances in cell biology and genetics, physiology and systems biology, diversity of life and environmental biology, and applied biology (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** evaluate diverse threads of enquiry in science, and identify the value of datasets and written output (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** interpret scientific data from a range of sources and explain trends observed (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4:** demonstrate independent and critical thinking and appreciate moral and ethical issues related to biological sciences (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5:** communicate in a professional capacity with educators, business, media and the scientific community (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6:** be prepared to enter employment as professional scientists, educators and managers (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based, project-based and capstone learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
NIL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1111 Introductory microbiology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (at least 42 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (42 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Students must select at least 6 credits from each of the following area A, B, C &amp; D:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) Genetics and cell biology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3403 Immunology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3408 Genetics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) Physiology and systems biology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3105 Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3108 Microbial physiology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take either BIOL3108 or BIOL3508 to fulfill this 42 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3108 and BIOL3508 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C) Diversity of life and environmental biology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3109 Environmental microbiology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(D) Applied biology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409 Business aspects of biotechnology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- BIOL4401 Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)
- BIOL3994 Directed studies in biological sciences (6)
- BIOL4964 Biological sciences internship (6)
- BIOL4994 Biological sciences project (12)

Notes:

1. BIOL1111 Introductory Microbiology is not offered from 2015-16. Students should take either BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry or BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry as a replacement, both BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Chemistry  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Major in Chemistry aims to provide students with a solid training in major areas of chemistry. The curriculum includes core courses covering topics in physical, inorganic, organic, and analytical chemistry. A wide selection of elective courses in chemical biology, chemical analysis, computational chemistry, environmental chemistry, industrial chemistry, interfacial science, material, and medicinal chemistry, is also available to provide students with knowledge and training to help them meet the dynamic and ever-changing challenges in science and technology. Graduates of the Chemistry Major programme will be proficient in the principles and experimental skills of chemistry. The programme will also equip students with transferable skills in both theoretical and experimental investigations in sciences that are crucial for their future careers in a knowledge-based economy. It is expected that our graduates will be able to meet local and regional requirements in the industrial, commercial, government or education sectors and will become future leaders of these sectors.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate an understanding across a wide range of topics in chemistry, from basic areas such as analytical, inorganic, organic & physical chemistry, to advanced topics related to current research in chemistry (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: demonstrate an in-depth understanding of fundamental physicochemical principles with the ability to apply that knowledge to the solution of theoretical & practical problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have developed an awareness & understanding of scientific and ethical issues where chemistry relates to other disciplines, and an appreciation of the impact of chemistry in the modern world (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have substantially developed advanced experimental skills including chemical synthesis, analysis & operation of modern instrumentation, and data analysis skills with the ability to interpret experimental information & infer appropriate conclusions (by requiring of no less than 100 hours of laboratory classes in the curriculum)

PLO 5: demonstrate problem-solving skills, critical thinking, creativity & effective written & oral communication skills, and to co-operate with other people & participate as an effective team member (by means of coursework, laboratory-based learning, group project & presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain experience in working in the real-life industrial or research environment, and enhance their initiative, interpersonal skills, time management skills & project organization skills (by arrangement for student internship opportunities or directed studies of no less than three weeks with chemistry-related companies or research laboratories)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Chemistry

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)
   CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6)

   Disciplinary Core Course (30 credits)
   CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3443 Organic chemistry laboratory (6)
   CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits of any level 4 Chemistry (CHEM4XXX) courses. The current list include courses in List A.
   List A
   CHEM4142 Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
   CHEM4143 Interfacial science and technology (6)
   CHEM4144 Advanced materials (6)
   CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
   CHEM4147 Supramolecular chemistry (6)
   CHEM4241 Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
   CHEM4242 Analytical chemistry (6)
   CHEM4341 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4342 Organometallic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4443 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
   CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)
3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- CHEM3999 Directed studies in chemistry (6)
- CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research (6)
- CHEM4911 Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6)
- CHEM4966 Chemistry internship (6)
- CHEM4999 Chemistry project (12)

**Notes:**
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Chemistry
Offered to students: admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Major in Chemistry aims to provide students with a solid training in major areas of chemistry. The curriculum includes core courses covering topics in physical, inorganic, organic, and analytical chemistry. A wide selection of elective courses in chemical biology, chemical analysis, computational chemistry, environmental chemistry, industrial chemistry, interfacial science, material, and medicinal chemistry, is also available to provide students with knowledge and training to help them meet the dynamic and ever-changing challenges in science and technology. Graduates of the Chemistry Major programme will be proficient in the principles and experimental skills of chemistry. The programme will also equip students with transferable skills in both theoretical and experimental investigations in sciences that are crucial for their future careers in a knowledge-based economy. It is expected that our graduates will be able to meet local and regional requirements in the industrial, commercial, government or education sectors and will become future leaders of these sectors.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate an understanding across a wide range of topics in chemistry, from basic areas such as analytical, inorganic, organic & physical chemistry, to advanced topics related to current research in chemistry (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: demonstrate an in-depth understanding of fundamental physicochemical principles with the ability to apply that knowledge to the solution of theoretical & practical problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have developed an awareness & understanding of scientific and ethical issues where chemistry relates to other disciplines, and an appreciation of the impact of chemistry in the modern world (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have substantially developed advanced experimental skills including chemical synthesis, analysis & operation of modern instrumentation, and data analysis skills with the ability to interpret experimental information & infer appropriate conclusions (by requiring of no less than 100 hours of laboratory classes in the curriculum)

PLO 5: demonstrate problem-solving skills, critical thinking, creativity & effective written & oral communication skills, and to co-operate with other people & participate as an effective team member (by means of coursework, laboratory-based learning, group project & presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain experience in working in the real-life industrial or research environment, and enhance their initiative, interpersonal skills, time management skills & project organization skills (by arrangement for student internship opportunities or directed studies of no less than three weeks with chemistry-related companies or research laboratories)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Chemistry

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)
   CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Course (30 credits)
   CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3443 Organic chemistry laboratory (6)
   CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits of any level 4 Chemistry (CHEM4XXX) courses. The current list include courses in List A.
   List A
   CHEM4142 Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
   CHEM4143 Interfacial science and technology (6)
   CHEM4144 Advanced materials (6)
   CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
   CHEM4147 Supramolecular chemistry (6)
   CHEM4241 Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
   CHEM4242 Analytical chemistry (6)
   CHEM4341 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4342 Organometallic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4443 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
   CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)
CHEM4542 Computational chemistry (6)
CHEM4543 Advanced physical chemistry (6)
CHEM4544 Electrochemical science and technology (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   CHEM3999 Directed studies in chemistry (6)
   CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research (6)
   CHEM4911 Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6)
   CHEM4966 Chemistry internship (6)
   CHEM4999 Chemistry project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Chemistry
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Major in Chemistry aims to provide students with a solid training in major areas of chemistry. The curriculum includes core courses covering topics in physical, inorganic, organic, and analytical chemistry. A wide selection of elective courses in chemical biology, chemical analysis, computational chemistry, environmental chemistry, industrial chemistry, interfacial science, material, and medicinal chemistry, is also available to provide students with knowledge and training to help them meet the dynamic and ever-changing challenges in science and technology. Graduates of the Chemistry Major programme will be proficient in the principles and experimental skills of chemistry. The programme will also equip students with transferable skills in both theoretical and experimental investigations in sciences that are crucial for their future careers in a knowledge-based economy. It is expected that our graduates will be able to meet local and regional requirements in the industrial, commercial, government or education sectors and will become future leaders of these sectors.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate an understanding across a wide range of topics in chemistry, from basic areas such as analytical, inorganic, organic & physical chemistry, to advanced topics related to current research in chemistry (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: demonstrate an in-depth understanding of fundamental physicochemical principles with the ability to apply that knowledge to the solution of theoretical & practical problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have developed an awareness & understanding of scientific and ethical issues where chemistry relates to other disciplines, and an appreciation of the impact of chemistry in the modern world (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have substantially developed advanced experimental skills including chemical synthesis, analysis & operation of modern instrumentation, and data analysis skills with the ability to interpret experimental information & infer appropriate conclusions (by requiring of no less than 100 hours of laboratory classes in the curriculum)

PLO 5: demonstrate problem-solving skills, critical thinking, creativity & effective written & oral communication skills, and to co-operate with other people & participate as an effective team member (by means of coursework, laboratory-based learning, group project & presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain experience in working in the real-life industrial or research environment, and enhance their initiative, interpersonal skills, time management skills & project organization skills (by arrangement for student internship opportunities or directed studies of no less than three weeks with chemistry-related companies or research laboratories)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Chemistry

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   - CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   - CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)
   - CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   - CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
   - CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
   - CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   - CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   - CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
   - CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   - CHEM3443 Organic chemistry laboratory (6)
   - CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   - CHEM3442 Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
   - CHEM3443 Interfacial science and technology (6)
   - CHEM3444 Advanced materials (6)
   - CHEM3445 Medicinal chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3446 Supramolecular chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3447 Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
   - CHEM3448 Analytical chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3449 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3450 Organometallic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3451 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3452 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
   - CHEM3453 Chemical biology (6)

At least 12 credits of any level 4 Chemistry (CHEM4XXX) courses. The current list include courses in List A.

List A
   - CHEM4142 Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
   - CHEM4143 Interfacial science and technology (6)
   - CHEM4144 Advanced materials (6)
   - CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4146 Supramolecular chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4147 Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
   - CHEM4148 Analytical chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4149 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4150 Organometallic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4151 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4152 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
   - CHEM4153 Chemical biology (6)
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4910</td>
<td>Chemistry literacy and research (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4911</td>
<td>Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4966</td>
<td>Chemistry internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4999</td>
<td>Chemistry project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Chemistry
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

**Objectives:**
The Major in Chemistry aims to provide students with a solid training in major areas of chemistry. The curriculum includes core courses covering topics in physical, inorganic, organic, and analytical chemistry. A wide selection of elective courses in chemical biology, chemical analysis, computational chemistry, environmental chemistry, industrial chemistry, interfacial science, material, and medicinal chemistry, is also available to provide students with knowledge and training to help them meet the dynamic and ever-changing challenges in science and technology. Graduates of the Chemistry Major programme will be proficient in the principles and experimental skills of chemistry. The programme will also equip students with transferable skills in both theoretical and experimental investigations in sciences that are crucial for their future careers in a knowledge-based economy. It is expected that our graduates will be able to meet local and regional requirements in the industrial, commercial, government or education sectors and will become future leaders of these sectors.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

1. **PLO 1**: demonstrate an understanding across a wide range of topics in chemistry, from basic areas such as analytical, inorganic, organic & physical chemistry, to advanced topics related to current research in chemistry (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)
2. **PLO 2**: demonstrate an in-depth understanding of fundamental physicochemical principles with the ability to apply that knowledge to the solution of theoretical & practical problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)
3. **PLO 3**: have developed an awareness & understanding of scientific and ethical issues where chemistry relates to other disciplines, and an appreciation of the impact of chemistry in the modern world (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)
4. **PLO 4**: have substantially developed advanced experimental skills including chemical synthesis, analysis & operation of modern instrumentation, and data analysis skills with the ability to interpret experimental information & infer appropriate conclusions (by requiring of no less than 100 hours of laboratory classes in the curriculum)
5. **PLO 5**: demonstrate problem-solving skills, critical thinking, creativity & effective written & oral communication skills, and to co-operate with other people & participate as an effective team member (by means of coursework, laboratory-based learning, group project & presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
6. **PLO 6**: gain experience in working in the real-life industrial or research environment, and enhance their initiative, interpersonal skills, time management skills & project organization skills (by arrangement for student internship opportunities or directed studies of no less than three weeks with chemistry-related companies or research laboratories)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Chemistry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Chemistry Core Courses (30 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1042</td>
<td>General chemistry I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2241</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2341</td>
<td>Inorganic chemistry I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2441</td>
<td>Organic chemistry I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2541</td>
<td>Introductory physical chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits selected from the following 18 credits of courses in two different areas in List A:

**List A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3146</td>
<td>Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3241</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3341</td>
<td>Inorganic chemistry II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3441</td>
<td>Organic chemistry II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3541</td>
<td>Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4341</td>
<td>Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4441</td>
<td>Advanced organic chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4443</td>
<td>Integrated organic synthesis (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either CHEM4443 or CHEM4441 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

**Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
At least 6 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level, excluding CHEM3999
Directed studies in chemistry, CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research, CHEM4911 Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia, CHEM4966 Chemistry internship and CHEM4999 Chemistry project), subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current list include courses in List B and those course not selected to fulfill the requirements in List A.

**List B**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3141</td>
<td>Environmental chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3142</td>
<td>Chemical process industries and analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3143</td>
<td>Introduction to materials chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3242</td>
<td>Food and water analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3342</td>
<td>Bioinorganic chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3442</td>
<td>Organic chemistry of biomolecules</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3443</td>
<td>Organic chemistry laboratory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3445</td>
<td>Integrated laboratory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4142</td>
<td>Symmetry, group theory and applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4143</td>
<td>Interfacial science and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4144</td>
<td>Advanced materials</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4145</td>
<td>Medicinal chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4147</td>
<td>Supramolecular chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4241</td>
<td>Modern chemical instrumentation and applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4342</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4542</td>
<td>Computational chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4543</td>
<td>Advanced physical chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4544</td>
<td>Electrochemical science and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in chemistry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4910</td>
<td>Chemistry literacy and research</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4911</td>
<td>Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4966</td>
<td>Chemistry internship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4999</td>
<td>Chemistry project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

6. CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques is not offered from 2016-17. Students should consult the course selection advisers for course replacement.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Science Majors

Major Title
Major in Chemistry

Offered to students: 2013
admitted to Year 1 in

Objectives:
The Major in Chemistry aims to provide students with a solid training in major areas of chemistry. The curriculum includes core courses covering topics in physical, inorganic, organic, and analytical chemistry. A wide selection of elective courses in chemical biology, chemical analysis, computational chemistry, environmental chemistry, industrial chemistry, interfacial science, material, and medicinal chemistry, is also available to provide students with knowledge and training to help them meet the dynamic and ever-changing challenges in science and technology. Graduates of the Chemistry Major programme will be proficient in the principles and experimental skills of chemistry. The programme will also equip students with transferable skills in both theoretical and experimental investigations in sciences that are crucial for their future careers in a knowledge-based economy. It is expected that our graduates will be able to meet local and regional requirements in the industrial, commercial, government or education sectors and will become future leaders of these sectors.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate an understanding across a wide range of topics in chemistry, from basic areas such as analytical, inorganic, organic & physical chemistry, to advanced topics related to current research in chemistry (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: demonstrate an in-depth understanding of fundamental physicochemical principles with the ability to apply that knowledge to the solution of theoretical & practical problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have developed an awareness & understanding of scientific and ethical issues where chemistry relates to other disciplines, and an appreciation of the impact of chemistry in the modern world (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have substantially developed advanced experimental skills including chemical synthesis, analysis & operation of modern instrumentation, and data analysis skills with the ability to interpret experimental information & infer appropriate conclusions (by requiring of no less than 100 hours of laboratory classes in the curriculum)

PLO 5: demonstrate problem-solving skills, critical thinking, creativity & effective written & oral communication skills, and to co-operate with other people & participate as an effective team member (by means of coursework, laboratory-based learning, group project & presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain experience in working in the real-life industrial or research environment, and enhance their initiative, interpersonal skills, time management skills & project organization skills (by arrangement for student internship opportunities or directed studies of no less than three weeks with chemistry-related companies or research laboratories)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Chemistry

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6) [ previous title: General chemistry (6) ]
   CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6) [ previous title: Physical chemistry I (6) ]

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)
   CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6) [ previous title: Physical chemistry II: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6) ]

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following 18 credits of courses in two different areas in List A:
   List A
   CHEM3542 Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
   CHEM4341 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4443 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
   CHEM4541 Physical chemistry III: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)

Take either CHEM3542 or CHEM4541 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
Take either CHEM4443 or CHEM4441 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
Take either CHEM4443 or CHEM4441 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
Take either CHEM3542 or CHEM4541 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
At least 6 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level, excluding CHEM3999
Directed studies in chemistry, CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research, CHEM4911 Capstone experience for
chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia, CHEM4966 Chemistry internship and CHEM4999 Chemistry project), subject to
pre-requisite requirements. The current list include courses in List B and those courses not selected to fulfill the
requirements in List A.

List B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3141</td>
<td>Environmental chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3142</td>
<td>Chemical process industries and analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3143</td>
<td>Introduction to materials chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3242</td>
<td>Food and water analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3342</td>
<td>Bioinorganic chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3442</td>
<td>Organic chemistry of biomolecules</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3443</td>
<td>Organic chemistry laboratory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3445</td>
<td>Integrated laboratory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4142</td>
<td>Symmetry, group theory and applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4143</td>
<td>Interfacial science and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4144</td>
<td>Advanced materials</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4145</td>
<td>Medicinal chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4147</td>
<td>Supramolecular chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4241</td>
<td>Modern chemical instrumentation and applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4342</td>
<td>Organometallic chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4542</td>
<td>Computational chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4543</td>
<td>Advanced physical chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4544</td>
<td>Electrochemical science and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4910</td>
<td>Chemistry literacy and research</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4911</td>
<td>Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4966</td>
<td>Chemistry internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4999</td>
<td>Chemistry project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

6. CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques is not offered from 2016-17. Students should consult the course selection advisers for course replacement.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Science Majors

Major Title: Major in Chemistry
Offered to students: 2012
admitted to Year 1 in

Objectives:
The Major in Chemistry aims to provide students with a solid training in major areas of chemistry. The curriculum includes core courses covering topics in physical, inorganic, organic, and analytical chemistry. A wide selection of elective courses in chemical biology, chemical analysis, computational chemistry, environmental chemistry, industrial chemistry, interfacial science, material, and medicinal chemistry, is also available to provide students with knowledge and training to help them meet the dynamic and ever-changing challenges in science and technology. Graduates of the Chemistry Major programme will be proficient in the principles and experimental skills of chemistry. The programme will also equip students with transferable skills in both theoretical and experimental investigations in sciences that are crucial for their future careers in a knowledge-based economy. It is expected that our graduates will be able to meet local and regional requirements in the industrial, commercial, government or education sectors and will become future leaders of these sectors.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate an understanding across a wide range of topics in chemistry, from basic areas such as analytical, inorganic, organic & physical chemistry, to advanced topics related to current research in chemistry (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: demonstrate an in-depth understanding of fundamental physicochemical principles with the ability to apply that knowledge to the solution of theoretical & practical problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have developed an awareness & understanding of scientific and ethical issues where chemistry relates to other disciplines, and an appreciation of the impact of chemistry in the modern world (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and/or research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have substantially developed advanced experimental skills including chemical synthesis, analysis & operation of modern instrumentation, and data analysis skills with the ability to interpret experimental information & infer appropriate conclusions (by requiring of no less than 100 hours of laboratory classes in the curriculum)

PLO 5: demonstrate problem-solving skills, critical thinking, creativity & effective written & oral communication skills, and to co-operate with other people & participate as an effective team member (by means of coursework, laboratory-based learning, group project & presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain experience in working in the real-life industrial or research environment, and enhance their initiative, interpersonal skills, time management skills & project organization skills (by arrangement for student internship opportunities or directed studies of no less than three weeks with chemistry-related companies or research laboratories)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Chemistry

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6) [ previous title: General chemistry (6) ]
   CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6) [ previous title: Physical chemistry I (6) ]

   2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)
   CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6) [ previous title: Physical chemistry II: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6) ]

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following 18 credits of courses in two different areas in List A:

   CHEM3542 Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
   CHEM4341 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
   CHEM4443 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
   CHEM4541 Physical chemistry III: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
At least 6 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level, excluding CHEM3999), Directed studies in chemistry, CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research, CHEM4911 Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia, CHEM4966 Chemistry internship and CHEM4999 Chemistry project, subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current list include courses in List B and those courses not selected to fulfill the requirements in List A.

### List B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3141</td>
<td>Environmental chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3142</td>
<td>Chemical process industries and analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3143</td>
<td>Introduction to materials chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3242</td>
<td>Food and water analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3342</td>
<td>Bioinorganic chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3442</td>
<td>Organic chemistry of biomolecules</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3443</td>
<td>Organic chemistry laboratory</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3445</td>
<td>Integrated laboratory</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4142</td>
<td>Symmetry, group theory and applications</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4143</td>
<td>Interfacial science and technology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4144</td>
<td>Advanced materials</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4145</td>
<td>Medicinal chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4147</td>
<td>Supramolecular chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4241</td>
<td>Modern chemical instrumentation and applications</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4342</td>
<td>Organometallic chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4542</td>
<td>Computational chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4543</td>
<td>Advanced physical chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4544</td>
<td>Electrochemical science and technology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in chemistry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4910</td>
<td>Chemistry literacy and research</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4911</td>
<td>Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4966</td>
<td>Chemistry internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4999</td>
<td>Chemistry project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

6. CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques is not offered from 2016-17. Students should consult the course selection advisers for course replacement.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Decision Analytics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
Amidst an upsurge of digital data produced worldwide nowadays, the Major in Decision Analytics aims to equip students with the skills and expertise in leveraging and managing big data in real time, and provide them with solid training in making digitized information a strategic part of critical decision-making and resource allocation with greater clarity and accuracy. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize the fundamental concepts and methodologies of decision analytics which include but not limited to statistical analysis, data mining and data visualization, programming, data structuring, mathematical and statistical modelling and implementation of database systems. Elective courses focus on diverse and applied techniques of decision analytics in multidisciplinary fields.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: apprehend the concepts of decision analytics and its underlying theory in relation to a broad range of related disciplinary academic or professional areas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: identify and adopt appropriate analytical techniques and tools to extract and classify critical information from structured or unstructured data (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: be proficient with the design and implementation of advanced modelling techniques and database management, and offer effective recommendations for analytic initiatives and solutions (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: evaluate the quality of information from different sources in support of critical decision making, process streamlining and the optimization of resources, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate to people effectively and efficiently with professionalism and accuracy using interactive and dynamic tools to translate technical information and present collaborative and strategic ideas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in decision analytics and confidence to solve real-life problems through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
BEng in Computer Science
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Computer Science
Minor in Computer Science
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   COMP1117 Computer programming (6)
   COMP2119 Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   COMP3278 Introduction to database management systems (6)
   MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT4609 Big data analytics (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms (6)
   COMP3270 Artificial intelligence (6)
   COMP3323 Advanced database systems (6)
   COMP3407 Scientific computing (6)
   MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
   MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
   MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
### Course Offerings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3620</td>
<td>Modern nonparametric statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3621</td>
<td>Statistical data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3622</td>
<td>Data visualization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601</td>
<td>Time-series analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4602</td>
<td>Multivariate data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Capstone Requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
- STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
- STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
- STAT4799 Statistics project (12)

### Notes:

1. Students may consider taking the following courses if they wish to pursue a more focused study in the following areas:
   
   **a. Biomedical Analytics**
   - BIOL4417 'Oomics' and systems biology
   - STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research
   - STAT3608 Statistical genetics
   - STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
   - STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis

   **b. Financial and Risk Analytics**
   - STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
   - STAT4601 Time series analysis
   - Plus advanced level courses listed for the Major in Risk Management

   **c. Operational Analytics**
   - COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms
   - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics
   - MATH3901 Operations research I
   - MATH3943 Network models in operations research
   - MATH4902 Operations research II
   - STAT3606 Business logistics

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Decision Analytics

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
Amidst an upsurge of digital data produced worldwide nowadays, the Major in Decision Analytics aims to equip students with the skills and expertise in leveraging and managing big data in real time, and provide them with solid training in making digitized information a strategic part of critical decision-making and resource allocation with greater clarity and accuracy. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize the fundamental concepts and methodologies of decision analytics which include but not limited to statistical analysis, data mining and data visualization, programming, data structuring, mathematical and statistical modelling and implementation of database systems. Elective courses focus on diverse and applied techniques of decision analytics in multidisciplinary fields.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: apprehend the concepts of decision analytics and its underlying theory in relation to a broad range of related disciplinary academic or professional areas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: identify and adopt appropriate analytical techniques and tools to extract and classify critical information from structured or unstructured data (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: be proficient with the design and implementation of advanced modelling techniques and database management, and offer effective recommendations for analytic initiatives and solutions (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: evaluate the quality of information from different sources in support of critical decision making, process streamlining and the optimization of resources, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate to people effectively and efficiently with professionalism and accuracy using interactive and dynamic tools to translate technical information and present collaborative and strategic ideas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in decision analytics and confidence to solve real-life problems through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
BEng in Computer Science
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Computer Science
Minor in Computer Science
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   COMP1117 Computer programming (6)
   COMP2119 Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   COMP3278 Introduction to database management systems (6)
   MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT4609 Big data analytics (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms (6)
   COMP3270 Artificial intelligence (6)
   COMP3323 Advanced database systems (6)
   COMP3407 Scientific computing (6)
   MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
   MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
   MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3620</td>
<td>Modern nonparametric statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3621</td>
<td>Statistical data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3622</td>
<td>Data visualization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601</td>
<td>Time-series analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4602</td>
<td>Multivariate data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

**At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:**
- STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
- STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
- STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
- STAT4799 Statistics project (12)

**Notes:**
1. Students may consider taking the following courses if they wish to pursue a more focused study in the following areas:
   a. Biomedical Analytics
      - BIOL4417 'Omic's and systems biology
      - STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research
      - STAT3608 Statistical genetics
      - STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics
      - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
      - STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis
   b. Financial and Risk Analytics
      - STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming
      - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
      - STAT4601 Time series analysis
      - Plus advanced level courses listed for the Major in Risk Management
   c. Operational Analytics
      - COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms
      - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics
      - MATH3901 Operations research I
      - MATH3943 Network models in operations research
      - MATH4902 Operations research II
      - STAT3606 Business logistics

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ('disciplinary core') in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title Major in Decision Analytics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
Amidst an upsurge of digital data produced worldwide nowadays, the Major in Decision Analytics aims to equip students with the skills and expertise in leveraging and managing big data in real time, and provide them with solid training in making digitized information a strategic part of critical decision-making and resource allocation with greater clarity and accuracy. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize the fundamental concepts and methodologies of decision analytics which include but not limited to statistical analysis, data mining and data visualization, programming, data structuring, mathematical and statistical modelling and implementation of database systems. Elective courses focus on diverse and applied techniques of decision analytics in multidisciplinary fields.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: apprehend the concepts of decision analytics and its underlying theory in relation to a broad range of related disciplinary academic or professional areas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: identify and adopt appropriate analytical techniques and tools to extract and classify critical information from structured or unstructured data (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: be proficient with the design and implementation of advanced modelling techniques and database management, and offer effective recommendations for analytic initiatives and solutions (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: evaluate the quality of information from different sources in support of critical decision making, process streamlining and the optimization of resources, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate to people effectively and efficiently with professionalism and accuracy using interactive and dynamic tools to translate technical information and present collaborative and strategic ideas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in decision analytics and confidence to solve real-life problems through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
- BEng in Computer Science
- Major in Computing and Data Analytics
- Major in Computer Science
- Minor in Computer Science
- Major in Risk Management
- Major in Statistics
- Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   - SCNC1111  Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112  Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   - COMP1117  Computer programming (6)
   - COMP2119  Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6)
   - MATH1013  University mathematics II (6)
   - MATH2014  Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
   - STAT2601  Probability and statistics I (6)
   - STAT2602  Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   - COMP3278  Introduction to database management systems (6)
   - MATH3904  Introduction to optimization (6)
   - STAT3600  Linear statistical analysis (6)
   - STAT3612  Data mining (6)
   - STAT4609  Big data analytics (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - COMP3250  Design and analysis of algorithms (6)
   - COMP3270  Artificial intelligence (6)
   - COMP3323  Advanced database systems (6)
   - COMP3407  Scientific computing (6)
   - MATH3408  Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   - MATH3600  Discrete mathematics (6)
   - MATH3601  Numerical analysis (6)
   - MATH3901  Operations research I (6)
   - STAT3616  Advanced SAS programming (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3620</td>
<td>Modern nonparametric statistics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3621</td>
<td>Statistical data analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3622</td>
<td>Data visualization</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601</td>
<td>Time-series analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4602</td>
<td>Multivariate data analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3799</td>
<td>Directed studies in statistics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4710</td>
<td>Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4766</td>
<td>Statistics internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4799</td>
<td>Statistics project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Notes:

1. Students may consider taking the following courses if they wish to pursue a more focused study in the following areas:

   **a. Biomedical Analytics**
   - BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology
   - STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research
   - STAT3608 Statistical genetics
   - STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
   - STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis

   **b. Financial and Risk Analytics**
   - STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
   - STAT4601 Time series analysis
   - Plus advanced level courses listed for the Major in Risk Management

   **c. Operational Analytics**
   - COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms
   - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics
   - MATH3901 Operations research I
   - MATH3943 Network models in operations research
   - MATH4902 Operations research II
   - STAT3606 Business logistics

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


#### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Decision Analytics

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
Amidst an upsurge of digital data produced worldwide nowadays, the Major in Decision Analytics aims to equip students with the skills and expertise in leveraging and managing big data in real time, and provide them with solid training in making digitized information a strategic part of critical decision-making and resource allocation with greater clarity and accuracy. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize the fundamental concepts and methodologies of decision analytics which include but not limited to statistical analysis, data mining and data visualization, programming, data structuring, mathematical and statistical modelling and implementation of database systems. Elective courses focus on diverse and applied techniques of decision analytics in multidisciplinary fields.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: apprehend the concepts of decision analytics and its underlying theory in relation to a broad range of related disciplinary academic or professional areas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: identify and adopt appropriate analytical techniques and tools to extract and classify critical information from structured or unstructured data (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: be proficient with the design and implementation of advanced modelling techniques and database management, and offer effective recommendations for analytic initiatives and solutions (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: evaluate the quality of information from different sources in support of critical decision making, process streamlining and the optimization of resources, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate to people effectively and efficiently with professionalism and accuracy using interactive and dynamic tools to translate technical information and present collaborative and strategic ideas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in decision analytics and confidence to solve real-life problems through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
- BEng in Computer Science
- Major in Computing and Data Analytics
- Major in Computer Science
- Minor in Computer Science
- Major in Risk Management
- Major in Statistics
- Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
<td>Scientific method and reasoning (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
<td>Fundamentals of modern science (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMP1117</td>
<td>Computer programming (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMP2119</td>
<td>Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2014</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2601</td>
<td>Probability and statistics I (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMP3278</td>
<td>Introduction to database management systems (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904</td>
<td>Introduction to optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3600</td>
<td>Linear statistical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3612</td>
<td>Data mining (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4609</td>
<td>Big data analytics (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>COMP3250</td>
<td>Design and analysis of algorithms (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMP3270</td>
<td>Artificial intelligence (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMP3323</td>
<td>Advanced database systems (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMP3407</td>
<td>Scientific computing (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3600</td>
<td>Discrete mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601</td>
<td>Numerical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3901</td>
<td>Operations research I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3616</td>
<td>Advanced SAS programming (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
## STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)
## STAT3622 Data visualization (6)
## STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
## STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

**At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3799</td>
<td>Directed studies in statistics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4710</td>
<td>Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4766</td>
<td>Statistics internship (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4799</td>
<td>Statistics project (12)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Students may consider taking the following courses if they wish to pursue a more focused study in the following areas:
   
a. **Biomedical Analytics**
   - BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology
   - STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research
   - STAT3608 Statistical genetics
   - STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
   - STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis

b. **Financial and Risk Analytics**
   - STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
   - STAT4601 Time series analysis
   - Plus advanced level courses listed for the Major in Risk Management

   - COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms
   - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics
   - MATH3901 Operations research I
   - MATH3943 Network models in operations research
   - MATH4902 Operations research II
   - STAT3606 Business logistics

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Objectives:
Amidst an upsurge of digital data produced worldwide nowadays, the Major in Decision Analytics aims to equip students with the skills and expertise in leveraging and managing big data in real time, and provide them with solid training in making digitized information a strategic part of critical decision-making and resource allocation with greater clarity and accuracy. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize the fundamental concepts and methodologies of decision analytics which include but not limited to statistical analysis, data mining and data visualization, programming, data structuring, mathematical and statistical modelling and implementation of database systems. Elective courses focus on diverse and applied techniques of decision analytics in multidisciplinary fields.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: apprehend the concepts of decision analytics and its underlying theory in relation to a broad range of related disciplinary academic or professional areas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 2**: identify and adopt appropriate analytical techniques and tools to extract and classify critical information from structured or unstructured data (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 3**: be proficient with the design and implementation of advanced modelling techniques and database management, and offer effective recommendations for analytic initiatives and solutions (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 4**: evaluate the quality of information from different sources in support of critical decision making, process streamlining and the optimization of resources, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 5**: communicate to people effectively and efficiently with professionalism and accuracy using interactive and dynamic tools to translate technical information and present collaborative and strategic ideas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 6**: gain insights into current advances in decision analytics and confidence to solve real-life problems through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
- BEng in Computer Science
- Major in Computing and Data Analytics
- Major in Computer Science
- Minor in Computer Science
- Major in Risk Management
- Major in Statistics
- Minor in Statistics

### Required courses (96 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
- SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
- COMP1117: Computer programming (6)
- COMP2119: Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6)
- MATH1013: University mathematics II (6)
- MATH2014: Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
- STAT2601: Probability and statistics I (6)
- STAT2602: Probability and statistics II (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
- COMP3278: Introduction to database management systems (6)
- MATH3904: Introduction to optimization (6)
- STAT3600: Linear statistical analysis (6)
- STAT3612: Data mining (6)
- STAT4609: Big data analytics (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
- COMP3250: Design and analysis of algorithms (6)
- COMP3270: Artificial intelligence (6)
- COMP3323: Advanced database systems (6)
- COMP3407: Scientific computing (6)
- MATH3408: Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
- MATH3600: Discrete mathematics (6)
- MATH3601: Numerical analysis (6)
- MATH3901: Operations research I (6)
- STAT3616: Advanced SAS programming (6)
STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)
STAT3622 Data visualization (6)
STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
STAT4799 Statistics project (12)

Notes:
1. Students may consider taking the following courses if they wish to pursue a more focused study in the following areas:
   a. Biomedical Analytics
      BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology
      STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research
      STAT3608 Statistical genetics
      STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics
      STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
      STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis
   b. Financial and Risk Analytics
      STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming
      STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
      STAT4601 Time series analysis
      Plus advanced level courses listed for the Major in Risk Management
   c. Operational Analytics
      COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms
      MATH3600 Discrete mathematics
      MATH3901 Operations research I
      MATH3943 Network models in operations research
      MATH4902 Operations research II
      STAT3606 Business logistics
   2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second
      major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
      Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both
      majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses
      offered by any Faculty.
   3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second
      majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s)
      (disciplinary electives) in the second major. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc
      syllabus.
   4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in
      the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level
      course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.
   5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do
      not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.
   6. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled.
Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Decision Analytics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
Amidst an upsurge of digital data produced worldwide nowadays, the Major in Decision Analytics aims to equip students with the skills and expertise in leveraging and managing big data in real time, and provide them with solid training in making digitized information a strategic part of critical decision-making and resource allocation with greater clarity and accuracy. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize the fundamental concepts and methodologies of decision analytics which include but not limited to statistical analysis, data mining and data visualization, programming, data structuring, mathematical and statistical modelling and implementation of database systems. Elective courses focus on diverse and applied techniques of decision analytics in multidisciplinary fields.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: apprehend the concepts of decision analytics and its underlying theory in relation to a broad range of related disciplinary academic or professional areas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: identify and adopt appropriate analytical techniques and tools to extract and classify critical information from structured or unstructured data (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: be proficient with the design and implementation of advanced modelling techniques and database management, and offer effective recommendations for analytic initiatives and solutions (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: evaluate the quality of information from different sources in support of critical decision making, process streamlining and the optimization of resources, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate to people effectively and efficiently with professionalism and accuracy using interactive and dynamic tools to translate technical information and present collaborative and strategic ideas (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in decision analytics and confidence to solve real-life problems through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
BEng in Computer Science
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Computer Science
Minor in Computer Science
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
COMP1117 Computer programming (6)
COMP2119 Introduction to data structures and algorithms (6)
MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
COMP3278 Introduction to database management systems (6)
MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
STAT3612 Data mining (6)
STAT4609 Big data analytics (6)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms (6)
COMP3270 Artificial intelligence (6)
COMP3323 Advanced database systems (6)
COMP3407 Scientific computing (6)
MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
## Course Offerings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3620</td>
<td>Modern nonparametric statistics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3621</td>
<td>Statistical data analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3622</td>
<td>Data visualization</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601</td>
<td>Time-series analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4602</td>
<td>Multivariate data analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone Requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3799</td>
<td>Directed studies in statistics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4710</td>
<td>Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4766</td>
<td>Statistics internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4799</td>
<td>Statistics project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Students may consider taking the following courses if they wish to pursue a more focused study in the following areas:
   a. Biomedical Analytics
      - BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology
      - STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research
      - STAT3608 Statistical genetics
      - STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics
      - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
      - STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis
   b. Financial and Risk Analytics
      - STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming
      - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis
      - STAT4601 Time series analysis
      - Plus advanced level courses listed for the Major in Risk Management
   c. Operational Analytics
      - COMP3250 Design and analysis of algorithms
      - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics
      - MATH3901 Operations research I
      - MATH3943 Network models in operations research
      - MATH4902 Operations research II
      - STAT3606 Business logistics

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Earth System Science  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
Earth System Science seeks to understand the Earth as an integrated system, including its past, present and future behaviour, from the environments where life evolves on the surface to the interactions between the crust and its fluid envelopes (atmosphere and hydrosphere), with interests extending to the Earth's interior. Core courses in the major focus on understanding the composition, structure and processes of the solid earth, the hydrosphere and the atmosphere, and their interactions. Students will be equipped with knowledge to help manage geological resources and natural hazards. Throughout the curriculum there is consistent emphasis on transferable skills, learning through fieldwork, laboratory studies and research based classes, designed to enhance students' ability to think critically, to communicate effectively and to develop solutions to complex problems. Graduates from the major can pursue further studies in the Earth Sciences and careers in a wide variety of geoscience-related areas including resource management, hazard mitigation, soil and water conservation and teaching.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the key concepts of the Earth System components and processes (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to observe, describe, measure and analyze principal phenomena of earth processes and the interactions between different earth components (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: provide expertise to maintain geological environments and prevent severe perturbations due to resource exploitation and water disposal (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: equip with the knowledge and skills to better predict and deal with geological and related hazards such as earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis, floods and volcanic eruptions, and recognize and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: identify real life problems pertaining to the physical environment and find solutions to those problems (by means of capstone learning experience in the form of internship, field learning, and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: work with other students and possess an adequate level of communication skills (by means of group project learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)  
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   EASC1406 Introduction to the earth-life system (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)
   EASC2410 Data analysis and modeling in earth sciences (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)
   At least 36 credits selected from Lists A and B, among which at least 18 credits from List A:
   List A
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
   EASC3418 Earth surface processes (6)
   ENV3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
   List B
   EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112.
1. Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students are recommended to take additional chemistry and/or physics courses above the introductory level if they are interested in postgraduate research in Earth System Science.

6. Students are recommended to take PHYS1240 Physics by Inquiry and CHEM1041 Foundations of Chemistry if they do not have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics and Chemistry, respectively, or equivalent.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Earth System Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
Earth System Science seeks to understand the Earth as an integrated system, including its past, present and future behaviour, from the environments where life evolves on the surface to the interactions between the crust and its fluid envelopes (atmosphere and hydrosphere), with interests extending to the Earth's interior. Core courses in the major focus on understanding the composition, structure and processes of the solid earth, the hydrosphere and the atmosphere, and their interactions. Students will be equipped with knowledge to help manage geological resources and natural hazards. Throughout the curriculum there is consistent emphasis on transferable skills, learning through fieldwork, laboratory studies and research based classes, designed to enhance students' ability to think critically, to communicate effectively and to develop solutions to complex problems. Graduates from the major can pursue further studies in the Earth Sciences and careers in a wide variety of geoscience-related areas including resource management, hazard mitigation, soil and water conservation and teaching.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the key concepts of the Earth System components and processes (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to observe, describe, measure and analyze principal phenomena of earth processes and the interactions between different earth components (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: provide expertise to maintain geological environments and prevent severe perturbations due to resource exploitation and water disposal (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: equip with the knowledge and skills to better predict and deal with geological and related hazards such as earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis, floods and volcanic eruptions, and recognize and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: identify real life problems pertaining to the physical environment and find solutions to those problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: work with other students and possess an adequate level of communication skills (by means of group project learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)
   At least 36 credits selected from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:
   List A
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
   ENV5331 Environmental oceanography (6)
   List B
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV53007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC5408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC5999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students are recommended to take additional chemistry and/or physics courses above the introductory level if they are interested in postgraduate research in Earth System Science.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Earth System Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
Earth System Science seeks to understand the Earth as an integrated system, including its past, present and future behaviour, from the environments where life evolves on the surface to the interactions between the crust and its fluid envelopes (atmosphere and hydrosphere), with interests extending to the Earth’s interior. Core courses in the major focus on understanding the composition, structure and processes of the solid earth, the hydrosphere and the atmosphere, and their interactions. Students will be equipped with knowledge to help manage geological resources and natural hazards. Throughout the curriculum there is consistent emphasis on transferable skills, learning through fieldwork, laboratory studies and research based classes, designed to enhance students’ ability to think critically, to communicate effectively and to develop solutions to complex problems. Graduates from the major can pursue further studies in the Earth Sciences and careers in a wide variety of geoscience-related areas including resource management, hazard mitigation, soil and water conservation and teaching.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the key concepts of the Earth System components and processes (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 2: have acquired the ability to observe, describe, measure and analyze principal phenomena of earth processes and the interactions between different earth components (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 3: provide expertise to maintain geological environments and prevent severe perturbations due to resource exploitation and water disposal (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 4: equip with the knowledge and skills to better predict and deal with geological and related hazards such as earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis, floods and volcanic eruptions, and recognize and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 5: identify real life problems pertaining to the physical environment and find solutions to those problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 6: work with other students and possess an adequate level of communication skills (by means of group project learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Science Majors
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)
   At least 36 credits selected from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:
   List A
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
   ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
   List B
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENVS3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students are recommended to take additional chemistry and/or physics courses above the introductory level if they are interested in postgraduate research in Earth System Science.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Objectives:
Earth System Science seeks to understand the Earth as an integrated system, including its past, present and future behaviour, from the environments where life evolves on the surface to the interactions between the crust and its fluid envelopes (atmosphere and hydrosphere), with interests extending to the Earth's interior. Core courses in the major focus on understanding the composition, structure and processes of the solid earth, the hydrosphere and the atmosphere, and their interactions. Students will be equipped with knowledge to help manage geological resources and natural hazards. Throughout the curriculum there is consistent emphasis on transferable skills, learning through fieldwork, laboratory studies and research-based classes, designed to enhance students' ability to think critically, to communicate effectively and to develop solutions to complex problems. Graduates from the major can pursue further studies in the Earth Sciences and careers in a wide variety of geoscience-related areas including resource management, hazard mitigation, soil and water conservation and teaching.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: describe the key concepts of the Earth System components and processes (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: have acquired the ability to observe, describe, measure and analyze principal phenomena of earth processes and the interactions between different earth components (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: provide expertise to maintain geological environments and prevent severe perturbations due to resource exploitation and water disposal (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: equip with the knowledge and skills to better predict and deal with geological and related hazards such as earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis, floods and volcanic eruptions, and recognize and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: identify real life problems pertaining to the physical environment and find solutions to those problems (by means of capstone learning experience in the form of internship, field learning, and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6**: work with other students and possess an adequate level of communication skills (by means of group project learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

#### Required courses (96 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   - EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   - EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   - EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   - EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
   - EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)

   **Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)**
   - At least 36 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:
     **List A**
     - EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
     - EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
     - ENV3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
     **List B**
     - EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
     - EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
     - EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
     - EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
     - EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
     - EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
     - EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
     - EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
     - ENV3307 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
     - EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
     - EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**
   - EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)

### Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students are recommended to take additional chemistry and/or physics courses above the introductory level if they are interested in postgraduate research in Earth System Science.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Earth System Science

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
Earth System Science seeks to understand the Earth as an integrated system, including its past, present and future behaviour, from the environments where life evolves on the surface to the interactions between the crust and its fluid envelopes (atmosphere and hydrosphere), with interests extending to the Earth's interior. Core courses in the major focus on understanding the composition, structure and processes of the solid earth, the hydrosphere and the atmosphere, and their interactions. Students will be equipped with knowledge to help manage geological resources and natural hazards. Throughout the curriculum there is consistent emphasis on transferable skills, learning through fieldwork, laboratory studies and research based classes, designed to enhance students' ability to think critically, to communicate effectively and to develop solutions to complex problems. Graduates from the major can pursue further studies in the Earth Sciences and careers in a wide variety of geoscience-related areas including resource management, hazard mitigation, soil and water conservation and teaching.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the key concepts of the Earth System components and processes (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to observe, describe, measure and analyze principal phenomena of earth processes and the interactions between different earth components (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: provide expertise to maintain geological environments and prevent severe perturbations due to resource exploitation and water disposal (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: equip with the knowledge and skills to better predict and deal with geological and related hazards such as earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis, floods and volcanic eruptions, and recognize and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: identify real life problems pertaining to the physical environment and find solutions to those problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: work with other students and possess an adequate level of communication skills (by means of group project learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)
   At least 36 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:
   List A
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
   ENV53313 Environmental oceanography (6)
   List B
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV53007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students are recommended to take additional chemistry and/or physics courses above the introductory level if they are interested in postgraduate research in Earth System Science.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Earth System Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
Earth System Science seeks to understand the Earth as an integrated system, including its past, present and future behaviour, from the environments where life evolves on the surface to the interactions between the crust and its fluid envelopes (atmosphere and hydrosphere), with interests extending to the Earth's interior. Core courses in the major focus on understanding the composition, structure and processes of the solid earth, the hydrosphere and the atmosphere, and their interactions. Students will be equipped with knowledge to help manage geological resources and natural hazards. Throughout the curriculum there is consistent emphasis on transferable skills, learning through fieldwork, laboratory studies and research-based classes, designed to enhance students' ability to think critically, to communicate effectively and to develop solutions to complex problems. Graduates from the major can pursue further studies in the Earth Sciences and careers in a wide variety of geoscience-related areas including resource management, hazard mitigation, soil and water conservation and teaching.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the key concepts of the Earth System components and processes (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to observe, describe, measure and analyze principal phenomena of earth processes and the interactions between different earth components (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: provide expertise to maintain geological environments and prevent severe perturbations due to resource exploitation and water disposal (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: equip with the knowledge and skills to better predict and deal with geological and related hazards such as earthquakes, landslides, tsunamis, floods and volcanic eruptions, and recognize and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: identify real life problems pertaining to the physical environment and find solutions to those problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: work with other students and possess an adequate level of communication skills (by means of group project learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
     - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
     - EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
     - EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
     - EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
     - EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
     - EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
     - EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)**
     - At least 36 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 12 credits from List A:
       - **List A:**
         - EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
         - EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
         - ENV53313 Environmental oceanography (6)
       - **List B:**
         - EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
         - EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
         - EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
         - EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
         - EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
         - EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
         - EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
         - EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
         - ENV53007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
         - EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
         - EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   - EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112...
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students are recommended to take additional chemistry and/or physics courses above the introductory level if they are interested in postgraduate research in Earth System Science.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title** Major in Ecology & Biodiversity

**Offered to students** 2017

**admitted to Year 1 in**

**Objectives:**
This major is directed at teaching students: (1) how organisms interact with each other and their environments, (2) how species are distributed throughout the world, and (3) key threats and approaches to conserving biodiversity. Special reference is made to Hong Kong and Asia; the ways in which humans have impacted upon natural environments; and, the approaches used to manage or ameliorate those impacts. This major is based around an introductory core, which emphasizes plant and animal biology and includes a compulsory week-long residential field trip. Advanced courses in the major teach students about the ecology and biodiversity of different ecosystems (e.g. marine, terrestrial and freshwater environments) with an emphasis on field work, introduces the use of statistical and molecular techniques in ecology, and focuses on certain applied topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology, fisheries and mariculture, and biodiversity conservation. Students have an opportunity to conduct independent research in ecology and biodiversity as a final year project or a dissertation under the close supervision of an individual staff member. Apart from the fundamental knowledge and skills in understanding and managing biodiversity offered in the core courses of this major, strong emphasis is placed upon experiential learning such as overseas field expedition and work placement in the environmental sector. Biodiversity conservation requires scientific input as well as passion. Through the range of formal field-based courses as well as extra-curricular activities offered, students taking this major will have opportunities to participate in research, field conservation and education projects both locally and internationally. Assistance will be provided so that students can develop expertise in one or a few groups of plants or animals, as familiarity with species identification is an essential prerequisite for biodiversity scientists or conservation biologists.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and appreciate the major living and non-living components of the regional and global environment, and how they interact; identify threats to them; and know how these threats can be mitigated (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and appreciate the variety of life in Hong Kong's and Southeast Asia's natural habitats, become equipped to understand, study, manage and protect that diversity, and appraise the related moral and ethical issues (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have sufficient experience of the basic techniques of modern ecological science and prepare to learn new ones for specific tasks (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: use IT tools appropriately, and access and evaluate materials from libraries, archives and the Internet (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: demonstrate original, independent and critical thinking, with mastery of a range of communication skills (by means of coursework, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: have the skill and knowledge to pursue postgraduate ecological research or to develop a career in nature conservation and environmental education, especially in Hong Kong and southern China (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 7: be motivated and sufficiently equipped to apply the knowledge solve local, regional and global environmental problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes, capstone learning and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
- SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
- BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
- BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
- BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
- BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
- BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
- ENVIS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
- BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
- BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
- BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)
- BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
- BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
- BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)
- BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
- BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
- BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (5)
- BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3419</td>
<td>Insect ecology: the little things that run the world</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301</td>
<td>Fish and fisheries</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4304</td>
<td>Ecosystem functioning and services</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture: business and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4861</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVSS3019</td>
<td>Urban ecology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVSS3020</td>
<td>Global change ecology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

**At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3991</td>
<td>Directed studies in ecology &amp; biodiversity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4911</td>
<td>Conservation science in practice</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4991</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

**Objectives:**
This major is directed at teaching students: (1) how organisms interact with each other and their environments, (2) how species are distributed throughout the world, and (3) key threats and approaches to conserving biodiversity. Special reference is made to Hong Kong and Asia; the ways in which humans have impacted upon natural environments; and, the approaches used to manage or ameliorate those impacts. This major is based around an introductory core, which emphasizes plant and animal biology and includes a compulsory week-long residential field trip. Advanced courses in the major teach students about the ecology and biodiversity of different ecosystems (e.g. marine, terrestrial and freshwater environments) with an emphasis on field work, introduces the use of statistical and molecular techniques in ecology, and focuses on certain applied topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology, fisheries and mariculture, and biodiversity conservation. Students have an opportunity to conduct independent research in ecology and biodiversity as a final year project or a dissertation under the close supervision of an individual staff member. Apart from the fundamental knowledge and skills in understanding and managing biodiversity offered in the core courses of this major, strong emphasis is placed upon experiential learning such as overseas field expedition and work placement in the environmental sector. Biodiversity conservation requires scientific input as well as passion. Through the range of formal field-based courses as well as extra-curricular activities offered, students taking this major will have opportunities to participate in research, field conservation and education projects both locally and internationally. Assistance will be provided so that students can develop expertise in one or a few groups of plants or animals, as familiarity with species identification is an essential prerequisite for biodiversity scientists or conservation biologists.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** understand and appreciate the major living and non-living components of the regional and global environment, and how they interact; identify threats to them; and know how these threats can be mitigated (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** understand and appreciate the variety of life in Hong Kong’s and Southeast Asia’s natural habitats, become equipped to understand, study, manage and protect that diversity, and appraise the related moral and ethical issues (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** have sufficient experience of the basic techniques of modern ecological science and prepare to learn new ones for specific tasks (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4:** use IT tools appropriately, and access and evaluate materials from libraries, archives and the Internet (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5:** demonstrate original, independent and critical thinking, with mastery of a range of communication skills (by means of coursework, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6:** have the skill and knowledge to pursue postgraduate ecological research or to develop a career in nature conservation and environmental education, especially in Hong Kong and southern China (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and research-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 7:** be motivated and sufficiently equipped to apply the knowledge solve local, regional and global environmental problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes, capstone learning and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

### Required courses (96 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV/S2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3302</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3303</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3109</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3301</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3305</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3313</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3314</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3319</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3320</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[previous title: Terrestrial ecology (6) ]
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3322</td>
<td>Marine invertebrate zoology (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3505 or BIOL4505 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3505 and BIOL4505 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3328</td>
<td>Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3419</td>
<td>Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture and restoration (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301</td>
<td>Fish and fisheries (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4304</td>
<td>Ecosystem functioning and services (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4451</td>
<td>Cetacean behaviour, ecology and conservation: field research experience (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture: business and technology (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3505 or BIOL4505 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3505 and BIOL4505 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4861</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity internship (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3019</td>
<td>Urban ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3020</td>
<td>Global change ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3991</td>
<td>Directed studies in ecology &amp; biodiversity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4911</td>
<td>Conservation science in practice (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4921</td>
<td>Animal behaviour and behavioural ecology: field course (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4991</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ('disciplinary core') in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Major Title

**Major in Ecology & Biodiversity**

**Offered to students** 2015

**Admitted to Year 1 in**

### Objectives:

This major is directed at teaching students: (1) how organisms interact with each other and their environments, (2) how species are distributed throughout the world, and (3) key threats and approaches to conserving biodiversity. Special reference is made to Hong Kong and Asia; the ways in which humans have impacted upon natural environments; and, the approaches used to manage or ameliorate those impacts. This major is based around an introductory core, which emphasizes plant and animal biology and includes a compulsory week-long residential field trip. Advanced courses in the major teach students about the ecology and biodiversity of different ecosystems (e.g. marine, terrestrial and freshwater environments) with an emphasis on field work, introduces the use of statistical and molecular techniques in ecology, and focuses on certain applied topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology, fisheries and mariculture, and biodiversity conservation. Students have an opportunity to conduct independent research in ecology and biodiversity as a final year project or a dissertation under the close supervision of an individual staff member. Apart from the fundamental knowledge and skills in understanding and managing biodiversity offered in the core courses of this major, strong emphasis is placed upon experiential learning such as overseas field expedition and work placement in the environmental sector. Biodiversity conservation requires scientific input as well as passion. Through the range of formal field-based courses as well as extra-curricular activities offered, students taking this major will have opportunities to participate in research, field conservation and education projects both locally and internationally. Assistance will be provided so that students can develop expertise in one or a few groups of plants or animals, as familiarity with species identification is an essential prerequisite for biodiversity scientists or conservation biologists.

### Learning Outcomes:

By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and appreciate the major living and non-living components of the regional and global environment, and how they interact; identify threats to them; and know how these threats can be mitigated (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: understand and appreciate the variety of life in Hong Kong's and Southeast Asia's natural habitats, become equipped to understand, study, manage and protect that diversity, and appraise the related moral and ethical issues (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: have sufficient experience of the basic techniques of modern ecological science and prepare to learn new ones for specific tasks (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: use IT tools appropriately, and access and evaluate materials from libraries, archives and the Internet (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: demonstrate original, independent and critical thinking, with mastery of a range of communication skills (by means of coursework, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6**: have the skill and knowledge to pursue postgraduate ecological research or to develop a career in nature conservation and environmental education, especially in Hong Kong and southern China (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and research-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 7**: be motivated and sufficiently equipped to apply the knowledge solve local, regional and global environmental problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes, capstone learning and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:

Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

### Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
     - BIOL1110: From molecules to cells (6)
     - BIOL1309: Evolutionary diversity (6)
     - BIOL2102: Biostatistics (6)
     - BIOL2103: Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
     - BIOL2306: Ecology and evolution (6)
     - ENV/S2002: Environmental data analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
     - BIOL3302: Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
     - BIOL3303: Conservation biology (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)**
     - At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3101: Animal behaviour (6)
       - BIOL3109: Environmental microbiology (6)
       - BIOL3301: Marine biology (6)
       - BIOL3303: Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
       - BIOL3313: Freshwater ecology (6)
       - BIOL3314: Plant structure and evolution (6)

Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.
BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6) [previous title: Terrestrial ecology (6)]
BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (6)
BIOL3328 Neashore marine and estuarine ecology (6)
BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)
BIOL3505 Oyster aquaculture and restoration (6) Take either BIOL3505 or BIOL4505 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3505 and BIOL4505 are mutually exclusive.

BIO4301 Fish and fisheries (6)
BIO4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)
BIO4303 Animal behaviour (6) Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.

BIO4304 Ecosystem functioning and services (6)
BIO4451 Cetacean behaviour, ecology and conservation: field research experience (6)
BIO4505 Oyster aquaculture: business and technology (6) Take either BIOL3505 or BIOL4505 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3505 and BIOL4505 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL4861 Ecology & biodiversity internship (6)
ENVS3019 Urban ecology (6)
ENVS3020 Global change ecology (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
BIOL3951 Ecology & biodiversity field course (6) Take either BIOL3951 (subclass B) or BIOL4921 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3951 (subclass B) and BIOL4921 are mutually exclusive.
BIOL3991 Directed studies in ecology & biodiversity (6)
BIOL4911 Conservation science in practice (6)
BIOL4921 Animal behaviour and behavioural ecology: field course (6) Take either BIOL3951 (subclass B) or BIOL4921 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3951 (subclass B) and BIOL4921 are mutually exclusive.
BIOL4991 Ecology & biodiversity project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Ecology & Biodiversity
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
This major is directed at teaching students: (1) how organisms interact with each other and their environments, (2) how species are distributed throughout the world, and (3) key threats and approaches to conserving biodiversity. Special reference is made to Hong Kong and Asia; the ways in which humans have impacted upon natural environments; and, the approaches used to manage or ameliorate those impacts. This major is based around an introductory core, which emphasizes plant and animal biology and includes a compulsory week-long residential field trip. Advanced courses in the major teach students about the ecology and biodiversity of different ecosystems (e.g. marine, terrestrial and freshwater environments) with an emphasis on field work, introduces the use of statistical and molecular techniques in ecology, and focuses on certain applied topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology, fisheries and mariculture, and biodiversity conservation. Students have an opportunity to conduct independent research in ecology and biodiversity as a final year project or a dissertation under the close supervision of an individual staff member. Apart from the fundamental knowledge and skills in understanding and managing biodiversity offered in the core courses of this major, strong emphasis is placed upon experiential learning such as overseas field expedition and work placement in the environmental sector. Biodiversity conservation requires scientific input as well as passion. Through the range of formal field-based courses as well as extra-curricular activities offered, students taking this major will have opportunities to participate in research, field conservation and education projects both locally and internationally. Assistance will be provided so that students can develop expertise in one or a few groups of plants or animals, as familiarity with species identification is an essential prerequisite for biodiversity scientists or conservation biologists.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1 : understand and appreciate the major living and non-living components of the regional and global environment, and how they interact; identify threats to them; and know how these threats can be mitigated (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2 : understand and appreciate the variety of life in Hong Kong's and Southeast Asia's natural habitats, become equipped to understand, study, manage and protect that diversity, and appraise the related moral and ethical issues (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3 : have sufficient experience of the basic techniques of modern ecological science and prepare to learn new ones for specific tasks (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4 : use IT tools appropriately, and access and evaluate materials from libraries, archives and the Internet (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5 : demonstrate original, independent and critical thinking, with mastery of a range of communication skills (by means of coursework, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6 : have the skill and knowledge to pursue postgraduate ecological research or to develop a career in nature conservation and environmental education, especially in Hong Kong and southern China (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 7 : be motivated and sufficiently equipped to apply the knowledge solve local, regional and global environmental problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes, capstone learning and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   ENV/S2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   BIOL3301 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)
   BIOL3102 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   BIOL3103 Conservation biology (6)
   BIOL3104 Plant structure and evolution (6)
   BIOL3105 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
   BIOL3106 Marine biology (6)
   BIOL3109 Environmental microbiology (6)
   BIOL3301 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)

   Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both.
   BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3318</td>
<td>Experimental intertidal ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3319</td>
<td>Tropical terrestrial ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3320</td>
<td>The biology of marine mammals (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3322</td>
<td>Marine invertebrate zoology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3328</td>
<td>Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3419</td>
<td>Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture and restoration (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301</td>
<td>Fish and fisheries (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4303</td>
<td>Animal behaviour (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4304</td>
<td>Ecosystem functioning and services (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4451</td>
<td>Cetacean behaviour, ecology and conservation: field research experience (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture: business and technology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4861</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV53019</td>
<td>Urban ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV53020</td>
<td>Global change ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3951</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity field course (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3991</td>
<td>Directed studies in ecology &amp; biodiversity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4911</td>
<td>Conservation science in practice (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4921</td>
<td>Animal behaviour and behavioural ecology: field course (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4991</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Objectives:
This major is directed at teaching students: (1) how organisms interact with each other and their environments, (2) how species are distributed throughout the world, and (3) key threats and approaches to conserving biodiversity. Special reference is made to Hong Kong and Asia; the ways in which humans have impacted upon natural environments; and, the approaches used to manage or ameliorate those impacts. This major is based around an introductory core, which emphasizes plant and animal biology and includes a compulsory week-long residential field trip. Advanced courses in the major teach students about the ecology and biodiversity of different ecosystems (e.g., marine, terrestrial and freshwater environments) with an emphasis on field work, introduces the use of statistical and molecular techniques in ecology, and focuses on certain applied topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology, fisheries and mariculture, and biodiversity conservation. Students have an opportunity to conduct independent research in ecology and biodiversity as a final year project or a dissertation under the close supervision of an individual staff member. Apart from the fundamental knowledge and skills in understanding and managing biodiversity offered in the core courses of this major, strong emphasis is placed upon experiential learning such as overseas field expedition and work placement in the environmental sector. Biodiversity conservation requires scientific input as well as passion. Through the range of formal field-based courses as well as extra-curricular activities offered, students taking this major will have opportunities to participate in research, field conservation and education projects both locally and internationally. Assistance will be provided so that students can develop expertise in one or a few groups of plants or animals, as familiarity with species identification is an essential prerequisite for biodiversity scientists or conservation biologists.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and appreciate the major living and non-living components of the regional and global environment, and how they interact; identify threats to them; and know how these threats can be mitigated (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and appreciate the variety of life in Hong Kong's and Southeast Asia's natural habitats, become equipped to understand, study, manage and protect that diversity, and appraise the related moral and ethical issues (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have sufficient experience of the basic techniques of modern ecological science and prepare to learn new ones for specific tasks (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: use IT tools appropriately, and access and evaluate materials from libraries, archives and the Internet (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: demonstrate original, independent and critical thinking, with mastery of a range of communication skills (by means of coursework, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 6: have the skill and knowledge to pursue postgraduate ecological research or to develop a career in nature conservation and environmental education, especially in Hong Kong and southern China (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and research-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 7: be motivated and sufficiently equipped to apply the knowledge solve local, regional and global environmental problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes, capstone learning and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)

   BIOL3109 Environmental microbiology (6)
   BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   BIOL3304 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
   BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)
   BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)

Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit Hours</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3318</td>
<td>Experimental intertidal ecology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3319</td>
<td>Tropical terrestrial ecology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3320</td>
<td>The biology of marine mammals</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3322</td>
<td>Marine invertebrate zoology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3328</td>
<td>Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3419</td>
<td>Insect ecology: the little things that run the world</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture and restoration</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture: business and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301</td>
<td>Fish and fisheries</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4303</td>
<td>Animal behaviour</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4304</td>
<td>Ecosystem functioning and services</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4451</td>
<td>Cetacean behaviour, ecology and conservation: field research experience</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture: business and technology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4861</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity internship</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3019</td>
<td>Urban ecology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3020</td>
<td>Global change ecology</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit Hours</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3951</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity field course</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3991</td>
<td>Directed studies in ecology &amp; biodiversity</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4911</td>
<td>Conservation science in practice</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4921</td>
<td>Animal behaviour and behavioural ecology: field course</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4991</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity project</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabus.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Objectives:**
This major is directed at teaching students: (1) how organisms interact with each other and their environments, (2) how species are distributed throughout the world, and (3) key threats and approaches to conserving biodiversity. Special reference is made to Hong Kong and Asia; the ways in which humans have impacted upon natural environments; and, the approaches used to manage or ameliorate those impacts. This major is based around an introductory core, which emphasizes plant and animal biology and includes a compulsory week-long residential field trip. Advanced courses in the major teach students about the ecology and biodiversity of different ecosystems (e.g. marine, terrestrial and freshwater environments) with an emphasis on field work, introduces the use of statistical and molecular techniques in ecology, and focuses on certain applied topics such as environmental impact assessment, ecotoxicology, fisheries and mariculture, and biodiversity conservation. Students have an opportunity to conduct independent research in ecology and biodiversity as a final year project or a dissertation under the close supervision of an individual staff member. Apart from the fundamental knowledge and skills in understanding and managing biodiversity offered in the core courses of this major, strong emphasis is placed upon experiential learning such as overseas field expedition and work placement in the environmental sector. Biodiversity conservation requires scientific input as well as passion. Through the range of formal field-based courses as well as extra-curricular activities offered, students taking this major will have opportunities to participate in research, field conservation and education projects both locally and internationally. Assistance will be provided so that students can develop expertise in one or a few groups of plants or animals, as familiarity with species identification is an essential prerequisite for biodiversity scientists or conservation biologists.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** understand and appreciate the major living and non-living components of the regional and global environment, and how they interact; identify threats to them; and know how these threats can be mitigated (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** understand and appreciate the variety of life in Hong Kong’s and Southeast Asia’s natural habitats, become equipped to understand, study, manage and protect that diversity, and appraise the related moral and ethical issues (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** have sufficient experience of the basic techniques of modern ecological science and prepare to learn new ones for specific tasks (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4:** use IT tools appropriately, and access and evaluate materials from libraries, archives and the Internet (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5:** demonstrate original, independent and critical thinking, with mastery of a range of communication skills (by means of coursework, project-based and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6:** have the skill and knowledge to pursue postgraduate ecological research or to develop a career in nature conservation and environmental education, especially in Hong Kong and southern China (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and research-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 7:** be motivated and sufficiently equipped to apply the knowledge solve local, regional and global environmental problems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes, capstone learning and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
     - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
     - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
     - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
     - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
     - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
     - BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
     - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
       
   [previous title: Conservation ecology (6)]
   - **Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)**
     - At least 36 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)
       - BIOL3109 Environmental microbiology (6)
       - BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
       - BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
       - BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)
       - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
       - BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)

Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3319</td>
<td>Tropical terrestrial ecology (6)</td>
<td>[previous title: Terrestrial ecology (6)]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3320</td>
<td>The biology of marine mammals (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3322</td>
<td>Marine invertebrate zoology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3328</td>
<td>Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3419</td>
<td>Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture and restoration (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3505 or BIOL4505 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3505 and BIOL4505 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301</td>
<td>Fish and fisheries (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4303</td>
<td>Animal behaviour (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4304</td>
<td>Ecosystem functioning and services (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4451</td>
<td>Cetacean behaviour, ecology and conservation: field research experience (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4505</td>
<td>Oyster aquaculture: business and technology (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3505 or BIOL4505 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3505 and BIOL4505 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4861</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity internship (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3019</td>
<td>Urban ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3020</td>
<td>Global change ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3951</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity field course (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3951 (subclass B) or BIOL4921 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3951 (subclass B) and BIOL4921 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3991</td>
<td>Directed studies in ecology &amp; biodiversity (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4911</td>
<td>Conservation science in practice (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3951 (subclass B) or BIOL4921 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3951 (subclass B) and BIOL4921 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4921</td>
<td>Animal behaviour and behavioural ecology: field course (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4991</td>
<td>Ecology &amp; biodiversity project (12)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Environmental Science

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Major in Environmental Science aims to provide students with a strong scientific and technological background for understanding and addressing the environmental issues faced by humankind. This includes a flexible teaching and learning programme so that students can explore environmental issues from a range of aspects. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge in life and environment, physical and sustainable environment, pollution, monitoring and management. Throughout the curriculum, students are encouraged to undertake their own independent study from primary and secondary sources to incorporate critical thinking, field and laboratory work, documentary and archive scholarship, as integrated elements of relevant courses. By completing the curriculum, students are expected to have enhanced their knowledge in environmental science and have improved their problem-solving ability, communication and social skills. Students will be prepared to work in industries and government agencies, where they will help manage wisely the resources for which they are responsible.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: gain an advanced level of skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods and appreciation of the related ethical issues (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Environmental Science

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)
   - ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
   - ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   - ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)
   - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   - CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
   - CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   - CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
   - BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
   - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   - CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   - CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
   - EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
   - EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
   - ENVIS3006 Environmental radiation (6)
   - ENVIS3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   - ENVIS3010 Sustainable energy and environment (6)
   - ENVIS3019 Urban ecology (6)
   - ENVIS3020 Global change ecology (6)

May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3042</td>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3313</td>
<td>Environmental oceanography</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3611</td>
<td>Computer-aided data analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- ENVS3999  Directed studies in environmental science (6)
- ENVS4955  Environmental science in practice (6)
- ENVS4966  Environmental science internship (6)
- ENVS4999  Environmental science project (12)

Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Environmental Science

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Major in Environmental Science aims to provide students with a strong scientific and technological background for understanding and addressing the environmental issues faced by humankind. This includes a flexible teaching and learning programme so that students can explore environmental issues from a range of aspects. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge in life and environment, physical and sustainable environment, pollution, monitoring and management. Throughout the curriculum, students are encouraged to undertake their own independent study from primary and secondary sources to incorporate critical thinking, field and laboratory work, documentary and archive scholarship, as integrated elements of relevant courses. By completing the curriculum, students are expected to have enhanced their knowledge in environmental science and have improved their problem-solving ability, communication and social skills. Students will be prepared to work in industries and government agencies, where they will help manage wisely the resources for which they are responsible.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: gain an advanced level of skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods and appreciation of the related ethical issues (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Environmental Science

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   - ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)
   - ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
   - ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)
   - ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
   - ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   - CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   - EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6)
   - EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   - ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
   - STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   - STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
   - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   - CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
   - CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry II (6)
   - CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   - ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)

Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)
   - CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   - EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6)
   - EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   - ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
   - STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   - STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

   May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.
ENVS3042 Pollution (6)
ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)
ENVS4110 Environmental remediation (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   - ENVS3999 Directed studies in environmental science (6)
   - ENVS4955 Environmental science in practice (6)
   - ENVS4966 Environmental science internship (6)
   - ENVS4999 Environmental science project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Environmental Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Major in Environmental Science aims to provide students with a strong scientific and technological background for understanding and addressing the environmental issues faced by humankind. This includes a flexible teaching and learning programme so that students can explore environmental issues from a range of aspects. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge in life and environment, physical and sustainable environment, pollution, monitoring and management. Throughout the curriculum, students are encouraged to undertake their own independent study from primary and secondary sources to incorporate critical thinking, field and laboratory work, documentary and archive scholarship, as integrated elements of relevant courses. By completing the curriculum, students are expected to have enhanced their knowledge in environmental science and have improved their problem-solving ability, communication and social skills. Students will be prepared to work in industries and government agencies, where they will help manage wisely the resources for which they are responsible.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: gain an advanced level of skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods and appreciation of the related ethical issues (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Environmental Science

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   - Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
     - ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)
     - ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
     - ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)
   - Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   - Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
     - ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)
   - Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)

May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.
May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

(156)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3042</td>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3313</td>
<td>Environmental oceanography</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3611</td>
<td>Computer-aided data analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

*At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in environmental science</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4955</td>
<td>Environmental science in practice</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4966</td>
<td>Environmental science internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4999</td>
<td>Environmental science project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Major in Environmental Science

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

### Objectives:

The Major in Environmental Science aims to provide students with a strong scientific and technological background for understanding and addressing the environmental issues faced by humankind. This includes a flexible teaching and learning programme so that students can explore environmental issues from a range of aspects. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge in life and environment, physical and sustainable environment, pollution, monitoring and management. Throughout the curriculum, students are encouraged to undertake their own independent study from primary and secondary sources to incorporate critical thinking, field and laboratory work, documentary and archive scholarship, as integrated elements of relevant courses. By completing the curriculum, students are expected to have enhanced their knowledge in environmental science and have improved their problem-solving ability, communication and social skills. Students will be prepared to work in industries and government agencies, where they will help manage wisely the resources for which they are responsible.

### Learning Outcomes:

By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: gain an advanced level of skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods and appreciation of the related ethical issues (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:

Minor in Environmental Science

### Required courses (96 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
- **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
  - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
  - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

#### 2.Advanced level courses (42 credits)
- **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
  - ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)

- **Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)**
  - At least 36 credits selected from the following courses:
    - BIOL1201 Biostatistics (6)
    - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
    - CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
    - CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
    - CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
  - May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both.

### Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)

- **At least 36 credits selected from the following courses:**
  - BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
  - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
  - CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
  - CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
  - CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
  - EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
  - EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
  - ENVSS3006 Environmental radiation (6)
  - ENVSS3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
  - ENVSS3010 Sustainable energy and environment (6)
  - ENVSS3019 Urban ecology (6)
  - ENVSS3020 Global change ecology (6)
### Science Majors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3042</td>
<td>Pollution (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3313</td>
<td>Environmental oceanography (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3611</td>
<td>Computer-aided data analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- ENVS3999 Directed studies in environmental science (6)
- ENVS4955 Environmental science in practice (6)
- ENVS4966 Environmental science internship (6)
- ENVS4999 Environmental science project (12)

### Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Environmental Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Major in Environmental Science aims to provide students with a strong scientific and technological background for understanding and addressing the environmental issues faced by humankind. This includes a flexible teaching and learning programme so that students can explore environmental issues from a range of aspects. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge in life and environment, physical and sustainable environment, pollution, monitoring and management. Throughout the curriculum, students are encouraged to undertake their own independent study from primary and secondary sources to incorporate critical thinking, field and laboratory work, documentary and archive scholarship, as integrated elements of relevant courses. By completing the curriculum, students are expected to have enhanced their knowledge in environmental science and have improved their problem-solving ability, communication and social skills. Students will be prepared to work in industries and government agencies, where they will help manage wisely the resources for which they are responsible.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: gain an advanced level of skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods and appreciation of the related ethical issues (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Environmental Science

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)
   ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
   ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   At least 18 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1 & 2):
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6)
   EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   ENV1301 Environmental life science (6)
   STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
   CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)
   At least 36 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
   BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
   CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
   EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
   EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
   ENV1306 Environmental radiation (6)
   ENV1307 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   ENV13010 Sustainable energy and environment (6)
   ENV13019 Urban ecology (6)
   ENV13020 Global change ecology (6)
### Science Majors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENV3042</td>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3313</td>
<td>Environmental oceanography</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3611</td>
<td>Computer-aided data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- ENV3999 Directed studies in environmental science (6)
- ENV4955 Environmental science in practice (6)
- ENV4966 Environmental science internship (6)
- ENV4999 Environmental science project (12)

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Environmental Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Major in Environmental Science aims to provide students with a strong scientific and technological background for understanding and addressing the environmental issues faced by humankind. This includes a flexible teaching and learning programme so that students can explore environmental issues from a range of aspects. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge in life and environment, physical and sustainable environment, pollution, monitoring and management. Throughout the curriculum, students are encouraged to undertake their own independent study from primary and secondary sources to incorporate critical thinking, field and laboratory work, documentary and archive scholarship, as integrated elements of relevant courses. By completing the curriculum, students are expected to have enhanced their knowledge in environmental science and have improved their problem-solving ability, communication and social skills. Students will be prepared to work in industries and government agencies, where they will help manage wisely the resources for which they are responsible.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: gain an advanced level of skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods and appreciation of the related ethical issues (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Environmental Science

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
     - ENVS1401: Introduction to environmental science (6)
     - STAT1601: Elementary statistical methods (6)
     - STAT1603: Introductory statistics (6)
     - May take either STAT1601 or STAT1603 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

2. **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
   - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1) in List A:
     - CHEM1042: General chemistry I (6)
     - EASC1020: Introduction to climate science (6)
     - EASC1401: Blue Planet (6)
     - ENV1301: Environmental life science (6)
   - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses (Level 2) in List B:
     - BIOL212: Biostatistics (6)
     - BIOL2306: Ecology and evolution (6)
     - CHEM2041: Principles of chemistry (6)
     - CHEM2241: Analytical chemistry I (6)
     - CHEM2442: Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
     - EASC2404: Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)
     - ENV2001: Methods in environmental science (6)
     - ENV2002: Environmental data analysis (6)

3. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
     - ENVS3004: Environmental, society and economics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (36 credits)**
     - At least 36 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3110: Environmental toxicology (6)
       - BIOL3303: Conservation biology (6)
       - CHEM3141: Environmental chemistry (6)
       - CHEM324: Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
       - CHEM3242: Food and water analysis (6)
       - EASC3020: Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
       - EASC3405: Environmental remote sensing (6)
       - ENV3008: Environmental radiation (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3007</td>
<td>Natural hazards and mitigation</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3010</td>
<td>Sustainable energy and environment</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3019</td>
<td>Urban ecology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3020</td>
<td>Global change ecology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3042</td>
<td>Pollution</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3313</td>
<td>Environmental oceanography</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3611</td>
<td>Computer-aided data analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   - ENVS3999  Directed studies in environmental science (6)
   - ENVS4955  Environmental science in practice (6)
   - ENVS4966  Environmental science internship (6)
   - ENVS4999  Environmental science project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Objectives:
The Major in Food and Nutritional Science aims to offer an exciting, dynamic, and challenging environment to prepare the students for career opportunities in food and nutritional science. The goals of the programme are to provide the students with:
(a) critical knowledge and understanding of the theoretical and practical aspects of food science and technology, and nutrition and their relationship to human health; (b) critical knowledge and understanding on the relationship between food and a wide range of social, legal, technological and environmental factors; (c) a curriculum meeting the requirements for higher degree in MPhil and PhD and or the taught Master of Science degrees in the field of Food industry: Management and Marketing, Food Safety and Toxicology and the postgraduate diploma in dietetics.

The mission is to provide a progressive and effective programme that integrates theoretical and experiential learning to better prepare students for the challenges of the workplace. Throughout the curriculum, there is consistent emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory studies, internship training, research-based learning, debate and presentations, which are designed to enhance students’ critical thinking, communication and collaboration, tackling of ill-defined problems, development of individual learning objectives and self-evaluation of performance. Internship experiences can be gained in medical centers, schools, industries, government and community setting. Students graduated from this programme are prepared for diverse careers in the food industry, government or private-sector food and nutrition agencies, and scientific research laboratories, health-care and fitness facilities, hospitals, nutrition edition and communication enterprises.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand the science underpinning food and nutrition as applied to diet and health, and to commercial food production (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze controversial food related issues such as GM foods, nutritional labeling and food security (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand ethical perspectives and practice in all areas of food product development, food safety and public health nutrition, and appreciate and identify the need for ethical standards and professional codes of conduct (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: apply and disseminate scientific knowledge obtained from food, nutrition and related biosciences for the understanding of the influences of nutrition in health and disease, using a range of formats and approaches (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply independent thinking and the principles of scientific enquiry to conduct a small research project to test a food-and/or nutrition-related hypothesis (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: demonstrate communication and teamwork skills necessary to working in a multi-disciplinary environment (by means of coursework and group-project learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)
   BIOL2101 Principles of food chemistry (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry laboratory course (6)
   BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

   Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)
   BIOL3209 Food and nutrient analysis (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)
   BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)
   BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)
   BIOL3211 Nutrigenomics (6)
   BIOL3215 Principles of dietary assessment (6)
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3992 Directed studies in food & nutritional science (6)
- BIOL4913 Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis (6)
- BIOL4922 Food product development and evaluation (6)
- BIOL4962 Food & nutritional science internship (6)
- BIOL4992 Food & nutritional science project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students who wish to specialize in a certain area may choose to emphasize selection of courses from the following lists:
   (a) Food Science and Technology: BIOL3207; BIOL3209; BIOL3216; BIOL3218; BIOL4205; BIOL4208; BIOL4209; BIOL4411; BIOL4913; BIOL4922.
   (b) Nutrition and Health Science: BIOL3204; BIOL3205; BIOL3206; BIOL3207; BIOL3211; BIOL3215; BIOL3217; BIOL3218; BIOL4201; BIOL4202.

6. Students who may wish to pursue postgraduate study in dietetics are strongly advised to consult their academic and course selection advisors regarding additional courses in Physiology and Biochemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Major in Food & Nutritional Science

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

### Objectives:
The Major in Food and Nutritional Science aims to offer an exciting, dynamic, and challenging environment to prepare the students for career opportunities in food and nutritional science. The goals of the programme are to provide the students with:
1. Critical knowledge and understanding of the theoretical and practical aspects of food science and technology, and nutrition and their relationship to human health;
2. Critical knowledge and understanding on the relationship between food and a wide range of social, legal, technological, and environmental factors;
3. A curriculum meeting the requirements for higher degree in MPhil and PhD and or the taught Master of Science degrees in the field of Food industry: Management and Marketing, Food Safety and Toxicology and the postgraduate diploma in dietetics.

The mission is to provide a progressive and effective programme that integrates theoretical and experiential learning to better prepare students for the challenges of the workplace. Throughout the curriculum, there is consistent emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory studies, internship training, research-based learning, debate and presentations, which are designed to enhance students' critical thinking, communication and collaboration, tackling of ill-defined problems, development of individual learning objectives and self-evaluation of performance. Internship experiences can be gained in medical centers, schools, industries, government and community setting. Students graduated from this programme are prepared for diverse careers in the food industry, government or private-sector food and nutrition agencies, and scientific research laboratories, health-care and fitness facilities, hospitals, nutrition edition and communication enterprises.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand the science underpinning food and nutrition as applied to diet and health, and to commercial food production (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: analyze controversial food related issues such as GM foods, nutritional labeling and food security (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: understand ethical perspectives and practice in all areas of food product development, food safety and public health nutrition, and appreciate and identify the need for ethical standards and professional codes of conduct (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: apply and disseminate scientific knowledge obtained from food, nutrition and related biosciences for the understanding of the influences of nutrition in health and disease, using a range of formats and approaches (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: apply independent thinking and the principles of scientific enquiry to conduct a small research project to test a food-and/or nutrition-related hypothesis (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6**: demonstrate communication and teamwork skills necessary to working in a multi-disciplinary environment (by means of coursework and group-project learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:

**Minor in Food & Nutritional Science**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2600</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

| **2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)** |
| Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits) |
| BIOL3201 | Food chemistry (6) |
| BIOL3202 | Nutritional biochemistry (6) |
| BIOL3203 | Food microbiology (6) |

| Disciplinary Electives (24 credits) |
| At least 24 credits selected from the following courses: |
| BIOL3204 | Nutrition and the life cycle (6) |
| BIOL3205 | Human physiology (6) |
| BIOL3206 | Clinical nutrition (6) |
| BIOL3207 | Food and nutritional toxicology (6) |
| BIOL3208 | Food safety and quality management (6) |

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3209</td>
<td>Food and nutrient analysis (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
<td>Grain production and utilization (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211</td>
<td>Nutrigenomics (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3215</td>
<td>Principles of dietary assessment (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3216</td>
<td>Food waste management (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217</td>
<td>Food, environment and health (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3218</td>
<td>Food hygiene and quality control (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4201</td>
<td>Public health nutrition (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4202</td>
<td>Nutrition and sports performance (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4204</td>
<td>Diet, brain function and behavior (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4205</td>
<td>Food processing and engineering (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4207</td>
<td>Meat and dairy sciences (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4208</td>
<td>Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208; BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4209</td>
<td>Functional foods (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3992</td>
<td>Directed studies in food &amp; nutritional science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4912</td>
<td>Sensory evaluation of food (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4913</td>
<td>Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4922</td>
<td>Food product development and evaluation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4962</td>
<td>Food &amp; nutritional science internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4992</td>
<td>Food &amp; nutritional science project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students who wish to specialize in a certain area may choose to emphasize selection of courses from the following lists:
   (a) Food Science and Technology: BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3209; BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL3216; BIOL4205; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208; BIOL4209; BIOL4411; BIOL4913; BIOL4922.
   (b) Nutrition and Health Science: BIOL3204; BIOL3205; BIOL3206; BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3211; BIOL3215; BIOL3217; BIOL4201; BIOL4202.

6. Students who may wish to pursue postgraduate study in dietetics are strongly advised to consult their academic and course selection advisors regarding additional courses in Physiology and Biochemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Food & Nutritional Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Major in Food and Nutritional Science aims to offer an exciting, dynamic, and challenging environment to prepare the students for career opportunities in food and nutritional science. The goals of the programme are to provide the students with:

(a) critical knowledge and understanding of the theoretical and practical aspects of food science and technology, and nutrition and their relationship to human health;
(b) critical knowledge and understanding on the relationship between food and a wide range of social, legal, technological and environmental factors;
(c) a curriculum meeting the requirements for higher degree in MPhil and PhD and or the taught Master of Science degrees in the field of Food industry: Management and Marketing, Food Safety and Toxicology and the postgraduate diploma in dietetics.

The mission is to provide a progressive and effective programme that integrates theoretical and experiential learning to better prepare students for the challenges of the workplace. Throughout the curriculum, there is consistent emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory studies, internship training, research-based learning, debate and presentations, which are designed to enhance students’ critical thinking, communication and collaboration, tackling of ill-defined problems, development of individual learning objectives and self-evaluation of performance. Internship experiences can be gained in medical centers, schools, industries, government and community setting. Students graduated from this programme are prepared for diverse careers in the food industry, government or private-sector food and nutrition agencies, and scientific research laboratories, health-care and fitness facilities, hospitals, nutrition edition and communication enterprises.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand the science underpinning food and nutrition as applied to diet and health, and to commercial food production (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze controversial food related issues such as GM foods, nutritional labeling and food security (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand ethical perspectives and practice in all areas of food product development, food safety and public health nutrition, and appreciate and identify the need for ethical standards and professional codes of conduct (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: apply and disseminate scientific knowledge obtained from food, nutrition and related biosciences for the understanding of the influences of nutrition in health and disease, using a range of formats and approaches (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply independent thinking and the principles of scientific enquiry to conduct a small research project to test a food- and/or nutrition-related hypothesis (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: demonstrate communication and teamwork skills necessary to working in a multi-disciplinary environment (by means of coursework and group-project learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.
   BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both.

   BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   BIOL3201 Food chemistry (6)
   BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)
   BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)
   BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)
   BIOL3208 Food safety and quality management (6)

   Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both.
   BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.
Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL3209 Food and nutrient analysis (6)
BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)

Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL3211 Nutrigenomics (6)
BIOL3215 Principles of dietary assessment (6)
BIOL3216 Food waste management (6)
BIOL3217 Food, environment and health (6)
BIOL3218 Food hygiene and quality control (6)

Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL4201 Public health nutrition (6)
BIOL4202 Nutrition and sports performance (6)
BIOL4204 Diet, brain function and behavior (6)
BIOL4205 Food processing and engineering (6)
BIOL4207 Meat and dairy sciences (6)

Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL4208 Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)

Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208; BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)
BIOL4210 Food product development (6)
BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3992 Directed studies in food & nutritional science (6)
   BIOL4912 Sensory evaluation of food (6)
   BIOL4913 Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis (6)
   BIOL4922 Food product development and evaluation (6)
   BIOL4962 Food & nutritional science internship (6)
   BIOL4992 Food & nutritional science project (12)

   Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

   BIOL4922 Food product development and evaluation (6)

   Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208; BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

   BIOL4992 Food & nutritional science project (12)

Notes:
1. BIOL4210 and BIOL4922 are mutually exclusive.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students who wish to specialize in a certain area may choose to emphasize selection of courses from the following lists:
   (a) Food Science and Technology: BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3209; BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL3216; BIOL4205; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208; BIOL4209; BIOL4210 or BIOL4922; BIOL4411; BIOL4913.
   (b) Nutrition and Health Science: BIOL3204; BIOL3205; BIOL3206; BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3211; BIOL3215; BIOL3217; BIOL4201; BIOL4202.

7. Students who may wish to pursue postgraduate study in dietetics are strongly advised to consult their academic and course selection advisors regarding additional courses in Physiology and Biochemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
The Major in Food and Nutritional Science aims to offer an exciting, dynamic, and challenging environment to prepare the students for career opportunities in food and nutritional science. The goals of the programme are to provide the students with:

(a) critical knowledge and understanding of the theoretical and practical aspects of food science and technology, and nutrition and their relationship to human health;
(b) critical knowledge and understanding on the relationship between food and a wide range of social, legal, technological and environmental factors;
(c) a curriculum meeting the requirements for higher degree in MPhil and PhD and or the taught Master of Science degrees in the field of Food industry: Management and Marketing, Food Safety and Toxicology and the postgraduate diploma in dietetics.

The mission is to provide a progressive and effective programme that integrates theoretical and experiential learning to better prepare students for the challenges of the workplace. Throughout the curriculum, there is consistent emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory studies, internship training, research-based learning, debate and presentations, which are designed to enhance students’ critical thinking, communication and collaboration, tackling of ill-defined problems, development of individual learning objectives and self-evaluation of performance. Internship experiences can be gained in medical centers, schools, industries, government and community setting. Students graduated from this programme are prepared for diverse careers in the food industry, government or private-sector food and nutrition agencies, and scientific research laboratories, health-care and fitness facilities, hospitals, nutrition edition and communication enterprises.

Learning Outcomes:

By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand the science underpinning food and nutrition as applied to diet and health, and to commercial food production (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: analyze controversial food related issues such as GM foods, nutritional labeling and food security (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: understand ethical perspectives and practice in all areas of food product development, food safety and public health nutrition, and appreciate and identify the need for ethical standards and professional codes of conduct (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: apply and disseminate scientific knowledge obtained from food, nutrition and related biosciences for the understanding of the influences of nutrition in health and disease, using a range of formats and approaches (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: apply independent thinking and the principles of scientific enquiry to conduct a small research project to test a food-and/or nutrition-related hypothesis (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6**: demonstrate communication and teamwork skills necessary to working in a multi-disciplinary environment (by means of coursework and group-project learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:

Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

Required courses (96 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
     - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
     - BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)
     - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
     - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
     - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
     - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - BIOL3201 Food chemistry (6)
     - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
     - BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)
       - BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
       - BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)
       - BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)
       - BIOL3208 Food safety and quality management (6)

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3209</td>
<td>Food and nutrient analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
<td>Grain production and utilization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211</td>
<td>Nutrigenomics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3214</td>
<td>Principles of dietary assessment</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3215</td>
<td>Food waste management</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3216</td>
<td>Food, environment and health</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217</td>
<td>Food hygiene and quality control</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3201</td>
<td>Public health nutrition</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3202</td>
<td>Nutrition and sports performance</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3204</td>
<td>Diet, brain function and behavior</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3205</td>
<td>Food processing and engineering</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3207</td>
<td>Meat and dairy sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3208</td>
<td>Meat, dairy and grain sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4207</td>
<td>Functional foods</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4210</td>
<td>Food product development</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- BIOL3992 Directed studies in food & nutritional science (6)
- BIOL4912 Sensory evaluation of food (6)
- BIOL4913 Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis (6)
- BIOL4922 Food product development and evaluation (6)
- BIOL4962 Food & nutritional science internship (6)
- BIOL4992 Food & nutritional science project (12)

### Notes:

1. BIOL4210 and BIOL4922 are mutually exclusive.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students who wish to specialize in a certain area may choose to emphasize selection of courses from the following lists:
   (a) Food Science and Technology: BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3209; BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL3216; BIOL4205; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208; BIOL4209; BIOL4210 or BIOL4922; BIOL4411; BIOL4913.
   (b) Nutrition and Health Science: BIOL3204; BIOL3205; BIOL3206; BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3211; BIOL3215; BIOL3217; BIOL4201; BIOL4202.

7. Students who may wish to pursue postgraduate study in dietetics are strongly advised to consult their academic and course selection advisors regarding additional courses in Physiology and Biochemistry.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
The Major in Food and Nutritional Science aims to offer an exciting, dynamic, and challenging environment to prepare the students for career opportunities in food and nutritional science. The goals of the programme are to provide the students with:
(a) critical knowledge and understanding of the theoretical and practical aspects of food science and technology, and nutrition and their relationship to human health;
(b) critical knowledge and understanding on the relationship between food and a wide range of social, legal, technological and environmental factors;
(c) a curriculum meeting the requirements for higher degree in MPhil and PhD and or the taught Master of Science degrees in the field of Food industry: Management and Marketing, Food Safety and Toxicology and the postgraduate diploma in dietetics.

The mission is to provide a progressive and effective programme that integrates theoretical and experiential learning to better prepare students for the challenges of the workplace. Throughout the curriculum, there is consistent emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory studies, internship training, research-based learning, debate and presentations, which are designed to enhance students' critical thinking, communication and collaboration, tackling of ill-defined problems, development of individual learning objectives and self-evaluation of performance. Internship experiences can be gained in medical centers, schools, industries, government and community setting. Students graduated from this programme are prepared for diverse careers in the food industry, government or private-sector food and nutrition agencies, and scientific research laboratories, health-care and fitness facilities, hospitals, nutrition edition and communication enterprises.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1**: understand the science underpinning food and nutrition as applied to diet and health, and to commercial food production (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 2**: analyze controversial food related issues such as GM foods, nutritional labeling and food security (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 3**: understand ethical perspectives and practice in all areas of food product development, food safety and public health nutrition, and appreciate and identify the need for ethical standards and professional codes of conduct (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 4**: apply and disseminate scientific knowledge obtained from food, nutrition and related biosciences for the understanding of the influences of nutrition in health and disease, using a range of formats and approaches (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 5**: apply independent thinking and the principles of scientific enquiry to conduct a small research project to test a food-and/or nutrition-related hypothesis (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 6**: demonstrate communication and teamwork skills necessary to working in a multi-disciplinary environment (by means of coursework and group-project learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3204</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clinical nutrition (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3208</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4206</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

   - BIOL3992  Directed studies in food & nutritional science (6)
   - BIOL4912  Sensory evaluation of food (6)
   - BIOL4913  Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis (6)
   - BIOL4922  Food product development and evaluation (6)
   - BIOL4962  Food & nutritional science internship (6)
   - BIOL4992  Food & nutritional science project (12)

**Notes:**

1. BIOL4210 and BIOL4922 are mutually exclusive.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students who wish to specialize in a certain area may choose to emphasize selection of courses from the following lists:
   - (a) Food Science and Technology: BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3209; BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL3216; BIOL4205; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208; BIOL4209; BIOL4210 or BIOL4922; BIOL4411; BIOL4913.
   - (b) Nutrition and Health Science: BIOL3204; BIOL3205; BIOL3206; BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3211; BIOL3215; BIOL3217; BIOL4201; BIOL4202.

7. Students who may wish to pursue postgraduate study in dietetics are strongly advised to consult their academic and course selection advisors regarding additional courses in Physiology and Biochemistry.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Major Title

**Major in Food & Nutritional Science**

**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in** 2012

### Objectives:

The Major in Food and Nutritional Science aims to offer an exciting, dynamic, and challenging environment to prepare the students for career opportunities in food and nutritional science. The goals of the programme are to provide the students with:

(a) critical knowledge and understanding of the theoretical and practical aspects of food science and technology, and nutrition and their relationship to human health;

(b) critical knowledge and understanding on the relationship between food and a wide range of social, legal, technological and environmental factors;

(c) a curriculum meeting the requirements for higher degree in MPhil and PhD and or the taught Master of Science degrees in the field of Food industry: Management and Marketing, Food Safety and Toxicology and the postgraduate diploma in dietetics.

The mission is to provide a progressive and effective programme that integrates theoretical and experiential learning to better prepare students for the challenges of the workplace. Throughout the curriculum, there is consistent emphasis on experiential learning through laboratory studies, internship training, research-based learning, debate and presentations, which are designed to enhance students' critical thinking, communication and collaboration, tackling of ill-defined problems, development of individual learning objectives and self-evaluation of performance. Internship experiences can be gained in medical centers, schools, industries, government and community setting. Students graduated from this programme are prepared for diverse careers in the food industry, government or private-sector food and nutrition agencies, and scientific research laboratories, health-care and fitness facilities, hospitals, nutrition edition and communication enterprises.

### Learning Outcomes:

By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: Understand the science underpinning food and nutrition as applied to diet and health, and to commercial food production (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 2**: Analyze controversial food related issues such as GM foods, nutritional labeling and food security (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 3**: Understand ethical perspectives and practice in all areas of food product development, food safety and public health nutrition, and appreciate and identify the need for ethical standards and professional codes of conduct (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 4**: Apply and disseminate scientific knowledge obtained from food, nutrition and related biosciences for the understanding of the influences of nutrition in health and disease, using a range of formats and approaches (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 5**: Apply independent thinking and the principles of scientific enquiry to conduct a small research project to test a food- and/or nutrition-related hypothesis (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, laboratory-based and project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 6**: Demonstrate communication and teamwork skills necessary to working in a multi-disciplinary environment (by means of coursework and group-project learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:

**Minor in Food & Nutritional Science**

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
     - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
     - BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)
     - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
     - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
     - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
     - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
     - BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)  
       - Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 36 credits, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - BIOL3201 Food chemistry (6)
     - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
     - BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)
       - BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
       - BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)
       - BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)
       - BIOL3208 Food safety and quality management (6)
       - Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3209</td>
<td>Food and nutrient analysis (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
<td>Grain production and utilization (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211</td>
<td>Nutrigenomics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3215</td>
<td>Principles of dietary assessment (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3216</td>
<td>Food waste management (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217</td>
<td>Food, environment and health (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3218</td>
<td>Food hygiene and quality control (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4201</td>
<td>Public health nutrition (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4202</td>
<td>Nutrition and sports performance (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4204</td>
<td>Diet, brain function and behavior (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4205</td>
<td>Food processing and engineering (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4207</td>
<td>Meat and dairy sciences (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4208</td>
<td>Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)</td>
<td>Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4208 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4209</td>
<td>Functional foods (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4210</td>
<td>Food product development (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3992</td>
<td>Directed studies in food &amp; nutritional science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4912</td>
<td>Sensory evaluation of food (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4913</td>
<td>Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4922</td>
<td>Food product development and evaluation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4962</td>
<td>Food &amp; nutritional science internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4992</td>
<td>Food &amp; nutritional science project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. BIOL4210 and BIOL4922 are mutually exclusive.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students who wish to specialize in a certain area may choose to emphasize selection of courses from the following lists:
   (a) Food Science and Technology: BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3209; BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL3216; BIOL4205; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208; BIOL4209; BIOL4210 or BIOL4922; BIOL4411; BIOL4913.
   (b) Nutrition and Health Science: BIOL3204; BIOL3205; BIOL3206; BIOL3207; BIOL3208 or BIOL3218; BIOL3211; BIOL3215; BIOL3217; BIOL4201; BIOL4202.

7. Students who may wish to pursue postgraduate study in dietetics are strongly advised to consult their academic and course selection advisors regarding additional courses in Physiology and Biochemistry.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Geology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
Geology concerns with the scientific study of the Earth’s structure, processes, material and history. Geologists apply knowledge of chemistry, biology, physics and mathematics to solve Earth problems. The Geology Major aims to give students a sound foundation of the geological sciences and enable them to pursue postgraduate studies or careers in the geosciences. The curriculum emphasizes the development of knowledge and skills, and practical experience in the field. The core courses are designed to give students a well-rounded understanding of the geological disciplines including petrology, paleontology, geophysics, geochemistry, geochronology and the applications of geological knowledge to resource development, natural hazard management, and geotechnical and environmental engineering. Students who wish to become a professional geologist may take additional designated courses designed to meet the pathway for accreditation as a chartered geologist.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and apply key concepts in the conventional areas of the geosciences, covering the areas of physical geology, historical geology, mineralogy, petrology, geochemistry, geophysics, structural geology, tectonics and petrogenesis, and earth resources (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to make observation, description, measurement and analysis of common geological features in the field, conduct geological mapping as well as undertake independent geological study, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of both local and overseas residential field learning experience)

PLO 3: communicate scientific concepts and critically discuss aspects of contemporary issues pertaining to earth sciences, environments and resources (by means of capstone, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have gained some insight to the real-life industrial environment and developed connections within the geosciences profession (by means of internship opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: work with others in an effective manner and have learned to accept and appreciate different cultures (by means of group project learning, field learning experience in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2406 Geochemistry (6)
   EASC2407 Mineralogy (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   EASC3402 Petrology (6)
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3404 Structural geology (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
   EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)
   EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   EASC4407 Regional geology (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (“disciplinary core”) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses (“disciplinary core”) in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Geology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
Geology concerns with the scientific study of the Earth's structure, processes, material and history. Geologists apply knowledge of chemistry, biology, physics and mathematics to solve Earth problems. The Geology Major aims to give students a sound foundation of the geological sciences and enable them to pursue postgraduate studies or careers in the geosciences. The curriculum emphasizes the development of knowledge and skills, and practical experience in the field. The core courses are designed to give students a well-rounded understanding of the geological disciplines including petrology, paleontology, geophysics, geochemistry, geochronology and the applications of geological knowledge to resource development, natural hazard management, and geotechnical and environmental engineering. Students who wish to become a professional geologist may take additional designated courses designed to meet the pathway for accreditation as a chartered geologist.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and apply key concepts in the conventional areas of the geosciences, covering the areas of physical geology, historical geology, mineralogy, petrology, geochemistry, geophysics, structural geology, tectonics and petrogenesis, and earth resources (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to make observation, description, measurement and analysis of common geological features in the field, conduct geological mapping as well as undertake independent geological study, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of both local and overseas residential field learning experience)

PLO 3: communicate scientific concepts and critically discuss aspects of contemporary issues pertaining to earth sciences, environments and resources (by means of capstone, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have gained some insight to the real-life industrial environment and developed connections within the geosciences profession (by means of internship opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: work with others in an effective manner and have learned to accept and appreciate different cultures (by means of group project learning, field learning experience in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2406 Geochemistry (6)
   EASC2407 Mineralogy (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   EASC3402 Petrology (6)
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3404 Structural geology (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
   EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)
   EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   EASC4407 Regional geology (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Geology
Offered to students: 2015

Objectives:
Geology concerns with the scientific study of the Earth's structure, processes, material and history. Geologists apply knowledge of chemistry, biology, physics and mathematics to solve Earth problems. The Geology Major aims to give students a sound foundation of the geological sciences and enable them to pursue postgraduate studies or careers in the geosciences. The curriculum emphasizes the development of knowledge and skills, and practical experience in the field. The core courses are designed to give students a well-rounded understanding of the geological disciplines including petrology, paleontology, geophysics, geochemistry, geochronology and the applications of geological knowledge to resource development, natural hazard management, and geotechnical and environmental engineering. Students who wish to become a professional geologist may take additional designated courses designed to meet the pathway for accreditation as a chartered geologist.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and apply key concepts in the conventional areas of the geosciences, covering the areas of physical geology, historical geology, mineralogy, petrology, geochemistry, geophysics, structural geology, tectonics and petrogenesis, and earth resources (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to make observation, description, measurement and analysis of common geological features in the field, conduct geological mapping as well as undertake independent geological study, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of both local and overseas residential field learning experience)

PLO 3: communicate scientific concepts and critically discuss aspects of contemporary issues pertaining to earth sciences, environments and resources (by means of capstone, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have gained some insight to the real-life industrial environment and developed connections within the geosciences profession (by means of internship opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: work with others in an effective manner and have learned to accept and appreciate different cultures (by means of group project learning, field learning experience in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2406 Geochemistry (6)
   EASC2407 Mineralogy (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   EASC3402 Petrology (6)
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3404 Structural geology (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
   EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)
   EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   EASC4407 Regional geology (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112...
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Geology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
Geology concerns with the scientific study of the Earth's structure, processes, material and history. Geologists apply knowledge of chemistry, biology, physics and mathematics to solve Earth problems. The Geology Major aims to give students a sound foundation of the geological sciences and enable them to pursue postgraduate studies or careers in the geosciences. The curriculum emphasizes the development of knowledge and skills, and practical experience in the field. The core courses are designed to give students a well-rounded understanding of the geological disciplines including petrology, paleontology, geophysics, geochemistry, geochronology and the applications of geological knowledge to resource development, natural hazard management, and geotechnical and environmental engineering. Students who wish to become a professional geologist may take additional designated courses designed to meet the pathway for accreditation as a chartered geologist.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and apply key concepts in the conventional areas of the geosciences, covering the areas of physical geology, historical geology, mineralogy, petrology, geochemistry, geophysics, structural geology, tectonics and petrogenesis, and earth resources (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to make observation, description, measurement and analysis of common geological features in the field, conduct geological mapping as well as undertake independent geological study, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of both local and overseas residential field learning experience)

PLO 3: communicate scientific concepts and critically discuss aspects of contemporary issues pertaining to earth sciences, environments and resources (by means of capstone, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have gained some insight to the real-life industrial environment and developed connections within the geosciences profession (by means of internship opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: work with others in an effective manner and have learned to accept and appreciate different cultures (by means of group project learning, field learning experience in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2406 Geochemistry (6)
   EASC2407 Mineralogy (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   EASC3402 Petrology (6)
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3404 Structural geology (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
   EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)
   EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   EASC4407 Regional geology (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Geology  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
Geology concerns with the scientific study of the Earth’s structure, processes, material and history. Geologists apply knowledge of chemistry, biology, physics and mathematics to solve Earth problems. The Geology Major aims to give students a sound foundation of the geological sciences and enable them to pursue postgraduate studies or careers in the geosciences. The curriculum emphasizes the development of knowledge and skills, and practical experience in the field. The core courses are designed to give students a well-rounded understanding of the geological disciplines including petrology, paleontology, geophysics, geochemistry, geochronology and the applications of geological knowledge to resource development, natural hazard management, and geotechnical and environmental engineering. Students who wish to become a professional geologist may take additional designated courses designed to meet the pathway for accreditation as a chartered geologist.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and apply key concepts in the conventional areas of the geosciences, covering the areas of physical geology, historical geology, mineralogy, petrology, geochemistry, geophysics, structural geology, tectonics and petrogenesis, and earth resources (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to make observation, description, measurement and analysis of common geological features in the field, conduct geological mapping as well as undertake independent geological study, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of both local and overseas residential field learning experience)

PLO 3: communicate scientific concepts and critically discuss aspects of contemporary issues pertaining to earth sciences, environments and resources (by means of capstone, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have gained some insight to the real-life industrial environment and developed connections within the geosciences profession (by means of internship opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: work with others in an effective manner and have learned to accept and appreciate different cultures (by means of group project learning, field learning experience in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)
   EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)
   EASC2406 Geochemistry (6)
   EASC2407 Mineralogy (6)
2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   EASC3402 Petrology (6)
   EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
   EASC3404 Structural geology (6)
   EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
   EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
   EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
   EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
   EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)
   EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
   EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
   EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   ENV3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   EASC4407 Regional geology (6)
   EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Geology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
Geology concerns with the scientific study of the Earth's structure, processes, material and history. Geologists apply knowledge of chemistry, biology, physics and mathematics to solve Earth problems. The Geology Major aims to give students a sound foundation of the geological sciences and enable them to pursue postgraduate studies or careers in the geosciences. The curriculum emphasizes the development of knowledge and skills, and practical experience in the field. The core courses are designed to give students a well-rounded understanding of the geological disciplines including petrology, paleontology, geophysics, geochemistry, geochronology and the applications of geological knowledge to resource development, natural hazard management, and geotechnical and environmental engineering. Students who wish to become a professional geologist may take additional designated courses designed to meet the pathway for accreditation as a chartered geologist.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and apply key concepts in the conventional areas of the geosciences, covering the areas of physical geology, historical geology, mineralogy, petrology, geochemistry, geophysics, structural geology, tectonics and petrogenesis, and earth resources (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have acquired the ability to make observation, description, measurement and analysis of common geological features in the field, conduct geological mapping as well as undertake independent geological study, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of both local and overseas residential field learning experience)

PLO 3: communicate scientific concepts and critically discuss aspects of contemporary issues pertaining to earth sciences, environments and resources (by means of capstone, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: have gained some insight to the real-life industrial environment and developed connections within the geosciences profession (by means of internship opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: work with others in an effective manner and have learned to accept and appreciate different cultures (by means of group project learning, field learning experience in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Earth Sciences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2402 Field and laboratory methods (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2406 Geochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2407 Mineralogy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3402 Petrology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3404 Structural geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3408 Geophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4406 Earth dynamics &amp; global tectonics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3412 Earth resources (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3417 Earth through time (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4407 Regional geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112
Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics provides students with a solid and comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge and concepts in Mathematics and elective courses provide training in both pure and applied aspects of Mathematics. Throughout the curriculum there is also emphasis on experiential learning through guided studies, projects, seminars and summer internships. With the diversity of courses offered in the major, various specializations are available. These will lead to careers in a wide range of sectors including education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and present fundamental concepts in mathematics (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical theory and techniques to different areas of Sciences, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate in mathematical language and present scientific arguments (by means of coursework, seminars, guided studies and projects)

PLO 4: collaborate and work with other students in an effective manner (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

PLO 5: appreciate the beauty and power of mathematics (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)
MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
MATH2102 Linear algebra II (6)
MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)
MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)

Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), of which at least 12 credits should be from MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level, subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

List A
MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
MATH3560 Discrete mathematics (6)
MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
MATH4501 Geometry (6)
MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
MATH7224 Topics in advanced probability theory (6)
MATH7501 Topics in algebra (6)
MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)
MATH7504 Geometric topology (6)
MATH7505 Real analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
- MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
- MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
- MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics provides students with a solid and comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge and concepts in Mathematics and elective courses provide training in both pure and applied aspects of Mathematics. Throughout the curriculum there is also emphasis on experiential learning through guided studies, projects, seminars and summer internships. With the diversity of courses offered in the major, various specializations are available. These will lead to careers in a wide range of sectors including education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:
PLO 1: describe and present fundamental concepts in mathematics (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
PLO 2: apply mathematical theory and techniques to different areas of Sciences, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
PLO 3: communicate in mathematical language and present scientific arguments (by means of coursework, seminars, guided studies and projects)
PLO 4: collaborate and work with other students in an effective manner (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)
PLO 5: appreciate the beauty and power of mathematics (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
- SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
- MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
- MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)
- MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
- MATH2102 Linear algebra II (6)
- MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)
- MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
- MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
- MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
- MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
- MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
- MATH3201 Mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
- MATH3404 Differential equations (6)
- MATH3405 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
- MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
- MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
- MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
- MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
- MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
- MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
- MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
- MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
- MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
- MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
- MATH4301 Algebra II (6)
- MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
- MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
- MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)

Science Majors
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501</td>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7101</td>
<td>Intermediate complex analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201</td>
<td>Topics in geometry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202</td>
<td>Complex manifolds</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217</td>
<td>Topics in financial mathematics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219</td>
<td>Topics in applied functional analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced probability theory</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in mathematics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4910</td>
<td>Senior mathematics seminar</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4911</td>
<td>Mathematics capstone project</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4966</td>
<td>Mathematics internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4999</td>
<td>Mathematics project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics provides students with a solid and comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge and concepts in Mathematics and elective courses provide training in both pure and applied aspects of Mathematics. Throughout the curriculum there is also emphasis on experiential learning through guided studies, projects, seminars and summer internships. With the diversity of courses offered in the major, various specializations are available. These will lead to careers in a wide range of sectors including education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and present fundamental concepts in mathematics (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
PLO 2: apply mathematical theory and techniques to different areas of Sciences, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
PLO 3: communicate in mathematical language and present scientific arguments (by means of coursework, seminars, guided studies and projects)
PLO 4: collaborate and work with other students in an effective manner (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)
PLO 5: appreciate the beauty and power of mathematics (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)
   MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
   MATH2102 Linear algebra II (6)
   MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)
   MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
   MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
   MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), of which at least 12 credits should be from MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level, subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

   List A
   MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
   MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
   MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
   MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
   MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
   MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
   MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
   MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
   MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
   MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
   MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
   MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
   MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
   MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
   MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
   MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
   MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501</td>
<td>Geometry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7101</td>
<td>Intermediate complex analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201</td>
<td>Topics in geometry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202</td>
<td>Complex manifolds (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217</td>
<td>Topics in financial mathematics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219</td>
<td>Topics in applied functional analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced probability theory (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- MATH3999: Directed studies in mathematics (6)
- MATH4910: Senior mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH4911: Mathematics capstone project (6)
- MATH4966: Mathematics internship (6)
- MATH4999: Mathematics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
- Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

- Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

- Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

- Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics provides students with a solid and comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge and concepts in Mathematics and elective courses provide training in both pure and applied aspects of Mathematics. Throughout the curriculum there is also emphasis on experiential learning through guided studies, projects, seminars and summer internships. With the diversity of courses offered in the major, various specializations are available. These will lead to careers in a wide range of sectors including education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and present fundamental concepts in mathematics (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical theory and techniques to different areas of Sciences, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate in mathematical language and present scientific arguments (by means of coursework, seminars, guided studies and projects)

PLO 4: collaborate and work with other students in an effective manner (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

PLO 5: appreciate the beauty and power of mathematics (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   MATH1101 University mathematics I (6)
   MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)
   MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
   MATH2102 Linear algebra II (6)
   MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)
   MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
   MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
   MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), of which at least 12 credits should be from MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level, subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

List A
   MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
   MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
   MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
   MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
   MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
   MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
   MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
   MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
   MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
   MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
   MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
   MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
   MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
   MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
   MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
   MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
   MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501</td>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7101</td>
<td>Intermediate complex analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201</td>
<td>Topics in geometry</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202</td>
<td>Complex manifolds</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217</td>
<td>Topics in financial mathematics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219</td>
<td>Topics in applied functional analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced probability theory</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
- MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
- MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
- MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)

Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title:** Major in Mathematics  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in:** 2013

**Objectives:**  
The Major in Mathematics provides students with a solid and comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge and concepts in Mathematics and elective courses provide training in both pure and applied aspects of Mathematics. Throughout the curriculum there is also emphasis on experiential learning through guided studies, projects, seminars and summer internships. With the diversity of courses offered in the major, various specializations are available. These will lead to careers in a wide range of sectors including education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

1. **PLO 1:** describe and present fundamental concepts in mathematics (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
2. **PLO 2:** apply mathematical theory and techniques to different areas of Sciences, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
3. **PLO 3:** communicate in mathematical language and present scientific arguments (by means of coursework, seminars, guided studies and projects)
4. **PLO 4:** collaborate and work with other students in an effective manner (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)
5. **PLO 5:** appreciate the beauty and power of mathematics (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics  
Minor in Mathematics  
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**  
   **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**  
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)  
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

2. **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**  
   - MATH1103 University mathematics II (6)  
   - MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)  
   - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)  
   - MATH2102 Linear algebra II (6)  
   - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)  
   - MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)

3. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**  
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**  
   - MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)  
   - MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)  
   - MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)  
   - MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)  
   - MATH3405 Differential equations (6)  
   - MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)  
   - MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)  
   - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)  
   - MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)  
   - MATH3603 Probability theory (6)  
   - MATH3901 Operations research I (6)  
   - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)  
   - MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)  
   - MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)  
   - MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)  
   - MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)  
   - MATH4301 Algebra II (6)  
   - MATH4401 Analysis II (6)  
   - MATH4402 Functional analysis (6)  
   - MATH4403 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**  
At least 24 credits advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), of which at least 12 credits should be from MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level, subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

**List A**  
- MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)  
- MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)  
- MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)  
- MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)  
- MATH3405 Differential equations (6)  
- MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)  
- MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)  
- MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)  
- MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)  
- MATH3603 Probability theory (6)  
- MATH3901 Operations research I (6)  
- MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)  
- MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)  
- MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)  
- MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)  
- MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)  
- MATH4301 Algebra II (6)  
- MATH4401 Analysis II (6)  
- MATH4402 Functional analysis (6)  
- MATH4403 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
MATH4501 Geometry (6)
MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
MATH7224 Topics in advanced probability theory (6)
MATH7501 Topics in algebra (6)
MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)
MATH7504 Geometric topology (6)
MATH7505 Real analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ('disciplinary core') in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics provides students with a solid and comprehensive undergraduate education in the subject. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental knowledge and concepts in Mathematics and elective courses provide training in both pure and applied aspects of Mathematics. Throughout the curriculum there is also emphasis on experiential learning through guided studies, projects, seminars and summer internships. With the diversity of courses offered in the major, various specializations are available. These will lead to careers in a wide range of sectors including education, economics and finance, logistics, management, research and further studies.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: describe and present fundamental concepts in mathematics (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply mathematical theory and techniques to different areas of Sciences, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and learning activities in the major or minor curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: communicate in mathematical language and present scientific arguments (by means of coursework, seminars, guided studies and projects)
- **PLO 4**: collaborate and work with other students in an effective manner (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)
- **PLO 5**: appreciate the beauty and power of mathematics (by means of guided studies, projects and seminars)

Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Mathematics/Physics
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
- Minor in Mathematics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
     - MATH1013: University mathematics II (6)
     - MATH2012: Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)
     - MATH2101: Linear algebra I (6)
     - MATH2102: Linear algebra II (6)
     - MATH2211: Multivariable calculus (6)
     - MATH2241: Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - MATH3301: Algebra I (6)
     - MATH3401: Analysis I (6)
     - MATH3403: Functions of a complex variable (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
     - At least 24 credits advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), of which at least 12 credits should be from MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level, subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.
     - **List A**
       - MATH3001: Development of mathematical ideas (6)
       - MATH3002: Mathematics seminar (6)
       - MATH3303: Matrix theory and its applications (6)
       - MATH3304: Introduction to number theory (6)
       - MATH3405: Differential equations (6)
       - MATH3408: Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
       - MATH3541: Introduction to topology (6)
       - MATH3600: Discrete mathematics (6)
       - MATH3601: Numerical analysis (6)
       - MATH3603: Probability theory (6)
       - MATH3901: Operations research I (6)
       - MATH3904: Introduction to optimization (6)
       - MATH3905: Queueing theory and simulation (6)
       - MATH3906: Financial calculus (6)
       - MATH3911: Game theory and strategy (6)
       - MATH3943: Network models in operations research (6)
       - MATH4302: Algebra II (6)
       - MATH4402: Analysis II (6)
       - MATH4404: Functional analysis (6)
       - MATH4406: Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
       - MATH4501: Geometry (6)
MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
MATH7224 Topics in advanced probability theory (6)
MATH7501 Topics in algebra (6)
MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)
MATH7504 Geometric topology (6)
MATH7505 Real analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   - MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
   - MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
   - MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
   - MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
   - MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics/Physics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics/Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation in both physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. It covers a wide range of core areas in both disciplines which form the blocks of fundamental knowledge for further specializations, e.g., quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics, electrodynamics, linear algebra, mathematical analysis, abstract algebra, complex variables, differential equations, modern differential geometry, etc. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a broad spectrum of professional knowledge in mathematical and theoretical physics. Analytical thinking, quantitative reasoning and innovative ideas are fostered through the effective design of courses and research projects. The curriculum emphasizes experiential learning through internships, field studies and research projects supervised by experts. With the comprehensive training received, graduates are expected to be well-prepared for further studies and to pursue careers in many fields of science and engineering.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with a rigorous representation using their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle physical problems with intellectual rigor theoretically (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and assessments in the curriculum)

PLO 3: apply mathematical theory and techniques to analyze physical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:

- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Physics
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming
- Minor in Physics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)

- SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

- MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
- MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
- MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)
- PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
- PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
- PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
- PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

- MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
- MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
- MATH4501 Geometry (6)
- PHYS3330 Classical mechanics (6)
- PHYS3335 Quantum mechanics (6)
- PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)

Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)

- At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
  - PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
  - PHYS2055 Introduction to relativity (6)
  - PHYS2150 Methods in physics I (6)
  - PHYS2155 Methods in physics II (6)
  - PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
  - PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
  - PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)

- MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
- MATH4966 Mathematics Internship (6)

Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)

- At least 6 credits of advanced level Mathematics or Physics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX or PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list of courses include courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirement, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

List A
- MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
- MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
- MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
- MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
- PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
Notes:
1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. (a) Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or HKDSE Combined Science with Physics component or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry; and (b) Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

7. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title**: Major in Mathematics/Physics
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2016

**Objectives:**
The Major in Mathematics/Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation in both physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. It covers a wide range of core areas in both disciplines which form the blocks of fundamental knowledge for further specializations, e.g. quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics, electrodynamics, linear algebra, mathematical analysis, abstract algebra, complex variables, differential equations, modern differential geometry, etc. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a broad spectrum of professional knowledge in mathematical and theoretical physics. Analytical thinking, quantitative reasoning and innovative ideas are fostered through the effective design of courses and research projects. The curriculum emphasizes experiential learning through internships, field studies and research projects supervised by experts. With the comprehensive training received, graduates are expected to be well-prepared for further studies and to pursue careers in many fields of science and engineering.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and describe physical systems with a rigorous representation using their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle physical problems with intellectual rigor theoretically (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and assessments in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: apply mathematical theory and techniques to analyze physical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Physics
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming
- Minor in Physics

**Required courses (96 credits)**
1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
     - MATH1013: University mathematics II (6)
     - MATH2101: Linear algebra I (6)
     - MATH2211: Multivariable calculus (6)
     - PHYS1250: Fundamental physics (6)
     - PHYS2250: Introductory mechanics (6)
     - PHYS2255: Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
     - At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
       - PHYS1150: Problem solving in physics (6)
       - PHYS2055: Introduction to relativity (6)
       - PHYS2150: Methods in physics I (6)
       - PHYS2155: Methods in physics II (6)
       - PHYS2250: Introductory mechanics (6)
       - PHYS2255: Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
       - PHYS2260: Heat and waves (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
     - MATH3301: Algebra I (6)
     - MATH3401: Analysis I (6)
     - MATH4501: Geometry (6)
     - PHYS3350: Classical mechanics (6)
     - PHYS3351: Quantum mechanics (6)
     - PHYS4351: Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
     - At least 6 credits of advanced level Mathematics or Physics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX or PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list of courses include courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirement, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.
   - **List A**
     - MATH3001: Development of mathematical ideas (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3002</td>
<td>Mathematics seminar (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3303</td>
<td>Matrix theory and its applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3304</td>
<td>Introduction to number theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3403</td>
<td>Functions of a complex variable (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3405</td>
<td>Differential equations (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3541</td>
<td>Introduction to topology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3600</td>
<td>Discrete mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601</td>
<td>Numerical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3603</td>
<td>Probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3901</td>
<td>Operations research I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904</td>
<td>Introduction to optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3905</td>
<td>Queueing theory and simulation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906</td>
<td>Financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911</td>
<td>Game theory and strategy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3943</td>
<td>Network models in operations research (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4302</td>
<td>Algebra II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4402</td>
<td>Analysis II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4404</td>
<td>Functional analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4406</td>
<td>Introduction to partial differential equations (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4910</td>
<td>Intermediate complex analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201</td>
<td>Topics in geometry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202</td>
<td>Complex manifolds (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217</td>
<td>Topics in financial mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219</td>
<td>Topics in applied functional analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced functional analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3150</td>
<td>Theoretical physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3450</td>
<td>Electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3550</td>
<td>Statistical mechanics &amp; thermodynamics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3551</td>
<td>Introductory solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650</td>
<td>Observational astronomy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651</td>
<td>The physical universe (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3652</td>
<td>Principles of astronomy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3750</td>
<td>Laser and spectroscopy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3751</td>
<td>Physics of nanomaterials (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3850</td>
<td>Waves and optics (5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3851</td>
<td>Atomic and nuclear physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150</td>
<td>Computational physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
<td>Stellar physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
<td>Selected topics in astrophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
<td>Planetary science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
<td>Cosmology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
<td>Interstellar medium (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
<td>Stellar atmospheres (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
- MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
- MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
- MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
- PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
Notes:
1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. (a) Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or HKDSE Combined Science with Physics component or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry; and
(b) Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

7. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Offered to students: 2015  
Admitted to Year 1 in:

**Objectives:**
The Major in Mathematics/Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation in both physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. It covers a wide range of core areas in both disciplines which form the blocks of fundamental knowledge for further specializations, e.g., quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics, electrodynamics, linear algebra, mathematical analysis, abstract algebra, complex variables, differential equations, modern differential geometry, etc. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a broad spectrum of professional knowledge in mathematical and theoretical physics. Analytical thinking, quantitative reasoning and innovative ideas are fostered through the effective design of courses and research projects. The curriculum emphasizes experiential learning through internships, field studies and research projects supervised by experts. With the comprehensive training received, graduates are expected to be well-prepared for further studies and to pursue careers in many fields of science and engineering.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** identify and describe physical systems with a rigorous representation using their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle physical problems with intellectual rigor theoretically (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and assessments in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** apply mathematical theory and techniques to analyze physical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4:** communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5:** apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Physics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming
- Minor in Physics

**Required courses (96 credits)**

**1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
<td>Scientific method and reasoning</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
<td>Fundamentals of modern science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101</td>
<td>Linear algebra I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1250</td>
<td>Fundament physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2265</td>
<td>Modern physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1150</td>
<td>Problem solving in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2055</td>
<td>Introduction to relativity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2150</td>
<td>Methods in physics I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2155</td>
<td>Methods in physics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2250</td>
<td>Introductory mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2255</td>
<td>Introductory electricity and magnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2260</td>
<td>Heat and waves</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)**

**Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3301</td>
<td>Algebra I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3401</td>
<td>Analysis I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501</td>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3350</td>
<td>Classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3351</td>
<td>Quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4351</td>
<td>Advanced quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits of advanced level Mathematics or Physics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX or PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list of courses include courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirement, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

**List A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3001</td>
<td>Development of mathematical ideas</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3002</td>
<td>Mathematics seminar</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
MATH4602 Operations research II (6)
MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
MATH7224 Topics in advanced probability theory (6)
MATH7501 Topics in algebra (6)
MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)
MATH7504 Geometric topology (6)
MATH7505 Real analysis (6)
PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)
PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)
PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)
PHYS7350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)
PHYS7351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS7450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)
PHYS7550 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS7551 Graduate solid state physics (6)
PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)
PHYS7750 Nanophysics (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)
Notes:
1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (‘disciplinary core’) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. (a) Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or HKDSE Combined Science with Physics component or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry; and
(b) Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

7. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title**: Major in Mathematics/Physics  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2014

**Objectives:**
The Major in Mathematics/Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation in both physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. It covers a wide range of core areas in both disciplines which form the blocks of fundamental knowledge for further specializations, e.g., quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics, electrodynamics, linear algebra, mathematical analysis, abstract algebra, complex variables, differential equations, modern differential geometry, etc. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a broad spectrum of professional knowledge in mathematical and theoretical physics. Analytical thinking, quantitative reasoning and innovative ideas are fostered through the effective design of courses and research projects. The curriculum emphasizes experiential learning through internships, field studies and research projects supervised by experts. With the comprehensive training received, graduates are expected to be well-prepared for further studies and to pursue careers in many fields of science and engineering.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and describe physical systems with a rigorous representation using their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle physical problems with intellectual rigor theoretically (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and assessments in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: apply mathematical theory and techniques to analyze physical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Physics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming
- Minor in Physics

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses** (48 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
<td>Scientific method and reasoning</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
<td>Fundamentals of modern science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1201</td>
<td>Linear algebra I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1250</td>
<td>Fundamental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2250</td>
<td>Introductory mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2265</td>
<td>Modern physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Advanced level courses** (42 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3301</td>
<td>Algebra I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3401</td>
<td>Analysis I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501</td>
<td>Geometry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3350</td>
<td>Classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3351</td>
<td>Quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4351</td>
<td>Advanced quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits of advanced level Mathematics or Physics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX or PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list of courses include courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirement, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

**List A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3001</td>
<td>Development of mathematical ideas</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3002</td>
<td>Mathematics seminar</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3303</td>
<td>Matrix theory and its applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3304</td>
<td>Introduction to number theory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3403</td>
<td>Functions of a complex variable</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3405</td>
<td>Differential equations</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3541</td>
<td>Introduction to topology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3600</td>
<td>Discrete mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601</td>
<td>Numerical analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
MATH3905 Financial calculus (6)
MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
MATH7224 Topics in advanced probability theory (6)
MATH7501 Topics in algebra (6)
MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)
MATH7504 Geometric topology (6)
MATH7505 Real analysis (6)
PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)
PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)
PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)
PHYS7150 Graduate classical mechanics (6)
PHYS7351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS7450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)
PHYS7550 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS7551 Graduate solid state physics (6)
PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)
PHYS7750 Nanophysics (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)
PHYS4999 Physics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.
2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. (a) Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or HKDSE Combined Science with Physics component or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry; and
(b) Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics/Physics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics/Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation in both physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. It covers a wide range of core areas in both disciplines which form the blocks of fundamental knowledge for further specializations, e.g. quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics, electrodynamics, linear algebra, mathematical analysis, abstract algebra, complex variables, differential equations, modern differential geometry, etc. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a broad spectrum of professional knowledge in mathematical and theoretical physics. Analytical thinking, quantitative reasoning and innovative ideas are fostered through the effective design of courses and research projects. The curriculum emphasizes experiential learning through internships, field studies and research projects supervised by experts. With the comprehensive training received, graduates are expected to be well-prepared for further studies and to pursue careers in many fields of science and engineering.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with a rigorous representation using their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle physical problems with intellectual rigor theoretically (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and assessments in the curriculum)

PLO 3: apply mathematical theory and techniques to analyze physical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics
Major in Physics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming
Minor in Physics

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)
PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
MATH4501 Geometry (6)
PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)

Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
At least 6 credits of advanced level Mathematics or Physics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX or PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list of courses include courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirement, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

List A
MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3603</td>
<td>Probability theory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3901</td>
<td>Operations research I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904</td>
<td>Introduction to optimization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3905</td>
<td>Queueing theory and simulation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906</td>
<td>Financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911</td>
<td>Game theory and strategy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3943</td>
<td>Network models in operations research</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4302</td>
<td>Algebra II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4402</td>
<td>Analysis II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4404</td>
<td>Functional analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4406</td>
<td>Introduction to partial differential equations</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7101</td>
<td>Intermediate complex analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201</td>
<td>Topics in geometry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202</td>
<td>Complex manifolds</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217</td>
<td>Topics in financial mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219</td>
<td>Topics in applied functional analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced probability theory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3150</td>
<td>Theoretical physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3450</td>
<td>Electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3550</td>
<td>Statistical mechanics &amp; thermodynamics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3551</td>
<td>Introductory solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650</td>
<td>Observational astronomy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651</td>
<td>The physical universe</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3652</td>
<td>Principles of astronomy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3750</td>
<td>Laser and spectroscopy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3751</td>
<td>Physics of nanomaterials</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3850</td>
<td>Waves and optics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3851</td>
<td>Atomic and nuclear physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150</td>
<td>Computational physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
<td>Stellar physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
<td>Selected topics in astrophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
<td>Planetary science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
<td>Cosmology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
<td>Interstellar medium</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
<td>Stellar atmospheres</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4910</td>
<td>Senior mathematics seminar</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4911</td>
<td>Mathematics capstone project</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4966</td>
<td>Mathematics internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4999</td>
<td>Mathematics project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966</td>
<td>Physics internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999</td>
<td>Physics project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.
2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. (a) Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or HKDSE Combined Science with Physics component or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry; and (b) Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Major in Mathematics/Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation in both physics and mathematics. This major is catered especially for students interested in the more theoretical aspects of physics. It covers a wide range of core areas in both disciplines which form the blocks of fundamental knowledge for further specializations, e.g., quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics, electrodynamics, linear algebra, mathematical analysis, abstract algebra, complex variables, differential equations, modern differential geometry, etc. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a broad spectrum of professional knowledge in mathematical and theoretical physics. Analytical thinking, quantitative reasoning and innovative ideas are fostered through the effective design of courses and research projects. The curriculum emphasizes experiential learning through internships, field studies and research projects supervised by experts. With the comprehensive training received, graduates are expected to be well-prepared for further studies and to pursue careers in many fields of science and engineering.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with a rigorous representation using their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle physical problems with intellectual rigor theoretically (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and assessments in the curriculum)

PLO 3: apply mathematical theory and techniques to analyze physical problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Physics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Physics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)
PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
MATH4501 Geometry (6)
PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)

Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
At least 6 credits of advanced level Mathematics or Physics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX or PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list of courses include courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirement, but excluding MATH4966 Mathematics Internship.

List A
- MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
- MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
- MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
- MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
- MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
- MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
- MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
- MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
- MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
- MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3901</td>
<td>Operations research I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904</td>
<td>Introduction to optimization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3905</td>
<td>Queueing theory and simulation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906</td>
<td>Financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911</td>
<td>Game theory and strategy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3943</td>
<td>Network models in operations research</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4302</td>
<td>Algebra II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4402</td>
<td>Analysis II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4404</td>
<td>Functional analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4406</td>
<td>Introduction to partial differential equations</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7101</td>
<td>Intermediate complex analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201</td>
<td>Topics in geometry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202</td>
<td>Complex manifolds</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217</td>
<td>Topics in financial mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219</td>
<td>Topics in applied functional analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced probability theory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3150</td>
<td>Theoretical physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3450</td>
<td>Electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3550</td>
<td>Statistical mechanics &amp; thermodynamics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3551</td>
<td>Introductory solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650</td>
<td>Observational astronomy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651</td>
<td>The physical universe</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3652</td>
<td>Principles of astronomy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3750</td>
<td>Laser and spectroscopy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3751</td>
<td>Physics of nanomaterials</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3850</td>
<td>Waves and optics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3851</td>
<td>Atomic and nuclear physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150</td>
<td>Computational physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
<td>Stellar physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
<td>Selected topics in astrophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
<td>Planetary science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
<td>Cosmology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
<td>Interstellar medium (6)</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
<td>Stellar atmospheres</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   - MATH3999: Directed studies in mathematics (6)
   - MATH4910: Senior mathematics seminar (6)
   - MATH4911: Mathematics capstone project (6)
   - MATH4966: Mathematics internship (6)
   - MATH4999: Mathematics project (12)
   - PHYS3999: Directed studies in physics (6)
   - PHYS4966: Physics internship (6)
   - PHYS4999: Physics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second
majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. (a) Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or HKDSE Combined Science with Physics component or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry; and
(b) Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

**Objectives:**
Recent advancements in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology have not only cracked important and fundamental problems in life sciences, but also emerged as a mainstay of science and technologies of the 21st century. Innovations from advances in these fields have substantially transformed our daily lives, society and environment. This Major offers specialized training in state-of-the-art molecular and cell biology, and in the translation of basic knowledge into modern industrial and medical applications. Students will be able to gain an understanding of cutting edge molecular biology and biotechnological applications, ranging from exploitation of bioactive substances, genetic engineering for agricultural production, fisheries and aquaculture, biomedical researches for pharmaceutical and clinical purposes, biofuels as alternative energy sources, bioremediation for cleaning up contaminated environments, and wastewater treatment. Built upon a sound theoretical foundation, students will further develop various essential skills in molecular biology and biotechnology through hands-on laboratory trainings and experimental biology-based projects. A feature of this major is to provide key transferable skills by engaging students in inquiry, critical thinking, and problem solving in their learning.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

| PLO 1 | describe key concepts in molecular biology and modern biotechnology using knowledge from cell biology, microbiology, biochemistry, immunology, omics and systems biology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum) |
| PLO 2 | apply laboratory techniques essential to modern molecular science (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum) |
| PLO 3 | communicate in written and oral communication skills and collaborate with other students effectively (by means of coursework, research-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum) |
| PLO 4 | acquire scientific inquiry and critical thinking skills, including the ability to understand, analyze, and evaluate debated problems in the field and develop solutions, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum) |
| PLO 5 | gain insights into real-life experience in the applications of biotechnology for human health, agriculture, and the environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and experiential learning in the curriculum) |

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

### Required courses (96 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
**Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
- SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
- BIOL1110: From molecules to cells (6)
- BIOL2102: Biostatistics (6)
- BIOL2103: Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
- BIOL2220: Principles of biochemistry (6)
- BIOL2600: Basic biochemistry (6)

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOL2600 are mutually exclusive.

#### Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
- BIOL1309: Evolutionary diversity (6)
- BIOL2306: Ecology and evolution (6)

Take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.

#### 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
**Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
- BIOL3401: Molecular biology (6)
- BIOL3402: Cell biology and cell technology (6)
- BIOL3508: Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4411: Plant and food biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4415: Healthcare biotechnology (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3403: Immunology (6)
- BIOL3404: Protein structure and function (6)
- BIOL3406: Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)
- BIOL3408: Genetics (6)
- BIOL3409: Business aspects of biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4401: Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)
- BIOL4409: General virology (6)
- BIOL4416: Stem cells and regenerative biology (6)
- BIOL4417: 'Omic' and systems biology (6)
- ENVS4110: Environmental remediation (6)
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3993 Directed studies in Molecular biology & biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4963 Molecular biology & biotechnology internship (6)
- BIOL4993 Molecular biology & biotechnology project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title**  
Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016**

**Objectives:**
Recent advancements in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology have not only cracked important and fundamental problems in life sciences, but also emerged as a mainstay of science and technologies of the 21st century. Innovations from advances in these fields have substantially transformed our daily lives, society and environment. This Major offers specialized training in state-of-the-art molecular and cell biology, and in the translation of basic knowledge into modern industrial and medical applications. Students will be able to gain an understanding of cutting edge molecular biology and biotechnological applications, ranging from exploitation of bioactive substances, genetic engineering for agricultural production, fisheries and aquaculture, biomedical researches for pharmaceutical and clinical purposes, biofuels as alternative energy sources, bioremediation for cleaning up contaminated environments, and wastewater treatment. Built upon a sound theoretical foundation, students will further develop various essential skills in molecular biology and biotechnology through hands-on laboratory trainings and experimental biology-based projects. A feature of this major is to provide key transferable skills by engaging students in inquiry, critical thinking, and problem solving in their learning.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** describe key concepts in molecular biology and modern biotechnology using knowledge from cell biology, microbiology, biochemistry, immunology, omics and systems biology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** apply laboratory techniques essential to modern molecular science (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** communicate in written and oral communication skills and collaborate with other students effectively (by means of coursework, research-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4:** acquire scientific inquiry and critical thinking skills, including the ability to understand, analyze, and evaluate debated problems in the field and develop solutions, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5:** gain insights into real-life experience in the applications of biotechnology for human health, agriculture, and the environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and experiential learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses:</strong> Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits) |
| **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)** |
| BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6) |
| BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6) |
| BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6) |
| BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6) |
| BIOL4415 Healthcare biotechnology (6) |
| **Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)** |
| At least 18 credits selected from the following courses: |
| BIOL3403 Immunology (6) |
| BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6) |
| BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6) |
| BIOL3408 Genetics (6) |
| BIOL3409 Business aspects of biotechnology (6) |
| BIOL4401 Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6) |
| BIOL4409 General virology (6) |
| BIOL4416 Stem cells and regenerative biology (6) |
| BIOL4417 ‘Omics’ and systems biology (6) |
| ENVS4110 Environmental remediation (6) |
| Take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both. |

220
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3993 Directed studies in Molecular biology & biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4963 Molecular biology & biotechnology internship (6)
- BIOL4993 Molecular biology & biotechnology project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (“disciplinary core”) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses (“disciplinary core”) in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
Recent advancements in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology have not only cracked important and fundamental problems in life sciences, but also emerged as a mainstay of science and technologies of the 21st century. Innovations from advances in these fields have substantially transformed our daily lives, society and environment. This Major offers specialized training in state-of-the-art molecular and cell biology, and in the translation of basic knowledge into modern industrial and medical applications. Students will be able to gain an understanding of cutting edge molecular biology and biotechnological applications, ranging from exploitation of bioactive substances, genetic engineering for agricultural production, fisheries and aquaculture, biomedical researches for pharmaceutical and clinical purposes, biofuels as alternative energy sources, bioremediation for cleaning up contaminated environments, and wastewater treatment. Built upon a sound theoretical foundation, students will further develop various essential skills in molecular biology and biotechnology through hands-on laboratory trainings and experimental biology-based projects. A feature of this major is to provide key transferable skills by engaging students in inquiry, critical thinking, and problem solving in their learning.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe key concepts in molecular biology and modern biotechnology using knowledge from cell biology, microbiology, biochemistry, immunology, omics and systems biology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply laboratory techniques essential to modern molecular science (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate in written and oral communication skills and collaborate with other students effectively (by means of coursework, research-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: acquire scientific inquiry and critical thinking skills, including the ability to understand, analyze, and evaluate debated problems in the field and develop solutions, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: gain insights into real-life experience in the applications of biotechnology for human health, agriculture, and the environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and experiential learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
- SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
- BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
- BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
- BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
- BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
- BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both.
- BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.
- BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
- BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
- BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
- Take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
- BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
- BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
- BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
- BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both.
- BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.
- BIOL4402 Microbial biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4415 Healthcare biotechnology (6)

Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
- At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
  - BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
  - BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
  - BIOL3405 Molecular microbiology (6)
  - BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)
BIOL3408  Genetics (6)
BIOL3409  Business aspects of biotechnology (6)
BIOL4401  Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)
BIOL4409  General virology (6)
BIOL4416  Stem cells and regenerative biology (6)
BIOL4417  'Omics' and systems biology (6)
ENVS4110  Environmental remediation (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3993  Directed studies in Molecular biology & biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4963  Molecular biology & biotechnology internship (6)
- BIOL4993  Molecular biology & biotechnology project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
Recent advancements in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology have not only cracked important and fundamental problems in life sciences, but also emerged as a mainstay of science and technologies of the 21st century. Innovations from advances in these fields have substantially transformed our daily lives, society and environment. This Major offers specialized training in state-of-the-art molecular and cell biology, and in the translation of basic knowledge into modern industrial and medical applications. Students will be able to gain an understanding of cutting edge molecular biology and biotechnological applications, ranging from exploitation of bioactive substances, genetic engineering for agricultural production, fisheries and aquaculture, biomedical researches for pharmaceutical and clinical purposes, biofuels as alternative energy sources, bioremediation for cleaning up contaminated environments, and wastewater treatment. Built upon a sound theoretical foundation, students will further develop various essential skills in molecular biology and biotechnology through hands-on laboratory trainings and experimental biology-based projects. A feature of this major is to provide key transferable skills by engaging students in inquiry, critical thinking, and problem solving in their learning.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe key concepts in molecular biology and modern biotechnology using knowledge from cell biology, microbiology, biochemistry, immunology, omics and systems biology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply laboratory techniques essential to modern molecular science (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate in written and oral communication skills and collaborate with other students effectively (by means of coursework, research-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: acquire scientific inquiry and critical thinking skills, including the ability to understand, analyze, and evaluate debated problems in the field and develop solutions, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: gain insights into real-life experience in the applications of biotechnology for human health, agriculture, and the environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and experiential learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:

Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credit)
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

   Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

   Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

   Take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)

   BIOL4402 Microbial biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4415 Healthcare biotechnology (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (18 credit)
   At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
   BIOL3405 Molecular microbiology (6)
   BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3408</td>
<td>Genetics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409</td>
<td>Business aspects of biotechnology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>Medical microbiology and applied immunology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4409</td>
<td>General virology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4416</td>
<td>Stem cells and regenerative biology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>'Oomics' and systems biology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3993</td>
<td>Directed studies in Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4963</td>
<td>Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4993</td>
<td>Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
Recent advancements in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology have not only cracked important and fundamental problems in life sciences, but also emerged as a mainstay of science and technologies of the 21st century. Innovations from advances in these fields have substantially transformed our daily lives, society and environment. This Major offers specialized training in state-of-the-art molecular and cell biology, and in the translation of basic knowledge into modern industrial and medical applications. Students will be able to gain an understanding of cutting edge molecular biology and biotechnological applications, ranging from exploitation of bioactive substances, genetic engineering for agricultural production, fisheries and aquaculture, biomedical researches for pharmaceutical and clinical purposes, biofuels as alternative energy sources, bioengineering for cleaning up contaminated environments, and wastewater treatment. Built upon a sound theoretical foundation, students will further develop various essential skills in molecular biology and biotechnology through hands-on laboratory trainings and experimental biology-based projects. A feature of this major is to provide key transferable skills by engaging students in inquiry, critical thinking, and problem solving in their learning.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe key concepts in molecular biology and modern biotechnology using knowledge from cell biology, microbiology, biochemistry, immunology, omics and systems biology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply laboratory techniques essential to modern molecular science (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate in written and oral communication skills and collaborate with other students effectively (by means of coursework, research-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 4: acquire scientific inquiry and critical thinking skills, including the ability to understand, analyze, and evaluate debated problems in the field and develop solutions, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: gain insights into real-life experience in the applications of biotechnology for human health, agriculture, and the environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and experiential learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)

BIOL4402 Microbial biotechnology (6)
BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)
BIOL4415 Healthcare biotechnology (6)

Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
BIOL3405 Molecular microbiology (6)
BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3408</td>
<td>Genetics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409</td>
<td>Business aspects of biotechnology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4409</td>
<td>General virology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4416</td>
<td>Stem cells and regenerative biology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>'Omics' and systems biology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3993</td>
<td>Directed studies in Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4963</td>
<td>Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4993</td>
<td>Molecular biology &amp; biotechnology project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title**: Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2012

**Objectives:**
Recent advancements in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology have not only cracked important and fundamental problems in life sciences, but also emerged as a mainstay of science and technologies of the 21st century. Innovations from advances in these fields have substantially transformed our daily lives, society and environment. This Major offers specialized training in state-of-the-art molecular and cell biology, and in the translation of basic knowledge into modern industrial and medical applications. Students will be able to gain an understanding of cutting edge molecular biology and biotechnological applications, ranging from exploitation of bioactive substances, genetic engineering for agricultural production, fisheries and aquaculture, biomedical researches for pharmaceutical and clinical purposes, biofuels as alternative energy sources, bioremediation for cleaning up contaminated environments, and wastewater treatment. Built upon a sound theoretical foundation, students will further develop various essential skills in molecular biology and biotechnology through hands-on laboratory trainings and experimental biology-based projects. A feature of this major is to provide key transferable skills by engaging students in inquiry, critical thinking, and problem solving in their learning.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:
- **PLO 1**: describe key concepts in molecular biology and modern biotechnology using knowledge from cell biology, microbiology, biochemistry, immunology, omics and systems biology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply laboratory techniques essential to modern molecular science (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: communicate in written and oral communication skills and collaborate with other students effectively (by means of coursework, research-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: acquire scientific inquiry and critical thinking skills, including the ability to understand, analyze, and evaluate debated problems in the field and develop solutions, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework and laboratory-based and/or research-based opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: gain insights into real-life experience in the applications of biotechnology for human health, agriculture, and the environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based and experiential learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

### Required courses (96 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
- SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
- BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
- BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
- BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
- BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
- BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.

### Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
- BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
- BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

Take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.

### 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
- BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
- BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
- BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4402 Microbial biotechnology (6)
- BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
- BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
- BIOL3405 Molecular microbiology (6)
- BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)

Take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
- At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
  - BIOL3406 Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6)

Take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 30 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- BIOL3993 Directed studies in Molecular biology & biotechnology (6)
- BIOL4963 Molecular biology & biotechnology internship (6)
- BIOL4993 Molecular biology & biotechnology project (12)

Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

Remarks:

- Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Objectives:
The Major in Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation on the subject. Core courses form the blocks of fundamental knowledge to pursue learning in specializations, e.g. quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics and electrodynamics. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale (i.e. subatomic particles) to the large scale (i.e. cosmology). Students will attain professional knowledge in physics, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. Graduates are expected to have acquired the broad training which can equip them well for further studies in multiple science and technology disciplines and to work in their specialized area.

## Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLO 1</th>
<th>identify and describe physical systems with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLO 2</td>
<td>have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle problems either theoretical or experimental in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLO 3</td>
<td>analyze problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLO 4</td>
<td>communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLO 5</td>
<td>apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-world setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Mathematics/Physics
- Minor in Physics

### Required courses (96 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
- SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
- PHYS1250: Fundamental physics (6)
- PHYS2250: Introductory mechanics (6)
- PHYS2255: Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
- PHYS2260: Heat and waves (6)
- PHYS2265: Modern physics (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- PHYS1150: Problem solving in physics (6)
- PHYS2055: Introduction to relativity (6)
- PHYS2150: Methods in physics I (6)
- PHYS2155: Methods in physics II (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
- PHYS3350: Classical mechanics (6)
- PHYS3351: Quantum mechanics (6)
- PHYS3450: Electromagnetism (6)
- PHYS3550: Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
At least 18 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements.

**List A**
- PHYS3150: Theoretical physics (6)
- PHYS3551: Introductory solid state physics (6)
- PHYS3650: Observational astronomy (6)
- PHYS3651: The physical universe (6)
- PHYS3652: Principles of astronomy (6)
- PHYS3750: Laser and spectroscopy (6)
- PHYS3751: Physics of nanomaterials (6)
- PHYS3850: Waves and optics (6)
- PHYS3851: Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
- PHYS4150: Computational physics (6)
- PHYS4151: Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
- PHYS4350: Advanced classical mechanics (6)
- PHYS4351: Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
- PHYS4450: Advanced electromagnetism (6)
- PHYS4550: Advanced statistical mechanics (6)

---

Science Majors
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   - PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
   - PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)
   - PHYS4999 Physics project (12)

**Notes:**

1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title:** Major in Physics  
**Offered to students:** admitted to Year 1 in 2016

**Objectives:**  
The Major in Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation on the subject. Core courses form the blocks of fundamental knowledge to pursue learning in specializations, e.g. quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics and electrodynamics. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale (i.e. subatomic particles) to the large scale (i.e. cosmology). Students will attain professional knowledge in physics, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. Graduates are expected to have acquired the broad training which can equip them well for further studies in multiple science and technology disciplines and to work in their specialized area.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

| PLO 1 | identify and describe physical systems with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum) |
| PLO 2 | have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle problems either theoretical or experimental in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum) |
| PLO 3 | analyze problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum) |
| PLO 4 | communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum) |
| PLO 5 | apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-word setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies) |

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Minor in Physics

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
     - PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
     - PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
     - PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
     - PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)
     - PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)**
     - At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
       - PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
       - PHYS2050 Introduction to relativity (6)
       - PHYS2150 Methods in physics I (6)
       - PHYS2155 Methods in physics II (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
     - PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
     - PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
     - PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
     - PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
     - At least 18 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements.
     - **List A**
       - PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
       - PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
       - PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
       - PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
       - PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
       - PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
       - PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
       - PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
       - PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
       - PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
       - PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
       - PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
       - PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
       - PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
       - PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
### Science Majors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
<td>Stellar physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
<td>Selected topics in astrophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
<td>Planetary science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
<td>Cosmology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
<td>Interstellar medium</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
<td>Stellar atmospheres</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- PHYS3999  Directed studies in physics  (6)
- PHYS4966  Physics internship          (6)
- PHYS4999  Physics project             (12)

### Notes:

1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major in Physics

Objectives:
The Major in Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation on the subject. Core courses form the blocks of fundamental knowledge to pursue learning in specializations, e.g. quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics and electrodynamics. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale (i.e. subatomic particles) to the large scale (i.e. cosmology). Students will attain professional knowledge in physics, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. Graduates are expected to have acquired the broad training which can equip them well for further studies in multiple science and technology disciplines and to work in their specialized area.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle problems either theoretical or experimental in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)

PLO 3: analyze problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-word setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Physics

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)
PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

Disciplinary Electives (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
PHYS2055 Introduction to relativity (6)
PHYS2150 Methods in physics I (6)
PHYS2155 Methods in physics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)

Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
At least 18 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements.

List A
PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
<td>Stellar physics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
<td>Selected topics in astrophysics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
<td>Planetary science</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
<td>Cosmology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
<td>Interstellar medium</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
<td>Stellar atmospheres</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)**

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in physics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966</td>
<td>Physics internship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999</td>
<td>Physics project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Students are strongly advised to consult departmental course selection advisors for course and career planning before selecting the courses.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

6. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Physics
Offered to students: admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Major in Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation on the subject. Core courses form the blocks of fundamental knowledge to pursue learning in specializations, e.g., quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics and electrodynamics. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale (i.e., subatomic particles) to the large scale (i.e., cosmology). Students will attain professional knowledge in physics, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. Graduates are expected to have acquired the broad training which can equip them well for further studies in multiple science and technology disciplines and to work in their specialized area.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:
PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
PLO 2: have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle problems either theoretical or experimental in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)
PLO 3: analyze problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)
PLO 4: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
PLO 5: apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-word setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Physics

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)
   PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
   PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
   PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
   PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)
   PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   At least 18 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements.
   
   List A
   PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
   PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
   PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
   PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
   PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
   PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
   PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
   PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
   PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
   PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
   PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
   PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)
   PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
   PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
   PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)
PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)
PHYS7350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)
PHYS7351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS7450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)
PHYS7550 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS7551 Graduate solid state physics (6)
PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)
PHYS7750 Nanophysics (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
   PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)
   PHYS4999 Physics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses (“disciplinary core”) in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Objectives:**
The Major in Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation on the subject. Core courses form the blocks of fundamental knowledge to pursue learning in specializations, e.g. quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics and electrodynamics. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale (i.e. subatomic particles) to the large scale (i.e. cosmology). Students will attain professional knowledge in physics, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. Graduates are expected to have acquired the broad training which can equip them well for further studies in multiple science and technology disciplines and to work in their specialized area.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1:** identify and describe physical systems with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

**PLO 2:** have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle problems either theoretical or experimental in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)

**PLO 3:** analyze problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

**PLO 4:** communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**PLO 5:** apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-word setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Physics

**Required courses (96 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
     - SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
     - SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
     - PHYS1150: Problem solving in physics (6)
     - PHYS1250: Fundamental physics (6)
     - PHYS2250: Introductory mechanics (6)
     - PHYS2255: Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
     - PHYS2260: Heat and waves (6)
     - PHYS2265: Modern physics (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
     - PHYS3350: Classical mechanics (6)
     - PHYS3351: Quantum mechanics (6)
     - PHYS3450: Electromagnetism (6)
     - PHYS3550: Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
     - At least 18 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements.

**List A**

- PHYS3150: Theoretical physics (6)
- PHYS3250: Introductory solid state physics (6)
- PHYS3350: Observational astronomy (6)
- PHYS3450: The physical universe (6)
- PHYS3550: Principles of astronomy (6)
- PHYS3650: Laser and spectroscopy (6)
- PHYS3750: Physics of nanomaterials (6)
- PHYS3850: Waves and optics (6)
- PHYS3950: Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
- PHYS4150: Computational physics (6)
- PHYS4250: Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
- PHYS4350: Advanced classical mechanics (6)
- PHYS4450: Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
- PHYS4550: Advanced electromagnetism (6)
- PHYS4650: Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
- PHYS4750: Solid state physics (6)
- PHYS4850: Stellar physics (6)
- PHYS4950: Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
- PHYS4652: Planetary science (6)
- PHYS4653: Cosmology (6)
### Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Major Title
Major in Physics

### Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2012

### Objectives:
The Major in Physics aims to provide students with a solid foundation on the subject. Core courses form the blocks of fundamental knowledge to pursue learning in specializations, e.g. quantum mechanics, statistical mechanics, classical mechanics and electrodynamics. A large selection of elective courses is provided for students to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale (i.e. subatomic particles) to the large scale (i.e. cosmology). Students will attain professional knowledge in physics, research experience and the training of analytical thinking and quantitative reasoning during their studies. Graduates are expected to have acquired the broad training which can equip them well for further studies in multiple science and technology disciplines and to work in their specialized area.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1:** identify and describe physical systems with their professional knowledge (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

**PLO 2:** have developed their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle problems either theoretical or experimental in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)

**PLO 3:** analyze problems qualitatively and quantitatively, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and research-based projects in the curriculum)

**PLO 4:** communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**PLO 5:** apply scientific and quantitative methods in tackling problems in research or real-word setting (by means of projects, directed studies, local and foreign internships attached to universities, research centers, government bodies, NGOs and influential companies)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics

Minor in Physics

### Required courses (96 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (48 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
   - SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   - SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   **Disciplinary Core Courses (36 credits)**
   - PHYS1150 Problem solving in physics (6)
   - PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   - PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
   - PHYS2255 Introductory electricity and magnetism (6)
   - PHYS2260 Heat and waves (6)
   - PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (42 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
   - PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
   - PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
   - PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
   - PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)

   **Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
   At least 18 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current list includes courses in List A and those courses not selected to fulfill the capstone requirements.

   **List A**
   - PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
   - PHYS3351 Introductory solid state physics (6)
   - PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
   - PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
   - PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
   - PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
   - PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
   - PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
   - PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
   - PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
   - PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
   - PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
   - PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
   - PHYS4440 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
   - PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
   - PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)
   - PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
   - PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   - PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
   - PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
PHYS4654  General relativity (6)
PHYS4655  Interstellar medium (6)
PHYS4750  Experimental physics (6)
PHYS4850  Particle physics (6)
PHYS7350  Graduate classical mechanics (6)
PHYS7351  Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
PHYS7450  Graduate electromagnetism (6)
PHYS7550  Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
PHYS7551  Graduate solid state physics (6)
PHYS7650  Stellar atmospheres (6)
PHYS7750  Nanophysics (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
PHYS3999  Directed studies in physics (6)
PHYS4966  Physics internship (6)
PHYS4999  Physics project (12)

Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (‘disciplinary core’) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Capstone requirement for BEd&BSc degree students is different. Students are required to take an additional 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the major to replace the capstone requirement of this Major. Students should consult the Faculty of Education for details.

5. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Risk Management

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Major in Risk Management aims to provide students with the skills and expertise in the theory and methodology behind the scientific process of risk management, with application to actuarial science, finance and other related areas of interest. It is designed to provide solid training in the concepts of the risk management process, statistical models and methods of risk management, and good risk management practice. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental concepts and nature of risk assessment, risk management and governance from different standpoints while elective courses provide either training in specific Risk Management disciplines or an extension of knowledge aiming to give students more modeling, technical and analytical skills in risk management, including data mining, stochastic calculus, and financial time series modeling.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and categorize the various risks faced by an organization and be able to demonstrate a critical understanding of generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze and assess risk management situations, and be able to deal with qualitative as well as quantitative aspects appropriate to the situation (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: critically evaluate and make effective use of models and techniques for risk assessment and management, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: make informed risk management decisions, employ any techniques necessary to acquire and interpret relevant data and information from different sources and the factors that influence their perceptions of risk identification, risk reduction, risk mitigation and risk transfer (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on risk management issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in risk management through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Science foundation courses
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science

   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II
   STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts
   MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis
   STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk
   STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3603 Probability modelling
   STAT3610 Risk management and insurance
   STAT3612 Data mining
   STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management
   STAT3911 Financial economics II
   STAT4603 Current topics in risk management
   STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance
   STAT4607 Credit risk analysis
   STAT4608 Market risk analysis

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics
   STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates
   STAT4766 Statistics internship
   STAT4799 Statistics project
Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Risk Management
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Major in Risk Management aims to provide students with the skills and expertise in the theory and methodology behind the scientific process of risk management, with application to actuarial science, finance and other related areas of interest. It is designed to provide solid training in the concepts of the risk management process, statistical models and methods of risk management, and good risk management practice. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental concepts and nature of risk assessment, risk management and governance from different standpoints while elective courses provide either training in specific Risk Management disciplines or an extension of knowledge aiming to give students more modeling, technical and analytical skills in risk management, including data mining, stochastic calculus, and financial time series modeling.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and categorize the various risks faced by an organization and be able to demonstrate a critical understanding of generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze and assess risk management situations, and be able to deal with qualitative as well as quantitative aspects appropriate to the situation (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: critically evaluate and make effective use of models and techniques for risk assessment and management, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: make informed risk management decisions, employ any techniques necessary to acquire and interpret relevant data and information from different sources and the factors that influence their perceptions of risk identification, risk reduction, risk mitigation and risk transfer (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on risk management issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in risk management through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   MATH1101 University mathematics II (6)
   STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)
   MATH2101 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
   STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
   STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)
   STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
   STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
   STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
   STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
   STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
   STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
   STAT4799 Statistics project (12)
Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Major Title**: Major in Risk Management  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2015

**Objectives:**  
The Major in Risk Management aims to provide students with the skills and expertise in the theory and methodology behind the scientific process of risk management, with application to actuarial science, finance and other related areas of interest. It is designed to provide solid training in the concepts of the risk management process, statistical models and methods of risk management, and good risk management practice. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental concepts and nature of risk assessment, risk management and governance from different standpoints while elective courses provide either training in specific Risk Management disciplines or an extension of knowledge aiming to give students more modeling, technical and analytical skills in risk management, including data mining, stochastic calculus, and financial time series modeling.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and categorize the various risks faced by an organization and be able to demonstrate a critical understanding of generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: analyze and assess risk management situations, and be able to deal with qualitative as well as quantitative aspects appropriate to the situation (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: critically evaluate and make effective use of models and techniques for risk assessment and management, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: make informed risk management decisions, employ any techniques necessary to acquire and interpret relevant data and information from different sources and the factors that influence their perceptions of risk identification, risk reduction, risk mitigation and risk transfer (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on risk management issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 6**: gain insights into current advances in risk management through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Computing and Data Analytics  
Major in Decision Analytics  
Major in Statistics  
Minor in Risk Management  
Minor in Statistics

**Required courses (96 credits)**  
1. **Introductory level courses (42 credits)**  
   **Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**  
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)  
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)  
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**  
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)  
   STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)  
   MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)  
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)  
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)  
2. **Advanced level courses (48 credits)**  
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**  
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)  
   STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)  
   STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)  
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)  
   **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**  
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)  
   STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)  
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)  
   STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)  
   STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)  
   STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)  
   STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)  
   STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)  
   STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)  
3. **Capstone requirement (6 credits)**  
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)  
   STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)  
   STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)  
   STAT4799 Statistics project (12)
Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Risk Management
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Major in Risk Management aims to provide students with the skills and expertise in the theory and methodology behind the scientific process of risk management, with application to actuarial science, finance and other related areas of interest. It is designed to provide solid training in the concepts of the risk management process, statistical models and methods of risk management, and good risk management practice. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental concepts and nature of risk assessment, risk management and governance from different standpoints while elective courses provide either training in specific Risk Management disciplines or an extension of knowledge aiming to give students more modeling, technical and analytical skills in risk management, including data mining, stochastic calculus, and financial time series modeling.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and categorize the various risks faced by an organization and be able to demonstrate a critical understanding of generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze and assess risk management situations, and be able to deal with qualitative as well as quantitative aspects appropriate to the situation (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: critically evaluate and make effective use of models and techniques for risk assessment and management, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: make informed risk management decisions, employ any techniques necessary to acquire and interpret relevant data and information from different sources and the factors that influence their perceptions of risk identification, risk reduction, risk mitigation and risk transfer (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on risk management issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in risk management through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)
   MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
   STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)

Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
   STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)
   STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
   STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
   STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
   STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
   STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
   STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
   STAT4799 Statistics project (12)
### Notes:

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Risk Management

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Major in Risk Management aims to provide students with the skills and expertise in the theory and methodology behind the scientific process of risk management, with application to actuarial science, finance and other related areas of interest. It is designed to provide solid training in the concepts of the risk management process, statistical models and methods of risk management, and good risk management practice. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental concepts and nature of risk assessment, risk management and governance from different standpoints while elective courses provide either training in specific Risk Management disciplines or an extension of knowledge aiming to give students more modeling, technical and analytical skills in risk management, including data mining, stochastic calculus, and financial time series modeling.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and categorize the various risks faced by an organization and be able to demonstrate a critical understanding of generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze and assess risk management situations, and be able to deal with qualitative as well as quantitative aspects appropriate to the situation (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: critically evaluate and make effective use of models and techniques for risk assessment and management, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: make informed risk management decisions, employ any techniques necessary to acquire and interpret relevant data and information from different sources and the factors that influence their perceptions of risk identification, risk reduction, risk mitigation and risk transfer (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on risk management issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: gain insights into current advances in risk management through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
   STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
   STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)
   STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
   STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
   STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
   STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
   STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
   STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
   STAT4799 Statistics project (12)
Notes:
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Major Title
Major in Risk Management

## Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2012

### Objectives:
The Major in Risk Management aims to provide students with the skills and expertise in the theory and methodology behind the scientific process of risk management, with application to actuarial science, finance and other related areas of interest. It is designed to provide solid training in the concepts of the risk management process, statistical models and methods of risk management, and good risk management practice. Core courses in the curriculum emphasize fundamental concepts and nature of risk assessment, risk management and governance from different standpoints while elective courses provide either training in specific Risk Management disciplines or an extension of knowledge aiming to give students more modeling, technical and analytical skills in risk management, including data mining, stochastic calculus, and financial time series modeling.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

1. **PLO 1**: identify and categorize the various risks faced by an organization and be able to demonstrate a critical understanding of generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
2. **PLO 2**: analyze and assess risk management situations, and be able to deal with qualitative as well as quantitative aspects appropriate to the situation (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
3. **PLO 3**: critically evaluate and make effective use of models and techniques for risk assessment and management, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
4. **PLO 4**: make informed risk management decisions, employ any techniques necessary to acquire and interpret relevant data and information from different sources and the factors that influence their perceptions of risk identification, risk reduction, risk mitigation and risk transfer (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)
5. **PLO 5**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on risk management issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)
6. **PLO 6**: gain insights into current advances in risk management through either project or industrial training (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Decision Analytics
- Major in Statistics
- Minor in Risk Management
- Minor in Statistics

### Required courses (96 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
- SCNC1111: Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112: Fundamentals of modern science (6)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)**
- MATH1013: University mathematics II (6)
- STAT1600: Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)
- STAT2601: Probability and statistics I (6)
- STAT2602: Probability and statistics II (6)
- STAT2603: Data management with SAS (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
- STAT3600: Linear statistical analysis (6)
- STAT3609: The statistics of investment risk (6)
- STAT3615: Practical mathematics for investment (6)
- STAT4601: Time-series analysis (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
- STAT3603: Probability modelling (6)
- STAT3610: Risk management and insurance (6)
- STAT3612: Data mining (6)
- STAT3618: Derivatives and risk management (6)
- STAT3911: Financial economics II (6)
- STAT4603: Current topics in risk management (6)
- STAT4606: Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
- STAT4607: Credit risk analysis (6)
- STAT4608: Market risk analysis (6)

#### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- STAT3799: Directed studies in statistics (6)
- STAT4710: Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
- STAT4766: Statistics internship (6)
- STAT4799: Statistics project (12)
**Notes:**

1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

3. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

4. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

5. Students taking the Mathematics related major/minor should check the exemption and replacement arrangement for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses at http://www.scifac.hku.hk/ug/current/bsc/curriculum/overlapping-course-req.

**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Statistics  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Major in Statistics focuses on the study of statistics, a scientific discipline characterized by the development and applications of analytical and quantitative tools which involve logical thinking, problem formulation, probability reasoning and intensive data analyses. The programme aims to equip students with powerful mathematical, analytical and computational skills, which are in great demand in practical areas where data are obtained for the purpose of extracting information in support of decision making. It gives students a strong background in statistical concepts, and provides broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. The curriculum is constantly revised to meet a steadily rising demand for specialist statisticians or quantitative analysts in government, business, finance, industry, as well as in research and teaching in local and overseas institutions.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: receive solid training in probability and statistics, gain insight into their underlying theory and be acquainted with their state-of-the-art applications in the modern world (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum).

PLO 2: conduct meticulous data analyses, supported by rigorous statistical reasoning, to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty that arises in all sorts of institutions and companies, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum).

PLO 3: equip with hands-on experience in data analysis using commercial statistical software, and be competent for data-analytic jobs which require advanced computational skills (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum).

PLO 4: be highly motivated to explore cross-disciplinary applications of statistics in a broad variety of academic or professional areas including, in particular, mathematics, natural sciences, economics, finance, business, risk management, actuarial work, social sciences and engineering (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum).

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on probability and statistical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum).

PLO 6: through the understanding and application of statistical concepts and techniques, gain confidence to meet challenges posed by increasingly complicated real-life problems encountered in the modern era in a creative and rational manner (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum).

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics  
Major in Decision Analytics  
Major in Risk Management  
Minor in Risk Management  
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)
   MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 6 credits from List A:

   List A
   STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)
   STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)
   STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
   STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)

   List B
   STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)
   STAT3606 Business logistics (6)
   STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
   STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)
   STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
### Science Majors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Course Description</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3617</td>
<td>Sample survey methods</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3955</td>
<td>Survival analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
- STAT3799: Directed studies in statistics (6)
- STAT4710: Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
- STAT4766: Statistics internship (6)
- STAT4799: Statistics project (12)

#### Notes:
1. Students who wish to specialize in the theme of data science are recommended to choose the combination of courses STAT3612, STAT3613, STAT3616 and STAT3621. Note that students who wish to take STAT3616 and STAT3621 are strongly recommended to take STAT2603 first.
2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.
3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.
4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.
5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

#### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Statistics
Offered to students: 2016

Objectives:
The Major in Statistics focuses on the study of statistics, a scientific discipline characterized by the development and applications of analytical and quantitative tools which involve logical thinking, problem formulation, probability reasoning and intensive data analyses. The programme aims to equip students with powerful mathematical, analytical and computational skills, which are in great demand in practical areas where data are obtained for the purpose of extracting information in support of decision making. It gives students a strong background in statistical concepts, and provides broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. The curriculum is constantly revised to meet a steadily rising demand for specialist statisticians or quantitative analysts in government, business, finance, industry, as well as in research and teaching in local and overseas institutions.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: receive solid training in probability and statistics, gain insight into their underlying theory and be acquainted with their state-of-the-art applications in the modern world (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: conduct meticulous data analyses, supported by rigorous statistical reasoning, to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty that arises in all sorts of institutions and companies, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: equip with hands-on experience in data analysis using commercial statistical software, and be competent for data-analytic jobs which require advanced computational skills (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: be highly motivated to explore cross-disciplinary applications of statistics in a broad variety of academic or professional areas including, in particular, mathematics, natural sciences, economics, finance, business, risk management, actuarial work, social sciences and engineering (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on probability and statistical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: through the understanding and application of statistical concepts and techniques, gain confidence to meet challenges posed by increasingly complicated real-life problems encountered in the modern era in a creative and rational manner (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Minor in Risk Management
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 6 credits from List A:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List B</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3606 Business logistics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3612 Data mining (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAT3617  Sample survey methods (6)
STAT3955  Survival analysis (6)

### 3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3799</td>
<td>Directed studies in statistics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4710</td>
<td>Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4766</td>
<td>Statistics internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4799</td>
<td>Statistics project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Notes:

1. Students who wish to specialize in the theme of data science are recommended to choose the combination of courses STAT3612, STAT3613, STAT3616 and STAT3621. Note that students who wish to take STAT3616 and STAT3621 are strongly recommended to take STAT2603 first.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


#### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Statistics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Major in Statistics focuses on the study of statistics, a scientific discipline characterized by the development and applications of analytical and quantitative tools which involve logical thinking, problem formulation, probability reasoning and intensive data analyses. The programme aims to equip students with powerful mathematical, analytical and computational skills, which are in great demand in practical areas where data are obtained for the purpose of extracting information in support of decision making. It gives students a strong background in statistical concepts, and provides broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. The curriculum is constantly revised to meet a steadily rising demand for specialist statisticians or quantitative analysts in government, business, finance, industry, as well as in research and teaching in local and overseas institutions.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: receive solid training in probability and statistics, gain insight into their underlying theory and be acquainted with their state-of-the-art applications in the modern world (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: conduct meticulous data analyses, supported by rigorous statistical reasoning, to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty that arises in all sorts of institutions and companies, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: equip with hands-on experience in data analysis using commercial statistical software, and be competent for data-analytic jobs which require advanced computational skills (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: be highly motivated to explore cross-disciplinary applications of statistics in a broad variety of academic or professional areas including, in particular, mathematics, natural sciences, economics, finance, business, risk management, actuarial work, social sciences and engineering (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on probability and statistical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: through the understanding and application of statistical concepts and techniques, gain confidence to meet challenges posed by increasingly complicated real-life problems encountered in the modern era in a creative and rational manner (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Minor in Risk Management
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
<td>Scientific method and reasoning</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
<td>Fundamentals of modern science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1600</td>
<td>Statistics: ideas and concepts</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2014</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus and linear algebra</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2601</td>
<td>Probability and statistics I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2602</td>
<td>Probability and statistics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3600</td>
<td>Linear statistical analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3603</td>
<td>Probability modelling</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601</td>
<td>Time-series analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4602</td>
<td>Multivariate data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)

At least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 6 credits from List A:

List A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3602</td>
<td>Statistical inference</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3604</td>
<td>Design and analysis of experiments</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3620</td>
<td>Modern nonparametric statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3621</td>
<td>Statistical data analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

List B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3605</td>
<td>Quality control and management</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3606</td>
<td>Business logistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3607</td>
<td>Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3608</td>
<td>Statistical genetics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3612</td>
<td>Data mining</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3613</td>
<td>Marketing engineering</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3616</td>
<td>Advanced SAS programming</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3617</td>
<td>Sample survey methods (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3955</td>
<td>Survival analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3799</td>
<td>Directed studies in statistics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4710</td>
<td>Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4766</td>
<td>Statistics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4799</td>
<td>Statistics project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Students who wish to specialize in the theme of data science are recommended to choose the combination of courses STAT3612, STAT3613, STAT3616 and STAT3621. Note that students who wish to take STAT3616 and STAT3621 are strongly recommended to take STAT2603 first.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required (‘disciplinary core’) by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Statistics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Major in Statistics focuses on the study of statistics, a scientific discipline characterized by the development and applications of analytical and quantitative tools which involve logical thinking, problem formulation, probability reasoning and intensive data analyses. The programme aims to equip students with powerful mathematical, analytical and computational skills, which are in great demand in practical areas where data are obtained for the purpose of extracting information in support of decision making. It gives students a strong background in statistical concepts, and provides broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. The curriculum is constantly revised to meet a steadily rising demand for specialist statisticians or quantitative analysts in government, business, finance, industry, as well as in research and teaching in local and overseas institutions.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: receive solid training in probability and statistics, gain insight into their underlying theory and be acquainted with their state-of-the-art applications in the modern world (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 2**: conduct meticulous data analyses, supported by rigorous statistical reasoning, to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty that arises in all sorts of institutions and companies, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 3**: equip with hands-on experience in data analysis using commercial statistical software, and be competent for data-analytic jobs which require advanced computational skills (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 4**: be highly motivated to explore cross-disciplinary applications of statistics in a broad variety of academic or professional areas including, in particular, mathematics, natural sciences, economics, finance, business, risk management, actuarial work, social sciences and engineering (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 5**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on probability and statistical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 6**: through the understanding and application of statistical concepts and techniques, gain confidence to meet challenges posed by increasingly complicated real-life problems encountered in the modern era in a creative and rational manner (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Computing and Data Analytics
- Major in Decision Analytics
- Major in Risk Management
- Minor in Risk Management
- Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)**
- SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
- SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

**Disciplinary Courses (30 credits)**
- MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
- STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)
- MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6)
- STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
- STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)**
- STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
- STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
- STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
- STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
At least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 6 credits from List A:

**List A**
- STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)
- STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)
- STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
- STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)

**List B**
- STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)
- STAT3606 Business logistics (6)
- STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
- STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)
- STAT3612 Data mining (6)
- STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)
- STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
STAT3617 Sample survey methods (6)
STAT3955 Survival analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
   At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
   STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
   STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
   STAT4799 Statistics project (12)

Notes:
1. Students who wish to specialize in the theme of data science are recommended to choose the combination of courses STAT3612, STAT3613, STAT3616 and STAT3621. Note that students who wish to take STAT3616 and STAT3621 are strongly recommended to take STAT2603 first.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ("disciplinary core") by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Major Title: Major in Statistics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Major in Statistics focuses on the study of statistics, a scientific discipline characterized by the development and applications of analytical and quantitative tools which involve logical thinking, problem formulation, probability reasoning and intensive data analyses. The programme aims to equip students with powerful mathematical, analytical and computational skills, which are in great demand in practical areas where data are obtained for the purpose of extracting information in support of decision making. It gives students a strong background in statistical concepts, and provides broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. The curriculum is constantly revised to meet a steadily rising demand for specialist statisticians or quantitative analysts in government, business, finance, industry, as well as in research and teaching in local and overseas institutions.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: receive solid training in probability and statistics, gain insight into their underlying theory and be acquainted with their state-of-the-art applications in the modern world (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: conduct meticulous data analyses, supported by rigorous statistical reasoning, to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty that arises in all sorts of institutions and companies, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: equip with hands-on experience in data analysis using commercial statistical software, and be competent for data-analytic jobs which require advanced computational skills (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: be highly motivated to explore cross-disciplinary applications of statistics in a broad variety of academic or professional areas including, in particular, mathematics, natural sciences, economics, finance, business, risk management, actuarial work, social sciences and engineering (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: communicate and collaborate with people effectively on probability and statistical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

PLO 6: through the understanding and application of statistical concepts and techniques, gain confidence to meet challenges posed by increasingly complicated real-life problems encountered in the modern era in a creative and rational manner (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Minor in Risk Management
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (96 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses: Science Foundation Courses (12 credits)
   SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6)
   SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6)

   Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)
   MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   STAT1600 Statistics: ideas and concepts (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)

2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (24 credits)
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 6 credits from List A:
   List A
   STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)
   STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)
   STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
   STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)
   List B
   STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)
   STAT3606 Business logistics (6)
   STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
   STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)
   STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
   STAT3617 Sample survey methods (6)
STAT3955 Survival analysis (6)

3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)
At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3799 Directed studies in statistics (6)
- STAT4710 Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates (6)
- STAT4766 Statistics internship (6)
- STAT4799 Statistics project (12)

Notes:
1. Students who wish to specialize in the theme of data science are recommended to choose the combination of courses STAT3612, STAT3613, STAT3616 and STAT3621. Note that students who wish to take STAT3616 and STAT3621 are strongly recommended to take STAT2603 first.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ("disciplinary core") in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) (disciplinary electives) in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course (disciplinary electives) in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Objectives:**

The Major in Statistics focuses on the study of statistics, a scientific discipline characterized by the development and applications of analytical and quantitative tools which involve logical thinking, problem formulation, probability reasoning and intensive data analyses. The programme aims to equip students with powerful mathematical, analytical and computational skills, which are in great demand in practical areas where data are obtained for the purpose of extracting information in support of decision making. It gives students a strong background in statistical concepts, and provides broad and solid training in applied statistical methodologies. The curriculum is constantly revised to meet a steadily rising demand for specialist statisticians or quantitative analysts in government, business, finance, industry, as well as in research and teaching in local and overseas institutions.

**Learning Outcomes:**

By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** receive solid training in probability and statistics, gain insight into their underlying theory and be acquainted with their state-of-the-art applications in the modern world (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 2:** conduct meticulous data analyses, supported by rigorous statistical reasoning, to make informed decisions in the face of uncertainty that arises in all sorts of institutions and companies, and appraise the related ethical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 3:** equip with hands-on experience in data analysis using commercial statistical software, and be competent for data-analytic jobs which require advanced computational skills (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 4:** be highly motivated to explore cross-disciplinary applications of statistics in a broad variety of academic or professional areas including, in particular, mathematics, natural sciences, economics, finance, business, risk management, actuarial work, social sciences and engineering (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and/or project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 5:** communicate and collaborate with people effectively on probability and statistical issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 6:** through the understanding and application of statistical concepts and techniques, gain confidence to meet challenges posed by increasingly complicated real-life problems encountered in the modern era in a creative and rational manner (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based and/or capstone learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**

- Major in Decision Analytics
- Major in Risk Management
- Minor in Risk Management
- Minor in Statistics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (96 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Introductory level courses (42 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SCNC1112</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disciplinary Core Courses (30 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2603</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>2. Advanced level courses (48 credits)</strong></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3603</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4602</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At least 24 credits from Lists A and B, among which at least 6 credits from List A:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List A</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3602</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3604</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3620</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3621</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **List B** |
| STAT3605 | Quality control and management (6) |
| STAT3606 | Business logistics (6) |
| STAT3607 | Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6) |
| STAT3608 | Statistical genetics (6) |
| STAT3612 | Data mining (6) |
| STAT3613 | Marketing engineering (6) |
| STAT3616 | Advanced SAS programming (6) |
| STAT3617 | Sample survey methods (6) |
3. Capstone requirement (6 credits)

At least 6 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3799</td>
<td>Directed studies in statistics</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4710</td>
<td>Capstone experience for statistics undergraduates</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4766</td>
<td>Statistics internship</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4799</td>
<td>Statistics project</td>
<td>(12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. Students who wish to specialize in the theme of data science are recommended to choose the combination of courses STAT3612, STAT3613, STAT3616 and STAT3621. Note that students who wish to take STAT3616 and STAT3621 are strongly recommended to take STAT2603 first.

2. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible when a student with a science major opts to undertake a second major in science. The double-counted courses must include SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits) and SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits). Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

3. If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as required courses ('disciplinary core') in both the first and second majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) ('disciplinary electives') in the second major. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

4. Students are not required to take Capstone if this Science major is taken as a second major on the condition that the capstone experience in the first major requires the integration or application of knowledge from both major disciplines. If this is approved, a 6-credit advanced level course ('disciplinary electives') in the second major must be taken to fulfill the credit requirement of the capstone experience.

5. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Science Minors in 2017-18

SECTION VIII

SCIENCE
SECTION VII  Science Minors on offer in 2017/18

Minors offered by Science Faculty

Minors (17)

Actuarial Studies
Astronomy
Biochemistry
Chemistry
Computational & Financial Mathematics
Earth Sciences
Ecology & Biodiversity
Environmental Science
Food & Nutritional Science
Marine Biology
Mathematics
Molecular Biology & Biotechnology
Operations Research & Mathematical Programming
Physics
Plant Science
Risk Management
Statistics
Minor Title: Minor in Actuarial Studies
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Minor in Actuarial Studies aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the basic concepts and methodologies in Actuarial Science. The minor curriculum is designed particularly for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Actuarial Science and to strengthen their confidence and potential in solving mathematical, financial, economical and investment-related problems.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and apply the methods used by actuaries to solve problems of insurance, investment, pension, financial risk management and demography (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop and apply problem-solving skills appropriate to the level of the preliminary education component specified by international actuarial bodies such as the Society of Actuaries (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - FINA1310 Corporate finance (6)
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   - STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   - STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)
   - STAT2901 Probability and statistics: foundations of actuarial science (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   - STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   - STAT3901 Life contingencies (6)
   - STAT3904 Corporate finance for actuarial science (6)
   - STAT3906 Risk theory I (6)
   - STAT3908 Credibility theory and loss distributions (6)
   - STAT3910 Financial economics I (6)
   - STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)
   - STAT4903 Actuarial techniques for general insurance (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title:** Minor in Actuarial Studies  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in:** 2016

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Actuarial Studies aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the basic concepts and methodologies in Actuarial Science. The minor curriculum is designed particularly for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Actuarial Science and to strengthen their confidence and potential in solving mathematical, financial, economical and investment-related problems.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and apply the methods used by actuaries to solve problems of insurance, investment, pension, financial risk management and demography (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop and apply problem-solving skills appropriate to the level of the preliminary education component specified by international actuarial bodies such as the Society of Actuaries (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**
   
   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
   
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   
   - FINA1310 Corporate finance (6)
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   - STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   - STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)
   - STAT2901 Probability and statistics: foundations of actuarial science (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (30 credits)**
   
   **Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)**
   
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   
   - STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   - STAT3901 Life contingencies (6)
   - STAT3904 Corporate finance for actuarial science (6)
   - STAT3906 Risk theory I (6)
   - STAT3908 Credibility theory and loss distributions (6)
   - STAT3910 Financial economics I (6)
   - STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)
   - STAT4903 Actuarial techniques for general insurance (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Actuarial Studies

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Actuarial Studies aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the basic concepts and methodologies in Actuarial Science. The minor curriculum is designed particularly for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Actuarial Science and to strengthen their confidence and potential in solving mathematical, financial, economical and investment-related problems.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and apply the methods used by actuaries to solve problems of insurance, investment, pension, financial risk management and demography (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop and apply problem-solving skills appropriate to the level of the preliminary education component specified by international actuarial bodies such as the Society of Actuaries (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - FINA1310 Corporate finance (6)
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   - STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   - STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)
   - STAT2901 Probability and statistics: foundations of actuarial science (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   - STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   - STAT3901 Life contingencies (6)
   - STAT3904 Corporate finance for actuarial science (6)
   - STAT3906 Risk theory I (6)
   - STAT3908 Credibility theory and loss distributions (6)
   - STAT3910 Financial economics I (6)
   - STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)
   - STAT4903 Actuarial techniques for general insurance (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title
Minor in Actuarial Studies

**Offered to students** 2014

**Admitted to Year 1 in** 2014

### Objectives:
The Minor in Actuarial Studies aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the basic concepts and methodologies in Actuarial Science. The minor curriculum is designed particularly for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Actuarial Science and to strengthen their confidence and potential in solving mathematical, financial, economical and investment-related problems.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1:** understand and apply the methods used by actuaries to solve problems of insurance, investment, pension, financial risk management and demography (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

**PLO 2:** develop and apply problem-solving skills appropriate to the level of the preliminary education component specified by international actuarial bodies such as the Society of Actuaries (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FINA1310</td>
<td>Corporate finance</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2601</td>
<td>Probability and statistics I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2602</td>
<td>Probability and statistics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2605</td>
<td>Demographic and socio-economic statistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2901</td>
<td>Probability and statistics: foundations of actuarial science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT3615</td>
<td>Practical mathematics for investment</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3901</td>
<td>Life contingencies</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3904</td>
<td>Corporate finance for actuarial science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3906</td>
<td>Risk theory I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3908</td>
<td>Credibility theory and loss distributions</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3910</td>
<td>Financial economics I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3911</td>
<td>Financial economics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4903</td>
<td>Actuarial techniques for general insurance</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Actuarial Studies
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Minor in Actuarial Studies aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the basic concepts and methodologies in Actuarial Science. The minor curriculum is designed particularly for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Actuarial Science and to strengthen their confidence and potential in solving mathematical, financial, economical and investment-related problems.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and apply the methods used by actuaries to solve problems of insurance, investment, pension, financial risk management and demography (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop and apply problem-solving skills appropriate to the level of the preliminary education component specified by international actuarial bodies such as the Society of Actuaries (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (42 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FINA1310 Corporate finance (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2901 Probability and statistics: foundations of actuarial science (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2. Advanced level courses (30 credits) |
| Disciplinary Electives (30 credits) |
| At least 30 credits selected from the following courses: |
| STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6) |
| STAT3901 Life contingencies (6) |
| STAT3904 Corporate finance for actuarial science (6) |
| STAT3906 Risk theory I (6) |
| STAT3908 Credibility theory and loss distributions (6) |
| STAT3910 Financial economics I (6) |
| STAT3911 Financial economics II (6) |
| STAT4903 Actuarial techniques for general insurance (6) |

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Minor Title
Minor in Actuarial Studies

### Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2012

### Objectives:
The Minor in Actuarial Studies aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the basic concepts and methodologies in Actuarial Science. The minor curriculum is designed particularly for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Actuarial Science and to strengthen their confidence and potential in solving mathematical, financial, economical and investment-related problems.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1:** understand and apply the methods used by actuaries to solve problems of insurance, investment, pension, financial risk management and demography (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

**PLO 2:** develop and apply problem-solving skills appropriate to the level of the preliminary education component specified by international actuarial bodies such as the Society of Actuaries (by means of coursework and tutorial classes and/or research-based project in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

- FINA1310 Corporate finance (6)
- MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
- STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
- STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
- STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)
- STAT2901 Probability and statistics: foundations of actuarial science (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)**
At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
- STAT3901 Life contingencies (6)
- STAT3904 Corporate finance for actuarial science (6)
- STAT3906 Risk theory I (6)
- STAT3908 Credibility theory and loss distributions (6)
- STAT3910 Financial economics I (6)
- STAT3911 Financial economics II (6)
- STAT4903 Actuarial techniques for general insurance (6)

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Astronomy  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:  
The Minor in Astronomy is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses to allow them to pursue their interests in the subject and to establish connections between the field of astronomy and other science disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and opportunities of field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:  
Major in Astronomy

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (42 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:  
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:  
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Astronomy

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Astronomy is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses to allow them to pursue their interests in the subject and to establish connections between the field of astronomy and other science disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and opportunities of field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Astronomy

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
- PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
- PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)
- PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
- PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
- PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
- PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
- PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
- PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
- PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
- PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
- PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
- PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
- PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Astronomy
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Astronomy is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses to allow them to pursue their interests in the subject and to establish connections between the field of astronomy and other science disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and opportunities of field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Astronomy

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   - PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   - PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)
   - PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
   - PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
   - PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
   - PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
   - PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   - PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
   - PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
   - PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
   - PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
   - PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Astronomy

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Minor in Astronomy is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses to allow them to pursue their interests in the subject and to establish connections between the field of astronomy and other science disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: develop their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and opportunities of field activities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Astronomy

### Required courses (42 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits)**
2. **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
   - PHYS1250: Fundamental physics (6)
   - PHYS1650: Nature of the universe (6)
   - PHYS2265: Modern physics (6)
3. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - PHYS3650: Observational astronomy (6)
       - PHYS3651: The physical universe (6)
       - PHYS3652: Principles of astronomy (6)
       - PHYS4650: Stellar physics (6)
       - PHYS4651: Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
       - PHYS4652: Planetary science (6)
       - PHYS4653: Cosmology (6)
       - PHYS4654: General relativity (6)
       - PHYS4655: Interstellar medium (6)
       - PHYS7650: Stellar atmospheres (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**  
Minor in Astronomy

**Offered to students**  
admitted to Year 1 in 2013

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Astronomy is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses to allow them to pursue their interests in the subject and to establish connections between the field of astronomy and other science disciplines.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and opportunities of field activities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Astronomy

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
   - PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   - PHYS1650 Nature of the universe (6)
   - PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   - Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
       - PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
       - PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
       - PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
       - PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
       - PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
       - PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
       - PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
       - PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
       - PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Astronomy  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

### Objectives:
The Minor in Astronomy is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses to allow them to pursue their interests in the subject and to establish connections between the field of astronomy and other science disciplines.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

1. **PLO 1:** identify and describe astrophysical phenomena with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
2. **PLO 2:** develop their scientific intuition, abilities and techniques to tackle astrophysical problems either theoretical or observational in nature (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, and opportunities of field activities in the curriculum)
3. **PLO 3:** communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Astronomy

#### Required courses (42 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits)**
   - PHYS1250: Fundamentals of physics (6)
   - PHYS1650: Nature of the universe (6)
   - PHYS2265: Modern physics (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - PHYS3650: Observational astronomy (6)
     - PHYS3651: The physical universe (6)
     - PHYS3652: Principles of astronomy (6)
     - PHYS4650: Stellar physics (6)
     - PHYS4651: Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
     - PHYS4652: Planetary science (6)
     - PHYS4653: Cosmology (6)
     - PHYS4654: General relativity (6)
     - PHYS4655: Interstellar medium (6)
     - PHYS7650: Stellar atmospheres (6)

#### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.
2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

#### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Objectives:
The Minor in Biochemistry is designed to provide students from all backgrounds with a multidisciplinary perspective on contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. This minor curriculum incorporates significant flexibility to allow students to select courses that will complement the individual student's Major.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the fundamentals of biochemistry and molecular biology, and apply biochemical knowledge appropriately and effectively (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: integrate knowledge regarding the structure and function of biological molecules and how they come together to form the systems that make up life (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: develop a general interest in biochemistry and recognize the inter-relationship of biochemistry with other disciplines (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Biochemistry

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC1600</td>
<td>Perspectives in biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>Principles of biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOC2600 and BIOL2220 are mutually exclusive.

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3202</td>
<td>Nutritional biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3401</td>
<td>Molecular biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402</td>
<td>Cell biology and cell technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3403</td>
<td>Immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3404</td>
<td>Protein structure and function</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC3601</td>
<td>Basic metabolism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC3604</td>
<td>Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC3605</td>
<td>Sequence bioinformatics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC3606</td>
<td>Molecular medicine</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3202</td>
<td>Nutritional biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3401</td>
<td>Molecular biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402</td>
<td>Cell biology and cell technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3403</td>
<td>Immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3404</td>
<td>Protein structure and function</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4610</td>
<td>Advanced biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4612</td>
<td>Molecular biology of the gene</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC4613</td>
<td>Advanced techniques in biochemistry &amp; molecular biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>'Omics' and systems biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title
Minor in Biochemistry

## Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2016

### Objectives:
The Minor in Biochemistry is designed to provide students from all backgrounds with a multidisciplinary perspective on contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. This minor curriculum incorporates significant flexibility to allow students to select courses that will complement the individual student's Major.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: describe the fundamentals of biochemistry and molecular biology, and apply biochemical knowledge appropriately and effectively (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: integrate knowledge regarding the structure and function of biological molecules and how they come together to form the systems that make up life (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: develop a general interest in biochemistry and recognize the inter-relationship of biochemistry with other disciplines (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Biochemistry

### Required courses (36 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

#### Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

- **BIOC1600**: Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
- **BIOL1110**: From molecules to cells (6)
- **BIOC2600**: Basic biochemistry (6)
- **BIOL2220**: Principles of biochemistry (6)

Take either BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOC2600 and BIOL2220 are mutually exclusive.

#### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

#### Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)

At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:

- **BIOC3601**: Basic metabolism (6)
- **BIOC3604**: Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
- **BIOC3605**: Sequence bioinformatics (6)
- **BIOC3606**: Molecular medicine (6)
- **BIOL3202**: Nutritional biochemistry (6)
- **BIOL3401**: Molecular biology (6)
- **BIOL3402**: Cell biology and cell technology (6)
- **BIOL3403**: Immunology (6)
- **BIOL3404**: Protein structure and function (6)
- **BIOC4610**: Advanced biochemistry (6)
- **BIOC4612**: Molecular biology of the gene (6)
- **BIOC4613**: Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)
- **BIOL4417**: 'Omics' and systems biology (6)
- **CHEM4444**: Chemical biology (6)

### Notes:

1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Biochemistry
Offered to students: admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Biochemistry is designed to provide students from all backgrounds with a multidisciplinary perspective on contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. This minor curriculum incorporates significant flexibility to allow students to select courses that will complement the individual student’s Major.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the fundamentals of biochemistry and molecular biology, and apply biochemical knowledge appropriately and effectively (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: integrate knowledge regarding the structure and function of biological molecules and how they come together to form the systems that make up life (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: develop a general interest in biochemistry and recognize the inter-relationship of biochemistry with other disciplines (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Biochemistry

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

Take either BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOC2600 and BIOL2220 are mutually exclusive.

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)
BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology (6)
CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course (“disciplinary core”) in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Objectives:
The Minor in Biochemistry is designed to provide students from all backgrounds with a multidisciplinary perspective on contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. This minor curriculum incorporates significant flexibility to allow students to select courses that will complement the individual student's Major.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe the fundamentals of biochemistry and molecular biology, and apply biochemical knowledge appropriately and effectively (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: integrate knowledge regarding the structure and function of biological molecules and how they come together to form the systems that make up life (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: develop a general interest in biochemistry and recognize the inter-relationship of biochemistry with other disciplines (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Biochemistry

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
   - BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
   - BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
   - BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
   - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   - BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   - BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   - BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
   - BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
   - BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
   - BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)
   - BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology (6)
   - CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor in Biochemistry

**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013**

### Objectives:
The Minor in Biochemistry is designed to provide students from all backgrounds with a multidisciplinary perspective on contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. This minor curriculum incorporates significant flexibility to allow students to select courses that will complement the individual student's Major.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: describe the fundamentals of biochemistry and molecular biology, and apply biochemical knowledge appropriately and effectively (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: integrate knowledge regarding the structure and function of biological molecules and how they come together to form the systems that make up life (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: develop a general interest in biochemistry and recognize the inter-relationship of biochemistry with other disciplines (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Biochemistry

### Required courses (36 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**
   - Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
     - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
       - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
       - BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
       - BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
       - BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
       - BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
       - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
       - BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
       - BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
       - BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
       - BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
       - BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
       - BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
       - BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)
       - BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology (6)
       - CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Objectives:
The Minor in Biochemistry is designed to provide students from all backgrounds with a multidisciplinary perspective on contemporary biochemistry and molecular biology. This minor curriculum incorporates significant flexibility to allow students to select courses that will complement the individual student's Major.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1:** describe the fundamentals of biochemistry and molecular biology, and apply biochemical knowledge appropriately and effectively (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 2:** integrate knowledge regarding the structure and function of biological molecules and how they come together to form the systems that make up life (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 3:** develop a general interest in biochemistry and recognize the inter-relationship of biochemistry with other disciplines (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Biochemistry

### Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   
   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
   
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOC1600 Perspectives in biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   
   **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
   
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOC3601 Basic metabolism (6)
   - BIOC3604 Essential techniques in biochemistry and molecular biology (6)
   - BIOC3605 Sequence bioinformatics (6)
   - BIOC3606 Molecular medicine (6)
   - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   - BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   - BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   - BIOL3404 Protein structure and function (6)
   - BIOC4610 Advanced biochemistry (6)
   - BIOC4612 Molecular biology of the gene (6)
   - BIOC4613 Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6)
   - BIOL4417 'Omics' and systems biology (6)
   - CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**: Minor in Chemistry  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2017

### Objectives:
The Minor in Chemistry aims to provide students with fundamental knowledge and skills of chemistry. The minor curriculum is flexible. Students of different majors in science and other disciplines will be able to select courses that complement their major areas of study as well as enhance their knowledge in chemistry.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and apply the basic concepts of chemistry (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply chemistry concepts in other subjects (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: transfer the basic concepts to complement their major area of study (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Chemistry

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
- CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
- CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
- At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
  - CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
  - CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
  - CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
  - CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
  - CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6)

**CHEM2241 and CHEM2442 are mutually exclusive.**

#### 2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
- At least 18 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

**List A**
- CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
- CHEM3142 Chemical process industries and analysis (6)
- CHEM3143 Introduction to materials chemistry (6)
- CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)
- CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
- CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
- CHEM3243 Introductory instrumental chemical analysis (6)
- CHEM3244 Analytical techniques for pharmacy students (6)
- CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
- CHEM3342 Bioinorganic chemistry (6)
- CHEM3344 Organic chemistry II (6)
- CHEM3345 Organic chemistry of biomolecules (6)
- CHEM3346 Organic chemistry laboratory (6)
- CHEM3347 Integrated laboratory (6)
- CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)
- CHEM3542 Physical chemistry: Statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
- CHEM3999 Directed studies in chemistry (6)
- CHEM4142 Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
- CHEM4143 Interfacial science and technology (6)
- CHEM4144 Advanced materials (6)
- CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
- CHEM4147 Supramolecular chemistry (6)
- CHEM4241 Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
- CHEM4242 Analytical chemistry (6)
- CHEM4341 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
- CHEM4342 Organometallic chemistry (6)
- CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
- CHEM4443 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
- CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)
- CHEM4542 Computational chemistry (6)
- CHEM4543 Advanced physical chemistry (6)
- CHEM4544 Electrochemical science and technology (6)
- CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research (6)
- CHEM4911 Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6)
Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title
Minor in Chemistry

## Objectives:
The Minor in Chemistry aims to provide students with fundamental knowledge and skills of chemistry. The minor curriculum is flexible. Students of different majors in science and other disciplines will be able to select courses that complement their major areas of study as well as enhance their knowledge in chemistry.

## Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and apply the basic concepts of chemistry (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply chemistry concepts in other subjects (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: transfer the basic concepts to complement their major area of study (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

## Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Chemistry

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
- CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
- CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6)

#### Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
- CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
- CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
- CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
- CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
- CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
- CHEM2541 Introduction to physical chemistry (6)

#### CHEM2441 and CHEM2442 are mutually exclusive.

### 2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)

#### Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
At least 18 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

**List A**
- CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
- CHEM3142 Chemical process industries and analysis (6)
- CHEM3143 Introduction to materials chemistry (6)
- CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)
- CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
- CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
- CHEM3243 Introductory instrumental chemical analysis (6)
- CHEM3244 Analytical techniques for pharmacy students (6)
- CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
- CHEM3342 Bioinorganic chemistry (6)
- CHEM3344 Organic chemistry II (6)
- CHEM3345 Organic chemistry of biomolecules (6)
- CHEM3346 Organic chemistry laboratory (6)
- CHEM3445 Integrated laboratory (6)
- CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)
- CHEM3542 Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
- CHEM3999 Directed studies in chemistry (6)
- CHEM4142 Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
- CHEM4143 Interfacial science and technology (6)
- CHEM4144 Advanced materials (6)
- CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
- CHEM4147 Supramolecular chemistry (6)
- CHEM4241 Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
- CHEM4242 Analytical chemistry (6)
- CHEM4341 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
- CHEM4342 Organometallic chemistry (6)
- CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
- CHEM4443 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
- CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)
- CHEM4542 Computational chemistry (6)
- CHEM4543 Advanced physical chemistry (6)
- CHEM4544 Electrochemical science and technology (6)
- CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research (6)
- CHEM4911
Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title | Minor in Chemistry  
Offered to students | admitted to Year 1 in 2015  

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Chemistry aims to provide students with fundamental knowledge and skills of chemistry. The minor curriculum is flexible. Students of different majors in science and other disciplines will be able to select courses that complement their major areas of study as well as enhance their knowledge in chemistry.  

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:  
- **PLO 1:** understand and apply the basic concepts of chemistry (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 2:** apply chemistry concepts in other subjects (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 3:** transfer the basic concepts to complement their major area of study (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Chemistry  

**Required courses (42 credits)**  
1. Introductory level courses (24 credits)  
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**  
   - CHEM1042: General chemistry I (6)  
   - CHEM1043: General chemistry II (6)  
   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**  
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:  
   - CHEM2041: Principles of chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM2241: Analytical chemistry I (6)  
   - CHEM2341: Inorganic chemistry I (6)  
   - CHEM2441: Organic chemistry I (6)  
   - CHEM2442: Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM2541: Introductory physical chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM2441 and CHEM2442 are mutually exclusive.  
2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)  
   **Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**  
   At least 18 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:  
   **List A**  
   - CHEM3141: Environmental chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM3142: Chemical process industries and analysis (6)  
   - CHEM3143: Introduction to materials chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM3146: Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)  
   - CHEM3241: Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)  
   - CHEM3242: Food and water analysis (6)  
   - CHEM3243: Introductory instrumental chemical analysis (6)  
   - CHEM3244: Analytical techniques for pharmacy students (6)  
   - CHEM3341: Inorganic chemistry II (6)  
   - CHEM3342: Bioinorganic chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM3441: Organic chemistry II (6)  
   - CHEM3442: Organic chemistry of biomolecules (6)  
   - CHEM3443: Organic chemistry laboratory (6)  
   - CHEM3445: Integrated laboratory (6)  
   - CHEM3541: Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM3542: Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)  
   - CHEM3999: Directed studies in chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4142: Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)  
   - CHEM4143: Interfacial science and technology (6)  
   - CHEM4144: Advanced materials (6)  
   - CHEM4145: Medicinal chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4147: Supramolecular chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4241: Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)  
   - CHEM4242: Analytical chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4341: Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4342: Organometallic chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4441: Advanced organic chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4443: Integrated organic synthesis (6)  
   - CHEM4444: Chemical biology (6)  
   - CHEM4542: Computational chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4543: Advanced physical chemistry (6)  
   - CHEM4544: Electrochemical science and technology (6)  
   - CHEM4910: Chemistry literacy and research (6)  
   - CHEM4911:
Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4966</td>
<td>HKUtopia</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4999</td>
<td>Chemistry internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Chemistry project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**  
Minor in Chemistry

**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**  
2014

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Chemistry aims to provide students with fundamental knowledge and skills of chemistry. The minor curriculum is flexible. Students of different majors in science and other disciplines will be able to select courses that complement their major areas of study as well as enhance their knowledge in chemistry.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** understand and apply the basic concepts of chemistry (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** apply chemistry concepts in other subjects (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** transfer the basic concepts to complement their major area of study (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Chemistry

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1042</td>
<td>General chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2041</td>
<td>Principles of chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2241</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2341</td>
<td>Inorganic chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2441</td>
<td>Organic chemistry I (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2442</td>
<td>Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHEM2441 and CHEM2442 are mutually exclusive.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2541</td>
<td>Introductory physical chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHEM2541 [ previous title: Physical chemistry I (6) ]**

#### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

**List A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3141</td>
<td>Environmental chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3142</td>
<td>Chemical process industries and analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3143</td>
<td>Introduction to materials chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3146</td>
<td>Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3241</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3242</td>
<td>Food and water analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3243</td>
<td>Introductory instrumental chemical analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3244</td>
<td>Analytical techniques for pharmacy students (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3341</td>
<td>Inorganic chemistry II (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3342</td>
<td>Bioinorganic chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3441</td>
<td>Organic chemistry II (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3442</td>
<td>Organic chemistry of biomolecules (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3443</td>
<td>Organic chemistry laboratory (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3445</td>
<td>Integrated laboratory (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3541</td>
<td>Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3542</td>
<td>Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (5)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4142</td>
<td>Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4143</td>
<td>Interfacial science and technology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4144</td>
<td>Advanced materials (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4145</td>
<td>Medicinal chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4147</td>
<td>Supramolecular chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4241</td>
<td>Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4242</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4341</td>
<td>Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4342</td>
<td>Organometallic chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4441</td>
<td>Advanced organic chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4443</td>
<td>Integrated organic synthesis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4444</td>
<td>Chemical biology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4542</td>
<td>Computational chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4543</td>
<td>Advanced physical chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4544</td>
<td>Electrochemical science and technology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4910</td>
<td>Chemistry literacy and research (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4911</td>
<td>Science Minors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minor Title</th>
<th>Minor in Chemistry</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offered to students</td>
<td>2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>admitted to Year 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Chemistry aims to provide students with fundamental knowledge and skills of chemistry. The minor curriculum is flexible. Students of different majors in science and other disciplines will be able to select courses that complement their major areas of study as well as enhance their knowledge in chemistry.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and apply the basic concepts of chemistry (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply chemistry concepts in other subjects (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: transfer the basic concepts to complement their major area of study (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
- Major in Chemistry

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)

- **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
  - CHEM1042: General chemistry I (6)  
    [previous title: General chemistry (6)]

- **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
  - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
    - CHEM2041: Principles of chemistry (6)
    - CHEM2241: Analytical chemistry I (6)
    - CHEM2341: Inorganic chemistry I (6)
    - CHEM2441: Organic chemistry I (6)
    - CHEM2442: Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

- **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
  - At least 24 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

  **List A**
  - CHEM3141: Environmental chemistry (6)
  - CHEM3142: Chemical process industries and analysis (6)
  - CHEM3143: Introduction to materials chemistry (6)
  - CHEM3146: Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)
  - CHEM3241: Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
  - CHEM3242: Food and water analysis (6)
  - CHEM3243: Introductory instrumental chemical analysis (6)
  - CHEM3244: Analytical techniques for pharmacy students (6)
  - CHEM3341: Inorganic chemistry II (6)
  - CHEM3342: Bioinorganic chemistry (6)
  - CHEM3441: Organic chemistry II (6)
  - CHEM3442: Organic chemistry of biomolecules (6)
  - CHEM3443: Organic chemistry laboratory (6)
  - CHEM3445: Integrated laboratory (6)
  - CHEM3541: Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)

  [previous title: Physical chemistry II: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)]
  - CHEM3542: Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
  - CHEM3999: Directed studies in chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4142: Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
  - CHEM4143: Interfacial science and technology (6)
  - CHEM4144: Advanced materials (6)
  - CHEM4145: Medicinal chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4147: Supramolecular chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4241: Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
  - CHEM4242: Analytical chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4341: Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4342: Organometallic chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4441: Advanced organic chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4443: Integrated organic synthesis (6)
  - CHEM4444: Chemical biology (6)
  - CHEM4541: Physical chemistry III: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
  - CHEM4542: Computational chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4543: Advanced physical chemistry (6)
  - CHEM4544: Electrochemical science and technology (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4910</td>
<td>Chemistry literacy and research (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4911</td>
<td>Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4966</td>
<td>Chemistry internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM4999</td>
<td>Chemistry project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Chemistry

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Minor in Chemistry aims to provide students with fundamental knowledge and skills of chemistry. The minor curriculum is flexible. Students of different majors in science and other disciplines will be able to select courses that complement their major areas of study as well as enhance their knowledge in chemistry.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and apply the basic concepts of chemistry (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply chemistry concepts in other subjects (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: transfer the basic concepts to complement their major area of study (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Chemistry

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   - CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)  
     [previous title: General chemistry (6)]
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
     - CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
     - CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
     - CHEM2341 Inorganic chemistry I (6)
     - CHEM2441 Organic chemistry I (6)
     - CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)  
       CHEM2441 and CHEM2442 are mutually exclusive.
     - CHEM2541 Introductory physical chemistry (6)  
       [previous title: Physical chemistry I (6)]

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   - At least 24 credits of advanced level Chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

List A
   - CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3142 Chemical process industries and analysis (6)
   - CHEM3143 Introduction to materials chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3146 Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques (6)
   - CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   - CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
   - CHEM3243 Introductory instrumental chemical analysis (6)
   - CHEM3244 Analytical techniques for pharmacy students (6)
   - CHEM3341 Inorganic chemistry II (6)
   - CHEM3342 Bioinorganic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6)
   - CHEM3442 Organic chemistry of biomolecules (6)
   - CHEM3443 Organic chemistry laboratory (6)
   - CHEM3445 Integrated laboratory (6)
   - CHEM3541 Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)  
     [previous title: Physical chemistry II: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6)]
   - CHEM3542 Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
   - CHEM3999 Directed studies in chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4142 Symmetry, group theory and applications (6)
   - CHEM4143 Interfacial science and technology (6)
   - CHEM4144 Advanced materials (6)
   - CHEM4145 Medicinal chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4147 Supramolecular chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4241 Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6)
   - CHEM4242 Analytical chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4341 Advanced inorganic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4342 Organometallic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4443 Integrated organic synthesis (6)
   - CHEM4444 Chemical biology (6)
   - CHEM4541 Physical chemistry III: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6)
   - CHEM4542 Computational chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4543 Advanced physical chemistry (6)
   - CHEM4544 Electrochemical science and technology (6)
CHEM4910 Chemistry literacy and research (6)
CHEM4911 Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6)
CHEM4966 Chemistry internship (6)
CHEM4999 Chemistry project (12)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Objective:**
The Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in both computational mathematics and financial mathematics. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from computational sciences and financial industry.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:
- **PLO 1:** understand and describe fundamental concepts in computational and financial mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Major in Mathematics
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (42 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1011 - University mathematics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101 - Linear algebra I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211 - Multivariable calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601 - Numerical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906 - Financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408 - Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3603 - Probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904 - Introduction to optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911 - Game theory and strategy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602 - Scientific computing (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907 - Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217 - Topics in financial mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224 - Topics in advanced probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in both computational mathematics and financial mathematics. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from computational sciences and financial industry.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- PLO 1: understand and describe fundamental concepts in computational and financial mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Minor in Mathematics  
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (42 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3603 Probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224 Topics in advanced probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course (“disciplinary core”) in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title

Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in both computational mathematics and financial mathematics. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from computational sciences and financial industry.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:
PLO 1 : understand and describe fundamental concepts in computational and financial mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 2 : apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 3 : communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)
Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.
2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**  
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

**Offered to students**  
admitted to Year 1 in 2014

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in both computational mathematics and financial mathematics. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from computational sciences and financial industry.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and describe fundamental concepts in computational and financial mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
- Major in Mathematics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - MATH1013  
       University mathematics II (6)
     - MATH2101  
       Linear algebra I (6)
     - MATH2211  
       Multivariable calculus (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
     - MATH3601  
       Numerical analysis (6)
     - MATH3906  
       Financial calculus (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
     - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
       - MATH3408  
         Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
       - MATH3603  
         Probability theory (6)
       - MATH3904  
         Introduction to optimization (6)
       - MATH3911  
         Game theory and strategy (6)
       - MATH4602  
         Scientific computing (6)
       - MATH4907  
         Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Offered to students: admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in both computational mathematics and financial mathematics. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from computational sciences and financial industry.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe fundamental concepts in computational and financial mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics
Minor in Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
   - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   - MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
   - MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   - MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
   - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   - MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
   - MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
   - MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

## Objectives:
The Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in both computational mathematics and financial mathematics. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from computational sciences and financial industry.

## Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

1. **PLO 1**: understand and describe fundamental concepts in computational and financial mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
2. **PLO 2**: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
3. **PLO 3**: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

## Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Mathematics
- Minor in Mathematics

## Required courses (42 credits)

### 1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101</td>
<td>Linear algebra I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601</td>
<td>Numerical analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906</td>
<td>Financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3603</td>
<td>Probability theory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904</td>
<td>Introduction to optimization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911</td>
<td>Game theory and strategy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


## Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Earth Sciences

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Minor in Earth Sciences aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the fundamental structure, process and history of the Earth. The minor curriculum is designed particularly to provide students from different majors the flexibility to select courses to enhance their interests in Earth Sciences or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and describe the methods used by the Earth scientists to study the Earth systems (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: understand and describe the basic nomenclature used in Earth Sciences (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: discuss and comment critically issues related to the Earth Sciences in media reports (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Earth System Science
Major in Geology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (36 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits) |
| Disciplinary Electives (24 credits) |
| At least 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC3XXX or EASC4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A: |
| List A |
| EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6) |
| EASC3402 Petrology (6) |
| EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6) |
| EASC3404 Structural geology (6) |
| EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6) |
| EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6) |
| EASC3408 Geophysics (6) |
| EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6) |
| EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6) |
| EASC3412 Earth resources (6) |
| EASC3413 Engineering geology (6) |
| EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6) |
| EASC3415 Meteorology (6) |
| EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6) |
| EASC3417 Earth through time (6) |
| EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6) |
| EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6) |
| EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6) |
| EASC4407 Regional geology (6) |
| EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6) |
| EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6) |
| EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6) |
| EASC4966 Earth sciences internship (6) |
| EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12) |

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Earth Sciences
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Earth Sciences aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the fundamental structure, process and history of the Earth. The minor curriculum is designed particularly to provide students from different majors the flexibility to select courses to enhance their interests in Earth Sciences or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe the methods used by the Earth scientists to study the Earth systems (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the basic nomenclature used in Earth Sciences (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: discuss and comment critically issues related to the Earth Sciences in media reports (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Earth System Science
Major in Geology

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
- EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
- EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
- EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC3XXX or EASC4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

List A
- EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
- EASC3021 Petrology (6)
- EASC3031 Sedimentary environments (6)
- EASC3041 Structural geology (6)
- EASC3051 Environmental remote sensing (6)
- EASC3061 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
- EASC3081 Geophysics (6)
- EASC3091 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
- EASC3101 Hydrogeology (6)
- EASC3121 Earth resources (6)
- EASC3131 Engineering geology (6)
- EASC3141 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
- EASC3151 Meteorology (6)
- EASC3161 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
- EASC3171 Earth through time (6)
- EASC3991 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
- EASC403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
- EASC406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
- EASC407 Regional geology (6)
- EASC408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
- EASC4111 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)
- EASC455 Integrated field studies (6)
- EASC466 Earth sciences internship (6)
- EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title:** Minor in Earth Sciences  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in:** 2015

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Earth Sciences aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the fundamental structure, process and history of the Earth. The minor curriculum is designed particularly to provide students from different majors the flexibility to select courses to enhance their interests in Earth Sciences or to complement their major of study.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe the methods used by the Earth scientists to study the Earth systems (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the basic nomenclature used in Earth Sciences (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: discuss and comment critically issues related to the Earth Sciences in media reports (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Major in Earth System Science  
Major in Geology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (36 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC3XXX or EASC4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**List A**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EASC3020</td>
<td>Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3402</td>
<td>Petrology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3403</td>
<td>Sedimentary environments (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3404</td>
<td>Structural geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3405</td>
<td>Environmental remote sensing (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3406</td>
<td>Reconstruction of past climate (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3408</td>
<td>Geophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3409</td>
<td>Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3410</td>
<td>Hydrogeology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3412</td>
<td>Earth resources (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3413</td>
<td>Engineering geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3414</td>
<td>Soil and rock mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3415</td>
<td>Meteorology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3416</td>
<td>Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3417</td>
<td>Earth through time (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in earth sciences (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4403</td>
<td>Biogeochemical cycles (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4406</td>
<td>Earth dynamics &amp; global tectonics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4407</td>
<td>Regional geology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4408</td>
<td>Special topics in earth sciences (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4911</td>
<td>Earth system: contemporary issues (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4955</td>
<td>Integrated field studies (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4966</td>
<td>Earth sciences internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC4999</td>
<td>Earth sciences project (12)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Earth Sciences  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Minor in Earth Sciences aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the fundamental structure, process and history of the Earth. The minor curriculum is designed particularly to provide students from different majors the flexibility to select courses to enhance their interests in Earth Sciences or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and describe the methods used by the Earth scientists to study the Earth systems (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: understand and describe the basic nomenclature used in Earth Sciences (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: discuss and comment critically issues related to the Earth Sciences in media reports (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Earth System Science  
Major in Geology

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - **EASC1401**: Blue Planet (6)
   - **EASC1402**: Principles of geology (6)
   - **EASC2401**: Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC3XXX or EASC4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:
   
   **List A**
   - **EASC3020**: Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
   - **EASC3402**: Petrology (6)
   - **EASC3403**: Sedimentary environments (6)
   - **EASC3404**: Structural geology (6)
   - **EASC3405**: Environmental remote sensing (6)
   - **EASC3406**: Reconstruction of past climate (6)
   - **EASC3408**: Geophysics (6)
   - **EASC3409**: Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
   - **EASC3410**: Hydrogeology (6)
   - **EASC3412**: Earth resources (6)
   - **EASC3413**: Engineering geology (6)
   - **EASC3414**: Soil and rock mechanics (6)
   - **EASC3415**: Meteorology (6)
   - **EASC3416**: Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
   - **EASC3417**: Earth through time (6)
   - **EASC3999**: Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
   - **EASC4403**: Biogeochemical cycles (6)
   - **EASC4406**: Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
   - **EASC4407**: Regional geology (6)
   - **EASC4408**: Special topics in earth sciences (6)
   - **EASC4911**: Earth system: contemporary issues (6)
   - **EASC4955**: Integrated field studies (6)
   - **EASC4966**: Earth sciences internship (6)
   - **EASC4999**: Earth sciences project (12)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Earth Sciences

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Minor in Earth Sciences aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the fundamental structure, process and history of the Earth. The minor curriculum is designed particularly to provide students from different majors the flexibility to select courses to enhance their interests in Earth Sciences or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and describe the methods used by the Earth scientists to study the Earth systems (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: understand and describe the basic nomenclature used in Earth Sciences (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: discuss and comment critically issues related to the Earth Sciences in media reports (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Earth System Science
- Major in Geology

### Required courses (36 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
     - EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
     - EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
     - EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   - At least 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC3XXX or EASC4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:
     - **List A**
       - EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
       - EASC3402 Petrology (6)
       - EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
       - EASC3404 Structural geology (6)
       - EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
       - EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
       - EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
       - EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
       - EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
       - EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
       - EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)
       - EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
       - EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
       - EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
       - EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
       - EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
       - EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
       - EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
       - EASC4407 Regional geology (6)
       - EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
       - EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)
       - EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)
       - EASC4966 Earth sciences internship (6)
       - EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

Notes:
- Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
- Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Earth Sciences
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Minor in Earth Sciences aims to provide interested students with an introduction to the fundamental structure, process and history of the Earth. The minor curriculum is designed particularly to provide students from different majors the flexibility to select courses to enhance their interests in Earth Sciences or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe the methods used by the Earth scientists to study the Earth systems (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 2: understand and describe the basic nomenclature used in Earth Sciences (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)
PLO 3: discuss and comment critically issues related to the Earth Sciences in media reports (by means to coursework, tutorial classes and field-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Earth System Science
Major in Geology

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   - EASC1402 Principles of geology (6)
   - EASC2401 Fluid/solid interactions in earth processes (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits of advanced level Earth Sciences courses (EASC3XXX or EASC4XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:
   - List A:
     - EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
     - EASC3402 Petrology (6)
     - EASC3403 Sedimentary environments (6)
     - EASC3404 Structural geology (6)
     - EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
     - EASC3406 Reconstruction of past climate (6)
     - EASC3408 Geophysics (6)
     - EASC3409 Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6)
     - EASC3410 Hydrogeology (6)
     - EASC3412 Earth resources (6)
     - EASC3413 Engineering geology (6)
     - EASC3414 Soil and rock mechanics (6)
     - EASC3415 Meteorology (6)
     - EASC3416 Advanced geochemistry and geochronology (6)
     - EASC3417 Earth through time (6)
     - EASC3999 Directed studies in earth sciences (6)
     - EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6)
     - EASC4406 Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6)
     - EASC4407 Regional geology (6)
     - EASC4408 Special topics in earth sciences (6)
     - EASC4911 Earth system: contemporary issues (6)
     - EASC4955 Integrated field studies (6)
     - EASC4966 Earth sciences internship (6)
     - EASC4999 Earth sciences project (12)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
This Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. It aims to allow students to learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region, and the conservation challenges that will need to be addressed in a rapidly-changing world. Students will be able to build upon this basic knowledge developed at the introductory level by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, as well as traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate and describe the importance of ecology and biodiversity, and the importance of the variety of life to humans (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the impacts of environmental change and the causes and consequences of biodiversity loss (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appreciate and describe the ecological principles underlying different policies and plans for biodiversity conservation and sustainable development in Hong Kong and elsewhere (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Ecology & Biodiversity

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)
   BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)
   BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
   BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
   BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6)
   BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)
   BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)
   BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Minor Title
Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

### Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2016

### Objectives:
This Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. It aims to allow students to learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region, and the conservation challenges that will need to be addressed in a rapidly-changing world. Students will be able to build upon this basic knowledge developed at the introductory level by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, as well as traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PLO</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PLO 1</td>
<td>appreciate and describe the importance of ecology and biodiversity, and the importance of the variety of life to humans (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLO 2</td>
<td>understand and describe the impacts of environmental change and the causes and consequences of biodiversity loss (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLO 3</td>
<td>appreciate and describe the ecological principles underlying different policies and plans for biodiversity conservation and sustainable development in Hong Kong and elsewhere (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Ecology & Biodiversity

### Required courses (36 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
- **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
  - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
  - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
- **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
  - BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)
  - BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
  - BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
  - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6) [previous title: Conservation ecology (6)]
  - BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)
  - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
  - BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
  - BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6) [previous title: Terrestrial ecology (6)]
  - BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
  - BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)
  - BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)
  - BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**  Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity  
**Offered to students**  
admitted to Year 1 in  
2015  

**Objectives:**  
This Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. It aims to allow students to learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region, and the conservation challenges that will need to be addressed in a rapidly-changing world. Students will be able to build upon this basic knowledge developed at the introductory level by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, as well as traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.  

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:  

**PLO 1** : appreciate and describe the importance of ecology and biodiversity, and the importance of the variety of life to humans (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  

**PLO 2** : understand and describe the impacts of environmental change and the causes and consequences of biodiversity loss (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  

**PLO 3** : appreciate and describe the ecological principles underlying different policies and plans for biodiversity conservation and sustainable development in Hong Kong and elsewhere (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Ecology & Biodiversity  

**Required courses (36 credits)**  
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)  
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**  
   - BIOL1309  Evolutionary diversity (6)  
   - BIOL2306  Ecology and evolution (6)  

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)  
   **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**  
   - BIOL3101  Animal behaviour (6)  
   - BIOL3200  Animal behaviour (6)  
   - BIOL3301  Marine biology (6)  
   - BIOL3302  Systematics and phylogenetics (6)  
   - BIOL3303  Conservation biology (6)  
   - BIOL3313  Freshwater ecology (6)  
   - BIOL3314  Plant structure and evolution (6)  
   - BIOL3318  Experimental intertidal ecology (6)  
   - BIOL3319  Tropical terrestrial ecology (6)  
   - BIOL3320  The biology of marine mammals (6)  
   - BIOL3419  Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)  
   - BIOL4301  Fish and fisheries (6)  
   - BIOL4302  Environmental impact assessment (6)  
   - BIOL4303  Animal behaviour (6)  

**Notes:**  
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.  

**Remarks:**  
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
This Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. It aims to allow students to learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region, and the conservation challenges that will need to be addressed in a rapidly-changing world. Students will be able to build upon this basic knowledge developed at the introductory level by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, as well as traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate and describe the importance of ecology and biodiversity, and the importance of the variety of life to humans (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the impacts of environmental change and the causes and consequences of biodiversity loss (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appreciate and describe the ecological principles underlying different policies and plans for biodiversity conservation and sustainable development in Hong Kong and elsewhere (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Ecology & Biodiversity

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   - BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)
     Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.
   - BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   - BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   - BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)
   - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
   - BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
   - BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6)
     [previous title: Terrestrial ecology (6)]
   - BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
   - BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)
   - BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)
   - BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)
     Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.
   - BIOL4303 Animal behaviour (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
This Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. It aims to allow students to learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region, and the conservation challenges that will need to be addressed in a rapidly-changing world. Students will be able to build upon this basic knowledge developed at the introductory level by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, as well as traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate and describe the importance of ecology and biodiversity, and the importance of the variety of life to humans (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the impacts of environmental change and the causes and consequences of biodiversity loss (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appreciate and describe the ecological principles underlying different policies and plans for biodiversity conservation and sustainable development in Hong Kong and elsewhere (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Ecology & Biodiversity

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   - BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)
     Take either BIOL3101 or BIOL4303 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3101 and BIOL4303 are mutually exclusive.
   - BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   - BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)
   - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   - BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)
   - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
   - BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
   - BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6) [previous title: Terrestrial ecology (6)]
   - BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
   - BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)
   - BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)
   - BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)
   - BIOL4303 Animal behaviour (6) [previous title: Conservation ecology (6)]

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity
Offered to students: 2012
admitted to Year 1 in

Objectives:
This Minor in Ecology & Biodiversity is an ideal introduction to the natural world, the species and ecosystems it comprises and the biological rules it follows. It aims to allow students to learn about general ecological principles and the local flora and fauna of the region, and the conservation challenges that will need to be addressed in a rapidly-changing world. Students will be able to build upon this basic knowledge developed at the introductory level by selecting from among a wide range of courses that offer learning opportunities through practical and field work, as well as traditional and virtual teaching, in more specialized areas of ecology and biodiversity.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate and describe the importance of ecology and biodiversity, and the importance of the variety of life to humans (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the impacts of environmental change and the causes and consequences of biodiversity loss (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appreciate and describe the ecological principles underlying different policies and plans for biodiversity conservation and sustainable development in Hong Kong and elsewhere (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Ecology & Biodiversity

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (36 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3101 Animal behaviour (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3302 Systematics and phylogenetics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4303 Animal behaviour (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Minor Title
Minor in Environmental Science

### Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2017

### Objectives:
The Minor in Environmental Science aims to provide students with an introduction to some complex environmental issues. Students will gain ecological and physical knowledge of the environment, become literate in issues related to environmental sustainability, monitoring and management, and be able to explore interdisciplinary solutions to these problems. This training will help students understand certain aspects of the environment and possible ways to solving environmental problems which will be useful to students to enhance their career prospects.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1**: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 2**: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 3**: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 4**: gain skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods (by means of field/laboratory/team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Environmental Science

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
**Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
- ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1 & 2):
- CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
- CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
- CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
- CHEM2441 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
- EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6)
- EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
- EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)
- ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
- ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
- ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
**Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
- ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
- BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
- BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)
- CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
- CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
- CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
- EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
- EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
- ENVS3006 Environmental radiation (6)
- ENVS3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
- ENVS3010 Sustainable energy and environment (6)
- ENVS3019 Urban ecology (6)
- ENVS3020 Global change ecology (6)
- ENVS3042 Pollution (6)
- ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
- ENVS4110 Environmental remediation (6)

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title:** Minor in Environmental Science  
**Offered to students:** admitted to Year 1 in 2016

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Environmental Science aims to provide students with an introduction to some complex environmental issues. Students will gain ecological and physical knowledge of the environment, become literate in issues related to environmental sustainability, monitoring and management, and be able to explore interdisciplinary solutions to these problems. This training will help students understand certain aspects of the environment and possible ways to solving environmental problems which will be useful to students to enhance their career prospects.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4:** gain skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Major in Environmental Science

### Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
   - ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)

   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
   - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1 & 2):
     - CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
     - CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
     - CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
     - CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
     - EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6)
     - EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
     - EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)
     - ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
     - ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
     - ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
   - ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)

   **Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
   - At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
     - BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
     - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
     - BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)
     - CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
     - CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
     - CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
     - EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
     - EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
     - ENV33006 Environmental radiation (6)
     - ENV33007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
     - ENV33010 Sustainable energy and environment (6)
     - ENV33019 Urban ecology (6)
     - ENV33020 Global change ecology (6)
     - ENV33042 Pollution (6)
     - ENV3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
     - ENV34110 Environmental remediation (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Environmental Science  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Environmental Science aims to provide students with an introduction to some complex environmental issues. Students will gain ecological and physical knowledge of the environment, become literate in issues related to environmental sustainability, monitoring and management, and be able to explore interdisciplinary solutions to these problems. This training will help students understand certain aspects of the environment and possible ways to solving environmental problems which will be useful to students to enhance their career prospects.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

1. **PLO 1**: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

2. **PLO 2**: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

3. **PLO 3**: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

4. **PLO 4**: gain skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods (by means of field/laboratory/team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Environmental Science

### Required courses (42 credits)

**1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS1401</td>
<td>Introduction to environmental science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1042</td>
<td>General chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2041</td>
<td>Principles of chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2241</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry I</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2442</td>
<td>Fundamentals of organic chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1020</td>
<td>Introduction to climate science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2404</td>
<td>Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS1301</td>
<td>Environmental life science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS2001</td>
<td>Methods in environmental science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1 & 2):

- BIOL3110  Environmental toxicology (6)
- BIOL3303  Conservation biology (6)
- BIOL4302  Environmental impact assessment (6)
- CHEM3141  Environmental chemistry (6)
- CHEM3241  Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
- CHEM3242  Food and water analysis (6)
- EASC3020  Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
- EASC3405  Environmental remote sensing (6)
- ENVs3006  Environmental radiation (6)
- ENVs3007  Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
- ENVs3010  Sustainable energy and environment (6)
- ENVs3019  Urban ecology (6)
- ENVs3020  Global change ecology (6)
- ENVs3042  Pollution (6)
- ENVs3313  Environmental oceanography (6)
- ENVs4110  Environmental remediation (6)

**2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3004</td>
<td>Environment, society and economics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3110</td>
<td>Environmental toxicology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3303</td>
<td>Conservation biology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3141</td>
<td>Environmental chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**

At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:

- CHEM3241  Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
- CHEM3242  Food and water analysis (6)
- EASC3020  Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
- EASC3405  Environmental remote sensing (6)
- ENVs3006  Environmental radiation (6)
- ENVs3007  Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
- ENVs3010  Sustainable energy and environment (6)
- ENVs3019  Urban ecology (6)
- ENVs3020  Global change ecology (6)
- ENVs3042  Pollution (6)
- ENVs3313  Environmental oceanography (6)
- ENVs4110  Environmental remediation (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Environmental Science  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives: The Minor in Environmental Science aims to provide students with an introduction to some complex environmental issues. Students will gain ecological and physical knowledge of the environment, become literate in issues related to environmental sustainability, monitoring and management, and be able to explore interdisciplinary solutions to these problems. This training will help student understand certain aspects of the environment and possible ways to solving environmental problems which will be useful to students to enhance their career prospects.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/ laboratory/ team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: gain skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods (by means of field/ laboratory/ team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Environmental Science

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS1401</td>
<td>Introduction to environmental science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1 & 2):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CHEM1042</td>
<td>General chemistry I (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2041</td>
<td>Principles of chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2241</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry I (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM2442</td>
<td>Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1020</td>
<td>Introduction to climate science (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC1401</td>
<td>Blue Planet (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC2404</td>
<td>Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV1301</td>
<td>Environmental life science (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV2001</td>
<td>Methods in environmental science (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV2002</td>
<td>Environmental data analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3004</td>
<td>Environment, society and economics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)

At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3110</td>
<td>Environmental toxicology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3303</td>
<td>Conservation biology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4302</td>
<td>Environmental impact assessment (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3141</td>
<td>Environmental chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3241</td>
<td>Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHEM3242</td>
<td>Food and water analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3020</td>
<td>Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3405</td>
<td>Environmental remote sensing (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3006</td>
<td>Environmental radiation (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3007</td>
<td>Natural hazards and mitigation (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3010</td>
<td>Sustainable energy and environment (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3019</td>
<td>Urban ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3020</td>
<td>Global change ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3042</td>
<td>Pollution (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV3313</td>
<td>Environmental oceanography (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Environmental Science

Objectives:
The Minor in Environmental Science aims to provide students with an introduction to some complex environmental issues. Students will gain ecological and physical knowledge of the environment, become literate in issues related to environmental sustainability, monitoring and management, and be able to explore interdisciplinary solutions to these problems. This training will help students understand certain aspects of the environment and possible ways to solving environmental problems which will be useful to students to enhance their career prospects.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: gain skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods (by means of field/laboratory/team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Environmental Science

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   ENVS1401 Introduction to environmental science (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1 & 2):
   CHEM1042 General chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2041 Principles of chemistry (6)
   CHEM2241 Analytical chemistry I (6)
   CHEM2442 Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
   EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6)
   EASC1401 Blue Planet (6)
   EASC2404 Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)
   ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
   ENVS2001 Methods in environmental science (6)
   ENVS2002 Environmental data analysis (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   ENVS3004 Environment, society and economics (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3110 Environmental toxicology (6)
   BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6)
   CHEM3141 Environmental chemistry (6)
   CHEM3241 Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
   CHEM3242 Food and water analysis (6)
   EASC3020 Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
   EASC3405 Environmental remote sensing (6)
   ENVS3006 Environmental radiation (6)
   ENVS3007 Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
   ENVS3010 Sustainable energy and environment (6)
   ENVS3019 Urban ecology (6)
   ENVS3020 Global change ecology (6)
   ENVS3042 Pollution (6)
   ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
   ENVS4110 Environmental remediation (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title
Minor in Environmental Science

## Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2012

## Objectives:
The Minor in Environmental Science aims to provide students with an introduction to some complex environmental issues. Students will gain ecological and physical knowledge of the environment, become literate in issues related to environmental sustainability, monitoring and management, and be able to explore interdisciplinary solutions to these problems. This training will help students understand certain aspects of the environment and possible ways to solving environmental problems which will be useful to students to enhance their career prospects.

## Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1**: identify and describe different components of the environmental systems and key issues in environmental science (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 2**: observe, describe, measure and analyze physical, biological and chemical characteristics of natural and man-made environments (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 3**: appropriately use and critically analyze a range of forms and sources of environmental data, and assess environmental problems (by means of lectures, coursework, tutorial classes and field/laboratory/team-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 4**: gain skills in scientific inquiry and effective communication of global environmental problems, issues of resource management, policies and management methods (by means of field/laboratory/team-based learning, research projects, presentation opportunities and capstone experiences in the curriculum)

## Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Environmental Science

## Required courses (42 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
     - ENV1401: Introduction to environmental science (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
     - At least 6 credits selected from the following courses (Level 1) in List A:
       - CHEM1042: General chemistry I (6)
       - EASC1401: Blue Planet (6)
       - ENV1301: Environmental life science (6)
     - At least 6 credits selected from the following courses (Level 2) in List B:
       - BIOL1202: Biostatistics (6)
       - CHEM2041: Principles of chemistry (6)
       - CHEM2241: Analytical chemistry I (6)
       - CHEM2442: Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6)
       - EASC2404: Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6)
       - ENV2001: Methods in environmental science (6)
       - ENV2002: Environmental data analysis (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**
     - ENV3004: Environment, society and economics (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
     - At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3110: Environmental toxicology (6)
       - BIOL3303: Conservation biology (6)
       - BIOL3402: Environmental impact assessment (6)
       - CHEM3141: Environmental chemistry (6)
       - CHEM3241: Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6)
       - CHEM3242: Food and water analysis (6)
       - EASC3020: Global change: anthropogenic impacts (6)
       - EASC3045: Environmental remote sensing (6)
       - ENV3006: Environmental radiation (6)
       - ENV3007: Natural hazards and mitigation (6)
       - ENV3010: Sustainable energy and environment (6)
       - ENV3019: Urban ecology (6)
       - ENV3020: Global change ecology (6)
       - ENV3042: Pollution (6)
       - ENV3313: Environmental oceanography (6)
       - ENV4110: Environmental remediation (6)

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.
Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**  
Minor in Food & Nutritional Science  

**Offered to students**  
admitted to Year 1 in 2017  

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Food and Nutritional Science aims to provide a comprehensive education in food, nutrition and related sociological and technological topics, enabling graduates to develop their interest in food and nutrition and have a wide range of employment and progression options.  

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:  

- **PLO 1:** demonstrate broad knowledge in the field of food and nutritional science (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 2:** recognize and describe the health risks associated with food and specific nutrients, and discuss how to prevent these risks (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 3:** understand and describe ethical perspectives and practice in food product development, food safety and public health nutrition (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 4:** synthesize and summarize information from a wide range of sources and draw reasoned conclusions with particular reference to food and nutritional sciences and related global and commercial issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)  

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Food & Nutritional Science  

**Required courses (36 credits)**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2101 Principles of food chemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOC2600 Basic biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOC2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOC2600 are mutually exclusive.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3209 Food and nutrient analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211 Nutrigenomics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3216 Food waste management (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217 Food, environment and health (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3218 Food hygiene and quality control (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4201 Public health nutrition (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4202 Nutrition and sports performance (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4204 Diet, brain function and behavior (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4205 Food processing and engineering (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4208 Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**  
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course (“disciplinary core”) in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.  

**Remarks:**  
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Food & Nutritional Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Food and Nutritional Science aims to provide a comprehensive education in food, nutrition and related sociological and technological topics, enabling graduates to develop their interest in food and nutrition and have a wide range of employment and progression options.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate broad knowledge in the field of food and nutritional science (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: recognize and describe the health risks associated with food and specific nutrients, and discuss how to prevent these risks (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand and describe ethical perspectives and practice in food product development, food safety and public health nutrition (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: synthesize and summarize information from a wide range of sources and draw reasoned conclusions with particular reference to food and nutritional sciences and related global and commercial issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Food & Nutritional Science

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1201</td>
<td>Introduction to food and nutrition (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>Principles of biochemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOL2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3201</td>
<td>Food chemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3202</td>
<td>Nutritional biochemistry (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3203</td>
<td>Food microbiology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3204</td>
<td>Nutrition and the life cycle (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3205</td>
<td>Human physiology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3206</td>
<td>Clinical nutrition (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3207</td>
<td>Food and nutritional toxicology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3208</td>
<td>Food safety and quality management (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3209</td>
<td>Food and nutrient analysis (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
<td>Grain production and utilization (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211</td>
<td>Nutrigenomics (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3216</td>
<td>Food waste management (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217</td>
<td>Food, environment and health (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3218</td>
<td>Food hygiene and quality control (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4201</td>
<td>Public health nutrition (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4202</td>
<td>Nutrition and sports performance (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4204</td>
<td>Diet, brain function and behavior (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4205</td>
<td>Food processing and engineering (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4207</td>
<td>Meat and dairy sciences (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4208</td>
<td>Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4209</td>
<td>Functional foods (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4210</td>
<td>Food product development</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Minor Title: Minor in Food & Nutritional Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Food and Nutritional Science aims to provide a comprehensive education in food, nutrition and related sociological and technological topics, enabling graduates to develop their interest in food and nutrition and have a wide range of employment and progression options.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate broad knowledge in the field of food and nutritional science (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: recognize and describe the health risks associated with food and specific nutrients, and discuss how to prevent these risks (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand and describe ethical perspectives and practice in food product development, food safety and public health nutrition (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: synthesize and summarize information from a wide range of sources and draw reasoned conclusions with particular reference to food and nutritional sciences and related global and commercial issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Food & Nutritional Science

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)
   - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

   Take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOL2600 are mutually exclusive.

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL3201 Food chemistry (6)
   - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)
   - BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)
   - BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   - BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)
   - BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)
   - BIOL3208 Food safety and quality management (6)
   - BIOL3209 Food and nutrient analysis (6)
   - BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)
   - BIOL3211 Nutrigenomics (6)
   - BIOL3216 Food waste management (6)
   - BIOL3217 Food, environment and health (6)
   - BIOL3218 Food hygiene and quality control (6)
   - BIOL4201 Public health nutrition (6)
   - BIOL4202 Nutrition and sports performance (6)
   - BIOL4204 Diet, brain function and behavior (6)
   - BIOL4205 Food processing and engineering (6)
   - BIOL4207 Meat and dairy sciences (6)
   - BIOL4208 Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)
   - BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)

   Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.

   Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

   Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

   Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.

   Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

   Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208; BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.
Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Food & Nutritional Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Minor in Food and Nutritional Science aims to provide a comprehensive education in food, nutrition and related sociological and technological topics, enabling graduates to develop their interest in food and nutrition and have a wide range of employment and progression options.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate broad knowledge in the field of food and nutritional science (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: recognize and describe the health risks associated with food and specific nutrients, and discuss how to prevent these risks (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand and describe ethical perspectives and practice in food product development, food safety and public health nutrition (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: synthesize and summarize information from a wide range of sources and draw reasoned conclusions with particular reference to food and nutritional sciences and related global and commercial issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Food & Nutritional Science

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)
   - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

   BIOL2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

   2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL3201 Food chemistry (6)
   - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)
   - BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)
   - BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   - BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)
   - BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)
   - BIOL3208 Food safety and quality management (6)

   BIOL3209 Food and nutrient analysis (6)
   BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)

   BIOL3211 Nutrigenomics (6)
   BIOL3216 Food waste management (6)
   BIOL3217 Food, environment and health (6)
   BIOL3218 Food hygiene and quality control (6)

   BIOL4201 Public health nutrition (6)
   BIOL4202 Nutrition and sports performance (6)
   BIOL4204 Diet, brain function and behavior (6)
   BIOL4205 Food processing and engineering (6)
   BIOL4207 Meat and dairy sciences (6)

   BIOL4208 Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)

   BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credit Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4210</td>
<td>Food product development</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title Minor in Food & Nutritional Science
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Minor in Food and Nutritional Science aims to provide a comprehensive education in food, nutrition and related sociological and technological topics, enabling graduates to develop their interest in food and nutrition and have a wide range of employment and progression options.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: demonstrate broad knowledge in the field of food and nutritional science (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: recognize and describe the health risks associated with food and specific nutrients, and discuss how to prevent these risks (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand and describe ethical perspectives and practice in food product development, food safety and public health nutrition (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: synthesize and summarize information from a wide range of sources and draw reasoned conclusions with particular reference to food and nutritional sciences and related global and commercial issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Food & Nutritional Science

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6)
   - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL2600 Basic biochemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL3201 Food chemistry (6)
   - BIOL3202 Nutritional biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL3203 Food microbiology (6)
   - BIOL3204 Nutrition and the life cycle (6)
   - BIOL3205 Human physiology (6)
   - BIOL3206 Clinical nutrition (6)
   - BIOL3207 Food and nutritional toxicology (6)
   - BIOL3208 Food safety and quality management (6)
   - BIOL3209 Food and nutrient analysis (6)
   - BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)
   - BIOL3211 Nutrigenomics (6)
   - BIOL3216 Food waste management (6)
   - BIOL3217 Food, environment and health (6)
   - BIOL3218 Food hygiene and quality control (6)
   - BIOL4201 Public health nutrition (6)
   - BIOL4202 Nutrition and sports performance (6)
   - BIOL4204 Diet, brain function and behavior (6)
   - BIOL4205 Food processing and engineering (6)
   - BIOL4207 Meat and dairy sciences (6)
   - BIOL4208 Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6)
   - BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)

Take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOL2600 are mutually exclusive.

Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.

Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.

Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208; BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4210</td>
<td>Food product development</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>(6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title

Minor in Food & Nutritional Science

### Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

### Objectives:

The Minor in Food and Nutritional Science aims to provide a comprehensive education in food, nutrition and related sociological and technological topics, enabling graduates to develop their interest in food and nutrition and have a wide range of employment and progression options.

### Learning Outcomes:

By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: demonstrate broad knowledge in the field of food and nutritional science (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: recognize and describe the health risks associated with food and specific nutrients, and discuss how to prevent these risks (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: understand and describe ethical perspectives and practice in food product development, food safety and public health nutrition (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4**: synthesize and summarize information from a wide range of sources and draw reasoned conclusions with particular reference to food and nutritional sciences and related global and commercial issues (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:

- Major in Food & Nutritional Science

### Required courses (36 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1201</td>
<td>Introduction to food and nutrition</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>Principles of biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL2220 and BIOL2600 are mutually exclusive.

#### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**

At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3201</td>
<td>Food chemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3202</td>
<td>Nutritional biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3203</td>
<td>Food microbiology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3204</td>
<td>Nutrition and the life cycle</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3205</td>
<td>Human physiology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3206</td>
<td>Clinical nutrition</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3207</td>
<td>Food and nutritional toxicology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3208</td>
<td>Food safety and quality management</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3209</td>
<td>Food and nutrient analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
<td>Grain production and utilization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3211</td>
<td>Nutrigenomics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3216</td>
<td>Food waste management</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3217</td>
<td>Food, environment and health</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3218</td>
<td>Food hygiene and quality control</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4201</td>
<td>Public health nutrition</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4202</td>
<td>Nutrition and sports performance</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4204</td>
<td>Diet, brain function and behavior</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4205</td>
<td>Food processing and engineering</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4207</td>
<td>Meat and dairy sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4208</td>
<td>Meat, dairy and grain sciences</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4209</td>
<td>Functional foods</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Take either BIOL3208 or BIOL3218 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3208 and BIOL3218 are mutually exclusive.
- Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.
- Take either BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.
- Take either BIOL3210 or BIOL4208; BIOL4207 or BIOL4208 to fulfill this 24 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3210 and BIOL4208; BIOL4207 and BIOL4208 are mutually exclusive.
Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Objectives:**
The field of marine biology has become increasingly popular as interest in and awareness of our marine environment grows. Hong Kong already has strong cultural and historical links with the sea as well as a strong economic and societal interest in natural marine resources. This Minor aims to introduce students to the field of marine biology from species, habitat and ecosystem levels, ranging from the deep ocean to intertidal environments, and from both theoretical and practical perspectives. Material will be global and include organisms and their physical, behavioral and physiological adaptations to the marine environment, as well as techniques for marine study. Major marine issues will be covered including benefits derived from the marine environment and possible implications of climate change for marine systems. Particularly relevant examples from Hong Kong and the Southeast Asia region will be highlighted. This minor will provide students from diverse backgrounds (e.g. business, engineering and social science) an excellent opportunity to enter into a career or research in marine environment-related fields such as coastal ecosystem management, fisheries, marine environmental protection, marine resource management, etc.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:
- **PLO 1:** appreciate the requirements and constraints to life in different marine environments (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** gain a comprehensive foundation for pursuing marine-orientated studies (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** have a general insight into an ecosystem that covers two-thirds of the planet and supports the only remaining natural resource harvested on a large scale (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 4:** understand the major marine issues both locally and globally (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 5:** appreciate the possible implications of climate change on marine systems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
NIL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required courses (36 credits)</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</strong></td>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)</strong></td>
<td>At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor in Marine Biology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The field of marine biology has become increasingly popular as interest in and awareness of our marine environment grows. Hong Kong already has strong cultural and historical links with the sea as well as a strong economic and societal interest in natural marine resources. This Minor aims to introduce students to the field of marine biology from species, habitat and ecosystem levels, ranging from the deep ocean to intertidal environments, and from both theoretical and practical perspectives. Material will be global and include organisms and their physical, behavioral and physiological adaptations to the marine environment, as well as techniques for marine study. Major marine issues will be covered including benefits derived from the marine environment and possible implications of climate change for marine systems. Particularly relevant examples from Hong Kong and the Southeast Asia region will be highlighted. This minor will provide students from diverse backgrounds (e.g. business, engineering and social science) an excellent opportunity to enter into a career or research in marine environment-related fields such as coastal ecosystem management, fisheries, marine environmental protection, marine resource management, etc.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

| PLO 1 | appreciate the requirements and constraints to life in different marine environments (by means of coursework, labtoratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum) |
| PLO 2 | gain a comprehensive foundation for pursuing marine-orientated studies (by means of coursework, labtoratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum) |
| PLO 3 | have a general insight into an ecosystem that covers two-thirds of the planet and supports the only remaining natural resource harvested on a large scale (by means of coursework, labtoratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum) |
| PLO 4 | understand the major marine issues both locally and globally (by means of coursework, labtoratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum) |
| PLO 5 | appreciate the possible implications of climate change on marine systems (by means of coursework, labtoratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum) |

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   - BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   - ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

- BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
- BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
- BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
- BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
- BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (6)
- BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)
- BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Marine Biology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The field of marine biology has become increasingly popular as interest in and awareness of our marine environment grows. Hong Kong already has strong cultural and historical links with the sea as well as a strong economic and societal interest in natural marine resources. This Minor aims to introduce students to the field of marine biology from species, habitat and ecosystem levels, ranging from the deep ocean to intertidal environments, and from both theoretical and practical perspectives. Material will be global and include organisms and their physical, behavioral and physiological adaptations to the marine environment, as well as techniques for marine study. Major marine issues will be covered including benefits derived from the marine environment and possible implications of climate change for marine systems. Particularly relevant examples from Hong Kong and the Southeast Asia region will be highlighted. This minor will provide students from diverse backgrounds (e.g. business, engineering and social science) an excellent opportunity to enter into a career or research in marine environment-related fields such as coastal ecosystem management, fisheries, marine environmental protection, marine resource management, etc.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate the requirements and constraints to life in different marine environments (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: gain a comprehensive foundation for pursuing marine-orientated studies (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have a general insight into an ecosystem that covers two-thirds of the planet and supports the only remaining natural resource harvested on a large scale (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: understand the major marine issues both locally and globally (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: appreciate the possible implications of climate change on marine systems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
- ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
- BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
- BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
- ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
- BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
- BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
- BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
- BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
- BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (6)
- BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)
- BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minors

Minor in Marine Biology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The field of marine biology has become increasingly popular as interest in and awareness of our marine environment grows. Hong Kong already has strong cultural and historical links with the sea as well as a strong economic and societal interest in natural marine resources. This Minor aims to introduce students to the field of marine biology from species, habitat and ecosystem levels, ranging from the deep ocean to intertidal environments, and from both theoretical and practical perspectives. Material will be global and include organisms and their physical, behavioral and physiological adaptations to the marine environment, as well as techniques for marine study. Major marine issues will be covered including benefits derived from the marine environment and possible implications of climate change for marine systems. Particularly relevant examples from Hong Kong and the Southeast Asia region will be highlighted. This minor will provide students from diverse backgrounds (e.g. business, engineering and social science) an excellent opportunity to enter into a career or research in marine environment-related fields such as coastal ecosystem management, fisheries, marine environmental protection, marine resource management, etc.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate the requirements and constraints to life in different marine environments (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: gain a comprehensive foundation for pursuing marine-orientated studies (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have a general insight into an ecosystem that covers two-thirds of the planet and supports the only remaining natural resource harvested on a large scale (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: understand the major marine issues both locally and globally (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: appreciate the possible implications of climate change on marine systems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (6)
BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)
BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Marine Biology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The field of marine biology has become increasingly popular as interest in and awareness of our marine environment grows. Hong Kong already has strong cultural and historical links with the sea as well as a strong economic and societal interest in natural marine resources. This Minor aims to introduce students to the field of marine biology from species, habitat and ecosystem levels, ranging from the deep ocean to intertidal environments, and from both theoretical and practical perspectives. Material will be global and include organisms and their physical, behavioral and physiological adaptations to the marine environment, as well as techniques for marine study. Major marine issues will be covered including benefits derived from the marine environment and possible implications of climate change for marine systems. Particularly relevant examples from Hong Kong and the Southeast Asia region will be highlighted. This minor will provide students from diverse backgrounds (e.g. business, engineering and social science) an excellent opportunity to enter into a career or research in marine environment-related fields such as coastal ecosystem management, fisheries, marine environmental protection, marine resource management, etc.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate the requirements and constraints to life in different marine environments (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: gain a comprehensive foundation for pursuing marine-orientated studies (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have a general insight into an ecosystem that covers two-thirds of the planet and supports the only remaining natural resource harvested on a large scale (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: understand the major marine issues both locally and globally (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: appreciate the possible implications of climate change on marine systems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
   - BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
   - ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
   - BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
   - BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
   - BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
   - BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (6)
   - BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)
   - BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Marine Biology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The field of marine biology has become increasingly popular as interest in and awareness of our marine environment grows. Hong Kong already has strong cultural and historical links with the sea as well as a strong economic and societal interest in natural marine resources. This Minor aims to introduce students to the field of marine biology from species, habitat and ecosystem levels, ranging from the deep ocean to intertidal environments, and from both theoretical and practical perspectives. Material will be global and include organisms and their physical, behavioral and physiological adaptations to the marine environment, as well as techniques for marine study. Major marine issues will be covered including benefits derived from the marine environment and possible implications of climate change for marine systems. Particularly relevant examples from Hong Kong and the Southeast Asia region will be highlighted. This minor will provide students from diverse backgrounds (e.g. business, engineering and social science) an excellent opportunity to enter into a career or research in marine environment-related fields such as coastal ecosystem management, fisheries, marine environmental protection, marine resource management, etc.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate the requirements and constraints to life in different marine environments (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: gain a comprehensive foundation for pursuing marine-orientated studies (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: have a general insight into an ecosystem that covers two-thirds of the planet and supports the only remaining natural resource harvested on a large scale (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 4: understand the major marine issues both locally and globally (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 5: appreciate the possible implications of climate change on marine systems (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
ENVS1301 Environmental life science (6)
BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)

BIOL3301 Marine biology (6)
ENVS3313 Environmental oceanography (6)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

BIOL3303 Conservation biology (6)
BIOL3305 Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6)
BIOL3318 Experimental intertidal ecology (6)
BIOL3320 The biology of marine mammals (6)
BIOL3322 Marine invertebrate zoology (6)
BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6)
BIOL4301 Fish and fisheries (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title
Minor in Mathematics

## Offered to students
admitted to Year 1 in 2017

## Objectives:
The Minor in Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in the subject. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the subject and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems.

## Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: understand and describe fundamental concepts of mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics. (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

## Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Mathematics/Physics
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
- Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

## Required courses (36 credits)

### 1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 4)

**Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
- MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
- MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
- MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

### 2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**
At least 18 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

**List A**

- MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
- MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
- MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
- MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
- MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
- MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
- MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
- MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
- MATH3501 Introduction to topology (6)
- MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
- MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
- MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
- MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
- MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
- MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
- MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
- MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
- MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
- MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
- MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
- MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
- MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
- MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
- MATH4501 Geometry (6)
- MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
- MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
- MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
- MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
- MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
- MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
- MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
- MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
- MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
- MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
- MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
- MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

3. If students would like to take more courses in analysis such as MATH3401 (Analysis I), they are advised to take the introductory course MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis first.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in the subject. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the subject and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe fundamental concepts of mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics. (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 4)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
   - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   At least 18 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:
   List A
   - MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
   - MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
   - MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
   - MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
   - MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
   - MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
   - MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
   - MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
   - MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   - MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
   - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
   - MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
   - MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
   - MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   - MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
   - MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
   - MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
   - MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
   - MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
   - MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
   - MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
   - MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
   - MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
   - MATH4501 Geometry (6)
   - MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
   - MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
   - MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
   - MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
   - MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
   - MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
   - MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
   - MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
   - MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
   - MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
   - MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
   - MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
   - MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

3. If students would like to take more courses in analysis such as MATH3401 (Analysis I), they are advised to take the introductory course MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis first.


### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in the subject. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the subject and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe fundamental concepts of mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics. (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 4)

Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)

- MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
- MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
- MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)

At least 18 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

List A

- MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
- MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
- MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
- MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
- MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
- MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
- MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
- MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
- MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
- MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
- MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
- MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
- MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
- MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
- MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
- MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
- MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
- MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
- MATH3999 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
- MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
- MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
- MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
- MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
- MATH4501 Geometry (6)
- MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
- MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
- MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
- MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
- MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
- MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
- MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
- MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
- MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
- MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
- MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
- MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
- MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

3. If students would like to take more courses in analysis such as MATH3401 (Analysis I), they are advised to take the introductory course MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis first.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**: Minor in Mathematics  
**Offered to students**: admitted to Year 1 in 2014

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in the subject. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the subject and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:  

- **PLO 1**: understand and describe fundamental concepts of mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 2**: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 3**: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics. (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Mathematics  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics  
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

**Required courses (36 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 4)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013  University mathematics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101  Linear algebra I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211  Multivariable calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At least 18 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List A</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3001  Development of mathematical ideas (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3002  Mathematics seminar (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3301  Algebra I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3303  Matrix theory and its applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3304  Introduction to number theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3401  Analysis I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3403  Functions of a complex variable (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3405  Differential equations (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408  Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3541  Introduction to topology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3600  Discrete mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601  Numerical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3603  Probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3901  Operations research I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904  Introduction to optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3905  Queueing theory and simulation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906  Financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911  Game theory and strategy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3943  Network models in operations research (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3999  Directed studies in mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4302  Algebra II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4402  Analysis II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4404  Functional analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4406  Introduction to partial differential equations (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501  Geometry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511  Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602  Scientific computing (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902  Operations research II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907  Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4910  Senior mathematics seminar (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4911  Mathematics capstone project (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4966  Mathematics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4999  Mathematics project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4911  Intermediate complex analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201  Topics in geometry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202  Complex manifolds (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217  Topics in financial mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219  Topics in applied functional analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

3. If students would like to take more courses in analysis such as MATH3401 (Analysis I), they are advised to take the introductory course MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis first.


### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Mathematics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Minor in Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in the subject. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the subject and whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe fundamental concepts of mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics. (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 4)
Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013</td>
<td>University mathematics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101</td>
<td>Linear algebra I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211</td>
<td>Multivariable calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)

At least 18 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

List A

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3001</td>
<td>Development of mathematical ideas (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3002</td>
<td>Mathematics seminar (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3301</td>
<td>Algebra I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3303</td>
<td>Matrix theory and its applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3304</td>
<td>Introduction to number theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3401</td>
<td>Analysis I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3403</td>
<td>Functions of a complex variable (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3405</td>
<td>Differential equations (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3408</td>
<td>Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3541</td>
<td>Introduction to topology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3600</td>
<td>Discrete mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3601</td>
<td>Numerical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3603</td>
<td>Probability theory (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3901</td>
<td>Operations research I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904</td>
<td>Introduction to optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3905</td>
<td>Queueing theory and simulation (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906</td>
<td>Financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911</td>
<td>Game theory and strategy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3943</td>
<td>Network models in operations research (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4302</td>
<td>Algebra II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4402</td>
<td>Analysis II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4404</td>
<td>Functional analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4406</td>
<td>Introduction to partial differential equations (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4501</td>
<td>Geometry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4511</td>
<td>Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Scientific computing (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4910</td>
<td>Senior mathematics seminar (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4911</td>
<td>Mathematics capstone project (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4966</td>
<td>Mathematics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4999</td>
<td>Mathematics project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7101</td>
<td>Intermediate complex analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7201</td>
<td>Topics in geometry (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7202</td>
<td>Complex manifolds (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7217</td>
<td>Topics in financial mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7219</td>
<td>Topics in applied functional analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Course Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7224</td>
<td>Topics in advanced probability theory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

3. If students would like to take more courses in analysis such as MATH3401 (Analysis I), they are advised to take the introductory course MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis first.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Mathematics

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Minor in Mathematics provides students with fundamental knowledge in the subject. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the subject and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving, and capability to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: understand and describe fundamental concepts of mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics. (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Mathematics/Physics
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 4)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
   - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. Advanced level courses (18 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   At least 18 credits of advanced level Mathematics courses (MATH3XXX or MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX level), subject to pre-requisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:
   List A
   - MATH3001 Development of mathematical ideas (6)
   - MATH3002 Mathematics seminar (6)
   - MATH3301 Algebra I (6)
   - MATH3303 Matrix theory and its applications (6)
   - MATH3304 Introduction to number theory (6)
   - MATH3401 Analysis I (6)
   - MATH3403 Functions of a complex variable (6)
   - MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
   - MATH3408 Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6)
   - MATH3541 Introduction to topology (6)
   - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
   - MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6)
   - MATH3603 Probability theory (6)
   - MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   - MATH3905 Queuing theory and simulation (6)
   - MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
   - MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
   - MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
   - MATH3998 Directed studies in mathematics (6)
   - MATH4302 Algebra II (6)
   - MATH4402 Analysis II (6)
   - MATH4404 Functional analysis (6)
   - MATH4406 Introduction to partial differential equations (6)
   - MATH4501 Geometry (6)
   - MATH4511 Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6)
   - MATH4602 Scientific computing (6)
   - MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
   - MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
   - MATH4910 Senior mathematics seminar (6)
   - MATH4911 Mathematics capstone project (6)
   - MATH4966 Mathematics internship (6)
   - MATH4999 Mathematics project (12)
   - MATH7101 Intermediate complex analysis (6)
   - MATH7201 Topics in geometry (6)
   - MATH7202 Complex manifolds (6)
   - MATH7217 Topics in financial mathematics (6)
   - MATH7219 Topics in applied functional analysis (6)
   - MATH7224 Topics in advanced probability theory (6)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH7501</td>
<td>Topics in algebra (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7504</td>
<td>Geometric topology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7505</td>
<td>Real analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this major. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

3. If students would like to take more courses in analysis such as MATH3401 (Analysis I), they are advised to take the introductory course MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis first.


**Remarks:**

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Objectives:
The Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology aims to provide students with a fundamental understanding of molecular biology and biotechnology which are relevant to many other disciplines of study and our daily life. Students will learn the principles underlying current molecular and cell biology advances, and biotechnological applications and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

## Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1:** develop and apply basic technical and knowledge-based skills in molecular and cell biology, and biotechnology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 2:** develop and apply skills of critical inquiry, teamwork, and effective communication (by means of group projects, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**PLO 3:** understand and describe the issues and concerns fundamental to the field (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

## Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

## Required courses (36 credits)

### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

#### Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309</td>
<td>Evolutionary diversity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102</td>
<td>Biostatistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103</td>
<td>Biological sciences laboratory course</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>Principles of biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306</td>
<td>Ecology and evolution</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
- May take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
- May take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
- May take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

### 2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

#### Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)

- BIOL3401 Molecular biology

#### Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)

At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402</td>
<td>Cell biology and cell technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3403</td>
<td>Immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409</td>
<td>Business aspects of biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3508</td>
<td>Microbial physiology and biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>Medical microbiology and applied immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4415</td>
<td>Healthcare biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4416</td>
<td>Stem cells and regenerative biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>'Omics' and systems biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
- May take either BIOL3401 to fulfill this 6 credits requirement, but not both.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology aims to provide students with a fundamental understanding of molecular biology and biotechnology which are relevant to many other disciplines of study and our daily life. Students will learn the principles underlying current molecular and cell biology advances, and biotechnological applications and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: develop and apply basic technical and knowledge-based skills in molecular and cell biology, and biotechnology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop and apply skills of critical inquiry, teamwork, and effective communication (by means of group projects, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand and describe the issues and concerns fundamental to the field (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - BIOL2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   - May take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
   - May take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   - BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   - At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   - BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   - BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
   - BIOL4401 Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)
   - BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)
   - BIOL4415 Healthcare biotechnology (6)
   - BIOL4416 Stem cells and regenerative biology (6)
   - BIOL4417 'Omic' and systems biology (6)
   - ENVS4110 Environmental remediation (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
### Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in **2015**

#### Objectives:
The Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology aims to provide students with a fundamental understanding of molecular biology and biotechnology which are relevant to many other disciplines of study and our daily life. Students will learn the principles underlying current molecular and cell biology advances, and biotechnological applications and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

#### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: develop and apply basic technical and knowledge-based skills in molecular and cell biology, and biotechnology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: develop and apply skills of critical inquiry, teamwork, and effective communication (by means of group projects, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: understand and describe the issues and concerns fundamental to the field (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

#### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

### Required courses (36 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309</td>
<td>Evolutionary diversity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102</td>
<td>Biostatistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103</td>
<td>Biological sciences laboratory course</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>Principles of biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306</td>
<td>Ecology and evolution</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

- At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
  - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
  - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
  - BIOL2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
  - BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
  - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
  - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
  - BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)

#### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Advanced level courses (24 credits)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402</td>
<td>Cell biology and cell technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3403</td>
<td>Immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409</td>
<td>Business aspects of biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3508</td>
<td>Microbial physiology and biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>Medical microbiology and applied immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4402</td>
<td>Microbial biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4415</td>
<td>Healthcare biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4416</td>
<td>Stem cells and regenerative biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>'Omics' and systems biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)

- BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)

#### Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)

- At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
  - BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
  - BIOL4402 Microbial biotechnology (6)

#### Notes:
1. Take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor Title
Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

## Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in
2014

### Objectives:
The Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology aims to provide students with a fundamental understanding of molecular biology and biotechnology which are relevant to many other disciplines of study and our daily life. Students will learn the principles underlying current molecular and cell biology advances, and biotechnological applications and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

### Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: develop and apply basic technical and knowledge-based skills in molecular and cell biology, and biotechnology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: develop and apply skills of critical inquiry, teamwork, and effective communication (by means of group projects, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: understand and describe the issues and concerns fundamental to the field (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

### Required courses (36 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2600</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

- May take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
- May take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2600 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
- May take either BIOL2102 or BIOL2103 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.
- May take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

**Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)**

- BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)**

At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:

- Take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.
- Take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3403</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3508</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4402</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4415</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4416</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS4110</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology aims to provide students with a fundamental understanding of molecular biology and biotechnology which are relevant to many other disciplines of study and our daily life. Students will learn the principles underlying current molecular and cell biology advances, and biotechnological applications and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: develop and apply basic technical and knowledge-based skills in molecular and cell biology, and biotechnology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop and apply skills of critical inquiry, teamwork, and effective communication (by means of group projects, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand and describe the issues and concerns fundamental to the field (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   BIOL2600 Basic biochemistry (6)
   BIOL2102 Biostatistics (6)
   BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   May take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

   BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)
   BIOL2306 Ecology and evolution (6)
   May take either BIOL2220 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)
   BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6)
   Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)
   At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:
   BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6)
   BIOL3403 Immunology (6)
   BIOL3409 Business aspects of biotechnology (6)
   BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4401 Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6)
   BIOL4402 Microbial biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4415 Healthcare biotechnology (6)
   BIOL4416 Stem cells and regenerative biology (6)
   BIOL4417 ‘Omics’ and systems biology (6)
   ENVS4110 Environmental remediation (6)
   Take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.
   Take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 18 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Minor in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology aims to provide students with a fundamental understanding of molecular biology and biotechnology which are relevant to many other disciplines of study and our daily life. Students will learn the principles underlying current molecular and cell biology advances, and biotechnological applications and will become literate in biotechnology business and advancements.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: develop and apply basic technical and knowledge-based skills in molecular and cell biology, and biotechnology (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: develop and apply skills of critical inquiry, teamwork, and effective communication (by means of group projects, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: understand and describe the issues and concerns fundamental to the field (by means of coursework and laboratory-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309</td>
<td>Evolutionary diversity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2600</td>
<td>Basic biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2102</td>
<td>Biostatistics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103</td>
<td>Biological sciences laboratory course</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>Principles of biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2306</td>
<td>Ecology and evolution</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

May take either BIOL1309 or BIOL2306 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both.

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)

Disciplinary Core Courses (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3401</td>
<td>Molecular biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Disciplinary Electives (18 credits)

At least 18 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3402</td>
<td>Cell biology and cell technology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3403</td>
<td>Immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3409</td>
<td>Business aspects of biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3508</td>
<td>Microbial physiology and biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

May take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4401</td>
<td>Medical microbiology and applied immunology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4402</td>
<td>Microbial biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4415</td>
<td>Healthcare biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4416</td>
<td>Stem cells and regenerative biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4417</td>
<td>‘Omics’ and systems biology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENV4110</td>
<td>Environmental remediation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

May take either BIOL3508 or BIOL4402 to fulfill this 12 credits requirement, but not both. BIOL3508 and BIOL4402 are mutually exclusive.

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title:** Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in:** 2017

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming provides students with fundamental knowledge in optimization, computational algorithm, mathematical modeling, and decision making. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from decision sciences and logistic industry.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: describe and demonstrate understanding of fundamental concepts in operations research & mathematical programming (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Major in Mathematics  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Minor in Mathematics  
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
     - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
     - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
     - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
     - MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
     - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   - **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
     - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
       - MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
       - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
       - MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
       - MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
       - MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
       - MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
       - MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
       - MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
       - MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
       - MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.
2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are required to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming provides students with fundamental knowledge in optimization, computational algorithm, mathematical modeling, and decision making. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from decision sciences and logistic industry.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and demonstrate understanding of fundamental concepts in operations research & mathematical programming (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Mathematics/Physics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)
   - Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
     - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
     - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
     - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   - Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)
     - MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
     - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   - Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
     - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
       - MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
       - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
       - MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
       - MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
       - MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
       - MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
       - MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
       - MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
       - MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
       - MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are required to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming  
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming provides students with fundamental knowledge in optimization, computational algorithm, mathematical modeling, and decision making. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from decision sciences and logistic industry.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: describe and demonstrate understanding of fundamental concepts in operations research & mathematical programming (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Minor in Mathematics  
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
   - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   **Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)**
   - MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)
   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - MATH3501 Differential equations (6)
   - MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
   - MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
   - MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
   - MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
   - MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
   - MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
   - MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
   - MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
   - MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are required to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title:** Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in:** 2014  

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming provides students with fundamental knowledge in optimization, computational algorithm, mathematical modeling, and decision making. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from decision sciences and logistic industry.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:  

- **PLO 1:** describe and demonstrate understanding of fundamental concepts in operations research & mathematical programming (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 2:** apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 3:** communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Mathematics  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Minor in Mathematics  
Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

**Required courses (42 credits)**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disciplinary Core Courses (12 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3901 Operations research I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**  

At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH3405</td>
<td>Differential equations</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3600</td>
<td>Discrete mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3905</td>
<td>Queueing theory and simulation</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3906</td>
<td>Financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3911</td>
<td>Game theory and strategy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH3943</td>
<td>Network models in operations research</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4902</td>
<td>Operations research II</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH4907</td>
<td>Numerical methods for financial calculus</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7502</td>
<td>Topics in applied discrete mathematics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH7503</td>
<td>Topics in mathematical programming and optimization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**  
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are required to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**  
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**
Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming

**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**
2013

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Operations Research & Mathematical Programming provides students with fundamental knowledge in optimization, computational algorithm, mathematical modeling, and decision making. It is specifically designed for students who are interested in the above subjects and those whose majors require sophisticated mathematical skills. It aims to nurture quantitative reasoning, logical, analytical and critical thinking, innovative imagination, meticulous care to work, ability to conceptualize, skills for problem-solving and skills to tackle novel situations and ill-defined problems. It is particularly useful for solving mathematical problems arising from decision sciences and logistic industry.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

**PLO 1:** describe and demonstrate understanding of fundamental concepts in operations research & mathematical programming (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 2:** apply mathematical methods and analysis to real life problems (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**PLO 3:** communicate and discuss scientific issues related to mathematics (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
- Major in Mathematics
- Major in Mathematics/Physics
- Minor in Mathematics
- Minor in Computational & Financial Mathematics

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits) (note 3)**
   - MATH1013 University mathematics II (6)
   - MATH2101 Linear algebra I (6)
   - MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - MATH3901 Operations research I (6)
   - MATH3904 Introduction to optimization (6)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
- MATH3405 Differential equations (6)
- MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6)
- MATH3905 Queueing theory and simulation (6)
- MATH3906 Financial calculus (6)
- MATH3911 Game theory and strategy (6)
- MATH3943 Network models in operations research (6)
- MATH4902 Operations research II (6)
- MATH4907 Numerical methods for financial calculus (6)
- MATH7502 Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6)
- MATH7503 Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 2 or above in HKDSE Extended Module 1 or 2 of Mathematics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are required to take MATH1011 University mathematics I.


**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**: Minor in Physics  
**Offered to students**: admitted to Year 1 in 2017

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Physics is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses which provides them to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: identify and describe physical systems with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: analyze some physics problems qualitatively and quantitatively (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
- Major in Mathematics/Physics
- Major in Physics

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits)**
2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

**Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1250</td>
<td>Fundamental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2250</td>
<td>Introductory mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2265</td>
<td>Modern physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**

- At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:
  
  **List A**
  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3150</td>
<td>Theoretical physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3350</td>
<td>Classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3351</td>
<td>Quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3450</td>
<td>Electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3550</td>
<td>Statistical mechanics &amp; thermodynamics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3551</td>
<td>Introductory solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650</td>
<td>Observational astronomy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651</td>
<td>The physical universe</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3652</td>
<td>Principles of astronomy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3750</td>
<td>Laser and spectroscopy</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3751</td>
<td>Physics of nanomaterials</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3850</td>
<td>Waves and optics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3851</td>
<td>Atomic and nuclear physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999</td>
<td>Directed studies in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150</td>
<td>Computational physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151</td>
<td>Data analysis and modeling in physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350</td>
<td>Advanced classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4351</td>
<td>Advanced quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450</td>
<td>Advanced electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550</td>
<td>Advanced statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551</td>
<td>Solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650</td>
<td>Stellar physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651</td>
<td>Selected topics in astrophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652</td>
<td>Planetary science</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653</td>
<td>Cosmology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654</td>
<td>General relativity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655</td>
<td>Interstellar medium</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750</td>
<td>Experimental physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850</td>
<td>Particle physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966</td>
<td>Physics internship</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999</td>
<td>Physics project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Graduate classical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351</td>
<td>Graduate quantum mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450</td>
<td>Graduate electromagnetism</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550</td>
<td>Graduate statistical mechanics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551</td>
<td>Graduate solid state physics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650</td>
<td>Stellar atmospheres</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750</td>
<td>Nanophysics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For
details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Physics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Physics is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses which provides them to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
PLO 2: analyze some physics problems qualitatively and quantitatively (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)
PLO 3: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Major in Physics

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
- PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
- PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
- PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

List A
- PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
- PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
- PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
- PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
- PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
- PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
- PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
- PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
- PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
- PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
- PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
- PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
- PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
- PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
- PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
- PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
- PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
- PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
- PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
- PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
- PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)
- PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
- PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
- PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
- PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
- PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
- PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
- PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)
- PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)
- PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)
- PHYS4999 Physics project (12)
- PHYS7350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)
- PHYS7351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
- PHYS7450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)
- PHYS7550 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
- PHYS7551 Graduate solid state physics (6)
- PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)
- PHYS7750 Nanophysics (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For
details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Physics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Physics is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses which provides them to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze some physics problems qualitatively and quantitatively (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Major in Physics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
   PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

   List A
   PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
   PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
   PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)
   PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)
   PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)
   PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)
   PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
   PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
   PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)
   PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
   PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)
   PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
   PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
   PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)
   PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)
   PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)
   PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)
   PHYS4654 General relativity (6)
   PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)
   PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)
   PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)
   PHYS4999 Physics project (12)
   PHYS5350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS5351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS5450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS5550 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
   PHYS5651 Graduate solid state physics (6)
   PHYS5750 Stellar atmospheres (6)
   PHYS5750 Stellar atmospheres (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For
details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Physics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Minor in Physics is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses which provides them to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: identify and describe physical systems with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)

PLO 2: analyze some physics problems qualitatively and quantitatively (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)

PLO 3: communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Mathematics/Physics
Major in Physics

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (18 credits)
   Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)
   PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)
   PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)
   PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

   List A
   PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)
   PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS3355 Electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS3355 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)
   PHYS3355 Introductory solid state physics (6)
   PHYS3360 Observational astronomy (6)
   PHYS3361 The physical universe (6)
   PHYS3362 Principles of astronomy (6)
   PHYS3375 Laser and spectroscopy (6)
   PHYS3375 Physics of nanomaterials (6)
   PHYS3380 Waves and optics (6)
   PHYS3385 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)
   PHYS3399 Directed studies in physics (6)
   PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)
   PHYS4150 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)
   PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS4350 Advanced electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS4350 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4351 Solid state physics (6)
   PHYS4351 Stellar physics (6)
   PHYS4351 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)
   PHYS4352 Planetary science (6)
   PHYS4352 Cosmology (6)
   PHYS4354 General relativity (6)
   PHYS4355 Interstellar medium (6)
   PHYS4355 Experimental physics (6)
   PHYS4355 Particle physics (6)
   PHYS4356 Physics internship (6)
   PHYS4356 Physics project (12)
   PHYS4350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)
   PHYS4350 Graduate electromagnetism (6)
   PHYS4350 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)
   PHYS4351 Graduate solid state physics (6)
   PHYS4350 Stellar atmospheres (6)
   PHYS4350 Nanophysics (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For
2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**  
Minor in Physics  

**Offered to students**  
admitted to Year 1 in 2013  

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Physics is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses which provides them to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** identify and describe physical systems with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** analyze some physics problems qualitatively and quantitatively (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Major in Physics

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics &amp; thermodynamics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4654 General relativity (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS4999 Physics project (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7550 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7551 Graduate solid state physics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7750 Nanophysics (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For
details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**  
Minor in Physics  

**Offered to students**  
admitted to Year 1 in 2012  

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Physics is intended to provide interested students with a fundamental outlook on the subject. Students would acquire a taste of the subject through a large selection of elective courses which provides them to pursue a wide range of topics from the very small scale of nanomaterials to the large scale of astrophysics.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:  

- **PLO 1:** identify and describe physical systems with fundamental knowledge in physics (by means of coursework and tutorial classes in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 2:** analyze some physics problems qualitatively and quantitatively (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and laboratory works in the curriculum)  
- **PLO 3:** communicate and collaborate with people effectively in scientific issues (by means of group projects, tutorial sessions and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**  
Major in Mathematics/Physics  
Major in Physics

**Required courses (42 credits)**  

1. **Introductory level courses (18 credits)**  
Disciplinary Core Courses (18 credits)  

- PHYS1250 Fundamental physics (6)  
- PHYS2250 Introductory mechanics (6)  
- PHYS2265 Modern physics (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**  
Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)  
At least 24 credits of advanced level Physics courses (PHYS3XXX or PHYS4XXX or PHYS7XXX level), subject to prerequisite requirements. The current course list includes courses in List A:

**List A**  

- PHYS3150 Theoretical physics (6)  
- PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6)  
- PHYS3351 Quantum mechanics (6)  
- PHYS3450 Electromagnetism (6)  
- PHYS3550 Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6)  
- PHYS3551 Introductory solid state physics (6)  
- PHYS3650 Observational astronomy (6)  
- PHYS3651 The physical universe (6)  
- PHYS3652 Principles of astronomy (6)  
- PHYS3750 Laser and spectroscopy (6)  
- PHYS3751 Physics of nanomaterials (6)  
- PHYS3850 Waves and optics (6)  
- PHYS3851 Atomic and nuclear physics (6)  
- PHYS3999 Directed studies in physics (6)  
- PHYS4150 Computational physics (6)  
- PHYS4151 Data analysis and modeling in physics (6)  
- PHYS4350 Advanced classical mechanics (6)  
- PHYS4351 Advanced quantum mechanics (6)  
- PHYS4450 Advanced electromagnetism (6)  
- PHYS4550 Advanced statistical mechanics (6)  
- PHYS4551 Solid state physics (6)  
- PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6)  
- PHYS4651 Selected topics in astrophysics (6)  
- PHYS4652 Planetary science (6)  
- PHYS4653 Cosmology (6)  
- PHYS4654 General relativity (6)  
- PHYS4655 Interstellar medium (6)  
- PHYS4750 Experimental physics (6)  
- PHYS4850 Particle physics (6)  
- PHYS4966 Physics internship (6)  
- PHYS4999 Physics project (12)  
- PHYS5350 Graduate classical mechanics (6)  
- PHYS5351 Graduate quantum mechanics (6)  
- PHYS5450 Graduate electromagnetism (6)  
- PHYS5755 Graduate statistical mechanics (6)  
- PHYS5751 Graduate solid state physics (6)  
- PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6)  
- PHYS7750 Nanophysics (6)

**Notes:**  
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For
details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

2. Students must have level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent to take this minor. Students who do not fulfill this requirement are advised to take PHYS1240 Physics by inquiry.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Plant Science

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2017

Objectives:
The Minor in Plant Science is offered to students who are fascinated by the diversity and beauty of plants and the molecular mechanisms underlying their growth and development. Knowledge in plant science is essential for tackling daily-life issues such as the production of high-quality food, utilization of plant products as biofuels and extraction of beneficial phytochemicals. Recent advances in plant genetic engineering have also allowed scientists to manipulate plant growth and development for nutritional and environmental benefits. This minor aims to provide broad training in the biology of plants from the molecular to the organism level as well as the agricultural and nutritional applications of plants and plant-derived products.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate plants as an important part in our culture and their functions and roles in food, nutrition, and environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the fundamental concepts of plant evolution, anatomy, biochemistry, physiology and biotechnology (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: acquire necessary academic and practical skills for careers in government agencies, secondary school teaching and postgraduate research in different disciplines of plant science (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (36 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1110</td>
<td>From molecules to cells</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL1309</td>
<td>Evolutionary diversity</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2103</td>
<td>Biological sciences laboratory course</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL2220</td>
<td>Principles of biochemistry</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3107</td>
<td>Plant physiology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3210</td>
<td>Grain production and utilization</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3314</td>
<td>Plant structure and evolution</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL3408</td>
<td>Genetics</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4209</td>
<td>Functional foods</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIOL4411</td>
<td>Plant and food biotechnology</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Minor Title</th>
<th>Minor in Plant Science</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in</td>
<td>2016</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Objectives:**
The Minor in Plant Science is offered to students who are fascinated by the diversity and beauty of plants and the molecular mechanisms underlying their growth and development. Knowledge in plant science is essential for tackling daily-life issues such as the production of high-quality food, utilization of plant products as biofuels and extraction of beneficial phytochemicals. Recent advances in plant genetic engineering have also allowed scientists to manipulate plant growth and development for nutritional and environmental benefits. This minor aims to provide broad training in the biology of plants from the molecular to the organism level as well as the agricultural and nutritional applications of plants and plant-derived products.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** appreciate plants as an important part in our culture and their functions and roles in food, nutrition, and environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** understand and describe the fundamental concepts of plant evolution, anatomy, biochemistry, physiology and biotechnology (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** acquire necessary academic and practical skills for careers in government agencies, secondary school teaching and postgraduate research in different disciplines of plant science (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
NIL

**Required courses (36 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**
   - Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
     - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
       - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
       - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
       - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)
       - BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)
       - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
       - BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
       - BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)
       - BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
## Minor in Plant Science

**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015**

### Objectives:

The Minor in Plant Science is offered to students who are fascinated by the diversity and beauty of plants and the molecular mechanisms underlying their growth and development. Knowledge in plant science is essential for tackling daily-life issues such as the production of high-quality food, utilization of plant products as biofuels and extraction of beneficial phytochemicals. Recent advances in plant genetic engineering have also allowed scientists to manipulate plant growth and development for nutritional and environmental benefits. This minor aims to provide broad training in the biology of plants from the molecular to the organism level as well as the agricultural and nutritional applications of plants and plant-derived products.

### Learning Outcomes:

By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: appreciate plants as an important part in our culture and their functions and roles in food, nutrition, and environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 2**: understand and describe the fundamental concepts of plant evolution, anatomy, biochemistry, physiology and biotechnology (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

- **PLO 3**: acquire necessary academic and practical skills for careers in government agencies, secondary school teaching and postgraduate research in different disciplines of plant science (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

### Impermissible Combinations:

NIL

### Required courses (36 credits)

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**
     - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL1110: From molecules to cells (6)
       - BIOL1309: Evolutionary diversity (6)
       - BIOL2103: Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
       - BIOL2220: Principles of biochemistry (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3107: Plant physiology (6)
       - BIOL3210: Grain production and utilization (6)
       - BIOL3314: Plant structure and evolution (6)
       - BIOL3408: Genetics (6)
       - BIOL4209: Functional foods (6)
       - BIOL4411: Plant and food biotechnology (6)

### Notes:

1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Plant Science

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Minor in Plant Science is offered to students who are fascinated by the diversity and beauty of plants and the molecular mechanisms underlying their growth and development. Knowledge in plant science is essential for tackling daily-life issues such as the production of high-quality food, utilization of plant products as biofuels and extraction of beneficial phytochemicals. Recent advances in plant genetic engineering have also allowed scientists to manipulate plant growth and development for nutritional and environmental benefits. This minor aims to provide broad training in the biology of plants from the molecular to the organism level as well as the agricultural and nutritional applications of plants and plant-derived products.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: appreciate plants as an important part in our culture and their functions and roles in food, nutrition, and environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: understand and describe the fundamental concepts of plant evolution, anatomy, biochemistry, physiology and biotechnology (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: acquire necessary academic and practical skills for careers in government agencies, secondary school teaching and postgraduate research in different disciplines of plant science (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
NIL

Required courses (36 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

2. Advanced level courses (24 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)
   - BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)
   - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
   - BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
   - BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)
   - BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**: Minor in Plant Science  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2013  

**Objectives:**  
The Minor in Plant Science is offered to students who are fascinated by the diversity and beauty of plants and the molecular mechanisms underlying their growth and development. Knowledge in plant science is essential for tackling daily-life issues such as the production of high-quality food, utilization of plant products as biofuels and extraction of beneficial phytochemicals. Recent advances in plant genetic engineering have also allowed scientists to manipulate plant growth and development for nutritional and environmental benefits. This minor aims to provide broad training in the biology of plants from the molecular to the organism level as well as the agricultural and nutritional applications of plants and plant-derived products.

**Learning Outcomes:**  
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: appreciate plants as an important part in our culture and their functions and roles in food, nutrition, and environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: understand and describe the fundamental concepts of plant evolution, anatomy, biochemistry, physiology and biotechnology (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: acquire necessary academic and practical skills for careers in government agencies, secondary school teaching and postgraduate research in different disciplines of plant science (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
NIL

**Required courses (36 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**  
   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**  
   At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
   - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
   - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
   - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**  
   **Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)**  
   At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
   - BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)
   - BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)
   - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
   - BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
   - BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)
   - BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Objectives:**
The Minor in Plant Science is offered to students who are fascinated by the diversity and beauty of plants and the molecular mechanisms underlying their growth and development. Knowledge in plant science is essential for tackling daily-life issues such as the production of high-quality food, utilization of plant products as biofuels and extraction of beneficial phytochemicals. Recent advances in plant genetic engineering have also allowed scientists to manipulate plant growth and development for nutritional and environmental benefits. This minor aims to provide broad training in the biology of plants from the molecular to the organism level as well as the agricultural and nutritional applications of plants and plant-derived products.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1:** appreciate plants as an important part in our culture and their functions and roles in food, nutrition, and environment (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2:** understand and describe the fundamental concepts of plant evolution, anatomy, biochemistry, physiology and biotechnology (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3:** acquire necessary academic and practical skills for careers in government agencies, secondary school teaching and postgraduate research in different disciplines of plant science (by means of coursework, laboratory-based, and tutorial class and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
NIL

**Required courses (36 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**
   - Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
     - At least 12 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL1110 From molecules to cells (6)
       - BIOL1309 Evolutionary diversity (6)
       - BIOL2103 Biological sciences laboratory course (6)
       - BIOL2220 Principles of biochemistry (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (24 credits)**
   - Disciplinary Electives (24 credits)
     - At least 24 credits selected from the following courses:
       - BIOL3107 Plant physiology (6)
       - BIOL3210 Grain production and utilization (6)
       - BIOL3314 Plant structure and evolution (6)
       - BIOL3408 Genetics (6)
       - BIOL4209 Functional foods (6)
       - BIOL4411 Plant and food biotechnology (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title  Minor in Risk Management
Offered to students  2017
admitted to Year 1 in

Objectives:
The Minor in Risk Management aims to provide interested students with basic concepts of risk management and fundamental skills of employing various statistical techniques for managing risk. The minor curriculum is particularly designed for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Risk Management or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: acquire basic understanding and identify the generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply elementary methods and models for risk assessment and management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: acquire and interpret relevant data and information for risk management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

   At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:

   **List A**
   - STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   - STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
   - STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
   - STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)

   **List B**
   - STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   - STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)

   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:

   - STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
   - STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
   - STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
   - STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   - STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
   - STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   - STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
   - STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   - STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
   - STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
   - STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
   - STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Risk Management
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The Minor in Risk Management aims to provide interested students with basic concepts of risk management and fundamental skills of employing various statistical techniques for managing risk. The minor curriculum is particularly designed for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Risk Management or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: acquire basic understanding and identify the generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply elementary methods and models for risk assessment and management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: acquire and interpret relevant data and information for risk management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:

List A
- STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
- STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
- STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
- STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)

List B
- STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
- STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
- STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
- STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
- STAT3612 Data mining (6)
- STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
- STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
- STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
- STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
- STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
- STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
- STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
- STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Risk Management
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The Minor in Risk Management aims to provide interested students with basic concepts of risk management and fundamental skills of employing various statistical techniques for managing risk. The minor curriculum is particularly designed for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Risk Management or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: acquire basic understanding and identify the generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: apply elementary methods and models for risk assessment and management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: acquire and interpret relevant data and information for risk management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Discipline Electives (12 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List A</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1602 Business statistics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>List B</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Discipline Electives (30 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3612 Data mining (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course (“disciplinary core”) in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to “Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements” in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Risk Management

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The Minor in Risk Management aims to provide interested students with basic concepts of risk management and fundamental skills of employing various statistical techniques for managing risk. The minor curriculum is particularly designed for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Risk Management or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- PLO 1: acquire basic understanding and identify the generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- PLO 2: apply elementary methods and models for risk assessment and management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- PLO 3: acquire and interpret relevant data and information for risk management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
- Major in Computing and Data Analytics
- Major in Risk Management
- Major in Statistics
- Minor in Statistics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:
   List A
   - STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   - STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
   - STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
   - STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   List B
   - STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   - STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   - STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
   - STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
   - STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
   - STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   - STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
   - STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
   - STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
   - STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   - STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
   - STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
   - STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
   - STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Risk Management
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2013

Objectives:
The Minor in Risk Management aims to provide interested students with basic concepts of risk management and fundamental skills of employing various statistical techniques for managing risk. The minor curriculum is particularly designed for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Risk Management or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: acquire basic understanding and identify the generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply elementary methods and models for risk assessment and management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: acquire and interpret relevant data and information for risk management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)

At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:

List A
- STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
- STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
- STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
- STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)

List B
- STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
- STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)
Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)

At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
- STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
- STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
- STAT3612 Data mining (6)
- STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
- STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
- STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
- STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
- STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
- STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
- STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
- STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Risk Management

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2012

Objectives:
The Minor in Risk Management aims to provide interested students with basic concepts of risk management and fundamental skills of employing various statistical techniques for managing risk. The minor curriculum is particularly designed for students from different majors to enhance their interests in Risk Management or to complement their major of study.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: acquire basic understanding and identify the generic risk management issues and techniques (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: apply elementary methods and models for risk assessment and management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 3: acquire and interpret relevant data and information for risk management (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Statistics

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:

List A
- STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
- STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
- STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
- STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)

List B
- STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
- STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3609 The statistics of investment risk (6)
- STAT3610 Risk management and insurance (6)
- STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
- STAT3612 Data mining (6)
- STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
- STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6)
- STAT3618 Derivatives and risk management (6)
- STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
- STAT4603 Current topics in risk management (6)
- STAT4606 Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6)
- STAT4607 Credit risk analysis (6)
- STAT4608 Market risk analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Objectives:
The curriculum of the Minor in Statistics is structured specifically to cater for the general need of non-statistical disciplines and provide basic training in statistical methodologies and their applications to practical problems. It aims to provide students with a strong and rigorous sense of quantitative reasoning that has become an indispensable skill in nearly all disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: acquire basic statistical knowledge alongside their major disciplines, with emphases on correct applications of statistical methods and insightful interpretations of statistical findings (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: equip with computational skills essential to conducting complete data analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: participate proactively in large-scale, multi-disciplinary studies, determine objective findings, and provide guidance on all aspects of data collection and analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:
   List A
   - STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   - STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
   - STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
   - STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   List B
   - STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   - STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)
   - STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   - STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   - STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)
   - STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   - STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)
   - STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)
   - STAT3606 Business logistics (6)
   - STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
   - STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)
   - STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
   - STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   - STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)
   - STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
   - STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
   - STAT3617 Sample survey methods (6)
   - STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)
   - STAT3955 Survival analysis (6)
   - STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   - STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Statistics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2016

Objectives:
The curriculum of the Minor in Statistics is structured specifically to cater for the general need of non-statistical disciplines and provide basic training in statistical methodologies and their applications to practical problems. It aims to provide students with a strong and rigorous sense of quantitative reasoning that has become an indispensable skill in nearly all disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: acquire basic statistical knowledge alongside their major disciplines, with emphases on correct applications of statistical methods and insightful interpretations of statistical findings (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum).

PLO 2: equip with computational skills essential to conducting complete data analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum).

PLO 3: participate proactively in large-scale, multi-disciplinary studies, determine objective findings, and provide guidance on all aspects of data collection and analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum).

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:

List A
- STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
- STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
- STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
- STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)

List B
- STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
- STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)
- STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
- STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)
- STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
- STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)
- STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)
- STAT3606 Business logistics (6)
- STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
- STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)
- STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
- STAT3612 Data mining (6)
- STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)
- STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
- STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
- STAT3617 Sample survey methods (6)
- STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
- STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)
- STAT3955 Survival analysis (6)
- STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
- STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Statistics
Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2015

Objectives:
The curriculum of the Minor in Statistics is structured specifically to cater for the general need of non-statistical disciplines and provide basic training in statistical methodologies and their applications to practical problems. It aims to provide students with a strong and rigorous sense of quantitative reasoning that has become an indispensable skill in nearly all disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: acquire basic statistical knowledge alongside their major disciplines, with emphases on correct applications of statistical methods and insightful interpretations of statistical findings (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: equip with computational skills essential to conducting complete data analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: participate proactively in large-scale, multi-disciplinary studies, determine objective findings, and provide guidance on all aspects of data collection and analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management

Required courses (42 credits)

1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:

List A
- STAT1601: Elementary statistical methods (6)
- STAT1602: Business statistics (6)
- STAT1603: Introductory statistics (6)
- STAT2601: Probability and statistics I (6)

List B
- STAT2602: Probability and statistics II (6)
- STAT2603: Data management with SAS (6)
- STAT2605: Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:

- STAT3600: Linear statistical analysis (6)
- STAT3602: Statistical inference (6)
- STAT3603: Probability modelling (6)
- STAT3604: Design and analysis of experiments (6)
- STAT3605: Quality control and management (6)
- STAT3606: Business logistics (6)
- STAT3607: Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
- STAT3608: Statistical genetics (6)
- STAT3611: Computer-aided data analysis (6)
- STAT3612: Data mining (6)
- STAT3613: Marketing engineering (6)
- STAT3614: Business forecasting (6)
- STAT3616: Advanced SAS programming (6)
- STAT3617: Sample survey methods (6)
- STAT3620: Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
- STAT3621: Statistical data analysis (6)
- STAT3955: Survival analysis (6)
- STAT4601: Time-series analysis (6)
- STAT4602: Multivariate data analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Statistics

Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in 2014

Objectives:
The curriculum of the Minor in Statistics is structured specifically to cater for the general need of non-statistical disciplines and provide basic training in statistical methodologies and their applications to practical problems. It aims to provide students with a strong and rigorous sense of quantitative reasoning that has become an indispensable skill in nearly all disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: acquire basic statistical knowledge alongside their major disciplines, with emphases on correct applications of statistical methods and insightful interpretations of statistical findings (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: equip with computational skills essential to conducting complete data analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: participate proactively in large-scale, multi-disciplinary studies, determine objective findings, and provide guidance on all aspects of data collection and analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Computing and Data Analytics
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management

### Required courses (42 credits)

#### 1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

- **List A**
  - STAT1601: Elementary statistical methods (6)
  - STAT1602: Business statistics (6)
  - STAT1603: Introductory statistics (6)
  - STAT2601: Probability and statistics I (6)

- **List B**
  - STAT2602: Probability and statistics II (6)
  - STAT2603: Data management with SAS (6)
  - STAT2605: Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)

#### 2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)

**Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)**

- **List A**
  - STAT3600: Linear statistical analysis (6)
  - STAT3602: Statistical inference (6)
  - STAT3603: Probability modelling (6)
  - STAT3604: Design and analysis of experiments (6)
  - STAT3605: Quality control and management (6)
  - STAT3606: Business logistics (6)
  - STAT3607: Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
  - STAT3608: Statistical genetics (6)
  - STAT3611: Computer-aided data analysis (6)
  - STAT3612: Data mining (6)
  - STAT3613: Marketing engineering (6)
  - STAT3614: Business forecasting (6)
  - STAT3616: Advanced SAS programming (6)
  - STAT3617: Sample survey methods (6)
  - STAT3620: Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
  - STAT3621: Statistical data analysis (6)
  - STAT3955: Survival analysis (6)
  - STAT4601: Time-series analysis (6)
  - STAT4602: Multivariate data analysis (6)

### Notes:

1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

### Remarks:

Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
**Minor Title**: Minor in Statistics  
**Offered to students admitted to Year 1 in**: 2013

**Objectives:**
The curriculum of the Minor in Statistics is structured specifically to cater for the general need of non-statistical disciplines and provide basic training in statistical methodologies and their applications to practical problems. It aims to provide students with a strong and rigorous sense of quantitative reasoning that has become an indispensable skill in nearly all disciplines.

**Learning Outcomes:**
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

- **PLO 1**: acquire basic statistical knowledge alongside their major disciplines, with emphases on correct applications of statistical methods and insightful interpretations of statistical findings (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)
- **PLO 2**: equip with computational skills essential to conducting complete data analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)
- **PLO 3**: participate proactively in large-scale, multi-disciplinary studies, determine objective findings, and provide guidance on all aspects of data collection and analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

**Impermissible Combinations:**
Major in Decision Analytics  
Major in Risk Management  
Major in Statistics  
Minor in Risk Management

**Required courses (42 credits)**

1. **Introductory level courses (12 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)**

   **List A**
   - STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   - STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
   - STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
   - STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)

   **List B**
   - STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   - STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)
   - STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)

2. **Advanced level courses (30 credits)**

   **Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)**

   **At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:**
   - STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   - STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)
   - STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   - STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)
   - STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)
   - STAT3606 Business logistics (6)
   - STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
   - STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)
   - STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
   - STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   - STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)
   - STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
   - STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
   - STAT3617 Sample survey methods (6)
   - STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
   - STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)
   - STAT3955 Survival analysis (6)
   - STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   - STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

**Notes:**
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

**Remarks:**
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Minor Title: Minor in Statistics
Offered to students: 2012

Objectives:
The curriculum of the Minor in Statistics is structured specifically to cater for the general need of non-statistical disciplines and provide basic training in statistical methodologies and their applications to practical problems. It aims to provide students with a strong and rigorous sense of quantitative reasoning that has become an indispensable skill in nearly all disciplines.

Learning Outcomes:
By the end of this programme, students should be able to:

PLO 1: acquire basic statistical knowledge alongside their major disciplines, with emphases on correct applications of statistical methods and insightful interpretations of statistical findings (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

PLO 2: equip with computational skills essential to conducting complete data analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes, project-based learning and presentation opportunities in the curriculum)

PLO 3: participate proactively in large-scale, multi-disciplinary studies, determine objective findings, and provide guidance on all aspects of data collection and analyses (by means of coursework, tutorial classes and project-based learning in the curriculum)

Impermissible Combinations:
Major in Decision Analytics
Major in Risk Management
Major in Statistics
Minor in Risk Management

Required courses (42 credits)
1. Introductory level courses (12 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (12 credits)
   At least 12 credits from List A and List B, with at least 6 credits from List B:
   List A
   STAT1601 Elementary statistical methods (6)
   STAT1602 Business statistics (6)
   STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6)
   STAT2601 Probability and statistics I (6)
   List B
   STAT2602 Probability and statistics II (6)
   STAT2603 Data management with SAS (6)
   STAT2605 Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6)

2. Advanced level courses (30 credits)
   Disciplinary Electives (30 credits)
   At least 30 credits selected from the following courses:
   STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6)
   STAT3602 Statistical inference (6)
   STAT3603 Probability modelling (6)
   STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6)
   STAT3605 Quality control and management (6)
   STAT3606 Business logistics (6)
   STAT3607 Statistics in clinical medicine and bio-medical research (6)
   STAT3608 Statistical genetics (6)
   STAT3611 Computer-aided data analysis (6)
   STAT3612 Data mining (6)
   STAT3613 Marketing engineering (6)
   STAT3614 Business forecasting (6)
   STAT3616 Advanced SAS programming (6)
   STAT3617 Sample survey methods (6)
   STAT3620 Modern nonparametric statistics (6)
   STAT3621 Statistical data analysis (6)
   STAT3955 Survival analysis (6)
   STAT4601 Time-series analysis (6)
   STAT4602 Multivariate data analysis (6)

Notes:
1. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major-minor or double-minors combinations. For a course appears as a core course ("disciplinary core") in the major-minor or double-minors, students have to make up the credits by taking replacement course in the minor. For details, please refer to "Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements" in the BSc syllabuses.

Remarks:
Important! Ultimate responsibility rests with students to ensure that the required pre-requisites and co-requisite of selected courses are fulfilled. Students must take and pass all required courses in the selected primary science major in order to satisfy the degree graduation requirements.
Students taking double Majors, Major-Minor or double Minors with overlapping course requirements
1. Double-counting of courses up to a maximum of 24 credits is permissible with double majors. The double-counted courses in both Science majors must include SCNC1111 and SCNC1112. Additional credits to be double-counted must be for courses required ('disciplinary core') by both majors. For cases with 24 or less double-counted credits, the student must make up an equivalent number of credits by taking other courses offered by any Faculty.

2. The following list shows the major-major combinations that have more than 24 credits of the same 'disciplinary core' courses that appear in both majors and is subject to the rule of double counting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major-Major combination</th>
<th>Admission Year (Year 1)</th>
<th>No. of common 'disciplinary core' courses (credits) appear in both majors including SCNC1111 and SCNC1112</th>
<th>No. of replacement courses (credits) to be taken in the 2nd major ('Major 2')</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Major in Astronomy, Major in Mathematics/Physics</td>
<td>2012, 2013, 2014</td>
<td>5 (30 credits)</td>
<td>1 (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Astronomy, Major in Physics</td>
<td>2012, 2013, 2014</td>
<td>6 (36 credits)</td>
<td>2 (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Biochemistry, Major in Chemistry</td>
<td>2015, 2016, 2017</td>
<td>5 (30 credits)</td>
<td>1 (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Biochemistry, Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology</td>
<td>2012, 2013, 2014</td>
<td>5 (30 credits)</td>
<td>1 (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Biological Sciences, Major in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity</td>
<td>All years</td>
<td>7 (42 credits)</td>
<td>3 (18 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Biological Sciences, Major in Food &amp; Nutritional Science</td>
<td>2012, 2014, 2017</td>
<td>6 (36 credits)</td>
<td>2 (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>5 (30 credits)</td>
<td>1 (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2015, 2016</td>
<td>7 (42 credits)</td>
<td>3 (18 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Biological Sciences, Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology</td>
<td>2012, 2013, 2014</td>
<td>5 (30 credits)</td>
<td>1 (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology</td>
<td>2012, 2013, 2014</td>
<td>6 (36 credits)</td>
<td>2 (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity, Major in Food &amp; Nutritional Science</td>
<td>2013, 2017</td>
<td>5 (30 credits)</td>
<td>1 (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity, Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology</td>
<td>2012, 2014, 2015, 2016</td>
<td>6 (36 credits)</td>
<td>2 (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Food &amp; Nutritional Science, Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology</td>
<td>All years</td>
<td>5 (30 credits)</td>
<td>1 (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Major in Food &amp; Nutritional Science, Major in Molecular Biology &amp; Biotechnology</td>
<td>All years</td>
<td>6 (36 credits)</td>
<td>2 (12 credits)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If more than 24 credits (including SCNC1111 & SCNC1112) are listed as ‘disciplinary core’ courses required in both the first ('Major 1') and second ('Major 2') majors undertaken by a student, the student must make up the number of credits above the 24 permissible by taking replacement course(s) in the second major ('Major 2'). The replacement course(s) must be the disciplinary elective course in the second major ('Major 2') and have the same prefix and at the same or higher level as the double-counted course(s). The double counted credits should count the following courses in this order: (1) SCNC1111 and SCNC1112, (2) introductory level (levels 1 and 2) courses, and (3) advanced level (level 3 or above) courses. For example, if a student takes a first major in Ecology & Biodiversity ('Major 1') and the 2nd major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology ('Major 2'), SCNC1111, SCNC1112, BIOL1110, BIOL2102 and BIOL2103 are the common ‘disciplinary core’ courses that appear in both majors. The first 3 courses SCNC1111, SCNC1112, and BIOL1110 would first be counted plus either BIOL2102 or BIOL2103 for the major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology. The student has to take a replacement ‘disciplinary elective’ course (with a prefix of BIOL at level 2 or above) in the 2nd major in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology to make up for BIOL2102 or BIOL2103.
3. Double counting of credits is not permissible for major–minor or double-minors combinations. When a course is required (‘disciplinary core’) both by the major and minor or by both minors, the student must take a replacement course for the minor. The replacement course must be the disciplinary elective in the minor and have the same prefix and at the same or higher level as the course to be replaced.

4. For students taking the Mathematics related majors/minors should note the following exemption and replacement arrangement:

   Students who fall into the following exemption situation for the introductory level Disciplinary Core Mathematics courses in Science Majors/Minors are required to take the specified replacement course(s) as prescribed in the table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exempted Course</th>
<th>Exemption granted under the following circumstances</th>
<th>Specified Replacement Course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH1013 University mathematics II</td>
<td>For students taking Minor with an overlap of Disciplinary Core Course: MATH1013</td>
<td>Select 6 credits from the following to replace MATH1013:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For students taking Programme / Major / Minor with Disciplinary Core Courses: MATH1851 and MATH1853 (which are together deemed equivalent to MATH1013)</td>
<td>• MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For students taking Professional Core in Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science with Disciplinary Core Course: MATH1821 (which is equivalent to MATH1013)</td>
<td>• MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Any 6-credit advanced level Mathematics Disciplinary Elective chosen from the Programme/Major/Minor structure in which MATH1013 is the disciplinary core course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2014 Multivariable calculus and linear algebra</td>
<td>For students taking Professional Core in Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science with Disciplinary Core Course: MATH2822 (which is equivalent to MATH2014)</td>
<td>Select 6 credits from the following to replace MATH2014:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Any 6-credit advanced level Mathematics Disciplinary Elective chosen from the Minor structure in which MATH2014 is the disciplinary core course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2101 Linear algebra I</td>
<td>For students taking Minor with an overlap of Disciplinary Core Course: MATH2101</td>
<td>Select 6 credits from the following to replace MATH2101:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Any 6-credit advanced level Mathematics Disciplinary Elective chosen from the Minor structure in which MATH2101 is the disciplinary core course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MATH2211 Multivariable calculus</td>
<td>For students taking Minor with an overlap of Disciplinary Core Course: MATH2211</td>
<td>Select 6 credits from the following to replace MATH2211:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Any 6-credit advanced level Mathematics Disciplinary Elective chosen from the Minor structure in which MATH2211 is the disciplinary core course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 credits of Introductory level courses requirement of the Minor: MATH1013 MATH2101 MATH2211</td>
<td>For students taking Professional Core in Bachelor of Science in Actuarial Science with Disciplinary Core courses: MATH1821 and MATH2822 (which are together deemed to have satisfied MATH1013, MATH2101 &amp; MATH2211)</td>
<td>Select 18 credits from the following to replace the credit requirement of MATH1013, MATH2101 &amp; MATH2211:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2012 Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6) (if not the disciplinary core course in the structure); and/or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• MATH2241 Introduction to mathematical analysis (6) (if not the disciplinary core course in the structure); and/or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>• Equivalent credits of advanced level Mathematics Disciplinary Elective(s) chosen from the Major/Minor structure in which MATH1013, MATH2101 &amp; MATH2211 are the disciplinary core courses</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. For the situations of 2, 3 and 4 above, students have to complete the application form, seek the written endorsement from the Course Selection Adviser of the second major (‘Major 2’) / minor and then return it to the Faculty Office by the closing dates of course selection or add/drop periods.
## BIOC1600

**Offering Department:** Biomedical Sciences  
**Academic Year:** 2017  
**Quota:** ---

### Course Co-ordinator
Dr B C W Wong, Biomedical Sciences (jatanner@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
- Dr J Tanner, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr C Ho, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr J Tanner, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr L Y L Cheng, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr, M SY Huen, Biomedical Sciences

### Course Objectives
- Teach students a biochemical perspective on each of the Basic Sciences focusing on concepts fundamental to the learning of Biochemistry.
- Promote deep learning of course material through an integrated programme of practical and collaborative tasks.
- Inspire students with a view of the great discoveries and future challenges for Biochemistry.
- Help students make the transition from school to university by developing their teamwork, independent study skills and confidence to communicate within a Biochemistry learning environment.

### Course Contents & Topics

**A. Biochemical Perspective on the Basic Sciences**

- The elements and bonding (from carbon to Coenzyme A); Resonance and orbital theory (a focus on the electron); Structure and conformation (thinking in 3 dimensions); Isomerism (from mirrors to thalidomide); Water (the universal biochemical solvent) & buffer; Quantitation in chemistry (who was Avogadro anyway?).

**B. Biology for Biochemistry**

- The basic building blocks of life (proteins, DNA, lipids, carbohydrate); The Central Dogma of Molecular Biology; Evolution (considering molecular evolution); Origins of life (the chicken-egg paradox of proteins and DNA)

**C. Physics and Mathematics for Biochemistry**

- Thermodynamics from a Biological Perspective; Introduction to molecular recognition and binding (DNA melting); Statistics for biochemistry (applied statistics for what you really need to know); Thinking numbers (exponentials, logs and the limits of life).

**D. Inspiring Biochemistry**

- The protein; The gene; Vitamins and disease; Synthetic biology; The challenges of modern-day genetics Drugs-successes and failures.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe the basics of biomolecular structure from a chemical perspective, thereby integrating the basic sciences of biology, chemistry and physics into a biochemical perspective
- CLO 2 apply knowledge of biomolecular structure to review major discoveries and contemporary issues in molecular biology
- CLO 3 interpret scientific data and discuss major issues in biochemistry using the scientific literature
- CLO 4 demonstrate skills in working and collaborating together with colleagues in practicals and in presentation of scientific ideas
- CLO 5 relate how biochemistry intersects with the three basic sciences of biology, chemistry and physics, and recognize the transition from school to university level study

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Level 3 or above in HKDSE Biology, Chemistry, or Combined Science with Biology or Chemistry component, or equivalent

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Dec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Exceptionally good performance demonstrating comprehensive understanding of the subject matter; critical insight into use of scientific data and the scientific literature; superior presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Good performance demonstrating full understanding of the subject matter; coherent insight into use of scientific data and the scientific literature; good presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Satisfactory performance demonstrating adequate understanding of the subject matter; some insight into use of scientific data and the scientific literature; some presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Limited performance demonstrating some understanding of basic subject matter; some ability to use scientific data and the scientific literature; limited presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Poor understanding of subject matter; with little to no insight into use of scientific data; no understanding of the scientific literature and unable to present or collaborate.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures or workshops</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>Practical classes</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Tasks and preparation</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>including practical writeups</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>group communication project</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
TBC

### Additional Course Information
Also offered as ENGG1207 "Foundations of biochemistry for medical engineering" to students of the Faculty of Engineering. Students who have passed ENGG1207 is considered to have passed BIOC1600.

## BIOC2600

**Offering Department:** Biomedical Sciences  
**Academic Year:** 2017  
**Quota:** 300

### Course Co-ordinator
Prof D K Y Shum, Biomedical Sciences (shumdkhk@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
- Dr A S L Wong, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr C M Qian, Biomedical Sciences

## BIOC2600

**Offering Department:** Biomedical Sciences  
**Academic Year:** 2017  
**Quota:** ---

### Course Co-ordinator
Dr J Tanner, Biomedical Sciences (jatanner@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
- Dr J Tanner, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr C Ho, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr J Tanner, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr L Y L Cheng, Biomedical Sciences
- Dr, M SY Huen, Biomedical Sciences

### Course Objectives

- Teach students a biochemical perspective on each of the Basic Sciences focusing on concepts fundamental to the learning of Biochemistry.
- Promote deep learning of course material through an integrated programme of practical and collaborative tasks.
- Inspire students with a view of the great discoveries and future challenges for Biochemistry.
- Help students make the transition from school to university by developing their teamwork, independent study skills and confidence to communicate within a Biochemistry learning environment.

### Course Contents & Topics

**A. Biochemical Perspective on the Basic Sciences**

- The elements and bonding (from carbon to Coenzyme A); Resonance and orbital theory (a focus on the electron); Structure and conformation (thinking in 3 dimensions); Isomerism (from mirrors to thalidomide); Water (the universal biochemical solvent) & buffer; Quantitation in chemistry (who was Avogadro anyway?).

**B. Biology for Biochemistry**

- The basic building blocks of life (proteins, DNA, lipids, carbohydrate); The Central Dogma of Molecular Biology; Evolution (considering molecular evolution); Origins of life (the chicken-egg paradox of proteins and DNA)

**C. Physics and Mathematics for Biochemistry**

- Thermodynamics from a Biological Perspective; Introduction to molecular recognition and binding (DNA melting); Statistics for biochemistry (applied statistics for what you really need to know); Thinking numbers (exponentials, logs and the limits of life).

**D. Inspiring Biochemistry**

- The protein; The gene; Vitamins and disease; Synthetic biology; The challenges of modern-day genetics Drugs-successes and failures.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe the basics of biomolecular structure from a chemical perspective, thereby integrating the basic sciences of biology, chemistry and physics into a biochemical perspective
- CLO 2 apply knowledge of biomolecular structure to review major discoveries and contemporary issues in molecular biology
- CLO 3 interpret scientific data and discuss major issues in biochemistry using the scientific literature
- CLO 4 demonstrate skills in working and collaborating together with colleagues in practicals and in presentation of scientific ideas
- CLO 5 relate how biochemistry intersects with the three basic sciences of biology, chemistry and physics, and recognize the transition from school to university level study

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Level 3 or above in HKDSE Biology, Chemistry, or Combined Science with Biology or Chemistry component, or equivalent

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Dec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Exceptionally good performance demonstrating comprehensive understanding of the subject matter; critical insight into use of scientific data and the scientific literature; superior presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Good performance demonstrating full understanding of the subject matter; coherent insight into use of scientific data and the scientific literature; good presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Satisfactory performance demonstrating adequate understanding of the subject matter; some insight into use of scientific data and the scientific literature; some presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Limited performance demonstrating some understanding of basic subject matter; some ability to use scientific data and the scientific literature; limited presentation and group collaboration skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Poor understanding of subject matter; with little to no insight into use of scientific data; no understanding of the scientific literature and unable to present or collaborate.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures or workshops</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>Practical classes</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Tasks and preparation</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>including practical writeups</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>group communication project</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
TBC

### Additional Course Information
Also offered as ENGG1207 "Foundations of biochemistry for medical engineering" to students of the Faculty of Engineering. Students who have passed ENGG1207 is considered to have passed BIOC1600.
This course is designed to present an overview of biochemistry of fundamental importance to the life process. We aim to develop appreciation of the basics in biochemistry as a common ground for science and non-science students to progress into their areas of specialization. Students intending to pursue further studies in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology will find this course particularly helpful.

#### Course Objectives

- **CLO 1** relate structures to functions of biomolecules
- **CLO 2** explain the functions of key metabolic processes
- **CLO 3** explain the significance of signaling across cell membranes
- **CLO 4** explain the flow of genetic information

#### Pre-requisites

- Pass in BIOC1600 or BIOL1110 or ENGG1207; and
- Not for students who have passed in BIOL2220 or MEDE2301, or have already enrolled in these courses.

#### Course Type

Lecture-based course

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Contents & Topics

Structure and functions of carbohydrates, lipids, nucleic acids, amino acids and proteins; enzymes and coenzymes; basic bioenergetics; key metabolic processes in a living cell; signaling across cell membranes; flow of genetic information.

#### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** relate structures to functions of biomolecules
- **CLO 2** explain the functions of key metabolic processes
- **CLO 3** explain the significance of signaling across cell membranes
- **CLO 4** explain the flow of genetic information

#### Additional Course Information

This course is designed to present an overview of biochemistry of fundamental importance to the life process. We aim to develop appreciation of the basics in biochemistry as a common ground for science and non-science students to progress into their areas of specialization. Students intending to pursue further studies in Biochemistry and Molecular Biology will find this course particularly helpful.

- Demonstrates thorough and complete mastery of the entire range of knowledge and analytical skills as required for maximal attainment in all the course learning outcomes; excellence in critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.
- Demonstrates substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of the majority of course learning outcomes; good evidence of critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.
- Demonstrates general but incomplete command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of adequate course learning outcomes; some evidence critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.
- Demonstrates partial but limited command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of some of the course learning outcomes; limited evidence of critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.
- Demonstrates little or no evidence of command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of the course learning outcomes; lacking in critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

#### Grade Descriptors

**A** (Excellent, Outstanding)

- Demonstrates thorough and complete mastery of the entire range of knowledge and analytical skills as required for maximal attainment in all the course learning outcomes; excellence in critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

**B** (Good)

- Demonstrates substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of the majority of course learning outcomes; good evidence of critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

**C** (Satisfactory)

- Demonstrates general but incomplete command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of adequate course learning outcomes; some evidence critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

**D** (Pass)

- Demonstrates partial but limited command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of some of the course learning outcomes; limited evidence of critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

**F** (Fail)

- Demonstrates little or no evidence of command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of the course learning outcomes; lacking in critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

#### Course Objectives

- **CLO 1** explain the significance of individual steps in a metabolic pathway
- **CLO 2** recognize the importance and the need for regulation of metabolic pathways
- **CLO 3** discuss the roles of enzymes in the regulation of metabolic pathways
- **CLO 4** describe how metabolic process are integrated under different physiological and pathological conditions

#### Pre-requisites

- Pass in BIOC1600 or BIOL2220 or MEDE2301

#### Additional Course Information

This course focuses on the central metabolic pathways involved in the provision of energy needed by living organisms. Major metabolic pathways covered in this course include those that are involved in the synthesis and breakdown of glucose, glycogen, triacylglycerol, and amino acids. The metabolism of purines and pyrimidines will also be considered. Emphasis is on the understanding of the metabolic reactions involved and how they are applied to explain one of the most important and cardinal issues of biological life: the acquisition of metabolic energy. The course will lay the foundation for the more advanced courses offered in the Biochemistry Major and will also serve as a useful complement to courses on nutrition.

#### Course Objectives

- **CLO 1** explain the significance of individual steps in a metabolic pathway
- **CLO 2** recognize the importance and the need for regulation of metabolic pathways
- **CLO 3** discuss the roles of enzymes in the regulation of metabolic pathways
- **CLO 4** describe how metabolic process are integrated under different physiological and pathological conditions

#### Pre-requisites

- Pass in BIOC1600 or BIOL2220 or MEDE2301

#### Grade Descriptors

**A** (Excellent, Outstanding)

- Demonstrates thorough and extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Displays a strong analytical ability and logical thinking and is able to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex situations. Consistently able to communicate sophisticated ideas clearly and coherently.

**B** (Good)

- Demonstrates substantial knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes; limited evidence in critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

**C** (Satisfactory)

- Demonstrates general but incomplete command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of adequate course learning outcomes; some evidence critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

**D** (Pass)

- Demonstrates partial but limited command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of some of the course learning outcomes; limited evidence of critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.

**F** (Fail)

- Demonstrates little or no evidence of command of knowledge and analytical skills as required for attainment of the course learning outcomes; lacking in critical thinking towards application of the knowledge in a range of contexts.
Course Type Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>glycolysis; gluconeogenesis; pentose phosphate pathway; glycogen metabolis; lipid metabolis; purine and pyrimidine metabolism; regulation and integration of metabolic pathways</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>working on problems relating to the lecture topics</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>2.5 hrs examination</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


BIOSC3604

Offering Department Biomedical Sciences

Course Co-ordinator Dr K M Yao, Biomedical Sciences (kmyao@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

(Prof. Z J Zhou, Biomedical Sciences)
(Prof. K M Yao, Biomedical Sciences)
(Prof. D K Y Shum, Biomedical Sciences)
(Prof. Z J Zhou, Biomedical Sciences)

Course Objectives

To give students a general overview of different experimental approaches and model systems, and to provide students with hands-on experience in basic biochemical and molecular techniques.

Course Contents & Topics

Basic concepts in experimental science; writing of lab notebooks; experimental approaches - genetic, biochemical, molecular, genomic and others; methods for isolation and analysis of carbohydrates, proteins, lipids and nucleic acids; subcellular fractionation; enzyme assays and spectrophotometry; basic nucleic acid manipulation - PCR, site-directed mutagenesis, blotting and hybridization, cloning strategies, restriction mapping.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 explain the basic principles of various biochemical and molecular techniques
- CLO 2 describe different experimental approaches for achieving defined experimental aims
- CLO 3 apply different techniques to biochemical and molecular analyses
- CLO 4 write and maintain a scientific laboratory notebook satisfactorily

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 or MEDE2301


Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrates thorough and extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Shows strong analytical ability and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Competently conducts laboratory skills and techniques with confidence and can critically appraise data to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.

B Demonstrates substantial knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Shows evidence of critical thinking and analytical skills. Conducts laboratory skills and techniques with confidence and can appraise data to draw appropriate conclusions.

C Demonstrates general but incomplete knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Shows some evidence of critical thinking and analytical skills. Conducts laboratory skills and techniques to a satisfactory level of competence and can sometimes correctly appraise data and draw appropriate conclusions.

D Demonstrates partial but limited knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Shows limited critical thinking and analytical skills. Displays poor laboratory skills and techniques and is rarely able to use data to draw appropriate conclusions.

Fail Demonstrates little or no evidence of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lacks analytical ability and logical thinking. Displays ineffective lab skills and techniques and is unable to use data to draw appropriate conclusions.

Course Type Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>72</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>76</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


BIOSC3605

Offering Department Biomedical Sciences

Course Co-ordinator Dr B C W Wong, Biomedical Sciences (bcwwong@hku.hk)
School of Biomedical Sciences

Course Objectives
This course will examine existing bioinformatics tools for DNA and protein sequence analysis. The underlying principles of these analysis programs and services will be presented. Students will learn how to retrieve, analyze, and compare protein and DNA sequences using bioinformatics tools available on the World Wide Web.

Course Contents & Topics
This course will introduce and discuss the following topics:
- DNA and protein sequence database, protein family databases; information searching and retrieval - Entrez and SRS; Simple sequence analysis; sequence alignment: pair-wise alignment, multiple sequence alignment, substitution matrices; sequence database searching; algorithm and parameters; sequence patterns and motifs, and profiles; phylogenetic analysis; gene prediction.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 search and retrieve sequence information from biological databases
- CLO 2 describe the algorithms for pairwise and multiple alignments, BLAST, and phylogenetic trees construction
- CLO 3 perform sequence analysis using EMBOSS package and other web-based analysis tools
- CLO 4 interpret results from sequence alignments and BLAST database searches
- CLO 5 use results from various sequence analysis tools to annotate a biological sequence

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 or BBMS2003 or BBMS2007 or MEDE2301

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A to F)
- A: Demonstrates thorough and complete mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes; strong critical thinking; excellent ability to apply bioinformatics skills in a range of contexts.
- B: Demonstrates substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes; evidence of critical thinking; good ability to apply bioinformatics skills in a range of context.
- C: Demonstrates general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes; some critical thinking; adequate ability to apply bioinformatics skills in a range of context.
- D: Demonstrates partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes; limited critical thinking; limited ability to apply bioinformatics skills in a range of context.
- Fail: Demonstrates little or no command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes; lack of critical thinking; little or no ability to apply bioinformatics skills in a range of context.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
- Activities: Lectures, Tutorials, Reading / Self study
- Details: 36, 12, 100
- No. of Hours

Assessment Methods and Weighting
- Methods: Assignments, Examination
- Details: 30, 70
- Weighting in final course grade (%): CLO 1: 2, CLO 2: 3, CLO 3: 4, CLO 4: 5
- Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping: CLO 1, 2, 3

Required/recommended reading and online materials

BIOC3606
Molecular medicine (6 credits)

Offering Department
Biomedical Sciences

Course Co-ordinator
Prof D Y Jin, Biomedical Sciences (dyjin@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
Dr B Gao, Biomedical Sciences, Dr. S K Y Ma, Biomedical Sciences, Dr. YQ Song, Biomedical Sciences, Dr. YQ Song, Biomedical Sciences, Prof K S E Cheah, Biomedical Sciences, Prof K S E Cheah, Biomedical Sciences, Prof M H Sham, Biomedical Sciences, Prof M H Sham, Biomedical Sciences

Course Objectives
To provide up-to-date knowledge of the molecular and cellular basis of human diseases including skeletal disorders, cancer and infection with HIV and influenza viruses, thereby preparing the students for a career in biomedical, biotechnological, pharmaceutical and genomic research.

Course Contents & Topics
This course covers molecular basis of skeletal disorders, cancer and viral diseases, and molecular therapeutics. Specific topics may include mouse model of human diseases, molecular basis of selected skeletal disorders, cell signaling in relation to human diseases, oncogenes and tumour suppressor genes, genome instability, HIV science, genetics and pathogenesis of influenza viruses, molecular approaches to vaccine development, immune checkpoint therapy, stem cells and stem cell therapy, gene therapy, and nucleic acid therapeutics. Basic knowledge of biochemistry and molecular cell biology is assumed for students taking this course.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 explain the molecular mechanisms underlying selected human skeletal disorders, cancer and viral diseases
- CLO 2 illustrate the application of molecular biology in medicine with examples
- CLO 3 integrate and translate knowledge in molecular biology to new approaches in disease prevention and intervention

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 or MEDE2301

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A to F)
- A: Displays a comprehensive grasp of the key concepts underlying the molecular basis of human diseases, with few omissions or errors. Able to articulate clearly with examples how knowledge in molecular biology can lead to new strategies in disease prevention and intervention. Evidence of strong analytical and critical thinking when dealing with complex scientific data. Some evidence for additional information beyond what is given in the lectures.
- B: Displays a substantial and near-complete grasp of the key concepts underlying the molecular basis of human diseases, but without depth in some areas and with some omissions and factual errors. An understanding of the topic though is clear. Able to
relate knowledge in molecular biology to new strategies in disease prevention and intervention. Able to apply analytical and critical thinking skills when dealing with scientific data.

D Displays a limited understanding of the key concepts underlying the molecular basis of human disease and is rarely able to relate knowledge in molecular biology to new strategies in disease prevention and intervention. Evidence of weak analytical and critical thinking skills when dealing with scientific data.

Fail Displays an incorrect or incomplete understanding of the key concepts underlying the molecular basis of human disease and is unable to relate this knowledge to effective treatment strategies. No evidence of analytical or critical thinking skills when dealing with scientific data.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cassimeris et al: Lewin's Cells, 2nd ed., 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BIOC3999** Directed studies in biochemistry (6 credits)

**Offering Department** Biomedical Sciences

**Academic Year** 2017

**Course Co-ordinator** Prof J D Huang, Biomedical Sciences (jdhuang@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved** (All academic staff in Biochemistry Major,Biomedical Sciences) (Prof J D Huang,Biomedical Sciences)

**Course Objectives** To enhance students knowledge of a particular topic and the students self-directed learning and critical thinking skills.

**Course Contents & Topics** The student undertakes a self-managed study on a topic in biochemistry under the supervision of a staff member. The topic is preferably one not sufficiently covered in the regular curriculum. The directed-study can be a critical review or a synthesis of published work on the subject. A laboratory or field study may also be involved that would enhance the student's understanding of the subject.

**Course Learning Outcomes** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 critically appraise research literature in a specific area of biochemistry and molecular biology
- CLO 2 examine the theoretical or experimental basis for existing concepts
- CLO 3 identify questions and evaluate issues for further research development

**Pre-requisites** (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in Biochemistry Major including BIOC2600 and BIOL3401.

This capstone course is for Biochemistry Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018** Y 1st sem 2nd sem Summer Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Examination No Exam**

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

| A | Produces a sophisticated and detailed appraisal of the biochemical literature, displaying a comprehensive and deep understanding of the selected topic. Able to contextualize all the ideas within a personal framework of knowledge and evaluate relevant issues emerging from the study. Works proactively with a supervisor to enhance understanding and scientific writing skills. Communicates the findings to a broader audience in an effective way and responds knowledgeably to questions. Excellent time-management skills and able to reflect honestly on one's own learning. |
| B | Produces a coherent appraisal of the biochemical literature, displaying a sound understanding of the selected topic. Able to contextualize many of the ideas within a personal framework of knowledge and identify some relevant issues emerging from the study. Works constructively with a supervisor to enhance understanding and scientific writing skills. Clearly communicates the findings to a broader audience and responds knowledgeably to most questions. Able to time-manage effectively and reflect on one's own learning. |
| C | Produces a reasonable appraisal of the biochemical literature, displaying an adequate understanding of the selected topic. Able to contextualize a few of the ideas within a personal framework of knowledge and makes some attempt to identify some relevant issues emerging from the study. Works with a supervisor and other co-workers to improve understanding and scientific writing skills. Communicates the findings to a broader audience with reasonable clarity and responds to most questions. Acceptable time-management and self-reflection skills. |
| D | Produces a superficial appraisal of the biochemical literature, displaying a limited understanding of the selected topic. Able to contextualize a few of the ideas within a personal framework of knowledge but unable to identify any relevant issues emerging from the study. Works reluctantly with a supervisor and other co-workers to develop understanding and scientific writing skills. Displays weak communication skills when presenting the findings to a broader audience. Poor time-management and self-reflection skills. |
| Fail | Fails to appraise the biochemical literature and thus unable to display any understanding of the selected topic. Unable to contextualize the ideas within a personal framework of knowledge or identify any relevant issues emerging from the study. Works in isolation, thus failing to make progress in understanding and scientific writing skills. Unable to communicate effectively when presenting the findings to a broader audience. No time-management skills or ability to self-reflect. |

**Course Type** Project-based course

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dissertation</td>
<td>including mind map (10%)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research report</td>
<td>Supervisor comments</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials** as suggested by project supervisors

**BIOC4610** Advanced biochemistry (6 credits)

**Offering Department** Biomedical Sciences

**Academic Year** 2017

**Quota** 50
Course Co-ordinator: Dr K M Yao, Biomedical Sciences (kmyao@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr K M Yao, Biomedical Sciences), (Dr K O Lai, Biomedical Sciences), (Prof D Chan, Biomedical Sciences), (Prof D K Y Shum, Biomedical Sciences)

Course Objectives: This course aims at providing students an in-depth understanding of molecular and cellular signaling in multicellular organisms. This course is particularly useful for students interested in research or intending to develop a career in biomedical sciences.

Course Contents & Topics:
A. Inter and intracellular signal transduction mechanisms
Cell-surface receptors and signal transduction proteins; G-Protein-coupled receptors: structure and mechanism; signaling pathways that control gene expression; receptors that activate protein tyrosine kinases, the Ras/MAP kinase pathway, phosphoinositide signaling pathways and receptor serine kinases that activate Smads

B. Cytoskeleton as target of signal transduction
The microtubule cytoskeleton, kinesin and dynein motor; the actin cytoskeleton; myosin; the intermediate filament; cytoskeleton and cell behavior; cytoskeleton and intracellular transport in neuron

C. Protein trafficking and sorting pathways
Translocation of secretory proteins - insertion into the ER; major protein sorting pathways; protein modification, folding and quality control in the ER; molecular mechanism of vesicular trafficking; protein sorting and processing

D. Cell-cell and cell-matrix adhesion
Cell-cell and cell-extracellular matrix (ECM) junctions and their adhesion molecules; cadherins and integrins; collagens and proteoglycans; when cell meets the matrix; regulation of signaling molecules by ECM

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe the molecular and cellular signal transduction mechanisms that mediate cellular communication to achieve a plethora of cellular responses
- CLO 2 illustrate the controls of the metabolic and cellular regulation based on their understanding of cytoskeleton as target of signal transduction, protein trafficking and sorting pathways, and cell-cell and cell-matrix adhesion
- CLO 3 develop critical thinking and analytical skills

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in BIOC3601 or BIOL3401 or BIOL3402 or BIOL3404

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y
Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors:
A. Demonstrate thorough and complete mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong critical thinking and analytical skills, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations.
B. Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of critical thinking and analytical skills, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.
C. Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some critical thinking and analytical skills, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations.
D. Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some critical thinking, but with limited analytical skills. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.
Fail. Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of critical thinking and analytical skills. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials:

BIOC4611 Advanced biochemistry II (6 credits)
Offering Department: Biomedical Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Prof D Chan, Biomedical Sciences (chand@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr C M Qian, Biomedical Sciences), (Dr J Tanner, Biomedical Sciences), (Dr M Kotaka, Physiology), (Dr N S Wong, Biomedical Sciences), (Prof D Chan, Biomedical Sciences)

Course Objectives: This course is aim at providing students with an up-to-date knowledge of protein biochemistry from sequence to structure and disease; realizing the importance of kinetics in cellular function and an appreciation of the technological advances in the characterization of macromolecules.

Course Contents & Topics: Topics including protein folding and misfolding in diseases; conformation of proteins and the role of conformational changes in protein function; catalytic mechanisms of enzymes and enzyme kinetics; biomolecular interactions; characterization of macromolecules using X-ray crystallography, nuclear magnetic resonance and other spectroscopy methods; protein engineering and therapeutic approaches targeting protein function.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe how protein structures inform functions
- CLO 2 recognize the roles of enzyme kinetics in cellular functions
- CLO 3 derive structural information of macromolecules from experimental data
To provide an up-to-date knowledge of molecular biology, especially with respect to the regulation of eukaryotic gene expression.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: describe the mechanisms for regulation of transcription, RNA processing and translation in eukaryotes
- CLO 2: explain how cellular homeostasis can be maintained by a combination of controls of gene expression at multiple levels
- CLO 3: illustrate the hierarchy of gene expression regulation in stem cells and developmental processes
- CLO 4: interpret experimental results in gene regulation studies

CLO 4 apply their knowledge on protein engineering and therapeutics, and on experimental designs in basic and applied research.

Pass in BIOC3601; and BIOL3404 or CHEM2441; and Pass in BIOC4610, or already enrolled in this course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOC3601 or BIOL3401 or BIOL3402 or BBMS2007

| Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) | Pass in BIOC3601 or BIOL3401 or BIOL3402 or BBMS2007 |


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>---</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Clear and insightful description of how protein structure informs function; clear evidence of ability to recognize mechanisms of enzyme function and interpretation of data; effectual demonstration of applying knowledge to the design of scientific methodologies and cohesive, systematic and creative organization of information for presentation and communication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Clear description of how protein structure informs function; evidence of ability to recognize mechanisms of enzyme function and interpretation of data; capable demonstration of applying knowledge to the design of scientific methodologies; and cohesive and systematic organization of information for presentation and communication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Awareness of how protein structure informs function; some evidence of ability to recognize mechanisms of enzyme function and interpretation of data; some capable demonstration of applying knowledge to the design of scientific methodologies and systematic organization of information for presentation and communication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Superficial awareness of how protein structure informs function; limited evidence of ability to recognize mechanisms of enzyme function and interpretation of data; superficial demonstration of applying knowledge to the design of scientific methodologies and limited organizational skill of information for presentation and communication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Lack of awareness of how protein structure informs function; lack of ability to recognize mechanisms of enzyme function and interpretation of data; superficial demonstration of applying knowledge to the design of scientific methodologies; insufficient organizational skill of information for presentation and communication.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### BIOC4613

**Advanced techniques in biochemistry & molecular biology (6 credits)**

**Offering Department:** Biomedical Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof D Chan, Biomedical Sciences (chand@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:**  
- Dr B C W Wong, Biomedical Sciences  
- Dr J A Tanner, Biomedical Sciences  
- Dr. B Gao, Biomedical Sciences  
- Dr. M C H Cheng, Biomedical Sciences  
- Prof D Chan, Biomedical Sciences

**Course Objectives:**  
This is an advanced experimental-based course for students majoring in Biochemistry and related disciplines. The aim is to provide the necessary training for students to pursue postgraduate research education and potential employment in a scientific laboratory/industry environment.

**Course Contents & Topics:**  
Hands-on experiments using advanced techniques in biochemistry, molecular and cell biology, and bioinformatics. Students will also have the opportunity to familiarize themselves with modern instruments used in life sciences.

**Course Learning Outcomes:**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 explain the basic principles of current advanced techniques commonly used in biochemistry and molecular biology  
- CLO 2 apply and perform these techniques in other novel experimental settings  
- CLO 3 critically evaluate experimental data  
- CLO 4 design alternative approaches to test or validate hypotheses  
- CLO 5 write a concise experimental report using correct terminologies and nomenclatures

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):**  
Pass in BIOC3604

**Offer in 2017 - 2018:** Y  
1st sem  
Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):**  
A: Comprehensive and in-depth understanding of the principles and applications of advance technologies in biochemistry; clear and effective ability to identify problems and generate solutions relating to applications in a laboratory setting; clear evidence of ability to evaluate experimental data; cohesive and systematic planning and organization of experimental design and presentation of experimental data.

B: Comprehensive understanding of the principles and applications of advance technologies in biochemistry; clear ability to identify problems and generate solutions relating to applications in a laboratory setting; evidence of ability to evaluate experimental data; systematic planning and organization of experimental design and presentation of experimental data.

C: Sound understanding of the principles and applications of advance technologies in biochemistry; sound ability to identify problems and generate solutions relating to applications in a laboratory setting; some evidence of ability to evaluate experimental data; satisfactory planning and organization of experimental design and presentation of experimental data.

D: Superficial understanding of the principles and applications of advance technologies in biochemistry; limited ability to identify problems and generate solutions relating to applications in a laboratory setting; some awareness of ability to evaluate experimental data; some evidence of planning and organization of experimental design and presentation of experimental data.

Fail: Lack of understanding of the principles and applications of advance technologies in biochemistry; lack of ability to identify problems and generate solutions relating to applications in a laboratory setting; lack of evidence of ability to evaluate experimental data; insufficient evidence of planning and organization of experimental design and presentation of experimental data.

**Course Type:** Lecture with laboratory component course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>76</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


---

### BIOC4966

**Biochemistry internship (6 credits)**

**Offering Department:** Biomedical Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof J D Huang, Biomedical Sciences (jhuang@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:**  
- (All academic staff in Biochemistry Major, Biomedical Sciences)  
- (Prof J D Huang, Biomedical Sciences)

**Course Objectives:**  
This course aims to offer students the opportunities to gain work experience in the industry related to their major of study. The workplace learning experience would be of great benefit to the students to apply their knowledge gained in the study to the real work environments. Students have to take on at least 160 hours of internship work either within the University or outside the University arranged by the School/Departments.

**Course Contents & Topics:**  
1. Within the university: The student will be supervised by a staff member (Supervisor), working on a project or various tasks as instructed by the Supervisor.

2. Outside the university: The student will work in an external agency related to the major of study. The student will be supervised under a staff member of the external agency (the External Supervisor) and a staff member of the Department/Chair of the student (the Internal Supervisor).

**Course Learning Outcomes:**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 recognize the strengths and limitations of their area of training or expertise  
- CLO 2 examine the role of science in our society  
- CLO 3 acquire problem-solving skills to solve novel and ill-defined problems

---

School of Biomedical Sciences

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in Biochemistry Major including BIOC3604. This capstone course is for Biochemistry Major students only.

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y 1st sem 2nd sem Summer Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors (Pass /Pass with distinction /Fail) Pass Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of “Distinction”.

Fail Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

Course Type Internship

Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Internship work Details it is expected that students are to work at least 160 hours (or the equivalent of 4 weeks full-time) No. of Hours 160

Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Written report Details written report, employer’s feedback and oral presentation Weighting in final course grade (%) 100 Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping CLO 1,2,3

Additional Course Information Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on “Pass/Fail” basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval. Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

BIOC4999 Biochemistry project (12 credits) Biochemistry project 12 credits Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Biomedical Sciences

Course Co-ordinator Dr N S Wong, Biomedical Sciences (ns Wong@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (All academic staff in Biochemistry Major,Biomedical Sciences) (Dr N S Wong,Biomedical Sciences)

Course Objectives To enable students to acquire the basic skills in scientific research: literature search, critical reasoning, communication (both orally and in writing), teamwork and time management. The course is particularly useful for those students who intend to pursue a career in life science.

Course Contents & Topics Project-related topics in biochemistry, cell and molecular biology.

Critical appraisal of current science literature

Formulation of research questions

Design of experiments.

Data analysis and interpretation.

Scientific writing

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 describe recent research development in a defined area of biochemistry and molecular biology

CLO 2 formulate research questions and design experiments to address these questions

CLO 3 apply appropriate experimental techniques to solve research problems

CLO 4 manage and interpret experimental results

CLO 5 develop scientific writing skills and logically report their research findings

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in Biochemistry Major including 4 of the following 5 courses: BIOL3401, BIOC3601, BIOC3604, BIOC4610 and BIOC4613. BIOC4610 and BIOC4613 can be taken concurrently with this course.

This capstone course is for Biochemistry Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y Year long Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) A Plans and executes a sophisticated and imaginative experimental investigation, framing the research question within existing knowledge. Displays tenacity and commitment, generating a meaningful body of data that is analysed with insight and comprehensively evaluated in the context of the original research question. Works proactively with a supervisor and other co-workers to enhance practical and scientific writing skills. Communicates the findings to a broader audience in an effective way and responds knowledgeably to questions. Excellent time-management skills.

B Plans and executes a detailed experimental investigation, framing the research question within existing knowledge. Works with commitment, generating a sufficient body of data that is analysed and evaluated in the context of the original research question with skill and understanding. Works constructively with a supervisor and other co-workers to enhance practical and scientific writing skills. Clearly communicates the findings to a broader audience and responds knowledgeably to most questions. Able to time-manage effectively.

C Plans and executes an experimental investigation, attempting to contextualize the research question. Works with adequate commitment in order to generate sufficient data for a reasonable analysis and evaluation in the context of the original research question. Works with a supervisor and other co-workers to improve practical and scientific writing skills. Communicates the findings to a broader audience with reasonable clarity and responds to most questions. Acceptable time-management skills.

D Plans and executes a rudimentary experimental investigation, showing a limited ability to contextualize the research question. Displays minimal commitment when collecting data and is only able to undertake a superficial analysis and evaluation. Works reluctantly with a supervisor and other co-workers to develop practical and scientific writing skills. Displays weak communication skills when presenting the findings to a broader audience. Poor time-management skills.

Fail Plans and executes a flawed or simplistic experimental investigation, which lacks a valid scientific context. Shows no commitment when collecting data and produces an incoherent analysis and evaluation. Works in isolation, thus failing to improve practical and scientific writing skills. Displays weak communication skills when presenting the findings to a broader audience. No time-management skills.

Course Type Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Reading / Self study Details No. of Hours 240

Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Dissertation Details Weighting in final course grade (%) 60 Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping CLO 1,2,3,4,5
BIOL3404 | Protein structure and function (6 credits) | Academic Year 2017
Offering Department | Biomedical Sciences | Quota 70
Course Co-ordinator | Dr C M Qian, Biomedical Sciences (cmqian@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved | (Dr C M Qian, Biomedical Sciences) (Dr W K Yip, Biological Sciences) (Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives | To provide students with a good understanding of protein structure, how structure subserves function, and the methods for study of both. This course provides a strong foundation for advanced courses in biochemistry and biotechnology.
Course Contents & Topics | Elements of macromolecular structure: sequencing, prediction and determination of secondary, tertiary and quaternary structures; The relationship of protein structure and function: molecular motifs, binding and recognition, enzyme catalysis and specificity; Methods for protein structure determination: X-ray crystallography and nuclear magnetic resonance; Enzymology: enzyme nomenclature, enzyme assay, kinetics and energetics of binding, transition state and molecular mechanisms of catalysis; Protein purification and characterization: various liquid chromatographical methods and their uses in combination, separation techniques, methods of determination of molecular mass, activity and purity, optical methods in protein determination, ultra-centrifugation, protein polishing, stability and storage, methods and devices for protein delivery.
Course Learning Outcomes | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  1. fundamental understanding of principles of protein structure
  2. demonstrate a basic understanding of the relationship between protein structure and function
  3. design assaying methods for enzymes
  4. find out kinetic parameters of proteins or enzymes by graphical techniques
  5. learn about the ways to purify protein and the many industrial uses of proteins
Pre-requisites | Pass in BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 or MEDE2301
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) | A 1. Exceptionally good performance demonstrating comprehensive understanding of the subject matter. 2. Critical insight into the scientific literature. 3. Superior writing and group communication skills.
   B 1. Good performance demonstrating full understanding of the subject matter. 2. Coherent insight into the scientific literature. 3. Good writing and group collaboration skills.
   C 1. Satisfactory performance demonstrating adequate understanding of the subject matter. 2. Some insight into the scientific literature. 3. Adequate writing and group collaboration skills.
   D 1. Limited performance demonstrating some understanding of basic subject matter. 2. Some ability to use the scientific literature. 3. Limited writing and group collaboration skills.
   Fail 1. Poor understanding of subject matter. 2. Little to no insight into use of the scientific literature. 3. Unable to write or collaborate.
Course Type | Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities | Activities Details No. of Hours
   Lectures | 36
   Tutorials | 12
   Reading / Self study | 100
Assessment Methods and Weighting | Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
   Assignments | 30 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
   Examination | 70 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Required/recommended reading and online materials | None prescribed
To be announced.
Additional Course Information | This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
BIOL1110
Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Prof B K C Chow, Biological Sciences

Course Objectives:
This course aims to provide basic conceptual understanding of the biology of molecules and cells to underpin later studies in applied biology, genetics, biochemistry, nutrition, biotechnology, microbiology, plant and animal physiology and developmental biology.

Course Contents & Topics:
An issue-based approach will be adopted to enable students to integrate basic concepts in molecules and cells to inspire further investigation through the exploration of biological issues. The course is divided into 4 parts and the following is a list of some of the questions to be asked and discussed:

- Genes and inheritance: How do children resemble their parents? What is the central dogma of biology? What are the rules of genetic inheritance? What determines gender and sexuality? Why is that children resemble, but not identical to, their parents? What happen if some genes are non-functional or mutated?
- Metabolism and Health: How are diets related to good health? Do all humans have the same dietary requirements? Why can't we live without plants?
- Cells and cell division: What are the common features in a cell? How do cells communicate and assemble themselves to form tissues and organs? What is a cell cycle and how it is regulated? What happens if cell-cycle control system goes wrong? How newly formed cells commit themselves for differentiation?
- Genetic engineering and modern biology: To what extent can genes be modified? Is gene therapy the future of medicines? Is genetically modified food safe for consumption? What are the Genome Projects and why have they been important?

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the relationships between genes in a genome and the inherited phenotypes expressed in a living organism
CLO 2 learn the underlying principle on how mutation of a gene can lead to the development of a genetic disease
CLO 3 understand the importance of dietary intake of biomolecules in relationship to good health
CLO 4 describe various stages in a cell division and that disturbance of this process may result in cancer development
CLO 5 describe concepts used in genetic engineering
CLO 6 know some applications of genetic engineering in gene therapy and production of genetically modified food

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
NIL

Students who wish to take this course are expected to have taken HKDSE Biology and/or Chemistry or equivalent. For students without HKDSE Chemistry, they are encouraged to take CHEM1041 concurrently or before.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Quota in 1st Semester: 210
Quota in 2nd Semester: 210

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills. Writings consistently demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.

B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills. Writings mostly demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.

C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills. Writings mostly indicate informed, intellectual engagement with concepts or theories but not always with sufficient depth, breadth or understanding.

D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills. Writings indicate some intellectual engagement with concepts or theories but mostly at a superficial level.

Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organizational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Writings reveal an absence of intellectual engagement with concepts or theories. Writings are irrelevant or superficial.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
Methods: Examination 60 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6
Methods: Test 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/

BIO1111
Introductory microbiology (6 credits)
Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: ---
Teachers Involved: Biological Sciences

Course Objectives:
To introduce students to the diversity and function of microorganisms; and relate this to their importance in the natural environment, disease and public health, food production and spoilage and the biotechnology industry.

Course Contents & Topics:
Evolutionary diversity of bacteria, archaea, eukarya and viruses; Metabolic strategies, cell biology and genetics; Microbial ecology, marine microbiology, terrestrial microbiology; Microbial interactions with animals and plants; The human microbiome; Medical microbiology and immunology; Biotechnology applications; Food spoilage and food fermentations.

Course Learning:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
### Outcomes

| CLO 1 | describe the key features of the major microbial phyla and place them in an evolutionary context |
| CLO 2 | explain the major physiological and genetic processes in prokaryotes and eukaryotic microorganisms and compare the similarities and differences between these two domains |
| CLO 3 | identify the microorganisms involved and their role in ecological processes, human disease and medicine, food production and spoilage, and biotechnology |

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

| NIL |

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Grade Descriptors (A to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(A+ to F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>(85-100%) Meets the standard of excellence. All criteria are addressed. Organization of ideas and clarity are excellent. Additional reading or research is evident. Ideas show an exceptional understanding of concepts. Arguments are highly persuasive and show excellent judgment and prioritization of issues. Presentation is highly creative and appealing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>(70-84%) Approaches the standard of excellence. All criteria are addressed. Organization of ideas and clarity are very good. Ideas show a complete understanding of concepts. Arguments are persuasive and prioritize major issues. Presentation is creative and appealing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>(55-69%) Meets an acceptable standard. All criteria are addressed. Organization of ideas and clarity are sufficient. Ideas show an effective understanding of concepts. Arguments identify major issues. Presentation is appealing but may lack clarity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>(45-54%) Below acceptable standard. Most criteria are addressed. Organization of ideas and clarity are weak. Ideas show an incomplete understanding of concepts. Arguments are not persuasive. Presentation lacks creativity or is not appealing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>(&lt;45%) Unacceptable. Inability to identify major criteria. Very weak organization of ideas and clarity. Ideas show a lack of understanding of concepts. No coherent argument. Presentation lacks creativity or is unappealing.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

| Lecture with laboratory component course |

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### Course Website

| http://moodle.hku.hk/ |

### BIOL1201 Introduction to food and nutrition (6 credits)

| Academic Year | 2017 |

### Offering Department

| Biological Sciences |

### Course Co-ordinator

| Dr J W F Wan, Biological Sciences (jmfwan@hku.hk) |

### Teachers Involved

| (Dr J F Wan,Biological Sciences) |
| (Dr K W Cheng,Biological Sciences) |
| (Dr L Zhang,Biological Sciences) |

### Course Objectives

To enable student to appreciate the multidisciplinary nature of the study of Food and Nutrition. From the farmer's field to the dinner table, a basic understanding of the general properties of macro and micronutrients food production, processing and storage will be covered. Food safety, food selection behaviour as well as balanced nutrition as part of life style instrumental to good health will be discussed. This is an independent course which can be taken by students from various disciplines. It also prepares students for further studies in Food and Nutritional Science.

### Course Contents & Topics

Topics will include food composition and functional properties of major nutrients; food additives; food hygiene, safety and regulation; determinants of food choice; examples of complex processed foods; healthy eating-concepts and practice; essential nutrients; diet and disease relationship.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the key components of food and be able to discuss their functional properties
- CLO 2 understand the significance of food safety and be able to identify sources of contamination
- CLO 3 understand the concept of a balanced diet
- CLO 4 critically assess health problems associate with malnutrition

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

| NIL |

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>1st sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Grade Descriptors (A to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>(A+ to F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show exceptional ability to articulate concepts and integrate knowledge. Demonstrate highly effective organization / writing skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show full capacity to use the appropriate concepts and assimilate the materials to solve problems. Demonstrate effective organization / writing skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show ability to apply concepts to solve simple problems. Demonstrate adequate organization / writing skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

| Lecture-based course |

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>student-centered learning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
BIOL1309

Evolutionary diversity (6 credits)

Offering Department Biological Sciences

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 interpret phylogenies in order to understand the relatedness of taxonomic groups and the pattern of evolutionary changes in structures, processes and behaviours
- CLO 2 describe the characteristics of different evolutionary lineages of plants and animals and recall the names of the main taxonomic groups
- CLO 3 explain the possible selective advantages of the highlighted structures, processes and behaviours

Pre-requisites
NIL

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining most or all of the course learning outcomes, with extensive use of named examples. Show evidence of significant critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply highly effective presentation skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes, with some use of named examples. Show evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective presentation skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes, with only limited use of named examples. Show evidence of some critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective presentation skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes, with insufficient use of named examples. Show evidence of limited critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply limited presentation skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes, without use of named examples. Show little or no evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking. Presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 24
Laboratory 36
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Examination 70 CLO 1.2,3
Laboratory reports 30 CLO 1.2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

BIOL1501

Bioethics (6 credits)

Offering Department Biological Sciences

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 familiarize with the current ethical theories, discussions, and arguments taking place in the field of bioethics specifically related to the advancement of modern molecular biology and genomics
- CLO 2 reflect upon and formulate in a professional manner their own opinions on these matters as well as to understand and enter into a respectful dialogue with those who possess another point of view
## Biological Sciences

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw mostly inappropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate inefficentive individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| **Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw mostly inappropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate inefficentive individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

- **Lecture-based course**

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>continuous assessment of essays, presentation and debate exercises</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Contents & Topics

- **Content/topics include:**
  - Introduction and review of basic cell biology
  - Basic genetic - The gene
  - Basic Molecular Biology and Biotechnology - Recombinant DNA and cloning
  - Bacterial Genes - Gene and Environment
  - Human Genes/Human genome - history and its Impacts!
  - Human Genome - The Amazing discovery!
  - Genes and Biotechnology
  - Genes and Disease
  - Genes and Cancer
  - Animal and Plant Cloning
  - Genes and Agricultural/Food Biotechnology
  - Genes and Behavior

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: demonstrate understanding and to explain the principle of inheritance, recombinant DNA and cloning
- CLO 2: gain deep understanding about the advancement of biotechnology
- CLO 3: determine and explain the benefits and shortcomings of the application of biotechnology knowledge

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw mostly inappropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate inefficentive individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- NIL
- Library & web-based reading materials

### Additional Course Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

### BIOL1502

**The gene (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**

- Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**

- Biological Sciences

**Course Objectives**

- Biological Sciences

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Content/topics include:
  - Introduction and review of basic cell biology
  - Basic genetic - The gene
  - Basic Molecular Biology and Biotechnology - Recombinant DNA and cloning
  - Bacterial Genes - Gene and Environment
  - Human Genes/Human genome - history and its Impacts!
  - Human Genome - The Amazing discovery!
  - Genes and Biotechnology
  - Genes and Disease
  - Genes and Cancer
  - Animal and Plant Cloning
  - Genes and Agricultural/Food Biotechnology
  - Genes and Behavior

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: demonstrate understanding and to explain the principle of inheritance, recombinant DNA and cloning
- CLO 2: gain deep understanding about the advancement of biotechnology
- CLO 3: determine and explain the benefits and shortcomings of the application of biotechnology knowledge

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

- NIL
- Not for students with level 3 or above in HKDSE Biology or Combined Science with Biology component or equivalent

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use communication skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw mostly inappropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate inefficentive individual as well as collaborative-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>--</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Course Type: Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- **Activities** | **Details** | **No. of Hours**
- Lectures | | 36
- Tutorials | | 12
- Reading / Self study | including 45 hours on 15 essay/report writing, 30 presentation (include preparation) | 93

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- **Methods** | **Details** | **Weighting in final course grade (%)** | **Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**
- Assignments | discussion forum | 35 | CLO 1,2,3
- Essay | essays & written reports | 25 | CLO 1,2,3
- Presentation | poster & oral presentation | 30 | CLO 1,2,3
- Test | in-class participation & quizzes | 10 | CLO 1,2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- Library & web-based reading materials

Additional Course Information:
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL2101

Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Dr J C Y Lee, Biological Sciences (jettylee@hku.hk)
(Dr J C Y Lee, School of Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives:
To provide a basic understanding of chemistry in food systems, and to provide practical training in chemistry related to food science and nutrition.

Course Contents & Topics:
The course will cover the components of food, including water, proteins, carbohydrates and lipids, and minor components such as enzymes, vitamins, minerals, colorants, flavorants and additives. The physical and chemical properties of these important constituents of foods are covered in detail, and form the basis for understanding the reactions which occur during the production, processing, storage and handling of foods, and in understanding the methods used in analyzing foods.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand the functions and properties of major and minor food components
- CLO 2 understand the basic chemistry behind food processing
- CLO 3 understand how major chemical and biochemical reactions influence food quality
- CLO 4 have integrated their knowledge of biological and chemical principles into a food science and nutrition context

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in BIOL1201; and NOT for students who have passed in BIOL3201.
The course is only for students admitted in 2017-2018 or thereafter.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
- **Academic Year** 2017
- **Quota** 30

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):
- **A** Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show extensive knowledge and understanding of the topics covered and can readily apply this knowledge. Critically use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.
- **B** Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show thorough knowledge and understanding of the content and a high level of competence in the topics covered and able to apply this knowledge and skills to most situations. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions.
- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. The student has a sound knowledge and understanding of the content and has achieved a limited level of competence in the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate conclusions.
- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information of the subject matter covered. Show a basic knowledge and understanding of the content and has achieved a limited level of competence in the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate conclusions.
- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show elementary knowledge and understanding in few areas of the content and has achieved very limited competence in some or all of the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions.

Course Type: Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- **Activities** | **Details** | **No. of Hours**
- Lectures | | 24
- Laboratory | | 36
- Reading / Self study | | 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- **Methods** | **Details** | **Weighting in final course grade (%)** | **Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**
- Assignments | Laboratory reports | 30 | CLO 1,2,3,4
- Examination | | 50 | CLO 1,2,3,4
- Test | | 20 | CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- Belitz HD, Grosch W, Schieberle, P, Food Chemistry (Springer 4th Ed, 2009)
- Fennema OR, Food Chemistry (Marcel Dekker 4th Ed, 2008)

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk

408
The purpose of this course is to familiarize students with probability and statistics. The course will give to students the skills to read, interpret, and critically evaluate the statistics used in medical and bioinformatic studies. The course will also introduce the students to the fundamental principles and planning techniques to be able to analyze their own data, choose the correct statistical test and avoid common statistical pitfalls.

Course Contents & Topics

Introduction to Statistics; Describing, Exploring and Comparing Data; Probability; Probability Distributions; Normal Probability Distribution; Relations between Distributions; Interval estimation; Hypothesis Testing; Correlation and Regression; Statistical tests; Non-Parametric Inference.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 formulate biological questions into statistical questions
CLO 2 design experiments effectively
CLO 3 appreciate and interpret statistics in scientific papers
CLO 4 use Excel and R to carry out common statistical computations
CLO 5 understand the assumptions of commonly used statistical methods
CLO 6 critically evaluate the scientific literature
CLO 7 evaluate critically the literature

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOC1600 or BIOL1110 or BIOL2306 or ENVS1301 or ENVS2002

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly effective computational skills and techniques for basic statistical analyses. Be able to critically use data and statistical results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Present evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective computational skills and techniques for basic statistical analyses. Be able to correctly use data and statistical results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Present evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective computational skills and techniques for basic statistical analyses. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and statistical results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- D: Demonstrate partial and limited grasp of the subject and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Present evidence of some coherent and logical critical abilities. Apply limited or barely effective computational skills and techniques for basic statistical analyses. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and statistical results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- Fail: Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the subject and skills required for attaining any of the course learning outcomes. Present evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Apply minimally effective or ineffective computational skills and techniques for basic statistical analyses. Demonstrate misuse of data and statistical results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply minimally effective or ineffective organizational and presentational skills.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,5,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

The Practice of Statistics in the Life Sciences by Baldi and Moore and Fundamentals of Biostatistics by Rosner.

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/
### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** demonstrate knowledge in proper use of simple research equipment
- **CLO 2** demonstrate knowledge and understanding of how and why certain techniques are used in a research setting
- **CLO 3** master some basic laboratory techniques for carrying out experiments
- **CLO 4** understand the different ways that microorganisms were categorized according to their size, shape, colour and response to dye etc. and how they were counted

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in BIOL1110

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1st sem</td>
<td>2nd sem</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Teachers Involved

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr C S C Lo, Biological Sciences (cliveslo@hku.hk)

**Course Objectives**
This course is designed to provide undergraduate (non-biochemistry major) an overview of fundamental concepts in biochemistry as well as hands-on experience in biochemical techniques.

### Course Contents & Topics

An introduction to various biomolecules in terms of their structures, functions, syntheses and metabolisms, with emphasis on amino acids, proteins, enzymes, carbohydrates, lipids and nucleic acids. The correlations between their biochemical properties and their roles in various life processes will be illustrated.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** describe the key structural features of carbohydrates, proteins, lipids and nucleotides
- **CLO 2** understand the basic enzyme kinetic properties
- **CLO 3** explain how the common sugars, fatty acids and amino acids are metabolized and synthesized in living cells
- **CLO 4** master some basic laboratory techniques for carrying out experiments

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in BIOL1110; and
- Not for students who have passed in BIOC2600, or have already enrolled in this course.

### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lab A on Wed. with 30 students and Lab. B on Thurs.with 40 students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lab C on Wed. with 25 students; Lab. D on Thurs. with 65 students and Lab. E on Fri. with 50 students</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>plus lab performance</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>1 hour final examination</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/
The environment influences organisms profoundly. It affects their present-day ecology (determining where they live and how many can survive there) and, through natural selection acting over past generations, influences their form and adaptations. Present day human-induced changes to the environment are also responsible for endangering species and degrading their habitats. This introductory course introduces some basic scientific principles of ecology and evolution, showing how they are linked to the environment by physiological tolerances and evolutionary adaptation which, in turn, lead to specialization and generate biodiversity. Individuals and their interactions will be a major focus of the course together with discussion of population dynamics, community structuring, life histories, and niche dynamics. The principles of ecology and evolution resulting from interaction with the environment will also be demonstrated by describing the origins of modern humans, including our fossil record and relationship to other primates, and the main ecological transformations caused by humans and their environmental impacts. The course will conclude with an account of the importance of biodiversity, and the factors that threaten it globally.

Lectures are complemented by a 5-day residential field course during the Reading Week when students visit a variety of Hong Kong habitats to study their biodiversity, community composition and the relationship between organisms and their environment.
This course teaches students the ways and means of exploring and understanding animal behaviour; it provides insights into a field of science that investigates everything animals do, including the underlying mechanisms and functions of specific behaviours; the ways in which animals interact with each other, with their physical environment and other organisms; how animals find and defend resources, avoid predators, choose mates, reproduce, and care for their young; how complex animal societies are formed and how behaviour of an individual affects the structure of a population.

Course Contents & Topics

This course will introduce students to scientific reasoning and conceptual basis of an understanding of animal behaviour and behavioural ecology. What causes specific behaviour and what are the underlying mechanisms? How does behaviour develop within the individual’s lifetime and what functions does it serve? For example, why are some species monogamous while others are polygamous? What makes one organism the hunter and another the hunted? Several animal species, including humans, tend to live in groups; social life is among the most complex and effective survival strategy. However, how could, for instance, the birth of sterile castes, like in bees, be explained through an evolving mechanism which emphasizes the reproductive success of as many individuals as possible? Why, among animals living in small groups like squirrels, would an individual risk its own life to save the rest of the group? In this course, based upon ecological and evolutionary principles, students will learn to think within the paradigm of behavioural ecology and understand the causes, functions, development, and evolution of behaviour. We will discuss several classical studies that form the foundation of this field, as well as more recent research that represents the current concepts which have led to modern understanding of animal behaviour. We will also illustrate the links between the recent extraordinary advances in behavioural ecology and socio-science with their application in animal conservation.

Course Objectives

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 learn to appreciate the causes, functions, development, and evolution of animal behaviour

CLO 2 appreciate the complexity of interactions between environmental selective pressures and animal behaviour

CLO 3 appreciate current theories that form basis for modern understanding of animal behaviour

CLO 4 learn the scientific reasoning and methodology in the field of Animal Behaviour

CLO 5 think analytically in terms of behavioural ecology, animal socio-behavioural complexity, and how the understanding of species' behaviour contributes to its conservation

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOL2306; and

Pass in one of the following courses: BIOL3301, BIOL3313, BIOL3319, BIOL3320 or BIOL3419

Not for students who have passed in BIOL4303

Exam Details

Pass in one of the following courses: BIOL3301, BIOL3313, BIOL3319, BIOL3320 or BIOL3419

Not for students who have passed in BIOL4303

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities Details No. of Hours

Lectures 24

Laboratory

including field trips, site visits, interactive practical/visual sessions, classroom debates

Project work

project work review

Reading / Self study

Reading / Self study

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Assignments

active participation/continuous assessment/presentation

55 CLO 1,2,3,4,5

Examination

45 CLO 1,2,3,4,5

School of Biological Sciences
Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website

http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/hsc

Offering Department

Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator

Prof A O L Wong, Biological Sciences (olwong@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

(Dr W Y Lui,Biological Sciences)
(Pf A O L Wong,Biological Sciences)
(Prof A S T Wong,Biological Sciences)

Course Contents

The course covers the major aspects of animal physiology for environmental adaptation in terrestrial & aquatic habitats. Stress will be given to the functional interactions between animals and the environment, especially on the mechanisms by which animals obtain resources for survival from the environment, detect environmental changes via sensory structures, and respond to adversities in the environment by altering their body forms & functions.

Course Objectives

CLO 1 have a broad understanding on functional interactions between animals and their environment
CLO 2 appreciate the role of the environment in shaping the evolution of animal structures & functions
CLO 3 comprehend a wide range of physiological adaptations (both structurally & functionally) in coping with environmental stress and environmental changes

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

A. Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills. Writings consistently demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.

B. Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills. Writings mostly demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.

C. Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills. Writings mostly indicate informed, intellectual engagement with concepts or theorems but not always with sufficient depth, breadth or understanding.

D. Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Applied limited or barely effective organizational skills. Writings indicate some intellectual engagement with concepts or theories but mostly at a superficial level.

Fail. Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organizational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Writings reveal an absence of intellectual engagement with concepts or theorems. Writings are irrelevant or superficial.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills. Writings consistently demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills. Writings mostly demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills. Writings mostly indicate informed, intellectual engagement with concepts or theorems but not always with sufficient depth, breadth or understanding.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Applied limited or barely effective organizational skills. Writings indicate some intellectual engagement with concepts or theories but mostly at a superficial level.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organizational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Writings reveal an absence of intellectual engagement with concepts or theorems. Writings are irrelevant or superficial.

Assessment Methods and Weighing

- Examination 75%
- Test 25%
- Continual assessment 25%

Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

- CLO 1.2.3

Additional Course Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL3107

Animal physiology and environmental adaptation (6 credits)

Offering Department

Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator

Dr W K Yip, Biological Sciences (wkyp@hku.hk)

Course Objectives

To give an understanding of plant processes such as plant growth and development and their regulatory mechanisms.

Course Contents

Discovery, assay, chemical nature, mechanism, structure-activity relationships, physiological effects, and signal
Microbial physiology (6 credits)

School of Biological Sciences

Course Objectives

Upon completion, students will acquire fundamental knowledge and methodologies for microbial studies and be able to relate knowledge to various microbial applications.

Microbes are amazing and important entities on earth. Knowledge of microbes is widely applied in food, pharmaceutics, biotechnologies, diseases control, and biogeochemical processes. Microbial Physiology provides molecular basis for understanding these important processes and applications, and to serve as essential foundations for sub-disciplines of Microbiology, such as environmental, industrial, and medicinal Microbiology.

Microbes are amazing and important entities on earth. Knowledge of microbes is widely applied in food, pharmaceutics, biotechnologies, diseases control, and biogeochemical processes. Microbial Physiology provides molecular basis for understanding these important processes and applications, and to serve as essential foundations for sub-disciplines of Microbiology, such as environmental, industrial, and medicinal Microbiology. Upon completion, students will acquire fundamental knowledge and methodologies for microbial studies and be able to relate knowledge to various microbial applications.

Course Contents & Topics

Serving as a fundamental course for the understanding of the world of microorganisms, Microbial Physiology is organized and presented in three themes: 'Microbial Rules', 'Microbial Breath', and 'Microbial Adaption'. Under these three themes, a broad range of highly educational and interesting topics are presented including: 'Microorganisms and their position in the living world', 'Fundamental methodologies for the study of microbes', 'Microbial structures and functions', 'Microbial growth and control', 'Energy Generation', 'Central metabolism', and 'Regulation and control of metabolic Activities'. Topics are taught in a coherent manner with a highly interactive tutorial session following each of the topics such that students will achieve a high quality, stimulating, and problem-based learning experiences.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 appreciate the diversity of microbial metabolisms and the strategies for their adaptive responses
CLO 2 comprehend the principles underlying the dynamic nature of microbial physiology
CLO 3 relate knowledge to practical application of microbes in industry and medicine
CLO 4 develop abilities to read and assess scientific literature in microbiology area

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOL2103

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Course Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Assessment Methods and Weighing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information

Lecture with laboratory component course

Outcomes

CLO 3 understand the regulation of plant growth and development by various plant hormones
CLO 2 understand biotechnological opportunities by manipulating plant gene expression
CLO 1 understand the study of plant biology using mutants in model plant Arabidopsis

Topics

Plant hormones, hormonal transport, selected topics on plant growth and development including photo-morphogenesis, seed germination, dormancy, apical dominance, fruit ripening, leaf abscission, and plant defense.

Pre-requisites

Pass in BIOL2103

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A In written examination: Exceptionally good organization and presentation, the discussion would be very clearly written and show evidence of originality. In practical sessions: excellent insight in to the practical aims; submit good reports.

B In written examination: coherent organization and clear presentation, the discussion would be a complete and critical response to questions. In practical sessions: full understanding of the practical aims; submit accurate reports.

C In written examination and practical sessions: Good in parts, but important points omitted. Might also have defects in presentation or be not very well written. Reasonably competent, but might show misunderstanding of the material: significant inaccuracies or errors.

D In written examination and practical sessions: Some knowledge of the material is evident, but there are serious deficiencies in understanding, organization, clarity or accuracy. Write-ups that are unduly brief would fall into this category.

Fail In written examination and practical sessions: Poor knowledge and understanding of the subject, a lack of coherent organization, and answers are largely irrelevant.

Assessment Methods

Lecturing materials and journal articles will be posted on HKU Moodle.

Laboratory reports

P.J. Davis: Plant Hormones: Biosynthesis, Signal Transduction, Action! (Springer Netherlands, 2010)

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecturing materials and journal articles will be posted on HKU Moodle.

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Assessment Methods

Methods

Lectures 24
Laboratory 24
Tutorials 6
Reading / Self study 100

Exam

Examination 75 CLO 1,2,3
Laboratory reports 25 CLO 3

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Examination 75 CLO 1.2,3
Laboratory reports 25 CLO 3

Course Notes

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Assessment Methods

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Examination 75 CLO 1,2,3
Laboratory reports 25 CLO 3

Course Notes

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.
### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>mid-term</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
Supplementary Reading: On-line textbook of Bacteriology, Kenneth Tobar, U. of Wisconsin-Madison, Department of Bacteriology. URL (http://www.textbookofbacteriology.net/)

### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

### Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

---

### BIOL3109
**Environmental microbiology (6 credits)**

### Offering Department
Lectures

### Course Co-ordinator
Dr J D Gu, Biological Sciences

### Teachers Involved
Biological Sciences

### Course Objectives
To familiarize students with the role of various microorganisms in natural process which affect our environment, such as cycling of chemical elements, interactions with plants and animals, and the way in which they carry out biodegradation of environmentally important pollutants. Selective groups of microorganism will be examined in detail for their biochemical processes. Key concepts are illustrated with known examples and cases

### Course Contents & Topics
1. Advanced aspects of microbial diversity, ecology and growth
2. Contribution of microbial metabolism to biogeochemical processes important in cycling of nutrients
3. Microbial interactions with plants and animals
4. Microbial metabolism of organic compounds, metals and man-made polymers
5. Training in laboratory and field microbiological research technique

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- **CLO 1** understand a range of microorganisms in the environment in terms of their roles and function as well as biochemical capability and host range
- **CLO 2** know the specific biochemical processes, enzymes involved and reactions carried by selective microorganisms and their distribution in the environment
- **CLO 3** apply the appropriate techniques in environmental and microbial research

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL2103

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Thorough grasp of the subject matter. Show very strong analytical and critical abilities and high logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Substantial grasp of the subject. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>General but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. General but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>including report</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## BIOL3110

**Environmental toxicology (6 credits)**

### Offering Department
Biological Sciences

### Course Co-ordinator
Dr J D Gu, Biological Sciences (jdgu@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
Dr J D Gu, Biological Sciences

### Course Objectives
To introduce students to the basic principles of environmental and ecological toxicology by analysis of the fate of pollutants in lithosphere, hydrosphere, atmosphere and biosphere. Mechanisms of toxicity as dose-response will be analyzed through adsorption, metabolism, toxicity and elimination. Major metabolic processes and enzymes involved will be highlighted. Specific cases of toxicity will be presented and discussed.

### Course Contents & Topics
1. Environmental chemistry of pollutants and their toxicity and factors governing toxic effects, bioaccumulation and biomagnification
2. Partitioning and transformation of environmental pollutants
3. Quantitative toxicology using dose-response approaches
4. Emerging endocrine-disrupting chemicals and carcinogens at molecular levels
5. Elimination of pollutants from the environments
6. Laboratory testing of toxicity and review various adsorption isotherm models

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand fate and distribution of chemicals in various compartments of the ecosystem
- CLO 2 understand toxicity through adsorption, metabolism, elimination and target site and quantitative analysis
- CLO 3 understand mechanism of toxicity from specific pollutants of choice
- CLO 4 understand specific biochemical processes and enzymes involved in pollutants transformation and mineralization
- CLO 5 understand appropriate techniques in environmental cleaning up

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL2103 or CHEM3141 or ENVS3042

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
- A  Thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Thorough grasp of the subject matter. Show very strong analytical and critical abilities and high logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B  Substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Substantial grasp of the subject. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C  General but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. General but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D  Partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail  Little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>student-based assessment</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
- D.G. Crosby: Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry (Oxford, 1999)

### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

### Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

---

## BIOL3201

**Food chemistry (6 credits)**

### Offering Department
Biological Sciences

### Academic Year
2017

### Quota
50
### BIOL3202

**Nutritional biochemistry (6 credits)**

**Academic Year**: 2017

**Offering Department**: Biological Sciences

**Quota**: 100

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Co-ordinator</th>
<th>Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:chancb@hku.hk">chancb@hku.hk</a>)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr C B Chan,Biological Sciences)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Dr J C Y Louie,Biological Sciences)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Objectives**: Essential nutrients and their requirement; Metabolic control of macronutrient utilization; Metabolism of micronutrients; Nutritional impacts of hexoses, long chain polyunsaturated fatty acid, cholesterol, amino acids, vitamins and minerals.

**Course Contents & Topics**: To introduce the fundamental concepts of nutrition through an integrated approach in discussing the interactions between diet and intermediary metabolism.

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: explain how different organs coordinate to achieve metabolic control of glucose
- CLO 2: understand the metabolic pathways of cholesterol and polyunsaturated fatty acids
- CLO 3: understand the theoretical constructs of nitrogen requirement and the importance of the urea cycle
- CLO 4: understand the biochemical roles of micronutrient in human health
- CLO 5: explain the biochemical outcomes of nutrient deficiency/excess

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**: Pass in BIOC2600 or BIOL2103 or BIOL2220; and NOT for students who have passed in BIOL2101.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**: Y 1st sem

**Examination**: Dec

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>CLO 1</th>
<th>CLO 2</th>
<th>CLO 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show exceptional ability on knowledge integration, problem solving, interpretation of data, and evaluation of results.</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show extensive knowledge and understanding of the content and a high level of competence in the topics covered and the ability to apply this knowledge and skills to most situations. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show extensive knowledge and understanding of the content and a high level of competence in the topics covered and the ability to apply this knowledge and skills to most situations. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong></td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show thorough knowledge and understanding of the content and a high level of competence in the topics covered and the ability to apply this knowledge and skills to most situations. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp of the subject matter covered. Show basic knowledge and understanding of the content and has achieved a limited level of competence in the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp of the subject matter covered. Show basic knowledge and understanding of the content and has achieved a limited level of competence in the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C</strong></td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. The student has a sound knowledge and understanding of the main areas of content and has achieved an adequate level of competence in the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp of the subject matter covered. Show basic knowledge and understanding of the content and has achieved a limited level of competence in the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp of the subject matter covered. Show basic knowledge and understanding of the content and has achieved a limited level of competence in the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D</strong></td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show elementary knowledge and understanding in few areas of the content and has achieved very limited competence in some of the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions.</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show elementary knowledge and understanding in few areas of the content and has achieved very limited competence in some of the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions.</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show elementary knowledge and understanding in few areas of the content and has achieved very limited competence in some of the topics covered. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighing**

- **Assignments**: 30%
- **Examination**: 50%
- **Test**: 20%

**Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assignment</th>
<th>CLO 1</th>
<th>CLO 2</th>
<th>CLO 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Website**: http://moodel.hku.hk/
Course Type | Lecture-based course
--- | ---

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

- **Activities**
  - Lectures: 
  - Reading / Self study:
  - Tutorials: tutorial/ guided studies

- **Assessment Methods and Weighting**
  - **Methods**
    - Assignments: 15
    - Examination: 70
    - Test: 15
  - **Weighting in final course grade (%)**
    - Assignments: CLO 1,2,3,4,5
    - Examination: CLO 1,2,3,4,5
    - Test: CLO 1,2,3,4,5

- **Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- **Course Website**
  - http://moodle.hku.hk/

- **Additional Course Information**
  - This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers

**BIOL3203**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Food microbiology (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Offering Department</strong></td>
<td>Biological Sciences</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Co-ordinator</strong></td>
<td>Dr H S El-Nezami, Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:elnezami@hku.hk">elnezami@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Teachers Involved</strong></td>
<td>(Dr H S El-Nezami, Biological Sciences)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Objectives</strong></td>
<td>This course provides the key concepts and principles of food microbiology with special emphasis on the interaction between microorganisms and food, microbial food spoilage and foodborne diseases will be discussed in detail.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Contents &amp; Topics</strong></td>
<td>Detection and enumeration of microbes in foods, Factors that influence microbes in foods, Spores and their significance, Physical methods of food preservation, Chemical preservation and natural antimicrobials, Foodborne pathogens.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Learning Outcomes</strong></td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1</td>
<td>describe methods for evaluating microorganisms and their products in foods</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 2</td>
<td>demonstrate an understanding of the causes of food spoilage, and predict response of a microorganism that can spoil a given food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td>develop and implement appropriate measures to control the spoilage and pathogenic microorganisms in a food</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 4</td>
<td>demonstrate the ability to work in a team to investigate and solve problems in food microbiology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

- Pass in BIQC2600 or BIOL2220

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>2nd sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

- Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

- **Activities**
  - Lectures: 24
  - Laboratory: 24
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

- **Methods**
  - Assignments: seminars & continuous assessment

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 2,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## BIOL3204

**Nutrition and the life cycle (6 credits)**  
**Offering Department** Biological Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator** Dr J C Y Louie, Biological Sciences (jimmyn@hku.hk)  
**Course Objectives** Nutritional needs vary throughout different stages of the life cycle. This course aims to cover the functional roles of essential macro- and micro-nutrients and highlight the nutritional concerns during specific times of growth, development, and aging.  
**Course Contents & Topics** Teaching and learning will take place through an evidence-based approach and will be organized around key issues: needs of macro- and micronutrients, as well as the physiological and psychological determinants that influence nutrient requirements at different stages of the human life cycle. Socio-economic factors that influence dietary habit and nutritional status will also be covered.  
**Course Learning Outcomes** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 have fundamental knowledge of essential micronutrient metabolism  
- CLO 2 be able to critically assess and identify the specific needs at different stages of the life cycle  
- CLO 3 relate the concept of requirement to physiological needs  
- CLO 4 understand the impact of socio-cultural factors on nutritional status  
**Pre-requisites** Pass in BIOC2600 or BIOL2220 or BIOL3202  
**Offer in 2017 - 2018** Y  
**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**  
- **A** Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show exceptional ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Show outstanding ability to critically analyze and interpret scientific data and draw appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organization and presentation skills.  
- **B** Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show full ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Show reasonable ability to critically analyze and interpret scientific data and draw appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate effective team-based organization and presentation skills.  
- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Might show misunderstanding of the materials. Show some ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Show some ability to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw proper conclusions. Demonstrate adequately effective team-based organization and presentation skills.  
- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Misunderstanding of the materials is not uncommon. Show limited ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Use elementary approaches to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw sometimes erroneous conclusions. Demonstrate team-based organization and presentation skills of limited effectiveness.  
- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in problem solving. Fail to integrate information and identify problems. Seriously deficient in ability to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw conclusions. Demonstrate poor organization and presentation skills.  
**Assessment Methods and Weighting**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**  
- Gropper S.S., Smith J.L.. & Groff J.L. Advanced Nutrition and Human Metabolism (Wadsworth, 2009)  
- J. Montville, 3rd edition, American Society for Microbiology (ASM) Press, Washington, DC  

**Additional Course Information** This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
## Course Objectives
This course aims to provide understanding and insight into diseases associated with diet and basic dietetics, specifically to:

1. **Explain the relationships between diet and disease.**
2. **Describe the role of diet in the development and prevention of chronic diseases such as diabetes, obesity and anorexia, cardiovascular disease, cancer, immune deficiency and renal failure.**
3. **Differentiate risk factors that influence dietary choice.**
4. **Describe the rationales for postoperative nutritional support for hospitalized patients.**

## Course Contents & Topics
The basics of nutrition for health and fitness and medical nutrition therapy. The role of diet in the development and prevention of chronic diseases such as cancer, diabetes, obesity and anorexia as well as bulimia nervosa, cardiovascular diseases, renal failure, etc. Malnutrition. Nutrition and immune function. Medical nutrition therapy for food allergy and food intolerance. Nutrition in pregnancy and lactation.

## Course Learning Outcomes
- **CLO 1:** Discuss the different relationships between diet and disease.
- **CLO 2:** Describe the role of diet in the development and prevention of obesity, anorexia, cardiovascular disease, cancer, immune deficiency, and renal failure.
- **CLO 3:** Clearly differentiate and interpret risk factors that influence dietary choice.
- **CLO 4:** Describe the rationales for postoperative nutritional support for hospitalized patients.

## Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Course Type
Lecture-based course

## Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Required/recommended reading and online materials
- Mulrowen S.E. & Myers A.K. Netter's Essential Physiology (Saunders, 2009)

## Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

## Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
Course Type: Lecture-based course  

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:  
- Activities: Details  
  - Lectures: 36  
  - Tutorials: 12  
  - Reading / Self study: 100  

Assessment Methods and Weighting:  
- Methods: Details  
  - Assignments: 20, Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping: CLO 1,2  
  - Examination: 60, Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping: CLO 1,2,3,4  
  - Presentation: 20, Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping: CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials:  
Selected readings will also be available on the class website.  
S. Rodwell Williams: Nutrition and Diet Therapy (7th ed.)  

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/  

Additional Course Information:  
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL3207: Food and nutritional toxicology (6 credits)  

Offering Department: Biological Sciences  
Academic Year: 2017  
Quota: 80  

Course Co-ordinator: Dr H S El-Nezami, Biological Sciences (elnezami@hku.hk)  
Teachers Involved: Dr H S El-Nezami,Biological Sciences  

Course Objectives:  
To introduce students to methods used in assessing the toxicity of food contaminants, and to develop their confidence in the handling and interpretation of toxicological data. Students will also be introduced to the basic concepts behind toxicological evaluation, and the criteria for setting guidance values for dietary and nondietary exposure to chemicals. Students will understand the role of biochemical, metabolic and toxicokinetic studies in toxicological evaluation. This course aims to equip students with basic skills in conducting food toxicological studies.

Course Contents & Topics:  
Topics include a discussion on exposure and entry routes, fates of toxic substances in the body (toxicokinetics), concepts in experimental toxicology, the dose response relationship, actions of toxic substances, target organ effects, the actions and types of carcinogens. A survey of the health effects of common classes of toxic substances is also presented.

Course Learning Outcomes:  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 demonstrate an understanding of the processes involved in absorption, distribution, metabolism and excretion of toxicants, including an understanding of the toxicokinetic behavior of toxicants in mammals  
- CLO 2 demonstrate an understanding of the various effects induced after exposure to toxicants  
- CLO 3 demonstrate an understanding of the factors which underlie species differences in response to potential toxicants  
- CLO 4 demonstrate the ability to work in a team to investigate and solve toxicological problems of importance in human health

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations): Pass in BIOL2600 or BIOL2220 or BIOL3205

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors:  
- A: 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y  
  Examination: May  

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):  
- A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.  
- B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.  
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.  
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate limited understanding of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness of team-based organizational and presentational skills.

Course Type: Lecture with laboratory component course  

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:  
- Activities: Details  
  - Lectures: 24  
  - Laboratory: 24  
  - Tutorials: 12  
  - Reading / Self study: 100  

Assessment Methods and Weighting:  
- Methods: Details  
  - Weighting in final course grade (%):  
    - Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

School of Biological Sciences
Food safety and quality management (6 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator: Dr O Habimana, Biological Sciences (ohabim@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved: Dr J C Y Lee, Biological Sciences

Course Objectives:
To provide exposure to some key management concepts used to produce safe high-quality food products that will succeed in the marketplace. To introduce students to analysis and problem-solving of realistic business situations in food safety management.

Course Contents & Topics:
- The regulatory, social and business imperative for food safety.
- Basic concepts in TQM
- Statistical Process Control
- Quality Function Deployment
- Quality management standards (ISO 9000)
- Development and implementation of a Hazard Analysis Critical Control Point (HACCP) plan (within an ISO 22000 food safety management system/ supply chain approach)
- Role of environmental management systems (ISO 14000) in the food industry
- Intellectual Property issues in the food industry
- Religious, ethical, and cultural food choices
- Illustrative business case studies on food safety management.
- Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand the historical development of government regulation of food safety
- CLO 2 be familiar with a set of management techniques applicable in the food industry
- CLO 3 be able to analyze food production problems and make recommendations for action to improve quality and safety

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL3201 or BIOL3203

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N Examination ---

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.
Fail Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentational skills.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Assignments 40 CLO 2,4
Examination 40 CLO 1,2,3
Laboratory reports 20 CLO 2

Required/recommended reading and online materials
S. S. Deshpande: Handbook of Food Toxicology (Marcel Dekker Inc., NY, 2002)
http://moodle.hku.hk/
Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
School of Biological Sciences

**Course Objectives**
To introduce basic principles and provide practical training in food and nutrient analysis. To help students to understand the principles behind analytical instruments used in food analysis. To train students to analyze major and minor food components as well as some food adulterants.

**Course Contents & Topics**
The key concepts in professional food analysis in an industry context will be introduced. Basic analytical techniques for macronutrients (e.g. protein, carbohydrate and fats), micronutrients (vitamins and minerals) and adulterants in food will be covered. A variety of classical and instrumental techniques used in food analysis will be discussed: rheology and texture measurement, thermal analysis, color, spectroscopy, chromatography and electrophoresis.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand the basic principles of food and nutrient analysis
- CLO 2 be familiar with a variety of classical and instrumental analytical techniques
- CLO 3 understand the principles behind analytical instruments associated with food
- CLO 4 be able apply their knowledge and laboratory skills in novel situations to measure and analyze the macronutrient and micronutrient of food products
- CLO 5 be able to select and justify an appropriate analytical technique to solve practical food analysis problems

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in BIOL2101 or BIOL3201

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Examination Dec**

**Course Type**
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods and CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Assignments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>70</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grading**
A Demonstrates thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentation skills.
B Demonstrates substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentation skills.
C Demonstrates general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentation skills.
D Demonstrates partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentation skills of limited effectiveness.
Fail Demonstrates little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentation skills.

**Courses Website**
http://moodle.hku.hk/

**Additional Course Information**
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
## BIOL3211 - Nutrigenomics (6 credits)

**Offering Department**: Biological Sciences  
**Academic Year**: 2017

**Offer Co-ordinator**: Dr K C Tan-Un, Biological Sciences (ktantan@hku.hk)

### Course Objectives
Recent advances in the understanding of the human genome have resulted in the emergence of a new science called Nutrigenomics. This course aims to provide students with an understanding of the biochemical mechanisms underpinning the science of nutrition and the relation between genes and diet-related diseases. It explains the role of nutrition at the molecular level and the concepts of nutrigenomics and nutrigenetics.

### Course Contents & Topics
- Concepts of nutrigenomics, nutrigenetics, metabolomics and nutritional biochemistry.
- Regulation of gene expression; Single Nucleotide Polymorphisms and relation to diseases.
- Overview of lipid metabolism; cholesterol metabolic pathway; hyperlipidaemia, LDL receptor mutations.
- Relevance of folate, vitamin B12, hyperhomocysteinemia and gene polymorphisms in diseases.
- Epigenetics, Barker’s hypothesis, influence of maternal nutrition in fetal gene expression. Obesity, genetic predisposition, candidate genes like leptin, FTO and other hormones involved in the control of appetite.
- Polyunsaturated fatty acid and their roles in the control of gene expression example lipogenesis and lipid oxidation pathways.
- Inborn errors of metabolism in the context of genetic mutations and personalized diet therapy.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1: Explain the principles of the control of gene expression
- CLO 2: Demonstrate understanding of the role of metabolic pathways in relationship to diet, gene expression and disease
- CLO 3: Discuss how genetic variations are used to study the role of genes in nutrient-related cellular processes
- CLO 4: Explain the relationship between genotype, epigenetics and diet-related diseases
- CLO 5: Critically evaluate current theories of personalized nutrition based on individual genetic variation

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIQC2600 or BIOL2220

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
**Y**  
1st sem  
**Offer in 2018 - 2019**: Y  
**Examination**: Dec

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show extensive ability of knowledge integration and problem solving skills. Show excellent ability to critically analyze and interpret complex scientific data and draw appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate highly effective organization and writing skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show substantial ability of knowledge integration and problem solving skills. Show substantial ability to critically analyze and interpret scientific data and draw appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate effective organization and writing skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general and acceptable grasp of the subject matter covered. Show acceptable ability of knowledge integration and problem solving skills. Show moderate ability to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw proper conclusions. Demonstrate moderate organization and writing skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate marginal grasp of the subject matter covered. Show limited ability on knowledge integration and problem solving skills. Show limited ability to analyze and interpret scientific data. Demonstrate basic organization and writing skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with little retention of information of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal evidence in problem solving. Fail to integrate information and identify problems. Show little or minimal ability to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw conclusions. Demonstrate poor organization and writing skills.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
- **Activities**
  - Lectures

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
- **Methods**
  - Examination
  - Project reports including presentation
- **Details**
  - Weighting in final course grade (%)
  - Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
- **Weighting in final course grade (%)**
  - CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
  - CLO 2, 3

### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

### Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
Course Objectives

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the principles of dietary assessment methods, and the strengths of limitations of these methods
- CLO 2 evaluate the validity and reliability of dietary assessment tools
- CLO 3 choose the most appropriate nutrition assessment methods for different purposes
- CLO 4 explain the meaning and uses of Dietary Reference Intakes
- CLO 5 competently use dietary assessment software with local and international nutrient databases to assess individual dietary intake
- CLO 6 interpret foods and diets in terms of nutritional quality and nutrient adequacy, and make appropriate recommendation(s) for improvement, in both product development and dietary review contexts.

Course Contents & Topics

Topics covered will include the validity and reliability of different methods, estimations of energy requirements, the improvement.

Course Learning Outcomes

This course examines the various methods used to measure dietary intake in populations and healthy individuals, how to assess these measurements against international standards, and how to make recommendations for improvement.

Grade Descriptors

Establishing Upper Intake Levels for Nutrients. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/books/NBK45182/ In establishing upper intake levels, the precautionary principle is applied. In making recommendations, it is necessary to distinguish between evidence from research studies and evidence from observations in the population. This course will cover these topics in depth.

Pre-requisites

Pass in BIOL2102

Course Type

Laboratory and workshop course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Workshops</td>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lehninger Principles of Biochemistry
Orudovas: Nutrigenetics and Nutrinomics. Wiley. 2004
Rimbach, Fuchs, Packer: Nutrigenomics, CRC Press. 2005
Journals in Nutrition, Molecular Biology and Genetics

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/
### BIOL3216 Food waste management (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Biological Sciences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr O Habimana, Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:ohabim@hku.hk">ohabim@hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr O Habimana, School of Biological Sciences)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Objectives
To allow students to develop an understanding of the propagation, treatment and disposal of food waste relevant within the farm to table chain. To allow students to critically evaluate food waste management and resource recovery potential in Hong Kong in comparison to other countries in Asia/Worldwide.

#### Course Contents & Topics
With our current global population estimated to reach 9.1 billion in 2050, food production will be expected to increase by 70% to meet food demand. However, our current world food supply is instead declining, with 1/4 to 1/3 of all food produced for human consumption lost or wasted. This amounts to a staggering 1 to 2 billion metric tons per year! Clearly we should be worried about food wastage. In this course, the social, economic, and environmental implications associated with food waste will be identified, by presenting relevant facts and figures and case studies embodying agricultural, industrial and consumer waste-types. Basic waste management concepts will also be covered, examining current waste management in Hong Kong compared to other countries in Asia, while providing the basis for examining our own personal waste footprint. This course will address current applications and limitations of food waste treatment technologies. Course outline:
- Background, Definitions, Social & Environmental implications of food waste
- Facts and figures related to food waste
- Basic Waste Management concepts (3 R’s)
- Case studies: Agricultural waste
- Case studies: Food industrial waste
- Case studies: Food consumer waste
- Waste Management in Hong Kong vs other countries in Asia
- Individual waste footprint: from awareness to legislation in Hong Kong
- Current Technological applications & limitations in food waste treatment

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand and define the various types of waste as well as create an awareness of individual waste footprint.
- CLO 2 be able to define the 3 R’s in waste management (reduce, reuse, recycle), and be familiarized with waste policies in Hong Kong compared to other countries in Asia/Worldwide.
- CLO 3 be able to describe current and novel technologies for treating waste, as well as transforming waste into value added resources.
- CLO 4 to develop written and oral presentation skills necessary to effectively convey technical, economic, and social information related to waste management.

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL2101 or BIOL3201

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Type
Lecture-based course

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>including presentation</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>including presentation</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

#### Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrolment number and availability of teachers.

### BIOL3217 Food, environment and health (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Biological Sciences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr T. Sobko, Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:tsobko@hku.hk">tsobko@hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr T Sobko, School of Biological Sciences)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Objectives
A cross-disciplinary exploration of the environmental, socio-economic, public health and personal nutrition contexts
of food systems. To focus on how our food choices influence the environment and how the environment impacts our diet. To examine the interactions among environment (e.g. pollution, soil and water quality, climate change), food resources (growth, production, consumption, processing, distribution and disposal) and health.

Course Contents & Topics
The environment, human well-being and the functioning of society are highly influenced by food production and consumption. Are we destroying the environment as we struggle to feed growing populations? Is the environment becoming increasingly toxic for our health? The course will consist of three blocks: 1) The influence of food consumption on the environment; 2) The impact of environment on food and human health, and 3) What actions can improve these interactions, through evidence-based case examples. A Problem Based Learning (PBL) approach will be used with emphasis on 'real-life' cases connecting human nutrition, well-being and environmental health. Topics will include impacts of certain dietary habits and demands on food systems (e.g. demand for cheap sources of calories, rise of meat consumption, demand for year-round luxury foods) and the depletion of soil and increased fertilizers' use. We will consider how toxins, known as xenobiotics, affect human health and how sensory decisions are influenced by the environment. The holistic approach used will help the students to navigate complex environmental and food-related decisions and expressions, both public and private. Students will learn to critically evaluate the sociocultural, socio-behavioural, ethical and economic aspects of food and environment and understand the importance of biologically sustainable food production and high quality food being a just model for a healthy individual, environment and overall society.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 To understand multifactorial and interdisciplinary relations in sustainable environment and nutrition
- CLO 2 To address today's national and global challenges in the environmental and food sectors
- CLO 3 To understand historical and current aspects (agricultural production, policy initiatives) locally, in Asia and worldwide
- CLO 4 To address and analyze food/environment issues including food production, consumption, and the fulfillment of the right to adequate food; strengths and weaknesses of political, social, and economic policies and other interventions
- CLO 5 To demonstrate skills to become effective environmental educators to communicate the issues of food and environment to a variety of audiences and to apply theoretical knowledge while designing an applicable intervention in public setting

Pre-requisites
Pass in BIOL 2101 or BIOL3201

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination Dec

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)
- A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentational skills.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
- Lectures with practicals 36
- Tutorials 12
- Project work 20
- Reading / Self study 50

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
- Final group presentation (30%), Critical reviews of other student's final project presentations (10%) 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
- Examination 60 CLO 1,2,3

Required/Recommended reading and online materials
There is no course textbook. Most of the reading material will be provided on Moodle or distributed during lectures.

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

BIOL3218 Food hygiene and quality control (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences
Quota 30

Course Co-ordinator
Dr O Habimana, Biological Sciences (ohabim@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Dr L Zhang, School of Biological Sciences)
(Dr O Habimana, School of Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives
To provide exposure to some key management, microbiology and food processing concepts used to produce safe high-quality food products. To introduce students to analysis and problem-solving of realistic business situations in food safety management.

Course Contents & Topics
- The regulatory, social and business imperative for food safety.
- Basic concepts in TQM
- Statistical Process Control
- Quality Function Deployment
**Course Objectives**

To develop a basic understanding and appreciation of the field of marine biology, including the fascinating diversity of marine life, their function, ecology and inter-relationships. Contemporary issues including the benefits we derive from marine biological resources and threats to their long-term sustainability will also be discussed with case studies highlighting key issues.

**Course Contents & Topics**

The topics cover:
1. The physical and chemical environments (e.g., light, current, atmospheric-ocean interactions, salinity, temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen, nutrients) and how these may affect the marine biota
2. Important groups of marine organisms (e.g., phytoplankton, zooplankton, benthos, nekton, marine mammals) and marine food web
3. Major marine habitats and ecosystems (e.g., intertidal, benthic, pelagic, deep sea, coral reefs, mangroves)
4. Exploitation of marine biological resources (e.g., fisheries and biodiversity)
5. Contemporary issues (e.g., climate change, marine pollution, sustainable use of marine living resources, invasive species)

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand the basic microbiological and food processing concepts in food safety

CLO 2 be familiar with a set of management techniques applicable in the food industry for promoting food safety

CLO 3 be able to analyze food production problems and make recommendations for action to improve quality and safety

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in BIOL2101 or BIOL3201 or BIOL3203

Not for students who have passed in BIOL3208

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1st sem</td>
<td>Exam Dec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade Descriptors (A to F)**

- **A** Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-oriented organizational and presentational skills.
- **B** Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking in competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.
- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentational skills.

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

- Lectures: 36
- Group work: 12
- Project work: 30
- Reading / Self study: 100

**Course Website**

http://moodle.hku.hk

**Additional Course Information**

The course will be offered subject to a minimum enrolment number and availability of teachers.

Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018

**BIOL3301**

**Offering Department**

Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**

Dr M Yasuhara, Biological Sciences (yasuhara@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**

(Dr B Russell, Biological Sciences)
(Dr M Yasuhara, Biological Sciences)
(Dr S Cannici, Biological Sciences)

**Course Objectives**

To develop a basic understanding and appreciation of the field of marine biology, including the fascinating diversity of marine life, their function, ecology and inter-relationships. Contemporary issues including the benefits we derive from marine biological resources and threats to their long-term sustainability will also be discussed with case studies highlighting key issues.

**Course Contents & Topics**

The topics cover:
1. The physical and chemical environments (e.g., light, current, atmospheric-ocean interactions, salinity, temperature, pH, dissolved oxygen, nutrients) and how these may affect the marine biota
2. Important groups of marine organisms (e.g., phytoplankton, zooplankton, benthos, nekton, marine mammals) and marine food web
3. Major marine habitats and ecosystems (e.g., intertidal, benthic, pelagic, deep sea, coral reefs, mangroves)
4. Exploitation of marine biological resources (e.g., fisheries and biodiversity)
5. Contemporary issues (e.g., climate change, marine pollution, sustainable use of marine living resources, invasive species)

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 demonstrate a basic understanding of the diversity and function of marine biota

CLO 2 recognize the interactions of marine biota and their environments

CLO 3 appreciate the importance of marine ecosystems and the threats of human activities on their long-term sustainability as well as possible solutions

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in BIOL2306 or ENVS2002

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>Semester</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1st sem</td>
<td>Exam Dec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

**B**
Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and apply to knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

**C**
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

**D**
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

**Fail**
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of coherent and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lecture with laboratory component course</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Lectures</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field work</strong></td>
<td>field trip, laboratory practical &amp; tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Reading / Self study</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assignments</strong></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Examination</strong></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
H. V. Thurman and E. A. Burton: Introductory Oceanography (Prentice Hall, 2001, 9th ed.)
J. W. Nybakken: Marine Biology: An Ecological View (Benjamin Cummings, 2000)
TBC

**Course Website**
http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/
### BIOL3303: Conservation biology (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Quota</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biological Sciences</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Co-ordinator
Dr T C Bonebrake, Biological Sciences (tbone@hku.hk)

#### Teachers Involved
- Dr L G Gibson, Biological Sciences
- Prof Y Sadovy, Biological Sciences

#### Course Objectives
To introduce students to the theory and practice of conservation and to provide students with a thorough understanding of practical, economic and management skills required for proficiency in conservation biology. Our ultimate aim is to promote an understanding of the natural biodiversity, the threats to it, and the best ways to manage them. We hope these will be your aims too, and that you will be able to use the skills and knowledge you learn from the course to reduce the local, regional and global loss of biodiversity.

#### Course Contents & Topics
Among the many environmental issues, the most serious is the increasingly rapid loss of biodiversity. This loss is irreversible on a human timescale and will reduce the options available to all future human generations. Conservation Biology/Ecology is the science of preserving biological diversity. This course also provides insights to the many benefits and services that nature offers and explores strategies for management options to sustain ecological integrity and production. It is an inexact, applied, mission-orientated, multidisciplinary science which, like medicine, has built-in values: to a conservation biologist, as to a doctor, it matters whether the patient lives or dies. It is also a very new science, bringing together elements from ecology, environmental science, forestry, resource management and many other fields.

The course is designed to provide the knowledge, theories, and research related to biodiversity conservation. Our teaching focuses on biodiversity conservation, conservation issues associated with climate change, the key theoretical underpinning of biodiversity conservation and an introduction to conservation legislation and economics. We emphasise on the integration of knowledge, skills and abilities that are required to practice conservation. Our problem based learning approach will require students to actively participate in their group project/class room debate by researching.

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1**: Develop a framework for critical thinking about biodiversity, environment and human interaction.

- **CLO 2**: Understand why species are becoming extinct and predict which ones will be most vulnerable.

- **CLO 3**: Understand the importance of the threat of tropical deforestation, marine and coastal degradation, and habitat fragmentation in species extinction, and explain the main forces behind habitat and biodiversity loss.

- **CLO 4**: Understand the principles of population viability analysis, the basis of single-species conservation management and the role of ex situ conservation, ecological restoration and reintroduction in conservation.

- **CLO 5**: Outline the legal and administrative basis for conservation in Hong Kong and the world.

- **CLO 6**: Appreciate the roles and relationships of economic, social and environmental sciences in the conservation of biodiversity.

#### Pre-requisites and (Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL2306

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
**Y** 2nd sem  **Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y**

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="#">Project work</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="#">Reading / Self study</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Type
- Lecture with laboratory component course

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, ability to integrate and synthesise information, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective presessional skills. Strong evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.

B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, integration of materials and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate effective presessional skills. Evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.

C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective presessional skills. Little evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.

D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities and little attempt at integration. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited effectiveness in presessional skills. Lack of attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.

Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presessional skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Tropical and temperate marine ecology field course (6 credits)

Offering Department
Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator
Dr B Russell, Biological Sciences (brussell@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Dr B Russell, Biological Sciences)
(Dr S Cannicco, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate an understanding of the complexity and function of marine ecosystems.
- CLO 2 explain the role of physical and biological processes in shaping marine ecosystems.
- CLO 3 understand the similarities and differences among marine ecosystems in tropical and temperate regions.
- CLO 4 demonstrate skills for field sampling in marine and estuarine habitats.
- CLO 5 identify a range of marine species and their role in ecosystems.
- CLO 6 demonstrate an understanding of how human activities reduce the function of marine and estuarine ecosystems.

Course Contents & Topics
The course will cover the structure and function of mangrove forests, reefs (coral and rocky), and algal forests in both tropical and temperate regions. Students will be introduced to the concepts in the course through a series of online modules before travelling to northern and southern Australia to experience the ecosystems in the field. The online modules will consist of videos, reading and activities to provide students with background knowledge about the ecosystems which they will encounter, the structure and function of the systems, and how human activities degrade them. These concepts will be drawn together in the field with students quantifying species richness, observing system structure and testing the strength of trophic relationships with experiments.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate an understanding of the complexity and function of marine ecosystems.
- CLO 2 explain the role of physical and biological processes in shaping marine ecosystems.
- CLO 3 understand the similarities and differences among marine ecosystems in tropical and temperate regions.
- CLO 4 demonstrate skills for field sampling in marine and estuarine habitats.
- CLO 5 identify a range of marine species and their role in ecosystems.
- CLO 6 demonstrate an understanding of how human activities reduce the function of marine and estuarine ecosystems.

Pre-requisites
Pass in BIOL2306 or BIOL3301

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y Summer Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Assessment Methods
- Examinations 60% (A+ to F)
- Assignments 20% (CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6)
- Presentation group presentation 10% (CLO 1,2,3,5,6)
- Test 10% (CLO 1,2,3)

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
- A: Evidence of a thorough grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Eagerness and enthusiasm to learn and excellent familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Exemplary handling of field data collection and excellent analytical skills. Ample evidence of independent critical thought with excellent use of a broad range of fundamental concepts and broader comparative perspective to draw insightful and logical conclusions. Show outstanding abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with excellent analytical argumentation. Excellent or outstanding work relative to what is required at degree level.
- B: Evidence of a good grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Interest in learning and good-to-moderate familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Good handling of field data collection and commendable analytical skills. Good evidence of critical thought (although not always independent), with an appreciable use of fundamental concepts and consideration of broader comparative perspective in drawing logical conclusions. Good abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with logical and analytical argumentation. Work more than sufficient for what is required at degree level.
- C: Demonstrate an adequate, but incomplete grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Moderate familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies, but no interest in learning beyond the adequate average level. Evidence of logical critical thinking (although not always independent), with mostly good use of fundamental concepts to draw logical conclusions. Fair presentation skills, with mostly correct argumentation, but limited (or no) abilities to integrate broader concepts. Work sufficient for what is required for degree level.
- D: Demonstrate some grasp of the subject, but only partial and with limited understanding of relevant research concepts and research techniques. Some familiarity with relevant case studies, but insufficient evidence of background reading and limited abilities of critical independent thinking. Ineffective presentation skills with generally weak logical argumentation with restricted ability of drawing appropriate conclusions. Work barely meets what is required at degree level.
- Fail: No evidence of basic minimum grasp of the subject and the minimum relevant research techniques. No evidence of background reading and no familiarity with any relevant examples and case studies. Inadequate evidence of coherent logical thought; ineffective presentation skills with poor argumentation and no abilities to draw meaningful conclusions. Work fails to reach degree level.

Course Type
Field camps

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
- Lectures Pre-course online modules 10
- Field work 80
- Reading / Self study 40

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Students will be directed to relevant scientific literature and websites

Course Website
http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc
## BIOL3313 Freshwater ecology (6 credits)

### Course Objectives
This course introduces freshwater science by integrating the physical and biological components of rivers and their drainage basins in the context of sustaining human livelihoods and biodiversity. Conservation and management of lakes and maintenance of water quality are considered also. Case studies are used to illustrate the principles of river science and human use of drainage basins. Emphasis will be placed upon conservation of freshwater biodiversity in Asia in the context of increasing human modification of ecosystems, habitat degradation and water scarcity.

### Course Contents & Topics
The amount of water on Earth is fixed. Less than 0.01% of the world's water is in lakes and rivers, yet this water hosts 10% of the Earth's species. Global water use has increased 300% since 1950 and is growing faster than the Earth's population; many people in Asia already face water stress. This course introduces the physicochemical processes involved in the hydrological cycle and flow of water in drainage basins, as well as their seasonal fluctuations, and describes the main longitudinal changes that occur along rivers and their floodplains. Energy flows in freshwater ecosystems are described with particular reference to the transfer of materials between water and land and the relative importance of aquatic primary production versus energy derived from detrital inputs from the land. The range of organisms associated with Asian fresh waters is introduced and their functional roles explained, and students will become familiar with some common Hong Kong species in field trips and laboratory sessions. The dependence of humans on freshwater ecosystems and the role they play in sustaining livelihoods is explained, together with the causes and consequences of human modification of fresh waters, and the implications for conservation of aquatic biodiversity. Finally the range of management strategies used to reduce or mitigate human impacts on freshwater ecosystems and maintain water quality is introduced.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** describe the global water cycle, the main sources and pathways of energy in freshwaters, and the influence of land-water interactions on aquatic productivity
- **CLO 2** describe the composition of the freshwater biota (major groups) and their functional roles in aquatic ecosystems, and identify some of the common animals that occur in Hong Kong fresh waters
- **CLO 3** describe the results of modification of freshwater ecosystems by humans, list the main threats to freshwater biodiversity in Asia, explain why freshwater biota are vulnerable to human impacts, and indicate the management strategies used to reduce or mitigate them

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL2102 and BIOL2306

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>project and laboratory work; field trips to local streams</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>wetlands</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
- An online training tool developed by an international team (including the course coordinator) that contains information on the physical and biological features of rivers, and shows how human livelihoods depend on river health.
- A list of references available in HKU library will be provided for each lecture on the course website.

### Course Website
http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

### Additional Course Information
Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
**BIOL3314**

**Offering Department**: Biological Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator**: Prof R M K Saunders, Biological Sciences (saunders@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved**: (Prof R M K Saunders, Biological Sciences)  
**Course Objectives**: To survey the form and function of the vascular plant body, with particular emphasis on the evolutionary significance of structures. This course forms a basis for understanding plant physiology, ecology, systematics and phylogenetics.

**Course Contents & Topics**: The course will investigate various cell, tissue and organ types in the vascular plant body, with functional explanations for their diversity and discussions of the value of such knowledge in understanding plant phylogeny. Information on plant structure will be integrated with our current understanding of developmental genetics and taxonomic relationships derived from molecular phylogenetic research. Topics such as food storage, strength, water conduction, growth and development, pollination, fertilization, fruit and seed dispersal, germination, etc., will be discussed.

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 recognize the main plant cell types and explain how cells are integrated to form specific primary tissues (such as the xylem and phloem).
- CLO 2 describe the developmental changes that occur in primary tissues with the onset of secondary growth.
- CLO 3 describe the structure, function and development of secondary vegetative structures (wood and bark).
- CLO 4 integrate knowledge of the genetic control of floral development with the evolution of organ diversity.
- CLO 5 describe the structure of fruits from a functional perspective, and recognize how these structures are derived from the flower.
- CLO 6 explain how seeds develop after fertilization of the ovule, and how differences in seed structure influence germination patterns.

**Pre-requisites**: Pass in BIOL1309; and Any level 2 BIOL course  
**Offer in 2017 - 2018**: Y  
**Offer in 2018 - 2019**: Y  
**Examination**: May

**Grade Descriptors** (A+ to F)

- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining most or all of the course learning outcomes, with evidence of extensive background reading and use of named examples. Show evidence of significant critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply highly effective presentation skills. Demonstrate effective use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes, with evidence of some background reading and use of named examples. Show evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective presentation skills. Demonstrate use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes, with evidence of limited background reading and use of named examples. Show evidence of some critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective presentation skills. Demonstrate mostly correct use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes, with insufficient evidence of background reading and use of named examples. Show evidence of limited critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply limited presentation skills. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes, with no evidence of background reading or use of named examples. Show little or no evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking. Presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Misuse of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

**Lecture with laboratory component course**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- A list of additional reading material will be provided during the course.

**Course Website**
http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsic

**Additional Course Information**
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

**BIOL3318**

**Experimental intertidal ecology (6 credits)**  
**Offering Department**: Biological Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator**: Prof G A Williams, Biological Sciences (hrstwgsa@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved**: (Prof G A Williams, Biological Sciences)  
**Course Objectives**: To examine the communities of coastal systems: their distribution, composition and the factors which regulate them. This course will examine, using an experimental approach, patterns exhibited by a range of shores and the deterministic and stochastic processes that create and sustain them. Hong Kong shores will be used as examples but comparisons will be drawn from the coastlines of the world.

**Course Contents & Topics**: The first part of this course describes shores of the marine to brackish water continuum and the communities found on them. Lectures will cover the physical environment of the intertidal (e.g. tides; waves; geological and hydrological processes) the resultant variations in exposure and shore types and consequent distribution of animals and algae (e.g. on these shores (vertical and horizontal zonation patterns) with specific Hong Kong examples. The second part of the course uses an experimental approach (e.g. sampling methodology; manipulative techniques; experimental design and data analysis) to investigate the factors (e.g. predation; herbivory; competition; disturbance; succession; patchiness and recruitment; supply side ecology) that structure these shores, with particular focus on rocky intertidal shores.

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe the physical environmental factors (e.g., waves, tides) shaping the intertidal environment and how...
they interact with geographic features to produce different kinds of shores (e.g., sandy shores, mangroves). CLO 2 understand the factors limiting species distribution patterns on the vertical intertidal gradient and appreciate methods to measure and investigate these patterns. CLO 3 identify and quantify the distribution of a variety of local species on different Hong Kong shores. CLO 4 review, critique and design experimental studies to investigate patterns (e.g., zonation) and processes (e.g., herbivory, competition) in intertidal areas. CLO 5 explain the role of biological processes (e.g., predation, succession) and their interaction with the physical environment in shaping intertidal communities.

CLO 6 plan, design, execute, analyse and present a simple experimental study on intertidal ecology.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOL2102 or BIOL3301

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N  Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

Pass in BIOL2102 or BIOL3301

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N  Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Examination

---

Course Type: Lecture with laboratory component course

Activities

| Lectures | 16 |
| Field work | field trip/project work |
| Project work | 6 |
| Tutorials | 4 |
| Reading / Self study | 100 |

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods

| Assignments | 40 | CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6 |
| Examination | 60 | CLO 1,2,3,4,5 |

Required/recommended reading and online materials


TBC

Course Website

http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

Additional Course Information

Offered in alternate year from 2017-2018

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL3319 Tropical terrestrial ecology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Biological Sciences Quota 30

Course Co-ordinator Dr B Guenard, Biological Sciences (bguenard@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Dr B Guenard,Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives

To enable motivated students to acquire the knowledge and skills needed to solve real problems in terrestrial ecology.

Course Contents & Topics

This course will focus on the ecology of terrestrial habitats. The emphasis will be on the tropics, especially tropical East Asia, but the course will also include an overview of patterns and processes on a global scale. Students will first learn about the geological history of the land mass on earth, the biogeography and broad distribution of major terrestrial ecosystems, especially in Tropical East Asia. Then, students will begin to learn different important processes including herbivory, carnivory, pollination, seed dispersal and energy flow in terrestrial ecosystems. The second half of the course will start with the degraded terrestrial ecosystems nowadays and the important process of ecological succession. Restoration ecology and how tropical forests can be restored will then be introduced. Two other major threats to terrestrial ecosystems including alien invasive species and wildfire will also be addressed.

Two problem-based learning exercises are included to provide students with an alternative mode of learning. The practical component of the course will introduce students to the basic field techniques used in terrestrial ecology. Students will participate to a group project, collect and analyze data, and write a short scientific paper.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand evolution of biodiversity patterns and shaping processes within terrestrial ecosystems at different geographic and time scales.

CLO 2 understand the current patterns that sustain biodiversity in their pristine form and disturbed state.

CLO 3 understand the various threats to terrestrial ecosystems and some of the methods to evaluate and reduce the impacts of those threats.

CLO 4 plan and conduct baseline study of terrestrial biodiversity.

CLO 5 develop the skill to be an active learner through the problem-based learning exercises.

Pass in BIOL1309 and BIOL2306

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y  Examination May
BIOL3320

Offering Department Biological Sciences  
Course Co-ordinator Dr L Karczmarski, Biological Sciences (leszek@hku.hk)  
Teachers Involved (Dr L Karczmarski, Biological Sciences)  

Course Objectives Few other groups of animals have captured the public’s imagination the way marine mammals, especially whales and dolphins have. This course covers the evolutionary biology, ecology, behaviour, and conservation of marine mammals: whales, dolphins and porpoises (cetaceans), seals and walruses (pinnipeds), manatees and dugongs (sireniens) and sea otters. Students will learn to understand the ecology of mammalian life in the aquatic environment, their role in the marine ecosystem, their behavioural complexity and socio-ecology, and the current threats to these animals in the human-dominated world.

Course Contents & Topics The course begins with an overview of marine mammal species and their global distribution, followed by a review of the various adaptations that have evolved to meet the challenges of the marine environment. Next, the course discusses the life history, reproductive strategies, ecology and population dynamics of marine mammals, highlighting the similarities and differences between species in this taxonomically diverse group of animals. This is followed by sessions on behaviour and behavioural ecology; here we discuss animal movement, diving and ranging behaviour, foraging strategies, ecology of group living and social behaviour, behavioural complexity, cognition, and social strategies that guide the daily lives of these animals. The course concludes with a discussion of human influences on the fate of marine mammals, examples of critically endangered species and populations, and a review of conservation and management strategies; our emphasis is on the importance of applying the knowledge of population ecology, behaviour and behavioural ecology in ensuring long-term effective conservation of marine mammal populations. This course is designed for 3rd and 4th year students; it includes field trips, discussions of current scientific research, innovative research techniques and recent discoveries. Students will undertake independent literature-searches and will discuss their projects during classroom debates, training their skills in conceptual and analytical approaches to science.

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
CLO 1 appreciate marine mammal diversity and biogeography  
CLO 2 understand how mammals adapt and function in an aquatic environment and their role in the marine ecosystem  
CLO 3 understand and appreciate the complexity of interactions between environmental selective pressures and marine mammal behaviour, population structure and demography  
CLO 4 appreciate the socio-ecological diversity and behavioural complexity of marine mammals  
CLO 5 think analytically in terms of marine mammal ecology and anthropogenic impacts in the rapidly changing world

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in BIOL2306  

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: N  

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) A Evidence of a thorough grasp of the subject in a broader comparative perspective as demonstrated by background reading and extensive use of named examples and case studies. Evidence of independent critical thought with excellent use of a broad range of fundamental concepts to draw insightful and logical conclusions. Show eagerness to learn, great abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with excellent analytical argumentation. Excellent or outstanding work relative to what is required at degree level.  
B Evidence of a good grasp of the subject as demonstrated by some background reading and appropriate use of named examples and some case studies. Evidence of good critical thought, although not necessarily original. Good and very good (but not outstanding) abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with good analytical and logical argumentation. Good
This course introduces the students to the diversity, biology and ecology of marine invertebrates. Students will be introduced to various aspects of the systematics, anatomy, physiology and functional ecology of the major phyla of marine invertebrates to appreciate the diversity of body plans and ecological roles these animals play in coastal, benthic and pelagic ecosystems. The course will particularly focus on the South East Asian seas, which are the most diverse marine systems in the world.

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

**BIOL3322**

**Marine invertebrate zoology (6 credits)**

**Offering Department** Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator** Dr S Cannici, Biological Sciences (cannici@hku.hk)

**Course Objectives**

This course introduces the students to the diversity, biology and ecology of marine invertebrates. Students will be introduced to various aspects of the systematics, anatomy, physiology and functional ecology of the major phyla of marine invertebrates to appreciate the diversity of body plans and ecological roles these animals play in coastal, benthic and pelagic ecosystems. The course will particularly focus on the South East Asian seas, which are the most diverse marine systems in the world.

**Course Contents & Topics**

Invertebrates make up 95% of all animal species. While insects dominate the terrestrial landscapes, marine environments have a much broader phylogenetic diversity, with taxa such as Porifera (sponges), Polychaetes (marine worms), Coelenterata (corals and sea anemones) and Echinoderms (sea urchins and starfish) entirely confined to the seas. Together with marine molluscs and crustaceans, these groups play fundamental roles in the functioning of all marine ecosystems, and are a fundamental focus of evolutionary studies of extant taxa and their fossil relatives.

This course will lead the students through the discovery of the amazing variety of marine bodies plans, adaptations, structure and function of marine invertebrates. In the first part of the course, the study of the phylogenetic relationships and the body plans of marine invertebrates groups, together with the associated evolutionary pathways, will be described to students with an evolutionary grand tour of life on Earth. In the second part, students will learn the mechanisms underpinning the ecological functions of marine ecosystems, through the study of the functional biology and ecology of the dominant groups. The diversity of invertebrates present in South East Asian seas will be introduced, and students will become familiar the commonest Hong Kong taxa and species in field trips and laboratory sessions.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 identify major taxa of marine invertebrates

CLO 2 describe the evolutionary history of the different taxa, understanding their relationships

CLO 3 describe the composition of the invertebrates communities and their roles in marine ecosystems, and learn to identify common species and taxa typical of Hong Kong coastal waters

CLO 4 understand the functional biology of marine invertebrates and their contribution to ecological functioning of marine ecosystems

**Pre-requisites**

Pass in BIOL2306

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

A Evidence of a thorough grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Eagerness and enthusiasm to learn and excellent familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Exemplary handling of field data collection and excellent analytical skills. Ample evidence of independent critical thought with excellent use of a broad range of fundamental concepts and broader comparative perspective to draw insightful and logical conclusions. Show outstanding abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with excellent analytical argumentation. Excellent or outstanding work relative to what is required at degree level.

B Evidence of a good grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Interest in learning and good-to-moderate familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Good handling of field data collection and commendable analytical skills. Good evidence of critical thought (although not always independent), with an appreciable use of fundamental concepts and consideration of broader comparative perspective in drawing logical conclusions. Good abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with logical and analytical argumentation. Work more than sufficient for what is required at degree level.

C Demonstrate an adequate, but incomplete grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Moderate familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies, but no interest in learning beyond the adequate average level. Evidence of logical
BIOL3328 Nearshore marine and estuarine ecology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences Quota 10
Course Co-ordinator Prof. G.A. Williams, Biological Sciences (hrsbwga@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Prof. G.A. Williams, School of Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives Using a comparative approach between Hong Kong and South African shores, students will learn to identify the relevant environmental gradients which define the intertidal zone, and the species interactions which mould these communities. This will be achieved through an intensive field-based approach, visiting and working in different intertidal habitats in both Hong Kong and, during a residential fieldcamp, in South Africa.

Course Contents & Topics Students will learn the abiotic and biotic factors that structure intertidal communities in Hong Kong and, during a residential fieldcamp, different South African intertidal communities. In South Africa, specific topics will focus on:
1. Intertidal biodiversity and species interactions
2. Species distribution patterns on intertidal shores
3. Species interactions and behaviour
4. Trophic interactions and connectivity between local terrestrial and marine communities.
5. Larger-scale connectivity from freshwaters to marine systems

HKU Students will work in groups with students from the University of Johannesburg and North West University, South Africa to collect data; design and carry out experiments; present their findings; and write up formal scientific reports on the different topics. Note individual topics may change in different years and are weather dependent.

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 compare the contrast the shallow water coastal environments of Hong Kong and the Eastern Cape Province of South Africa
CLO 2 identify a range of species and their roles and relationships in the intertidal zone
CLO 3 understand the abiotic conditions defining the intertidal environment and quantify and interpret the distribution of species over relevant environmental gradients
CLO 4 design, execute and analyse experiments to investigate species interactions
CLO 5 integrate abiotic and biotic interactions to determine patterns of connectivity between intertidal habitats
CLO 6 analyse, interpret and present data using a variety of media to demonstrate scientific understanding of topics

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in BIOL2306 or BIOL3301
Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 Y Examination No Exam
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) A Thorough and complete grasp of the subject. Strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Excellent lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Excellent organizational and presentational skills.
B Good and near-complete grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Competent lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions, Good organizational and presentational skills.
C Adequate (but incomplete) grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Adequate lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Fair organizational and presentational skills.
D Limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Barely adequate lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Barely satisfactory organizational and presentational skills.
Fail Poor or inadequate knowledge and understanding of the subject. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Inadequate lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Incoherent organization and poor presentational skills.
Course Type Field camps
### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>Pre-course modules</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>Pre-course assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Group presentation</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 3, 4, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- Students will be directed to relevant scientific literature, websites and appropriate teaching materials.

### Course Website

http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

### Additional Course Information

- Students who have taken BIOL3318 will be at an advantage.
- Students will join undergraduate students from the University of Johannesburg and North Western University, South Africa on a residential field camp at Tsitsikamma (Storms River Camp, Eastern Province, South Africa) in the second Reading Week (Second Semester). Students will be expected to live in tented accommodation and contribute to daily camp activities as well as conduct fieldwork in potentially harsh environmental conditions. Extra costs may be involved in the course, which may include airfares. Accommodation, meal costs and internal travel in South Africa are covered by South African hosts.

### BIOL3401 Molecular biology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017

#### Course Teaching Department

- Biological Sciences

#### Course Co-ordinator

- Prof. B K C Chow, Biological Sciences (bkcc@hku.hk)

#### Teachers Involved

- Dr C B Chan, Biological Sciences
- Dr K W Y Yuen, Biological Sciences
- Prof B K C Chow, Biological Sciences

#### Course Objectives

To provide students with recent knowledge in molecular biology with special emphasis on the study of gene structure and function at the molecular level.

#### Course Contents & Topics

The course includes a detailed account of the molecular processes in eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells, from DNA replication, RNA transcription, protein translation, to post-translational modifications with special emphasis on the regulation of prokaryotic and eukaryotic gene expression. Recently developed biochemical techniques including oligonucleotide synthesis, DNA sequencing, complementary screening and DNA cloning, site-directed mutagenesis, polymerase chain reaction and transgenic technology will also be discussed.

#### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** know the basic structures of DNA, RNA, and protein, and how DNA is package in the nucleus of eukaryotic cells.
- **CLO 2** understand the biochemical processes involved in DNA replication, transcription, translation and post-translational modifications in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.
- **CLO 3** explain and describe the regulation of gene transcription in prokaryotes and eukaryotes.
- **CLO 4** demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the underlying concepts associated with recently developed techniques including PCR, site-directed mutagenesis, DNA sequencing.

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in BIOC2600 or BIOL2103 or BIOL2220 or MED2301

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Descriptors</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1st sem</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- **A**: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presential skills.
- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presential skills.
- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presential skills.
- **F**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presential skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

#### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>assessment of practical work</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Required/recommended reading and

- R. Weaver: Molecular Biology (McGraw-Hill, 2005 or 2008)
BIOL3402 Cell biology and cell technology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences Quota 120
Course Co-ordinator Prof A S T Wong, Biological Sciences (awong1@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr J S H Tsang, Biological Sciences) (Dr W Y Lui, Biological Sciences) (Prof A S T Wong, Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives To provide a coherent understanding of the structure and function of cells, and the principles and applications of cell culture and instrumentation in biology and biotechnology
II. Techniques in animal cell culture Mammalian cells in culture. Primary and continuous cell lines. Cell types and cell growth parameters. Media formulation, growth factors and design of serum-free media. Culture lab facilities and sterilization. Mechanism of cryopreservation.
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 acquire fundamental knowledge on cell biology and cell technology
CLO 2 demonstrate basic laboratory techniques on cell culture
CLO 3 gain insight into real-life applications in cell biology and cell technology
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in BIOL2600 or BIOL2103 or BIOL2220 or MEDE2301
Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y Examination Dec
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills. Writings consistently demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills. Writings mostly demonstrate informed, thoughtful intellectual engagement with broad range of relevant concepts.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills. Writings mostly indicate informed, intellectual engagement with concepts or theories but not always with sufficient depth, breadth or understanding.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills. Writings indicate some intellectual engagement with concepts or theories but mostly at a superficial level.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organizational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Writings reveal an absence of intellectual engagement with concepts or theories. Writings are irrelevant or superficial.
Course Type Lecture with laboratory component course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 24
Laboratory 24
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100
Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments assessment of practical work 30 CLO 1, 2, 3
Examination 70 CLO 1, 3
Required/recommended reading and online materials Textbooks:
References: TBC
Course Website http://moodle.hku.hk/
BIOL3403 Immunology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences Quota 100
Course Co-ordinator Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences (hrszwlm@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr W B L Lim, Biological Sciences) (Prof P W W M Lee, Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives To provide a broad understanding of the animal immune system. Topics will also include the application of a variety of immunological methods to research and disease diagnosis.
Course Contents Immunological functions in the vertebrates and analogous activities in invertebrates. Structures and biological

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe the structure and function of the immune molecules which are involved in the body defense mechanisms, including antibody, T-cell receptor, cytokines, MHC and complement proteins.
- CLO 2 describe the organization of the mammalian immune system in terms of genes, cells and tissues.
- CLO 3 explain the underlying mechanisms associated with transplant rejection, transfusion reaction and vaccination.
- CLO 4 explain how the immune system responds to infections by bacteria, viruses and parasites.
- CLO 5 understand antigen-antibody interaction and the principle of immunoassays.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOL2600 or BIOL2103 or BIOL2220 or MEDE2301

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A 1. Exceptionally good performance demonstrating comprehensive understanding of the subject matter. 2. Critical insight and analysis into the scientific literatures. 3. Superior writing, presentation and group communication skills.
B 1. Good performance demonstrating full understanding of the subject matter. 2. Coherent insight and analysis into the scientific literatures. 3. Good writing, presentation and group communication skills.
C 1. Satisfactory performance demonstrating adequate understanding of the subject matter. 2. Some insight into the scientific literatures. 3. Adequate writing and communication skills.
D 1. Limited performance demonstrating some understanding of basic subject matter. 2. Some ability to use the scientific literatures. 3. Limited writing and communication skills.
Fail 1. Poor understanding of subject matter. 2. Little to no insight into use of the scientific literatures. 3. Unable to write or communicate.

Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 30
Laboratory during reading week 16
Tutorials Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination 80 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Laboratory reports 20 CLO 1,2,3,4,5

Required/recommended reading and online materials

I. Rott, J. Brottoff and D. Male: Immunology (Mosby, latest 2 editions)

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL3405

Molecular microbiology (6 credits)

Offering Department Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator "", Biological Sciences (/)
Teachers Involved "", Biological Sciences

Course Objectives

This course is intended for biology, biotechnology and biochemistry students who would like to understand the modern fundamentals of microbiology. At the end of the course the students are expected to know the physiological, biochemical and molecular aspects of microbiology.

Course Contents & Topics

The basic biochemistry of microorganisms will be described. The intrinsic factors that affect the growth of microbes in the environment will be examined. The adaptation of the microbes to the environment by means of physiological changes and genetic alterations will be illustrated. The molecular biology of bacteria and viruses will be considered. The molecular biology of plasmids and transposable elements and their association with medical aspect will be discussed. The use of modern technology in studying microorganisms will be explored.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the intrinsic reorganization of microbes in response to the changing environments.
- CLO 2 comprehend the major modes of regulation in the microbe.
- CLO 3 explain the biology of bacteriophages and plasmids.
- CLO 4 realize the importance of transposable elements in the survival of the microbes.
- CLO 5 appreciate the development of modern techniques in studying microorganisms.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in BIOL2103

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate through grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
Reproduction and reproductive biotechnology (6 credits)

Prof A O L Wong, Biological Sciences

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Offering Department: Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator: Prof A O L Wong, Biological Sciences (olwong@hku.hk)

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/

Course Objectives:
- Provide a comprehensive overview on modern concepts and recent advances in reproductive biology and reproductive biotechnology in human and animal models.
- Include basic concepts of reproduction, evolution of sex, human & animal reproductive strategies and sexual behavior.
- Introduce molecular mechanisms for sex determination, developmental aspects of gametogenesis and reproductive systems.
- Discuss neuroendocrinology of reproductive system and recent advances in kisspeptin & GnRH system and steroid feedback via KNDy neuronal circuit.
- Explore environmental endocrine disruptors and recent advances in biotechnology for fertility control & assisted reproduction in human.
- Focus on recent advances in embryonic stem cells & induced pluripotent stem cells and their applications in regenerative medicine/therapeutic cloning.
- Introduce new technology for genome editing by TALEN & CRISPR/Cas9 systems and gene therapy, animal cloning and primordial germ cell transplantation in animal models.

Course Learning Outcomes:
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1 Have a broad understanding of reproductive biology ranging from evolution of sex, different reproductive strategies & sexual behaviors in animals to the regulatory mechanisms for sex determination & development of reproductive systems.
  - CLO 2 Have an appreciation of the recent advances on neuroendocrine control of reproductive functions & reproductive cycle, sexual behavior, parental care, and pregnancy & parturition in human & mammalian models.
  - CLO 3 Have a basic understanding on the adverse effects of environmental endocrine disruptors on reproduction, possible causes of human infertility & treatment with assisted reproduction.
  - CLO 4 Comprehend a wide range of modern technologies for genome editing, animal cloning & primordial germ cell transplantation and the applications of embryonic stem cells/induced pluripotent stem cells in regenerative medicine/therapeutic cloning.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations): Pass in BIOL2103 or BIOL2200 or BIOC2600

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type: Lecture with laboratory component course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Examination: 70%
- Laboratory reports: 20%
- Presentation: 10%

Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping:
- CLO 1: A+ to C
- CLO 2: A+ to C
- CLO 3: A+ to C
- CLO 4: A+ to C

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
Willey, Sherwood & Woolvertor: Prescott’s Principles of Microbiology (McGraw Hill 2009)
Madigan, Martinko, Dunlap & Clark: Brock Biology of Microorganisms (Pearson 2009, 12th ed.)

ACADEMIC YEAR: 2017

QUOTA: 40
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Genetics (6 credits)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr C S C Lo, Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:clivelo@hku.hk">clivelo@hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr C S C Lo, Biological Sciences)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowledge and Skills Required</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors</td>
<td>A (Clive Lo)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrates thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of original thought, ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Integration of the full range of appropriate theories, principles, evidence and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrates substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. General integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrates general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Some partial integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrates partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limited integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Little or no integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>Examination 70 CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports 15 CLO 2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test 15 CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td><a href="http://moodle.hku.hk/">http://moodle.hku.hk/</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
be covered as well. Throughout the course, guest entrepreneurs, managers and directors of the biotech industry will be presenting case studies and explain their involvement in various biotech and pharmaceutical companies.

Topics:
1. Introduction to Biotechnology Industry: 4 P in Biotechnology Business (3 hours)
2. IP rights: Patent application, Patent system, USPTO, SIPO, PCT (6 hours)
3. Licensing of IP rights (3 hours)
4. Technology Transfer Office and HKSTP (3 hours)
5. How to raise fund for startup companies (3 hours)?
6. Agrobiotechnology and Green Tech (Monsanto, Novozymes, etc) (4.5 hours)
7. Drug development and clinical trials (Gilead Sciences, Wuxi PharmaTech, etc). (6 hours)
8. Diagnostics business (BGI, Diagcor, etc) (4.5 hours)
9. Company analysis (3 hours)
10. Company Visit
11. Company analysis

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand and demonstrate knowledge of the development and management of biotechnology business
- CLO 2 understand and demonstrate how discoveries and inventions are commercialized
- CLO 3 navigate the various steps in the development of a biotechnology derived product: from bench, to scale-up, to market
- CLO 4 gain technical and business knowledge of the biotechnology and bioprocessing industries
- CLO 5 participate and contribute to the business side of scientific enterprises

Pre-requisites
Priority will be given to students majoring or minoring in MBB

Outcomes
Pass in any level 3 BIOL or BIOC or BBMS course

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors (A to F)
- A Students acquire exceptional skills and knowledge from the course and are capable of independently analyzing the business and technological developments of various biotechnology ventures.
- B Students demonstrate a broad and in-depth understanding of the current developments in biotechnology industry and are capable of analyzing the business and technological developments of various biotechnology ventures under guidance.
- C Students demonstrate a broad and in-depth understanding of the current developments in biotechnology industry.
- D Students demonstrate a moderate understanding of the current developments in biotechnology industry.
- Fail Students fail to demonstrate a moderate understanding of the current developments in biotechnology industry.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>Assignment</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Company annual reports
Online materials

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers. Priority will be given to students majoring or minoring in MBB.

BIOL3419 Insect ecology: the little things that run the world (6 credits)

Offering Department
Biological Sciences

Quota
25

Teachers Involved
Dr B Guenard, Biological Sciences (bguenard@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
This course introduces the students with the biology of terrestrial arthropods. With a main focus on insects and arachnids, students will be introduced to various aspects of their anatomy and physiology, systematics, and ecology to understand the fundamental roles that arthropods play in natural and human-shaped ecosystems. The course will focus particularly on the diversity and importance of insects in South East Asia.

Course Contents & Topics
With about 1.1 million and 110,000 species described respectively, insects and arachnids represent nearly 80% of all species known on the planet. A diversity also reflected in the diversity of behaviours, evolutionary adaptations or ecological interactions played at all trophic levels within ecosystems. As herbivores, pollinators, seed-dispersal agents, predators, parasites, disease vectors or decomposers, arthropods are major components in the stability and functioning of most ecosystems. Yet their importance is often underestimated by many fields of biology to the profit of larger "charismatic" vertebrates. However, arthropods offer incredible opportunities for scientific discoveries, revealing sometimes attributes in morphology, reproduction or behaviour beyond the most prolific imagination, and challenging existing paradigms in ecology and evolution.

This course will propose an introduction to these extremely successful organisms and give them the value they deserve. A first step to the study of arthropods is to learn how to identify them correctly. Part of this course will present the main criteria to recognize major insects and arachnid groups. The second part will focus on their diversity, distribution and ecological functions within ecosystems. Finally the last part of the course will present the impacts of human activities on arthropods, how they have been used historically and nowadays, and what kind of problems or solution they represent for human societies?

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 identify major groups of insects and arthropods
- CLO 2 understand and use the main collecting methods to sample arthropod diversity
- CLO 3 understand the ecological diversity of arthropod groups and their importance in ecosystems
Evolution (6 credits)

Students will collect independently their own insect collection, curate and identify the specimen collected. This part includes 4 hours of lectures about identification methods and curation of arthropod collection.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL1309 and BIOL2306

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstration of an excellent understanding of the biological concepts and theories developed during the course. Master the identification skills and use of taxonomic keys of the different groups of arthropods studied. Present an active and participative attitude in class. Curation and identification of the collection reaching international scientific standard as presented during the course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstration of a good understanding of the biological concepts and theories developed during the course. Master most of the identification skills and use of taxonomic keys of the different groups of arthropods. Participation in class more limited. Curation and identification of the collection satisfactory for the course.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstration of a limited understanding of the biological concepts and theories developed during the course. Identification skills and use of taxonomic keys of the different groups of arthropods insufficient to provide reliable identification. Participation in class very limited or irrelevant. Curation and identification of the collection not reaching academic level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstration of a limited understanding of the biological concepts and theories developed during the course. Identification skills and use of taxonomic keys of the different groups of arthropods inadequate and mostly inaccurate. No participation in class or unsettling. Poor curation and identification of the collection.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Fali to provide evidence of knowledge on the biological concepts and theories developed during the course. No identification skills and lack of knowledge on how to use taxonomic keys. No participation in class or unsettling. Curation and identification highly unsatisfactory or work not delivered on time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>This part includes 4 hours of lectures about identification and curation of arthropod collection.</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td>Students will: collect independently their own insect collection, curate and identify the specimen collected.</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website
http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

Additional Course Information
Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers

BIOL3501
Evolution (6 credits) | Academic Year 2017

Offering Department | Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator | Dr M Sun, Biological Sciences (meisun@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
Evolution is the cornerstone of modern biology. The course aims to introduce students to the major themes of contemporary evolutionary biology, including the history of evolutionary biology, evolutionary processes, adaptation, speciation, and evolution as an explanatory framework at all levels of biological organization.

The course emphasizes the interplay between theory and empirical tests of hypotheses, thus acquainting students with the process of science.

Course Contents & Topics
Introduction to Evolution
- The relevance of evolution to everyday life
- Cases for evolutionary thinking
Evolution as Fact
- Patterns of evolutionary change
- The evidence for evolution
Evolution as Theory
- Before Darwin
- Darwinism
- The Modern Synthesis & beyond
The Mechanisms of Evolution
- The origin of genetic variation: mutation
- Genetic drift: evolution at random.
- Natural selection, sexual selection, and adaptation.
- Migration
Evolution and Biodiversity
- Species
- Speciation
- Evolution and development
- The history of life
- Estimating Evolutionary Trees

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 familiar with the facts and theory of evolution
CLO 2 describe Darwin’s theory of evolution by natural selection and how the process of natural selection can lead to speciation
CLO 3 have an advanced understanding of the modern evolutionary theory
CLO 4 apply evolutionary thinking to real world problems in agriculture, medicine, and biodiversity conservation

Pre-requisites
Pass in BIOL2306
Course Objectives

The course aims to familiarize students with fundamental principles and recent advances in conservation genetics. The theories and methods will be taught with a balanced range of examples - mammals, birds, reptiles, amphibians, fish, invertebrates, as well as plants - to demonstrate how genetic data can be used to answer a range of important questions in real-world conservation practice.

Course Contents & Topics

Introduction to conservation genetics.

- Part I: Evolutionary Genetics of Natural Populations:
  - genetic diversity
  - characterizing genetic diversity: single loci and quantitative variation;
  - evolutionary impacts of natural selection, mutation, migration and their interactions in large populations;
  - genetic consequences of small population sizes;
  - maintenance of genetic diversity;
  - population genomics.

- Part II: Effects of Population Size Reduction:
  - loss of genetic diversity in small populations;
  - inbreeding;
  - inbreeding depression;
  - population fragmentation;
  - genetically viable populations.

- Part III: From Theory to Practice:
  - resolving taxonomic uncertainties and defining management units;
  - genetic management of wild populations;
  - genetic issues in introduced and invasive species;
  - genetic management of captive populations;
  - genetic management for reintroduction;
  - use of molecular genetics in forensics and understanding species biology.

Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>including computer lab</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Teaching Activities

- Lectures: 36
- Tutorials: 12
- Project work: 12
- Reading/self study: 100

Additional Course Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Required/recommended reading and online materials

- J.C. Herron and S. Freeman: Evolutionary Analysis (5th ed. Pearson, 2013)

eBooks available.

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/

BIOL3502 Conservation genetics (6 credits)

Offering Department

Biological Sciences

Offer in 2018 - 2019: N

Course Co-ordinator

Dr M Sun, Biological Sciences (meisun@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

Academic Year

2017

Quota

50

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate an advanced understanding of the concepts of conservation genetics
- CLO 2 understand the criteria for determining the conservation status of endangered, vulnerable, or threatened species
- CLO 3 know the methods for characterizing genetic diversity at population and species levels
- CLO 4 comprehend the relationships between genetic diversity, inbreeding, reproductive fitness, and evolutionary potential in wild populations
- CLO 5 describe the effects of habitat fragmentation and population size reduction on genetic diversity and the implications in managing nature reserves
BIOL3503 Endocrinology: human physiology II (6 credits)  

**Offering Department**: Biological Sciences  
**Quota**: 60  
**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr C B Chan, Biological Sciences (chancb@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved**: (Dr C B Chan, Biological Sciences)  
(Prof A S T Wong, Biological Sciences)  
(Prof B K C Chow, Biological Sciences)  

**Course Objectives**: To provide an advanced course on hormones and how they regulate metabolism/growth, reproduction and water/salt homeostasis in our body.

**Course Contents & Topics**:  
- The hypothalamic pituitary axis.  
- The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis.  
- Reproduction.  
- The enteric nervous system. The cephalic phase, stomach phase and intestinal phase of food digestion.  
- Regulation of acid secretion. Regulation of pancreatic exocrine and endocrine secretion. Gut hormones: gastrin, GIP, CCK, secretin, GLP-1, GLP-2 and motilin.  
- Regulation of feeding, energy balance and food intake.  
- The enteric nervous system.  
- The gastrointestinal system.  
- Catecholamine effects and their pathways.  
- The gastrointestinal system.  
- The enteric nervous system.  
- The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis.  
- Reproduction.  
- The enteric nervous system. The cephalic phase, stomach phase and intestinal phase of food digestion.  
- Regulation of acid secretion. Regulation of pancreatic exocrine and endocrine secretion. Gut hormones: gastrin, GIP, CCK, secretin, GLP-1, GLP-2 and motilin.  
- Regulation of feeding, energy balance and food intake.  
- The enteric nervous system.  
- The gastrointestinal system.  
- Catecholamine effects and their pathways.  
- The gastrointestinal system.  
- The enteric nervous system.  
- The hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis.  
- Reproduction.  
- The enteric nervous system. The cephalic phase, stomach phase and intestinal phase of food digestion.  
- Regulation of acid secretion. Regulation of pancreatic exocrine and endocrine secretion. Gut hormones: gastrin, GIP, CCK, secretin, GLP-1, GLP-2 and motilin.  
- Regulation of feeding, energy balance and food intake.

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 understand the definition and natures of hormones  
- CLO 2 explain and describe secondary messenger pathways for hormones  
- CLO 3 describe the connection between pituitary the master gland with higher brain centers and peripheral organs  
- CLO 4 explain and describe hormones involved in the regulation of 3 most important body functions including metabolism/growth, reproduction and water/salt homeostasis

**Pre-requisites (Co-requisites and Impermissible)**: Pass in BIOL2103
School of Biological Sciences

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Objectives
Understand the reasons for restoration of marine, estuarine and coastal ecosystems; Provide scientific basis for coastal aquaculture through field demonstrations and laboratory exercises; Introduce larval biology and hatchery technology; oyster habitat. Students will be exposed to few aquaculture facilities in Hong Kong & will be taken to Penang coastal aquaculture, we will focus on hatchery technology and aquaculture. Environmental issues, legislation endeavor encompassing larval hatchery technology and aquaculture. After reading about basic oyster biology and oyster aquaculture facilities for food production and restoration of wild population. This is an interdisciplinary course, and learning opportunities. Career and small scale business opportunities in aquaculture industry will be discussed. Thus, students will be provided adequate knowledge & analytical capabilities for a successful career in larval biology research and aquaculture.

Course Contents & Topics
This experiential learning course is to enhance students’ knowledge in applied larval biology techniques and advanced coastal aquaculture production systems that will enable them to design, construct, operate and maintain oyster aquaculture facilities for food production and restoration of wild population. This is an interdisciplinary endeavor encompassing larval hatchery technology and aquaculture. After reading about basic oyster biology and coastal aquaculture, we will focus on hatchery technology and aquaculture. Environmental issues, legislation pertaining to coastal aquaculture will also be covered using oyster farming in Hong Kong as an example. Students will learn why oyster habitat is declining in HK and would also explore scientific and management ways to restore oyster habitat. Students will be exposed to few aquaculture facilities in Hong Kong & will be taken to Penang (Malaysia) to learn practical skills of oyster farming. This course is designed to meet the needs of an expanding sustainable aquaculture in Hong Kong. Students will be exposed to a unique learning environment involving not only HKU but also teachers from Universiti Sains Malaysia (USM), bringing with them diverse range of expertise, culture, and learning opportunities. Career and small scale business opportunities in aquaculture industry will be discussed. Thus, students will be provided adequate knowledge & analytical capabilities for a successful career in larval biology research and aquaculture.

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Fail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 examine the influence of environmental variables on larval development and recruitment, and consider the potential effects of these variables on hatchery and farming
- CLO 2 acquire skills and experiential learning opportunities (e.g. hands-on experiences at laboratories and farms) in oyster hatchery and farming
- CLO 3 explain the importance of oyster farming in coastal habitat restoration
- CLO 4 plan and execute a commercially important research project in larval biology and aquaculture

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL2103 or BIOL2306 or BIOL3301 or BIOL3303

Academic Year 2017

Offering in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Evaluation
Examination May

Examination 80
Reading / Self study 100
Laboratory 5-hour laboratory session per week for 5 weeks 25
Lectures 24
Tutorials 24
Reading / Self study 6

Required/recommended reading and examination materials

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
BIOL3508 Microbial physiology and biotechnology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences Quota 60
Course Co-ordinator Dr A Yan, Biological Sciences (ayan8@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr A Yan, Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives
Microbes are amazing and important entities on earth. Knowledge of microbes is widely applied in food, pharmacy, biotechnologies, diseases control, and biogeochemical processes. Microbial Physiology and Biotechnology provides both the molecular basis of understanding of these important processes and up-to-date applications in modern Biotechnology, and to serve as essential foundations for sub-disciplines of Microbiology, such as environmental, food, and medicinal Microbiology. Upon completion, students will acquire fundamental knowledge about microorganisms, gain laboratory skills on methodologies for microbial studies, and be able to apply the knowledge in Microbial Biotechnologies.

Course Contents & Topics
Serving as a course which blends fundamental knowledge about the world of microorganisms with applied Microbial Biotechnology, This course is organized and presented in three themes: 'Microbial Rules', 'Microbial Breath', and 'Microbial Biotechnology'. Under these three themes, a broad range of highly educational and interesting topics are presented including: 'Microorganisms and their position in the living world', 'Fundamental methodologies for the study of microbes', 'Microbial structures and functions', 'Microbial growth and control', 'Energy Generation', 'Central metabolism', and 'Microbial biotechnological applications in biodegradation, biofuels and synthetic biology'. Topics are taught in a coherent manner with a highly interactive tutorial session following each of the topics such that students will achieve a high quality, stimulating, and problem-based learning experiences.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 appreciate the diversity of microbial metabolisms and applications in biotechnology
CLO 2 comprehend the principles underlying the dynamic nature of microbial physiology
CLO 3 gain laboratory skills on methodologies for microbial studies
CLO 4 relate knowledge to practical application of microbes in industry and medicine

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL103 or BIOL220 or BIOC260 or BIOC3604;
Not for students who have passed in BIOL3108; and
Not for students who have passed in BIOL402.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational skills.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of
### Course Objectives

Every year a number of different potential courses may be offered. The precise contents will be tailored to best suit the topic and locality involved and will therefore vary according to the specific course being held. The basic contents will involve lectures, seminars and extensive field and follow-up laboratory work. It is essential that students contact the course coordinator for further information on the courses available.

### Course Contents & Topics

Every year a number of different potential courses may be offered. The precise contents will be tailored to best suit the topic and locality involved and will therefore vary according to the specific course being held. The basic contents will involve lectures, seminars and extensive field and follow-up laboratory work. It is essential that students contact the course coordinator for further information on the courses available.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the biodiversity and primary habitats in the ecosystem studied.
- CLO 2 establish the basic skills needed to identify target species associated with the field course.
- CLO 3 be knowledgeable about and able to implement sampling techniques for organisms in the particular ecosystems studied.
- CLO 4 understand the basic ecology of target species and how biotic and abiotic factors shape focal communities.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Ecology & Biodiversity Major.

This capstone course is for Ecology & Biodiversity Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.
### BIOL3991

**Directed studies in ecology & biodiversity (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Biological Sciences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>G A Williams, Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:hrsbwa@hku.hk">hrsbwa@hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(All academic staff in Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major, Biological Sciences)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Objectives**

Students will undertake a dissertation on a topic related to the field of ecology and biodiversity. The dissertation will not involve any practical research in terms of laboratory or fieldwork, but will take the form of a desk-top study. Conducting a dissertation is an independent learning experience and will enable students to develop skills including the use of library and Web-based resources; the logical development of scientific arguments; written presentation skills; and personal time management.

**Course Contents & Topics**

An appropriate dissertation topic will be selected from a predetermined list and following discussion with a member of Ecology & Biodiversity staff, who will act as the student's supervisor. Formal teaching will be limited and aimed at introducing students to the techniques necessary for successful completion of their dissertation.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** identify a relevant scientific question or knowledge gap
- **CLO 2** establish a desk-top literature approach to test the question posed/address the knowledge gap
- **CLO 3** undertake the appropriate research to test the question/address the knowledge gap using sound scientific principles; including statistical analyses where appropriate
- **CLO 4** draw appropriate scientific conclusions from their research
- **CLO 5** present their research as a scientific paper

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Ecology & Biodiversity Major. This capstone course is for Ecology & Biodiversity Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

**Enrollment Procedure**

Students can choose either one of the following courses:

- **Subclass A: Marine Mammal Field Course**
- **Subclass B: Animal Behaviour Field Course**

**Additional Course Information**

Regular meetings between the supervisor and student. Guidance from the supervisor on the scientific methods, and on how to think and write scientifically. Students should spend at least 120 hours on the dissertation or project. Recommended reading may be assigned.

**Course Website**

http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

**Course Objectives**

This course aims to provide a stimulating capstone experience for all Food & Nutritional Science Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Major.
Course Contents & Topics

The directed study can be a review of literature on a specific topic, or a lab or field study that enhances the student's understanding of the topic in the field of molecular biology & biotechnology. The student should obtain the commitment of a supervisor in the area of the dissertation topic before submitting the registration form for the course (available from the General Office of School of Biological Sciences). Supervisor will introduce various methodologies/techniques and guide and training for completion of the dissertation. Teaching will be informal and students will gain knowledge through discussion and feedback from their supervisors.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOLXXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Food & Nutritional Science Major.
- This capstone course is for Food & Nutritional Science Major students only.
- The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>at least 120 hours on the dissertation or project</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Learning Outcomes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLO 1</th>
<th>CLO 2</th>
<th>CLO 3</th>
<th>CLO 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>acquaint with the process of scientific enquiry</td>
<td>have a better understanding of the nature of molecular biology &amp; biotechnology</td>
<td>apply scientific methods to address important issues in various biological disciplines</td>
<td>develop the key intellectual skills that will be valuable for all scientific studies</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOLXXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major.

This capstone course is for Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information

Regular meetings between the supervisor and student. Guidance from the supervisor on the scientific methods, and on how to think and write scientifically. Students should spend at least 120 hours on the dissertation or project. Recommended reading may be assigned.

BIOL3993

Directed studies in Molecular biology & biotechnology (6 credits)

Offering Department

Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator

Dr W K Yip, Biological Sciences (wkyp@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

(All academic staff in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives

This course aims to provide a stimulating capstone experience for all Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major undergraduates. Students will integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the major.

Course Contents & Topics

The directed study can be a review of literature on a specific topic, or a lab or field study that enhances the student's understanding of the topic in the field of molecular biology & biotechnology. The student should obtain the commitment of a supervisor in the area of the dissertation topic before submitting the registration form for the course (available from the General Office of School of Biological Sciences). Supervisor will introduce various methodologies/techniques and guide students to completion of the dissertation. Teaching will be informal and students will gain knowledge through discussion and feedback from their supervisors.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: acquaint with the process of scientific enquiry
- CLO 2: have a better understanding of the nature of molecular biology & biotechnology
- CLO 3: apply scientific methods to address important issues in various biological disciplines
- CLO 4: develop the key intellectual skills that will be valuable for all scientific studies

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major.

This capstone course is for Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
School of Biological Sciences

Grade Descriptors (A to F)

A  Work displaying a high level of scholarship and originality; virtually flawless presentation with excellent introduction to dissertation topic, showing a thorough grasp of the topic from background reading and analysis; clear statement of the objectives of the research; comprehensive exploration of the topic, personal synthesis of the issues with detailed support from the literature; comprehensive and up-to-date references integrated into argument or logical reasoning; critical evaluation of main points and problems and their solutions and implications; thought-provoking discussions; accurate summary. All chapters/paragraphs are well-connected and presented logically with clarity of goals, demonstrating excellent organizational, rhetorical and presentational skills. The length of the dissertation meet the specified requirements. All other aspects of the dissertation conform to a high academic standard.

B  Work showing some evidence of originality and insight in identifying, generating and communicating competing arguments, perspectives or problem solving approaches; demonstrating substantial understanding of fundamental concepts of the field of study; adequate grasp of the topic from background reading and analysis; a systematic exploration of the topic which may include an attempt at critical comment or appraisal; regular support provided from the literature; comprehensive and up-to-date references included; main points fully elaborated; summary given in the final chapter/paragraphs; communicating information and ideas clearly and fluently, demonstrating good organizational, rhetorical and presentational skills. The length of the dissertation meet the specified requirements. Most aspects conform to a high academic standard.

C  Work showing some evidence of originality and insight, but the presentation demonstrated adequate understanding and comprehension of most aspects of the dissertation topic; essential topic material can be followed and understood (HR or SR); the main points presented in logically sequential paragraphs; reasonably balanced discussion of the major issues; acceptable interpretation of the topic, some explanation, illustration and support provided from the literature; summary given in the final chapter/paragraphs; most presentation details met (front page, margins, legibility, citations correctly reported and tabulated, etc.); few typographical errors; Most aspects conform to an acceptable academic standard.

D  Demonstrating superficial or partial or faulty understanding of the fundamental concepts of the field of study; showing the bare minimum of information, poorly digested and not very well organized in presentation; irrelevant material; showing no evidence of critical thinking; arguments undeveloped or inappropriate or unsupported; lack of clarity or structure in communicating information or ideas; dissertation topic not fully covered; discussion too brief or just repeating the data or findings; overuse quotations with little explanation; insufficient support from literature; reading not well incorporated into the text; limited acknowledgements and little bibliography; some major points missed. Minimum conform to an acceptable academic standard.

F  The dissertation topic was not covered adequately; demonstrating evidence of poor knowledge, clear deficiencies in understanding fundamental concepts; materials largely irrelevant; incomplete or confusing communication of information or ideas; unrefined; incoherent argument; complete misinterpretation of the topic or data; no evidence of reading (no acknowledgements or bibliography); structure confused or not discernible; Fail to meet most or all of the basic requirements of the course. The written work is not of an academic standard.

Course Type

Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities

Reading / Self study

Details

at least 120 hours on the dissertation or project

No. of Hours

120

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods

Oral presentation

15 minutes (Plus 5 minutes for questions and answers).

Weighting in final course grade (%)

20

CLO 1,2,3,4

Research report

Written report 6000-8000 words (excluding figures and references).

80

CLO 1,2,3,4

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information

Regular meetings between the supervisor and student. Guidance from the supervisor on the scientific methods, and on how to think and write scientifically. Students should spend at least 120 hours on the dissertation or project. Recommended reading may be assigned.

Offering Department

Biological Sciences

Quota

---

Academic Year

2017

Offering Year

Y

Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

O

Examination

No Exam

Teachers Involved

Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences (hrzlwjm@hku.hk)

Course Objectives

This course aims to provide a stimulating capstone experience for all Biological Sciences Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Major.

Course Contents & Topics

The directed study can be a review of a literature on a specific topic, or a lab or field study that enhances the student's understanding of the topic in the field of biological sciences. The student should obtain the commitment of a supervisor in the area of the dissertation topic before submitting the registration form for the course. This course is mandatory for students in the Biological Sciences Major.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1  Acquaint with the process of science

CLO 2  Have a better understanding of the nature of biological sciences

CLO 3  Apply scientific methods to address important issues in various biological disciplines

CLO 4  Develop the key intellectual skills that will be valuable for all scientific studies

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Biological Sciences Major.

This capstone course is for Biological Sciences Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Grade Descriptors (A to F)

A  Work displaying a high level of scholarship and originality; virtually flawless presentation with excellent introduction to dissertation topic, showing a thorough grasp of the topic from background reading and analysis; clear statement of the objectives of the research; comprehensive exploration of the topic, personal synthesis of the issues with detailed support from the literature; comprehensive and up-to-date references integrated into argument or logical reasoning; critical evaluations of main points and problems and their solutions and implications; thought-provoking discussions; accurate summary. All chapters/paragraphs are well-connected and presented logically with clarity of goals, demonstrating excellent organizational, rhetorical and presentational skills. The length of the dissertation meet the specified requirements. All other aspects of the dissertation conform to a high academic standard.

B  Work showing some evidence of originality and insight in identifying, generating and communicating competing arguments, perspectives or problem solving approaches; demonstrating substantial understanding of fundamental concepts of the field of study; adequate grasp of the topic from background reading and analysis; a systematic exploration of the topic which may include an attempt at critical comment or appraisal; regular support provided from the literature; comprehensive and up-to-date references included; main points fully elaborated; summary given in the final chapter/paragraphs; communicating information and ideas clearly and fluently, demonstrating good organizational, rhetorical and presentational skills. The length of the dissertation meet the specified requirements. Most aspects conform to a high academic standard.

C  Work showing some evidence of originality and insight, but the presentation demonstrated adequate understanding and comprehension of most aspects of the dissertation topic; essential topic material can be followed and understood (HR or SR); the main points presented in logically sequential paragraphs; reasonably balanced discussion of the major issues; acceptable interpretation of the topic, some explanation, illustration and support provided from the literature; summary given in the final chapter/paragraphs; most presentation details met (front page, margins, legibility, citations correctly reported and tabulated, etc.); few typographical errors; Most aspects conform to an acceptable academic standard.

452
Course Objectives

- Public health nutrition unites social sciences and biomedical sciences in preventing disease and improving human health through programs aimed at enhancing good nutritional practices. This course presents a broad overview of the professional practice and essential skills required of a public health nutritionist.

Course Learning Outcomes

- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1 have a broad knowledge of the scope and methodologies of public health nutrition
  - CLO 2 have a clear technical understanding of a range of selected examples of public health nutrition cases in less-developed and developed countries
  - CLO 3 be able to formulate recommendations for action for nutritional interventions at the community level
  - CLO 4 understand the impact of socio-cultural factors on community food choices and consequently on health outcomes

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in BIOL3201 or BIOL3202

Grade Descriptors (A to F)

- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective laboratory/fielwork skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Substantial grasp of the subject. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective laboratory/fielwork skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. General but incomplete grasp of the subject. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective laboratory/fielwork skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Partial but limited grasp of the subject, retention of some relevant information of the subject. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab / fielwork skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective laboratory / fielwork skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type

- Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

- Activities
  - Details
  - No. of Hours
  - Lectures
  - 30 hours student investigative report, & 12 hours of tutorials/presentations
  - 42
  - Tutorials
  - Reading / Self study
  - 100

Assessment Methods and Weighing

- Methods
  - Details
  - Weighting in final course grade (%)
  - Assignment
  - 30

Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

- CLO 1,2,3,4
BIOL4202 Nutrition and sports performance (6 credits)

### Course Description

**Offering Department:** Biological Sciences  
**Quota:** 30  
**Academic Year:** 2017  
**Offering Department:** Biological Sciences  
**Teachers Involved:** Dr T Sobko, School of Biological Sciences  
**Course Objectives:** To demonstrate evidence-based links between nutrition, exercise and sport performance. More specifically, to gain in-depth understanding about how the metabolic demands of exercise influence physiological and cognitive functions and exercise performance. To focus on the role of major macronutrients, minerals, vitamins, antioxidants, supplements and hydration in sustaining and enhancing sports performance during short-duration, intermittent and endurance exercise.

**Course Contents & Topics:** Nutrition aims and requirements differ during habitual exercise and competitive sports: from endogenous adaptations to developing metabolic efficiency to competition nutrition. Professional athletes enhance their performance through appropriate nutritional recommendations, following the recommendations of the International Olympic Committee: "The amount, composition and timing of food intake can profoundly affect sports performance" (Maughan et al, 2004). The course will firstly examine the physiological needs pre-, during and post-competition and/or habitual exercise to perform at its best. Secondly, it will investigate how and why nutrient and energy intakes vary between different athlete groups, the difference between energy metabolism and requirements during aerobic and anaerobic exercise. Putting exercise and sports performance in focus, the topics will include: energy balance; macronutrients; selected micronutrients; fluid balance and hydration strategies; weight loss and weight gain in athletes, sport foods and supplements; position stands and new perspectives on sports nutrition, nutrient/energy requirements in exercise and sports, ergogenic aids and myths of sport nutrition.

**Course Learning Outcomes:** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 critically examine and describe the need of energy, nutrients and fluid before, during and after the physical exercise in relation to different sports, individual athletes and performance situations
- CLO 2 describe the impact of dietary macronutrients, vitamins and minerals on physical performance
- CLO 3 provide an overview of the position stands on major misconceptions in sports nutrition. Being able to evaluate, explain and communicate current, evidence based epidemiological knowledge behind these position stands
- CLO 4 access and analyze the importance of meal frequency, energy source and supplements on the performance in different sports.
- CLO 5 demonstrate convincing argument for importance of balanced nutrition for sports performance and good health.

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):** Pass in BIOL3202

**Offer in 2017 - 2018:** Y  
**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):**

- **A** Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- **B** Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherence and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherence and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use quality management skills and techniques and analysis of data and results incorrectly, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentational skills.

**Course Type:** Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>with practicals</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Final group presentation (30%), Critical reviews of other student's final project presentations (10%)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials:** Most of the reading material will be provided on Moodle or given during lectures; however, do make use of the book and journal resources in HKU's libraries including:
critically evaluate and interpret the internal and external cues that determine dietary behaviour.

Diet, brain function and behavior (6 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Quota: 30

Course Objectives:
To highlight the impact of nutrient provision on brain structure and function, and to discuss various effects of nutrition and diet on mental function and behaviour.

Course Contents & Topics:
Fundamentals of the central nervous system; Nutrition & brain development; Diet, learning & memory function; Dietary CNS stimulants; Neurotransmitters, drugs & behaviour; Physiological and socio-cultural determinants of dietary behaviour.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: understand the basic structure and functions of the brain and how nutrition influences its development
- CLO 2: be able to explain the consequences of malnutrition on cognition
- CLO 3: Appreciate appetite control as a function of food-gut-brain interaction
- CLO 4: understand the differences between bioactive food ingredients and drugs
- CLO 5: critically evaluate and interpret the internal and external cues that determine dietary behaviour

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in BIOL4204, or already enrolled in this course

Offer in 2017 - 2018: N

Grade Descriptors (A to F):

- A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show exceptional ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Show outstanding ability to critically analyze and interpret scientific data and draw appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate highly effective presentation / writing skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show full ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Show reasonable ability to critically analyze and interpret scientific data and draw appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate effective presentation / writing skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Might show misunderstanding of the materials. Show some ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Show some ability to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw proper conclusions. Demonstrate adequate organization / writing skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp of the subject matter covered. Misunderstanding of the materials is not uncommon. Show limited ability on knowledge integration, problem identification and solving. Use elementary approaches to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw sometimes erroneous conclusions. Demonstrate basic organization / writing skills.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in problem solving. Fail to integrate information and identify problems. Seriously deficient in ability to analyze and interpret scientific data and draw conclusions. Demonstrate poor organization / writing skills.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 2.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
Nutritional Neurosciences (Journal)
Physiology and Behavior (Journal)
Appetite (Journal)
Journal of Nutritional Biochemistry (Journal)

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information:
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

Food processing and engineering (6 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Quota: 15

Course Objectives:
To provide students with basic principles and methodologies of food processing and preservation technology. To cover key engineering principles relevant to the food industry. Students will gain hands-on experience with selected food processing and preservation techniques.

Course Contents & Topics:
Food processing is a multidisciplinary field combining applied physical sciences with knowledge of product properties and requirements. This course introduces the technical knowledge required to implement cost-effective production and commercialization of food products and services. The design and development of processes, equipment and machinery used to convert raw agricultural materials and ingredients into safe, convenient, and nutritious consumer food products are covered. We discuss the basic engineering principles and applications of methods in food processing and preservation. Techniques discussed will include those for high and low temperature processing, concentration, dehydrtation, baking and extrusion.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: understand basic principles of food processing methods and preservation technology
- CLO 2: be able to apply their knowledge and practical skills to process and develop food products
**Course Type**
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in BIOL3201

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y  Examination  May

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong evidence of analytical and critical abilities of the changes that take place in variety of food during preparation, processing and storage. Identifies and uses advanced techniques and equipment for a variety of food-specific purposes. Demonstrates advance skills in designing, producing and evaluating solutions of excellent quality for specific food purposes. Critically use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities of the changes that take place in variety of food during preparation, processing and storage. Identifies and uses appropriate techniques and equipment for a variety of food-specific purposes. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show adequate evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking of the changes that take place in variety of food during preparation, processing and storage. Identifies and uses appropriate techniques and equipment for a variety of food-specific purposes. Demonstrates adequate skills in designing, producing and evaluating solutions of sound quality for specific food purposes. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking of the changes that take place in variety of food during preparation, processing and storage. Identifies and uses basic techniques and equipment for a variety of food-specific purposes. Demonstrates basic skills in designing, producing and evaluating solutions for specific food purposes. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions occasionally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fail. Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking of the changes that take place in variety of food during preparation, processing and storage. Identifies and uses limited techniques and equipment for a variety of food-specific purposes. With guidance, demonstrates limited skills in designing, producing and evaluating solutions for specific food purposes. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Objectives**
To give students a broad understanding of modern practice and technologies used in meat and dairy production, processing and marketing.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Principles of animal nutrition and feed formulation; genetic selection and breeding of farm animals; slaughter and carcass inspection; meat preservation and safety; sensory quality of meat. Dairy processing emphasizing fermented products such as cheese and yogurt; probiotics and health effects. Meat and dairy product marketing.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand modern practices in meat and dairy production
- CLO 2 demonstrate a knowledge and understanding of meat and dairy sensory quality, and the technologies used in processing, preservation or improvement of meat and dairy products
- CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge of selected issues related to meat and dairy safety

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
Food Processing Technology-Principles & Practice 3rd Ed P.J. Fellows
Unit Operations in Food Processing - 2nd ed. R.L. Earle

**Course Website**
http://moodle.hku.hk/

**Additional Course Information**
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

**BIOL4207**
Meat and dairy sciences (6 credits)

**Offering Department**
Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**
Prof N P Shah, Biological Sciences (npshah@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**

**Course Objectives**
To give students a broad understanding of modern practice and technologies used in meat and dairy production, processing and marketing.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Principles of animal nutrition and feed formulation; genetic selection and breeding of farm animals; slaughter and carcass inspection; meat preservation and safety; sensory quality of meat. Dairy processing emphasizing fermented products such as cheese and yogurt; probiotics and health effects. Meat and dairy product marketing.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand modern practices in meat and dairy production
- CLO 2 demonstrate a knowledge and understanding of meat and dairy sensory quality, and the technologies used in processing, preservation or improvement of meat and dairy products
- CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge of selected issues related to meat and dairy safety

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in BIOL3201

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
N  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N  Examination  --

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities of the changes that take place in variety of food during preparation, processing and storage. Identifies and uses advanced techniques and equipment for a variety of food-specific purposes. Critically use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking of the changes that take place in variety of food during professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking of the changes that take place in variety of food during professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fail. Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally inappropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

456
### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

### Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

---

### BIOL4208
Meat, dairy and grain sciences (6 credits)  | Academic Year | 2017

**Offering Department**  
Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Prof N P Shah, Biological Sciences (npshah@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**  
(Dr J C Y Lee,School of Biological Science)  
(Prof N P Shah,School of Biological Science)

**Course Objectives**  
To give students a broad understanding of modern practice and technologies used in agriculture products including meat, dairy and grain production, processing and marketing.

**Course Contents & Topics**  
Principles of animal nutrition and feed formulation; genetic selection and breeding of farm animals; slaughter and carcass inspection; meat preservation and safety; sensory quality of meat. Dairy processing emphasizing fermented products such as cheese and yogurt; probiotics and health effects. Grain production related to milling; dough rheology; the baking process and quality. Meat, dairy and grain product marketing.

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand modern practices in meat, dairy and grain production
- CLO 2 demonstrate a knowledge and understanding of meat and dairy sensory quality, and the technologies used in meat processing, preservation or improvement of meat and dairy products
- CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge of selected issues related to meat and dairy safety
- CLO 4 understand the technology behind the production of grain-based foods

**Pre-requisites and Co-requisites**  
Pass in BIOL3201 or (BIOL2101 and any level 3 BIOL course); and (Prof N P Shah, Biological Sciences)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**  
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- A  
  Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentional skills.

- B  
  Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentional skills.

- C  
  Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentional skills.

- D  
  Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentional skills of limited effectiveness.

- Fail  
  Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffectiveness team-based organizational and presentional skills.

---

### BIOL4209
Functional foods (6 credits)  | Academic Year | 2017

**Offering Department**  
Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Dr M F Wang, Biological Sciences (mfwang@hku.hk)
Course Objectives
To provide a fundamental understanding of the rapidly emerging functional food/nutraceutical industry with an emphasis on the history, regulation, chemical basis and quality control of healthy ingredients/products and their effects on human health.

Course Contents & Topics
Concept, history and global regulation of functional foods and nutraceuticals; classification of functional foods and nutraceuticals based on their chemical structures; unsaturated fatty acids, proteins, food pigments and dietary fibers as healthy food ingredients; health benefits of dietary phenolics, terpenes, phytosterols and sulphur-containing compounds; probiotics and prebiotics; small berries, spices, teas and herbs for health; quality control and assurance of functional foods and nutraceuticals.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the definition and global regulation of functional foods and nutraceuticals
CLO 2 have substantial chemical knowledge of functional food and nutraceutical products
CLO 3 be able to describe examples of functional foods and interpret critically their claimed health benefits
CLO 4 demonstrate understanding of the current functional food and nutraceutical industry
CLO 5 understand major techniques and technologies for quality control and manufacturing of healthy products

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL3201 or BIOL3202

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination Dec

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use knowledge to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use knowledge to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use knowledge to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use knowledge to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.
Fail Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use knowledge ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate ineffective team-based organizational and presentational skills.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting
- Activities: Lectures 36, Tutorials 12, Reading / Self study 100
- Weighting: Assignments 30%, Examination 70%
- Mapping: CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL4210 Food product development (6 credits)

Offering Department Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator Dr M F Wang, Biological Sciences (mfwang@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr M F Wang, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives
To introduce the key concepts and techniques used in food product development. To provide small group experience in the design, development and production of a new food product.

Course Contents & Topics
History and future of the food industry; industrial product development process; idea generation and prototype development for new food products; quality management and legal protection; marketing strategies; food labeling; food package design; new product development for different food industries.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the food product development cycle
CLO 2 know the key steps in new product development
CLO 3 demonstrate enhanced insight and understanding of current and future trends in the food industry
CLO 4 have professional level practical experience in new product development
CLO 5 know the main characteristics of different sectors of the food industry

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL3203 or BIOL4205

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N Examination ---

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
### BIOL4301

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Laboratory and workshop course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Biological Sciences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof Y J Sadovy, Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:yjsadovy@hku.hk">yjsadovy@hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Prof Y J Sadovy, Biological Sciences)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Course Objectives | - To acquaint students with the principles governing interrelationships among fishes as well as with biotic and abiotic aspects of their environment for an understanding of population dynamics and multispecies interactions.  
- To provide an understanding of how species diversity and selected aspects of their life history are relevant to fishery management challenges, sustainable supply of seafood, and the conservation of threatened species.  
- To cover the theoretical and practical aspects of marine fisheries management, fish farming and fish conservation using local, regional and global examples. |
| Course Contents & Topics | Introduction to course: phylogenetic, biological and ecological concepts and adaptation. Multispecies interactions in marine and freshwater fish assemblages. Fishery theory; how do fisheries work? Status of the world's capture fisheries; fish stock assessment and fishery management practices using local, regional and global examples. The roles of mariculture and capture fisheries for seafood supply and relationship to capture fisheries. Fishery management and fish conservation. Conclusion: fish biodiversity and fishery production; ethics of fish research and exploitation; climate change and the future of fish and fisheries. |
| Course Learning Outcomes | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
CLO 1 understand the basis of fish species diversity in relation to phylogenetic, ecological and biological factors  
CLO 2 appreciate the direct and indirect impacts and consequences of human activities on fish species and species assemblages and implications for seafood security  
CLO 3 understand the functioning of fisheries and standards of fisheries assessment, development and management  
CLO 4 appreciate the mutual dependency of humans with fished populations in relation to their long-term sustainability  
CLO 5 enhance the ability for critical and synthetic thinking |
| Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) | Pass in BIOL3301 or BIOL3303 |
| Offer in 2017 - 2018 | Y 2nd sem |
| Grade Descriptors (A to F) |  |
| A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, ability to integrate and synthesize information, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective presential skills. Strong evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking. |
| B | Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, integration of materials and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate effective presential skills. Evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking. |
| C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective presential skills. Little evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking. |
| D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities and little attempt at integration. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited effectiveness in presential skills. Lack of attention to thought and reflective thinking. |
| Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presential skills are minimally effective or ineffective. |
| Course Type | Lecture-based course |
| Course Teaching & Learning Activities | Activities Details No. of Hours |
| Lectures | |

**Additional Course Information**

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
BIOL4302 Environmental impact assessment (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences Quota 30
Teachers Involved (Dr B D Russell, Biological Sciences (brussell@hku.hk)
(Dr C H Hau, Biological Sciences)
(Prof K M Y Leung, Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives To introduce the general principles, processes, techniques, current practices and problems of environmental impact assessment (EIA).
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the operation of EIA systems in Hong Kong and overseas
CLO 2 apply a variety of techniques in assessing environmental impact
CLO 3 evaluate different options and determine acceptability in environmental impact assessment
CLO 4 prepare EIA reports for small scale projects
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in (BIOL2103 or BIOL2306); and (ENVS3004 or any BIOL3XXX course)
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, ability to integrate and synthesize information, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective presentational skills. Strong evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, integration of material and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate effective presentational skills. Evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective presentational skills. Little evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities and little attempt at integration. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited effectiveness in presentational skills. Lack of attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Course Type Lecture with laboratory component course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Details No. of Hours Lectures 24 Field work: field trip / tutorials 24 Reading / Self study: student center learning 70
Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping Assignments 30 CLO 1,2,3,4,5 Examination 60 CLO 1,2,3,4,5 Test 10 CLO 3
References: To be provided in classes
Course Website http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/
Additional Course Information The course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
This course teaches students the ways and means of exploring and understanding animal behaviour; it provides insights into a field of science that investigates everything animals do, including the underlying mechanisms and functions of specific behaviours; the ways in which animals interact with each other, with their physical environment and other organisms; how animals find and defend resources, avoid predators, choose mates, reproduce, and care for their young; how complex animal societies are formed and how behaviour of an individual affects the structure of a population.

This course will introduce students to scientific reasoning and conceptual basis of an understanding of animal behaviour and behavioural ecology. What causes specific behaviour and what are the underlying mechanisms? How does behaviour develop within the individual's lifetime and what functions does it serve? For example; why are some species monogamous while others are polygamous? What makes one organism the hunter and another the hunted? Several animal species, including humans, tend to live in groups; social life is among the most complex and effective survival strategy. However, how could, for instance, the birth of sterile castes, like in bees, be explained through an evolving mechanism which emphasizes the reproductive success of as many individuals as possible? Why, among animals living in small groups like squirrels, would an individual risk its own life to save the rest of the group? In this course, based upon ecological and evolutionary principles, students will learn to think within the paradigm of behavioural ecology and understand the causes, functions, development, and evolution of behaviour. We will discuss several classical studies that form the foundation of this field, as well as more recent research that represents the current concepts which have led to modern understanding of animal behaviour. We will also illustrate the links between the recent extraordinary advances in behavioural ecology and socio-ecology with their application in animal conservation.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 learn to appreciate the causes, functions, development, and evolution of animal behaviour
CLO 2 appreciate the complexity of interactions between environmental selective pressures and animal behaviour
CLO 3 appreciate current theories that form basis for modern understanding of animal behaviour
CLO 4 learn the scientific reasoning and methodology in the field of Animal Behaviour
CLO 5 think analytically in terms of behavioural ecology, animal socio-behavioural complexity, and how the understanding of species' behaviour contributes to its conservation

Pass in BIOL3206; and
Pass in one of the following courses: BIOL3301, BIOL3313, BIOL3319, BIOL3320 or BIOL3419
Not for students who have passed in BIOL3101

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>including field trips, site visits, interactive practical/visual sessions, classroom debates</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td>project work review</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>active participation/continuous assessment/presentation</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website
http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc

Additional Course Information
This course is offered in alternate year.
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL4304 Ecosystem functioning and services (6 credits)

Offering Department
Biological Sciences

Co-ordinator
Dr B D Russell, Biological Sciences (brussell@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
Dr B D Russell, Biological Sciences

Course Objectives
This course will introduce the functioning of terrestrial, fresh water and marine ecosystems and the services they provide humans populations. The concept of ecosystem services will be further expanded into "value", including financial, cultural, social and, importantly, the intrinsic value that may be priceless. We will also explore
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Contents &amp; Topics</th>
<th>Course Learning Outcomes</th>
<th>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Required/recommended reading and online materials</th>
<th>Course Website</th>
<th>Additional Course Information</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>how human activities degrade these ecosystem services and how protecting ecosystems and biodiversity can increase the ecosystem services supplied to humans.</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td>Pass in one of the following courses: BIOL3301 or BIOL3303 or BIOL3313 or BIOL3319 or ENVS3019 or ENVS3004 or ENVS3020</td>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Lecture-based course</td>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
<td>Students will be directed to relevant scientific literature and websites</td>
<td><a href="http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lisc/">http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lisc/</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural ecosystems provide trillions of dollars’ worth of ecosystem services to humans every year. Many of these services go unrecognized and undervalued. In fact, because humans rely on ecosystems many of these services may be priceless. This course will first cover the function of different ecosystems from terrestrial, fresh water and marine environments. Students will then be introduced to the concept of ecosystem services and what they provide to human populations. Finally, human activities which degrade ecosystems and reduce the extent that ecosystems can provide these services, and what that means for human populations, will be covered.</td>
<td>CLO 1 Demonstrate an understanding of the complexity and function of ecosystems</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 2 Explain how ecosystems provide services which humans use</td>
<td>CLO 3 Demonstrate knowledge on methods used to calculate the value of ecosystem services</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 4 Demonstrate knowledge on the limits to the methods used to calculate the value of ecosystems and the dangers of placing a value on nature</td>
<td>CLO 5 Demonstrate an understanding of how human activities reduce the function of ecosystems and reduces ecosystem services</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 Explain how ecosystems provide services which humans use</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 Demonstrate knowledge on methods used to calculate the value of ecosystem services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 4 Demonstrate knowledge on the limits to the methods used to calculate the value of ecosystems and the dangers of placing a value on nature</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 5 Demonstrate an understanding of how human activities reduce the function of ecosystems and reduces ecosystem services</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presentation 20 CLO 1,2,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Evidence of a good grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Interest in learning and good-to-moderate familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Good handling of field data collection and commendable analytical skills. Good evidence of critical thought (although not always independent), with an appreciable use of fundamental concepts and consideration of broader comparative perspective in drawing logical conclusions. Good abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with excellent analytical argumentation. Excellent or outstanding work relative to what is required at degree level.</td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>No evidence of basic knowledge and the minimum relevant research techniques. No evidence of background reading and limited abilities of critical independent thinking. Ineffective presentation skills with generally weak logical argumentation with restricted ability of drawing appropriate conclusions. Work barely meets what is required at degree level.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Evidence of a thorough grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Eagerness and enthusiasm to learn and excellent familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Exemplary handling of field data collection and excellent analytical skills. Ample evidence of independent critical thought with excellent use of a broad range of fundamental concepts and broader comparative perspective to draw insightful and logical conclusions. Show outstanding abilities of independent work, effective presentation skills with excellent analytical argumentation. Excellent or outstanding work relative to what is required at degree level.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some grasp of the subject, but only partial and with limited understanding of relevant research concepts and research techniques. Some familiarity with relevant case studies, but insufficient evidence of background reading and limited abilities of critical independent thinking. Ineffective presentation skills with generally weak logical argumentation with restricted ability of drawing appropriate conclusions. Work barely meets what is required at degree level.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### BIOL4401: Medical microbiology and applied immunology (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** Biological Sciences  
**Academic Year:** 2017  
**Quota:** 40  

**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr W Y Lui, Biological Sciences (wylui@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:**  
Dr A Yan, Biological Sciences  
Dr W Y Lui, Biological Sciences  
Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences  

**Course Objectives:**  
The objective is to provide students the knowledge on the practical applications of immunology and microbiology in biological research, clinical analysis and disease diagnosis.  

**Course Contents & Topics:**  
- Application of antigen-antibody interaction in advanced research: CHIP assay, co-immunoprecipitation, immunohistochemistry and dual Immunofluorescence  
- Principles and application of flow cytometry  
- Techniques in cellular immunology and tumor immunology  
- Clinical laboratory analyses in serology, haematology, blood banking, microbiology and chemical pathology  

**Course Learning Outcomes:**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 apply the principles of antigen-antibody interaction in various advanced research techniques  
- CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge on microbial pathogens, mechanisms for their disease-causing, and principles of
### BIOL4402

**Course Type**: Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**: Biological Sciences

**Course Objectives**
- This course is intended for students who would like to understand the application of modern microbiology in biotechnology. The microbial systems being used include different types of viruses, bacteria, fungi and algae. At the end of the course the students are expected to know the parameters and conditions that affect the yield of production and the systems available for the expression of various types of biotechnology products.

**Course Contents & Topics**
- Upstream and downstream processing will be briefly described to equip the students with the background for microbial biotechnology. The latest advances in microbial expression systems using viruses, bacteria, yeasts and algae will be reviewed. Specific examples on the use of these systems will be provided. These include but not limited to production of recombinant vaccines, secondary metabolites, food and food additives, industrial enzymes and biopesticides as well as bioremediation and medical diagnostics.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1 explain the fundamental biochemical concepts underlying the industrial production of selected microbial biotechnology products.
  - CLO 2 understand the importance of the current recombinant technology for large-scale manufacturing of various protein products.
  - CLO 3 describe the major expression systems, understand their purposes, advantages, and disadvantages.
  - CLO 4 deliver a professional group presentation on a self-decided topic related to microbial biotechnology.

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
- Pass in BIOL3401

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in BIOL3401 or BIOL3403</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
- To be announced in class

**Course Website**
- http://moodle.hku.hk/

**Additional Course Information**
- This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**
- Lecture with laboratory component course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLO 1</th>
<th>CLO 2</th>
<th>CLO 3</th>
<th>CLO 4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Explain fundamental biochemical concepts underlying the industrial production of selected microbial biotechnology products.</td>
<td>Understand the importance of the current recombinant technology for large-scale manufacturing of various protein products.</td>
<td>Describe the major expression systems, understand their purposes, advantages, and disadvantages.</td>
<td>Deliver a professional group presentation on a self-decided topic related to microbial biotechnology.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**BIOL4402 Microbial biotechnology (6 credits)**

**Academic Year**: 2017

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Biological Sciences</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Offering Department: Biological Sciences  
Offering Curriculum: 2017-2018

**Course Objectives**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

**Course Contents & Topics**

- **Fundamental Virology**
  1. Classification and Nomenclature of Viruses
  2. Virus structure: Capsid symmetry, Icosahedral symmetry
  3. Virus structure: Genetic Materials, Nucleo capsid, Envelope
  4. Virus entry: Receptors, uncoating and fusion
  5. Virus-Cell interaction
  6. RNA viruses: Genome replication and mRNA production
  7. Baltimore Class IV (+) s.s. RNA viruses: Picornaviruses
  8. Baltimore Class V (-) s.s. RNA viruses: Myxoviruses
  9. Ambisense RNA viruses: Bunyaviruses and Arenaviruses
  10. Baltimore Class VI (+) s.s. RNA viruses: Retroviruses
  11. Baltimore Class III d.s. RNA viruses: Reoviruses
  12. Baltimore Class I d.s. DNA viruses: Adenoviruses, Herpesviruses
  13. Baltimore Class II s.s. (+) DNA viruses: Paroviruses
  14. Mechanisms of Viral Oncogenesis
  15. Anti-viral treatments
  16. Viruses as Tools in Medicine and Biotechnology

**Practical Virology**

- Specimen Collection, Transportation and Processing,
- Quality Assurance & Laboratory Safety
- Virus isolation, propagation and titration

**Course Learning Outcomes**

- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1: be familiar with virus classification and the modes of replication and transmission of various viral families
  - CLO 2: gain hand-on experiences on common virological techniques
  - CLO 3: carry out research on virology after taking this course

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

- Pass in BIOL3401 or BIOL3403

| Grade | Descriptors | A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of knowledge required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical skills and competent ability to acquire knowledge on new development of the subject. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. | B | Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical skills and certain ability to acquire knowledge on new development of the subject. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. | C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical skills and certain ability to acquire knowledge on new development of the subject. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. | D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of limited analytical skills and ability to acquire knowledge on new development of the subject. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. | Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical skills and ability to acquire knowledge on new development of the subject. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|

**Course Type & Learning Activities**

- **Lecture-based course**
  - Activities: Details | No. of Hours
  - Lectures | 30
  - Tutorials | 18

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended online materials**


**Course Website**

- http://moodle.hku.hk/
Biological Sciences

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

**Course Website**
http://moodle.hku.hk/

**Additional Course Information**
Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

**BIOL4411**
**Plant and food biotechnology (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**
Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr J S H Tsang, Biological Sciences (jhtsang@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
(Dr J S H Tsang, Biological Sciences)

**Course Objectives**
This course covers the principles and key concepts of plant and food biotechnology and its applications in increasing global food supply. The significance of biotechnology in agriculture and food production, and the emerging importance of plant biotechnology in molecular farming for the production of biopharmaceuticals and other high-value proteins will be discussed. The course will also provide an insight on the real-life applications of plant and food biotechnology.

**Course Contents & Topics**
- Genetic improvements in agriculture.
- Transgenic crops in global food production.
- Tools in plant genetic engineering: promoters and marker genes.
- Techniques in plant gene transfer: Agrobacterium-mediated transformation, biolistic and microinjection.
- Nuclear and plastid transformation.
- Gene silencing in plants. Genetic manipulation of commercially useful biosynthetic pathways in crops.
- Gene silencing in plants. Genetic manipulation of commercially useful biosynthetic pathways in crops.
- Genetically-engineered biofortified foods: provitamin A-enriched rice, omega-3-enriched soy and high-antocyanin tomatoes.
- Biotechnology in plant pest and disease management: Producing crops resistant to phytopathogens and pests.
- Short-interfering RNAs in gene silencing to defend against plant viruses.
- Protecting crops in the field using the Bt toxin.
- Pest-resistant genetically-transformed seeds using the alpha-amylase inhibitor
- Herbicide-resistant crops.
- Plants as bioreactors for molecular farming: transgenic and transplastomic plants for producing recombinant biopharmaceutical proteins.
- Genetically-modified crops and food products: regulation, testing and labelling.
- Status of GM food in North America, Europe and Hong Kong.
- Regulations on the production of plant-derived pharmaceuticals.
- Nuclear and plastid transformation.
- Gene silencing in plants. Genetic manipulation of commercially useful biosynthetic pathways in crops.
- Genetically-engineered biofortified foods: provitamin A-enriched rice, omega-3-enriched soy and high-antocyanin tomatoes.
- Biotechnology in plant pest and disease management: Producing crops resistant to phytopathogens and pests.
- Short-interfering RNAs in gene silencing to defend against plant viruses.
- Protecting crops in the field using the Bt toxin.
- Pest-resistant genetically-transformed seeds using the alpha-amylase inhibitor
- Herbicide-resistant crops.
- Plants as bioreactors for molecular farming: transgenic and transplastomic plants for producing recombinant biopharmaceutical proteins.
- Genetically-modified crops and food products: regulation, testing and labelling.
- Status of GM food in North America, Europe and Hong Kong.
- Regulations on the production of plant-derived pharmaceuticals.
- Nuclear and plastid transformation.
- Gene silencing in plants. Genetic manipulation of commercially useful biosynthetic pathways in crops.
- Genetically-engineered biofortified foods: provitamin A-enriched rice, omega-3-enriched soy and high-antocyanin tomatoes.
- Biotechnology in plant pest and disease management: Producing crops resistant to phytopathogens and pests.
- Short-interfering RNAs in gene silencing to defend against plant viruses.
- Protecting crops in the field using the Bt toxin.
- Pest-resistant genetically-transformed seeds using the alpha-amylase inhibitor
- Herbicide-resistant crops.
- Plants as bioreactors for molecular farming: transgenic and transplastomic plants for producing recombinant biopharmaceutical proteins.
- Genetically-modified crops and food products: regulation, testing and labelling.
- Status of GM food in North America, Europe and Hong Kong.
- Regulations on the production of plant-derived pharmaceuticals.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 acquire key concepts in plant and food biotechnology
- CLO 2 gain insight into real-life applications in plant and food biotechnology
- CLO 3 develop scientific inquiry and critical thinking skills

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in BIOL3211 or BIOL3401

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**
- A
  - Demonstrate thorough and complete mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining the learning outcomes in Plant and Food Biotechnology. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations in plant biotechnology. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B
  - Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes in plant biotechnology. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Show moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D
  - Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show some evidence of coherent and logical thinking, accompanied with limited analytical and critical skills. Show limited ability to apply knowledge in plant biotechnology. Show limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail
  - Fail to demonstrate command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. No evidence in ability to apply knowledge in plant biotechnology. Ineffective organizational and presentational skills.

**Course Type**
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**
- Activities
  - Lectures: 24
  - Laboratory: 30
  - Reading / Self study: 100

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**
- Methods
  - Examination: 70
  - Laboratory reports: 10
  - Presentation: 20

**Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**
- CLO 1,2,3

**Additional Course Information**
Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
- E-reserves (HKU Library)
- Lecture notes on Moodle
### BIOL4415: Healthcare Biotechnology (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** Biological Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof A S T Wong, Biological Sciences (awong1@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved:**  
- Dr K W Y Yuen, Biological Sciences  
- Prof A S T Wong, Biological Sciences

**Course Objectives:**
This course discusses the key concepts and principles involved in healthcare biotechnology, and their applications in molecular medicine.

**Course Contents & Topics:**
- Genetic biotechnology in animals (transgenics, knockouts and other related technologies): Transgenic animals as models in the study of human diseases, as bioreactors for the production of hormones, antibiotics and vaccines and organs for xenotransplantation.
- Advanced molecular biology techniques related to human and animal science basic research, disease diagnosis and development of new therapies. These include but not limited to: applications of DNA technologies in diagnostic medicine and forensic science; tissue engineering.
- An overview of the drug development process, with a focus on the early-stage, preclinical drug discovery, drug target identification, high-throughput assay development, and screening of chemical libraries (synthetic and natural products). The concept of individualized medicine will also be discussed.

**Assessment Methods:**
- Lecture with laboratory component course
- Total: 100 hours

**Required/recommended reading and online materials:**
- "Textbook of Drug Design and Discovery" (Krogsgaard-Larsen, Liljefors, and Madsen, Taylor & Francis, 2002)
- "Human Molecular Genetics" (Strachan and Read, Garland Science, 2010)
- Suggested readings for each topic will be provided.

**Course Website:** http://moodle.hku.hk/

---

### BIOL4416: Stem Cells and Regenerative Biology (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr K W Y Yuen, Biological Sciences (kwyuen@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved:**  
- Dr J Zhang, Biological Sciences
- Dr K W Y Yuen, Biological Sciences

**Course Objectives:**
To introduce the current understanding in regenerative biology, aging and longevity at the cellular and molecular level, and to present the interconnection between these biological events.

**Course Contents & Topics:**
- The course will discuss cutting-edge research in:
  - regenerative and stem cell biology: the basic characteristics of stem cells

**Course Website:** http://moodle.hku.hk/
**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: appreciate the complex regulations of cell potency, cell age and organism longevity
- CLO 2: describe the characteristics of stem cells and the different types of stem cells
- CLO 3: describe applications of stem cell research, and understand ethical concerns involved
- CLO 4: describe the cellular mechanisms of aging, and the pathways involved in longevity

**Pre-requisites and Impermissible combinations**
Pass in BIOC3601 or BIOC3604 or BIOL3211 or BIOL3401 or BIOL3402 or BIOL3403 or BIOL3404 or BIOL3408

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
N

**Offer in 2018 - 2019**: Y

**Examination**
---

**Grade Descriptors (A to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough and complete mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presenational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presenational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presenational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presenational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking, Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presenational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**
Lectures with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>assignment/discussion</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- Essentials of stem cell biology edited by Robert Paul Lanza 2009
- Science in medicine: the JCI textbook of molecular medicine
  By Andrew R. Marks, American Society for Clinical Investigation, Ushma S. Neill
- Molecular biology of aging. Issue 51
  By Leonard Guarente, Linda Partridge, Douglas C. Wallace - 2008

**Course Website**
http://moodle.hku.hk/

**Additional Course Information**

Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

---

**BIOL4417**

- 'Omics' and systems biology (6 credits)
- **Academic Year**: 2017
- **Offering Department**: Biological Sciences
- **Quota**: 40

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr J W Zhang, Biological Sciences (jzhang1@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
(Received)

**Course Objectives**

Recent progress in high-throughput omics technology has revolutionized the biological research. Genome-wide profiling of various biomolecules simultaneously by omics technology generates huge amounts of data, providing the potential to obtain a global and holistic view of the system. This course aims to introduce the technologies of Omics and Systems Biology, and overview of various applications of omics technology in agricultural, biomedical, environmental, and nutritional sciences. This course will make the state-of-the-art knowledge of Systems Biology and know-how available to those working on an omics projects as well as those preparing their research proposal.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- The course covers various OMICS techniques with special focus on sequence alignment, next generation sequencing, computational modeling, and statistic programming. This course will also provide students hands-on experience in large scale data analysis, and high-throughput methodologies involved in: Genomics - the study of all genes or DNA sequences in a genome Transcriptomics - the study of all mRNA transcripts Proteomics - the study of all proteins Interactomes - the study of all genetic or physical interactions among genes or proteins Systems biology and functional genomics - the study of the interactome/network between components of a

---

**Additional References**

- Genome-wide profiling of various biomolecules simultaneously by omics technology generates huge amounts of data, providing the potential to obtain a global and holistic view of the system. This course aims to introduce the technologies of Omics and Systems Biology, and overview of various applications of omics technology in agricultural, biomedical, environmental, and nutritional sciences. This course will make the state-of-the-art knowledge of Systems Biology and know-how available to those working on an omics projects as well as those preparing their research proposal.

- The course covers various OMICS techniques with special focus on sequence alignment, next generation sequencing, computational modeling, and statistic programming. This course will also provide students hands-on experience in large scale data analysis, and high-throughput methodologies involved in: Genomics - the study of all genes or DNA sequences in a genome Transcriptomics - the study of all mRNA transcripts Proteomics - the study of all proteins Interactomes - the study of all genetic or physical interactions among genes or proteins Systems biology and functional genomics - the study of the interactome/network between components of a
biological system, and modeling to discover the integrated function and emergent properties of that system. Metabolomics - metabolites & intermediates involved in a biological reaction.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: explain the conceptual differences between 'Omics'/Systems Biology studies and traditional one-gene approach, and discuss the pros and cons of both approaches
- CLO 2: describe common methodologies used in major 'Omics' studies
- CLO 3: describe basic analytical methods, and access database resources generated in major 'Omics' studies
- CLO 4: describe how 'Omics' data are used in Systems Biology to understand the integrated functions of the system
- CLO 5: identify questions that can be addressed by 'Omics' and System Biology studies, appreciate and describe applications in 'Omics' studies

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in BIOL3601 or BIOL3604 or BIOL3211 or BIOL3401 or BIOL3402 or BIOL3403 or BIOL3404 or BIOL3408

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

- Y 2nd sem
- Offer in 2018 - 2019: N
- Examination: May

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- **A**
  - Demonstrate thorough and complete mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B**
  - Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C**
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D**
  - Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **Fail**
  - Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Course Type

- Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- TBA

### Course Website

- http://moodle.hku.hk/

### Additional Course Information

- Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018
- This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.2018

### BIOL4451

**Cetacean behaviour, ecology and conservation: field research experience (6 credits)**

**Academic Year:** 2017

**Offering Department:** Biological Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr L Karczmarski, Biological Sciences (leszek@hku.hk)

**Course Objectives**

This course offers an exciting experiential learning opportunity through hands-on experience in field research into behavioural ecology and conservation of free-ranging cetaceans (whales, dolphins and porpoises). It provides students with a fundamental knowledge, skills, and the appreciation of what it takes to design, implement, and effectively run field studies in cetacean ecology, behaviour and conservation, and similar studies of other large and mobile marine vertebrates.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Field-based studies of cetaceans have been rapidly evolving in recent years. There are many exciting new developments that allow researchers to tackle previously unexplored avenues of research. However, the primary component of cetacean studies, the direct contact with free-ranging animals out at sea, in their natural environment and on their terms remains unchanged; both challenging and fascinating. This course, conducted in a field research site outside Hong Kong, will expose students to various aspects of cetacean field studies, from the definition of a research question to project design, and to various stages of data collection and analyses. Students will learn a suite of research techniques, and will exercise their skills in data processing and interpretation. The emphasis will be on delphinid behavioural ecology and conservation applications; students will be guided through the scientific reasoning and methodology, and will develop an understanding how individual projects can contribute to advancing science and benefitting broader conservation management efforts. The course includes lectures, informal discussions of current research and recent discoveries, review of innovative research techniques, and extensive field component with sea-based research surveys performed daily (weather permitting). Following the field-based activities, students are required to write an independent report describing the learning outcome of the course.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: understand of the biodiversity and primary habitats in the ecosystem studied
- CLO 2: establish the basic skills needed to identify target species associated with the field course
- CLO 3: be knowledgeable about and able to implement sampling techniques for organisms in the particular ecosystems studied
- CLO 4: understand the basic ecology of target species and how biotic and abiotic factors shape focal communities

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites)**

- Pass in at least one of the following courses: BIOL3101, BIOL3301, BIOL3313 or BIOL3320.
- This experiential field course is primarily for Ecology & Biodiversity Major students.
**Course Objectives**

The purpose of this course is to provide a comprehensive overview of state-of-the-art molecular systematics and phylogenetic research, focusing on in depth coverage of the latest techniques. The treatment of theoretical issues in formal lectures is coupled with practical workshops.

- acquisition of the sequences from the databases
- DNA and protein sequence assembly and alignment
- phylogeny reconstruction using parsimony, distance based, and maximum likelihood approaches
- introduction to relevant software for phylogenetics
- methods for the evaluation of phylogenetic trees

**Course Contents & Topics**


**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the fundamental principles of molecular phylogenetics

- CLO 2 understand the purposes each method is used for and be able to choose the most appropriate method(s) for the analysis of given data

- CLO 3 understand the advantages and disadvantages of the methods

- CLO 4 acquire practical skills for the analysis of molecular data

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites)**

Pass in BIOL3401 or BIOL3408
Evidence of original thought during the analysis of larval biology issues. Show evidence of analytical, critical and evaluative skills.

Course Objectives
- Enable students to design, construct and maintain oyster hatchery for production of seeds for sustainable seafood production;
- Provide scientific basis for oyster aquaculture through field demonstrations and laboratory exercises;
- Introduce oyster biology and hatchery technology and aquaculture business;

Course Contents & Topics
This experiential learning course is to enhance students' knowledge in applied marine biology, hatchery technology and aquaculture business. This will enable students to design, construct, operate and maintain oyster aquaculture facilities and small-scale "green and environmentally sustainable" business for shellfish production. This is an interdisciplinary endeavor encompassing larval hatchery technology, seafood quality and economic dimensions of coastal aquaculture business. After learning about basic oyster biology and oyster aquaculture topics, we will focus on how marine larvae are useful for human society through hatchery technology and in aquaculture business. Environmental issues, legislation pertaining to coastal aquaculture business and community interaction will also be covered using oyster aquaculture in Hong Kong as an example. Students will be exposed to aquaculture facilities in Hong Kong and will be taken to Penang (Malaysia) and Qingdao (China) to learn practical skills of oyster aquaculture. This course is designed to meet the needs of an expanding and sustainable aquaculture business in Hong Kong. Students will be exposed to a unique learning environment involving not only HKU teachers but also teachers from Universiti Sains Malaysia (USM) and Institute of Oceanology (China), bringing with them a diverse range of expertise, culture, and learning opportunities. Career and small scale business opportunities in aquaculture industry will be discussed.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 gain scientific knowledge required for setting up oyster hatchery, farming and small-scale business, beside understanding biology and ecology of larvae and shellfishes and consider potential environmental effects on hatchery and farming
CLO 2 acquire skills and experiential learning opportunities (e.g. hands-on experiences at laboratories and farms) in oyster hatchery and aquaculture business, farming and industry
CLO 3 explain the importance of oyster farming in coastal habitat restoration
CLO 4 plan and execute a commercially important research project in marine science and coastal aquaculture
CLO 5 develop novel ideas, and think creatively, about hatchery production in relation to the aquaculture industry

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL3109 or BIOL3203 or BIOL3301 or ENVS3004 or ENVS3313; and Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Ecology and Biodiversity Major or Environmental Science Major or Biological Science Major.

Not for students who have passed in BIOL3505

Grade Descriptors
A Demonstrate comprehensive knowledge and an advanced level of skills sufficient for achieving all the goals and expected learning outcomes of the course. Show deep understanding of the course subject. Excellent ability to efficiently combine and apply the relevant theories, principles, and methods taught in the course. Advanced skills in possession and application of the methods and software for evolutionary analysis of real data. Excellent ability to collect, systematize, analyze and critically evaluate data from various sources and to quote them appropriately. Excellent presentational skills.
B Demonstrate good knowledge and good level of skills sufficient for accomplishing most of the goals and expected learning outcomes of the course. Demonstrate good understanding of the course subject. Show good ability to combine and to apply theories, principles, and methods taught in the course. Substantial skills in possession and application of the methods and software for molecular evolutionary analysis of real data. Show good ability to collect, systematize, analyze and critically evaluate data from various sources and to quote them appropriately. Good presentational skills.
C Demonstrate basic knowledge and basic level of skills sufficient for accomplishing most of the goals and expected learning outcomes of the course. Demonstrate general understanding of the subject. Show some ability to combine and to apply theories, principles, and methods taught in the course. Limited skills in possession and application of the methods and software for molecular evolutionary analysis of real data. Show general ability to collect, systematize, analyze and evaluate data from various sources and to quote them appropriately. Basic presentational skills.
D Demonstrate incomplete knowledge and weak skills sufficient for accomplishing only some of the goals and expected learning outcomes of the course. Demonstrate poor understanding of the subject. Show poor ability to combine and to apply theories, principles, and methods taught in the course. Limited skills in possession and application of the methods and software for molecular evolutionary analysis of real data. Show poor ability to collect data from various sources, to systematize, analyze and evaluate them appropriately. Poor presentational skills.
Fail Demonstrate very poor or no knowledge and skills required for accomplishing the goals and expected learning outcomes of the course. Demonstrate very poor or no understanding of the subject. Show no ability to combine and/or to apply theories, principles, and methods taught in the course. Poor or no skills in possession and application of the methods and software for molecular evolutionary analysis of real data. Show very poor or no ability to collect data from other sources and to systematize, analyze and evaluate them appropriately. Very poor or no presentational skills.

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 24
Laboratory computer laboratory/tutorial/projects 36
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments CLO 2,3,4 40 CLO 2.3,4
Examination CLO 1,2,3 60

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL4505 Oyster aquaculture: business and technology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences Quota 20
Course Co-ordinator Dr V Thiyagarajan, Biological Sciences (rajan@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr V Thiyagarajan,School of Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives
- Introduce oyster biology and hatchery technology and aquaculture business;
- Provide scientific basis for oyster aquaculture through field demonstrations and laboratory exercises;
- Enable students to design, construct and maintain oyster hatchery for production of seeds for sustainable aquaculture and restoration of wild oysters;
- Facilitate transfer of academic knowledge to oyster growers and aquaculture industry for sustainable, healthy and safe seafood production;
- Evaluate and assess novel information, consider risk assessment and promote creative thinking.

Course Descriptors
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination ---
### Course Objectives & Topics

**Course Contents & Topics**

Students taking this course will work as an intern for at least 160 hours within the University or outside the University in a company, government department or NGO. The internship may be arranged by the School or Students taking this course will work as an intern for at least 160 hours within the University or outside the University in a company, government department or NGO. The internship may be arranged by the School or 

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Practical</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Presentation: developing innovative ideas for sustainable and economically viable aquaculture in Hong Kong</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Written exam.</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>including tutorial</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory work</td>
<td>hands on training</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- Shellfish Aquaculture and the Environment (S.E. Shumway, John Wiley & Sons)
- Molluscan Shellfish Farming (Brian Spencer, John Wiley & Sons)

### Course Website

http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

### Additional Course Information

- Taught and trained by several teachers, guest lecturers from government and aquaculture business sector

1st week: Lectures, practicals and field trips in Hong Kong
2nd week: Lectures and field trips in Penang (Malaysia)
3rd week: Lecture and field trips in Qingdao (China).

Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.
Additional Course Information

Students taking this course have to submit a written report of not less than 1,000 words and an oral presentation about their internships, which will be assessed by internal supervisors. Students' supervisor at work i.e. the institution offering the internship will also submit an assessment report to the University.

Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

BIOL4861 E&B internship is not a Capstone Course.

BIOL4911 Conservation science in practice (6 credits) Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator Prof Y J Sadovy, Biological Sciences (yjsadovy@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Prof Y J Sadovy, School of Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives

To build on the foundation acquired by students in the Biological Sciences in the fields of ecology, biodiversity and environmental science by using case studies that stimulate them to integrate the principles and concepts learned to produce and successfully debate a topic in conservation science. Case studies will specifically address the use of science in achieving meaningful conservation outcomes taking into account the need for considering social, economic, and political contexts. Students will be expected to present their cases orally using sound practical and scientific reasoning. This course is a capstone course for Ecology & Biodiversity major students.

Course Contents & Topics

This course will use directed case studies to give students the opportunity to consider and synthesize solutions to specific problems in conservation and the application of conservation science in the modern world, and within the wider context of economic development, political considerations and scientific uncertainty. Projects will be conducted through collaborations with local organizations, such as WWF-Hong Kong and Ocean Park, and address real-life questions and issues. Possible case studies range from ecosystem services, biological footprints, wildlife trade, to assessment of conservation risk, effectiveness of international conservation and biodiversity instruments, and the relationship between biodiversity and human livelihoods. Tutorials by the course coordinator will introduce practical conservation concepts, develop critical thinking and address specific issues of relevance across case studies.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 have an in-depth understanding of the topic studied, the major issues involved and the needs and prospects for further work in the area.
- CLO 2 have developed investigative skills associated with the case study selected which include synthesis, organization and presentation of information.
- CLO 3 understand the importance and complexities of conserving biodiversity.
- CLO 4 be able to identify practical and scientifically defensible initiatives and measures for successful conservation intervention.
- CLO 5 be able to competently present the case study and convincingly argue their case.

Pre-requisites

BIOLXXX or BIOLX4XXX in the Ecology & Biodiversity Major including BIOL3303. This capstone course is for Ecology & Biodiversity Major students only.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem Off in 2018 - 2019 : N Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with strong evidence of ability to integrate and synthesize information across subject areas, including from practical work undertaken, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations and showing consideration of practical and political dimensions for addressing conservation challenges. Apply highly effective presentational skills. Show evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking and consideration of the wider issues of biodiversity conservation for society.

B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with some integration of materials and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate effective presentational skills. Some evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking and attention to detail. Consideration of practical components in conservation management must be demonstrated including the importance of biodiversity conservation in Society.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations and of relevance of biodiversity conservation for Society. Apply moderately effective presentational skills and understanding of the practical challenges of effective conservation initiatives. Little evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.

D
- Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities and limited attempt at integration. Have basic understanding of importance of biodiversity for Society. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems or consider the practical challenges of biodiversity conservation. Apply limited effectiveness in presentational skills. Lack of attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.

Fail
- Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking or attention to detail. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge or practical thinking to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type

Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>supervised practical work of at least 80 hours followed by written &amp; oral reports. Tutorials provided by course coordinator</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>project report</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research report</td>
<td>project report</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/

Additional Course Information

Offer in alternate year from 2017-2018

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL4912 Sensory evaluation of food (6 credits)

Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator Dr J C Y Lee, Biological Sciences (jettylee@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

Course Objectives

To provide a broad understanding of the physiological and psychological basis of human sensory
perception of food. To develop expertise in the choice and application of sensory techniques, and
analysis of sensory data, in food science and consumer research.

Course Learning
Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the psychophysiological basis for human sensory perception of food
CLO 2 understand the major techniques used in sensory testing
CLO 3 interpret sensory evaluation reports, and to design and conduct sensory evaluation projects using
appropriately chosen methods.

Pre-requisites
Pass in BIOL3201; and
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or
BIOL4XXX) in the Food & Nutritional Science Major.

This capstone course is for Food & Nutritional Science Major students only.
The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N Examination ---

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with
evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use lab skills and techniques and
analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective
team-based organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking
with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of
data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based
organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities
and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of
data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate
effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show some
evidence of coherent and logical thinking, but lacking competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and
methods and analysis of data and results to draw sometimes appropriate but often erroneous conclusions to real-world
problems. Demonstrate team-based organizational and presentational skills of limited effectiveness.
Fail Demonstrate little or no grasp, with retention of little relevant information, of the subject matter covered. Show lack of coherent
and logical thinking, and minimal competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of
data and results ineffectively, leading generally to inappropriate and usually erroneous conclusions to real-world problems.

Course Type
Laboratory and workshop course

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course
Information
This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL4913
Advanced practicum on food and nutrient analysis (6 credits)

Offering Department
Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator
Dr J C Y Lee, Biological Sciences (jetylee@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(De El-Nezami Hani, School of Biological Sciences)
(De J C Y Lee, School of Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives
Food products are analysed to follow the compliance with legal and labelling requirements, assessment of product
quality, determination of nutritive value, research and development. The lectures and laboratory sessions will cover the
analytical procedures and techniques used to provide information about the food labelling and toxicology of the
products. The purpose of the laboratory classes is to give students experience in direct performance of food
analysis and toxicology experiments, analysing data and reporting their findings. The students are to work
individually on food products where they will analytically assess components using advanced techniques
necessary for basic labelling of food products.

Course Contents
& Topics
Key lectures on specific techniques and cases studies demonstrating the potential and pitfalls on analytical
techniques and contaminant assessment for certain class of foods or food components will be discussed. Students
will have hands-on experience in analysing food products and will utilise analytical techniques under AOAC or
equivalent methods. The students will learn how mycotoxins assays, allergens and genetically modified raw
materials are assessed in food products. In-depth learning in the use of different chromatography and mass
spectrometry techniques, ELISA and procedures for sample preparations will be provided in the course.

Course Learning
Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 Be familiar with the food labeling system
CLO 2 Understand the use of appropriate analytical techniques for food analysis
CLO 3 Have knowledge of a variety of analytical techniques for evaluation of food products
CLO 4 Have a detailed knowledge of the state of the art of the most important analytical methods, their
possibilities and their application in complex food systems
This capstone course is for Ecology & Biodiversity Major students only. Students will be guided through the scientific reasoning and methodology, will learn a suite of research techniques, and (iv) engagement in scientific debates with researchers and research teams directly in their field study location. The emphasis is placed on independent thinking and thoughtful critical evaluation of the knowledge acquired previously during relevant classroom courses. Following the field-based component, students are required to give a seminar-type presentation on a selected topic and write a Course Report.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the biodiversity and primary habitats in the ecosystem studied
- CLO 2 establish the basic skills needed to identify target species associated with the field course
- CLO 3 be knowledgeable about and able to implement sampling techniques for organisms in the particular ecosystems studied
- CLO 4 understand the basic ecology of target species and how biotic and abiotic factors shape focal communities

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in BIOL3101, and
- Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) included BIOL3207 and / or BIOL3209 in the Food & Nutritional Science Major. This capstone course is for Food & Nutritional Science Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

- N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- A Evidence of a thorough grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Eagerness and enthusiasm to learn and excellent familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Exceptional handling of field data collection and excellent analytical skills. Ample evidence of independent critical thought with excellent use of a broad range of fundamental concepts and broader comparative perspective to draw insightful and logical conclusions. Show outstanding abilities of independent work, effective

- A+ Evidence of outstanding grasp of the subject and relevant research techniques. Exceptional and enthusiastic to learn and excellent familiarity with relevant background reading and case studies. Exceptional handling of field data collection and excellent analytical skills. Ample evidence of independent critical thought with excellent use of a broad range of fundamental concepts and broader comparative perspective to draw insightful and logical conclusions. Show outstanding abilities of independent work, effective

- A B Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Required/recommended reading and online materials</th>
<th>Course Website</th>
<th>Additional Course Information</th>
<th>Course Objectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lecture with laboratory component course</td>
<td>Activities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Weighting in final course grade (%)</td>
<td>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project report</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Y. Pico, Chemical Analysis of Food Techniques and Applications (2012, Knovel, Science Direct on-line)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://moodle.hku.hk">http://moodle.hku.hk</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers. 2nd Semester - Quota 12; and Summer - Quota 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This course is offered as a capstone experience and unique experiential learning opportunity. It introduces students to scientific reasoning and conceptual basis of studying animal behaviour and behavioural ecology. It exposes students to ‘research-in-making’ and ‘day-to-day logistics’ of a field research, with all the excitement it generates and all demanding challenges it brings along, with hands-on experience in designing, conducting, analysing, and successfully completing field studies of animal behaviour and behavioural ecology.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conducted in a field research site outside Hong Kong, this course teaches students how to think analytically about animal behaviour, how to design a field research protocol, construct a conceptual framework of a research project and how to put this framework into a practice of collecting and analysing data. The course includes lectures, informal discussions, review of research techniques, and extensive field component with daily research activities. It provides experiential learning through (i) direct participation in an ongoing field-based research, (ii) hands-on experience in application of diverse research techniques, (iii) hands-on involvement in collecting and analysing data, and (iv) engagement in direct research with researchers and scientific debates with a field study location. Students will be guided through the scientific reasoning and methodology, will exercise their skills in data gathering and interpretation, and will develop an understanding how individual research projects contribute to a greater understanding of behavioural and evolutionary processes and contribute to advancing science at large. The emphasis is placed on independent thinking and thoughtful application of the knowledge acquired previously during relevant classroom courses. Following the field-based component, students are required to give a seminar-type presentation on a selected topic and write a Course Report.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1 understand the biodiversity and primary habitats in the ecosystem studied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 2 establish the basic skills needed to identify target species associated with the field course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 3 be knowledgeable about and able to implement sampling techniques for organisms in the particular ecosystems studied</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 4 understand the basic ecology of target species and how biotic and abiotic factors shape focal communities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass in BIOL3101; and Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major. This capstone course is for Ecology &amp; Biodiversity Major students only.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BIOL4922 Food product development and evaluation (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator Dr M F Wang, Biological Sciences (mfwang@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr M F Wang,Biological Sciences)
Course Objectives To introduce the key concepts and techniques used in food product development. To provide small group experience in the design, development and production of a new food product.
Course Contents & Topics History and future of the food industry; industrial product development process; idea generation and prototype development for new food products; quality management and legal protection; marketing strategies; food labeling; food package design; new product development for different food industries.
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the food product development cycle
CLO 2 know the key steps in new product development
CLO 3 demonstrate enhanced insight and understanding of current and future trends in the food industry
CLO 4 have professional level practical experience in new product development
CLO 5 know the main characteristics of different sectors of the food industry
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) included BIOL3203 and / or BIOL4205 in the Food & Nutritional Science Major.
This capstone course is for Food & Nutritional Science Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study. Not for students who have passed in BIOL4210 Food product development.
Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject matter covered. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of creative ability and competence in professional-level problem solving. Critically use lab techniques and analysis of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate highly effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject matter covered. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with some evidence of competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw generally appropriate conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject matter covered. Show some evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking with limited competence in professional-level problem solving. Use lab skills and techniques and analysis of data and results to draw moderately appropriate but sometimes erroneous conclusions to real-world problems. Demonstrate moderately effective team-based organizational and presentational skills.

Course Type Field camp
Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures lectures and tutorials 10
Field work 72
Presentation interactive debates 10
Reading / Self study 100
Assessment group project 15
Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 35 CLO 1,2,3,4
Report project report (35%), group investigation & presentation (30%) 65 CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials Required/recommended reading and online materials (at most 400 characters)

Course Website http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecologyfisc/
Enrollment Procedure: The course is open to enrollment only during the add/drop period of the 2nd semester. Students are required to submit a brief (maximum 1-page) application letter (PDF file) via e-mail to the Course Coordinator (leszek@hku.hk) not later than 10th January. The application shall include the following:
1. Personal and academic details
2. ID photograph
3. Brief description of academic interests
4. GPA
5. Pre-requisite courses taken and grades received (if pre-requisites are not met, a reasoned request for waiver).
All applications will be reviewed prior to the commencement of the 2nd semester and results will be announced within the 1st week of the add/drop period of the 2nd semester.
Course Type: Laboratory and workshop course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>80-100 hours group project work</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>6 lectures + 6 tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Assignments assessment of group product development project including food product presentation</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

BIOL4962 Food & nutritional science internship (6 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator: Dr J C Y Lee, Biological Sciences (jettylee@hku.hk)

Course Objectives

To provide a stimulating experience for all Food & Nutritional Science Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Food & Nutritional Science Major through gaining work experience in the field of Food & Nutritional Science that are related to the major of study.

Course Contents & Topics

Students taking this course will work as an intern for at least 160 hours in at least 20 working days within the University or outside the University in a company, government department or NGO. The internship may be arranged by the School or obtained by students themselves. In the latter case, the internship must be in a relevant field to the Food & Nutritional Science Major that the students are taking and prior approval by the course coordinator is required.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 gain first hand work experience in a job placement related to their Food & Nutritional Science Major
- CLO 2 apply the knowledge in their Food & Nutritional Science Major in solving practical problems in the work place
- CLO 3 acquire an understanding and appreciation of the real work environment
- CLO 4 extend their network in their field of study

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Food & Nutritional Science Major.

This capstone course is for Food & Nutritional Science Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Grade Descriptors (Pass /Pass with distinction /Fail)

Pass - Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of "Distinction".

Fail - Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

Course Type: Internship

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Internship work</td>
<td>at least 160 hours (lunch hour excluded) in at least 20 working days</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written report</td>
<td>written report, employer's feedback and oral presentation</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information

Students taking this course have to submit a written report of not less than 1,000 words and an oral presentation about their internships, which will be assessed by internal supervisors. Student's supervisor at work i.e. the institution offering the internship will also submit an assessment report to the University.

Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on "Pass/Fail" basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval.

Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

BIOL4963 Molecular biology & biotechnology internship (6 credits)
Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Or W K Yip, Biological Sciences (wkyip@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (All academic staff in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives: To provide a stimulating experience for all Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major through gaining work experience in the field of Molecular Biology & Biotechnology that are related to the major of study.

Course Contents & Topics: Students taking this course will work as an intern for at least 160 hours in at least 20 working days within the University or outside the University in a company, government department or NGO. The internship may be arranged by the School or obtained by students themselves. In the latter case, the internship must be in a relevant field to the Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major that the students are taking and prior approval by the course coordinator is required.

Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: Gain first hand work experience in a job placement related to their Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major.
- CLO 2: Apply the knowledge in their Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major in solving practical problems in the workplace.
- CLO 3: Acquire an understanding and appreciation of the real work environment.
- CLO 4: Extend their network in their field of study.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations): Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major. This capstone course is for Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major students only.


Grade Descriptors (Pass / Pass with distinction / Fail): Pass: Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of "Distinction".

- Fail: Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

Course Type: Internship

Course Teaching & Learning Activities: Internship work at least 160 hours (lunch hour excluded) in at least 20 working days

Assessment Methods and Weighting: Written report, supervisor's feedback and oral presentation 100

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk

BIOL4964: Biological sciences internship (6 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Prof W W M Lee, Biological Sciences (hrszwm@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (All academic staff in Biological Sciences Major, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives: To provide a stimulating experience for all Biological Sciences major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Biological Sciences Major through gaining work experience in the field of Biological Sciences that are related to the major of study.

Course Contents & Topics: Students taking this course will work as an intern for at least 160 hours in at least 20 working days within the University or outside the University in a company, government department or NGO. The internship may be arranged by the School or obtained by students themselves. In the latter case, the internship must be in a relevant field to the Biological Sciences major that the students are taking and prior approval by the course coordinator is required.

Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: Gain first hand work experience in a job placement related to their Biological Sciences Major.
- CLO 2: Apply the knowledge in their Biological Sciences Major in solving practical problems in the workplace.
- CLO 3: Acquire an understanding and appreciation of the real work environment.
- CLO 4: Extend their network in their field of study.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations): Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Biological Sciences Major. This capstone course is for Biological Sciences Major students only.


Grade Descriptors (Pass / Pass with distinction / Fail): Pass: Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of "Distinction".

- Fail: Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

Course Type: Internship
To provide a stimulating capstone experience for Ecology & Biodiversity Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Ecology & Biodiversity Major through planning and carrying out a research project under the supervision of a member of staff. Students should seek approval from a prospective supervisor prior to selecting this course. After admission to the course is approved by the course coordinator, students will complete their project work under the guidance of their supervisor.

Students taking this course have to submit a written report of not less than 1,000 words and an oral presentation about their internships, which will be assessed by internal supervisors. Student's supervisor at work i.e. the institution offering the internship will also submit an assessment report to the University. Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on "Pass/Fail" basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval.

Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

Biology & biodiversity project (12 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Prof G A Williams, Biological Sciences (hrsbwiga@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (All academic staff in Ecology & Biodiversity Major, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives:
To provide a stimulating capstone experience for Ecology & Biodiversity Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Ecology & Biodiversity Major through planning and carrying out a research project under the supervision of a member of staff.

Course Contents & Topics:
Students should seek approval from a prospective supervisor prior to selecting this course. After admission to the course is approved by the course coordinator, students will complete their project work under the guidance of their supervisor.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 critique and review appropriate scientific literature
- CLO 2 use this information to generate a scientifically relevant research question
- CLO 3 develop and formulate scientific hypotheses to test this question
- CLO 4 design and undertake practical research work to formally test the hypotheses proposed
- CLO 5 analyse and evaluate the data collected to test the hypotheses, present data in a professional manner to illustrate the outcomes
- CLO 6 draw an objective series of conclusions based on the experimental work
- CLO 7 highlight and discuss their research findings and place them into a holistic scientific context
- CLO 8 submit their work following a specified journal format, present their work as a scientific conference talk

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core / elective courses in the Ecology & Biodiversity Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above.

Students are not permitted to take both BIOL3991 and BIOL4991. This capstone course is for Ecology & Biodiversity Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y
Exam: No Exam
Examination: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):
- A: Evidence of complete or near-complete understanding and a thorough grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by attainment of all learning outcomes. Excellent critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Well designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show excellent organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate comprehensive, critical, assessment of results and professional presentation of research work.
- B: Evidence of near-complete understanding and a good grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by attainment of the majority of learning outcomes. Good critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Appropriately designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show good organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate effective, critical, assessment of results and good presentation of research work.
- C: Evidence of adequate understanding and grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by general but incomplete attainment of most of the learning outcomes. Acceptable critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Adequately designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show fair organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate adequate but not necessarily critical, assessment of results and presentation of research work.
- D: Evidence of limited understanding and grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by incomplete attainment of many of the learning outcomes. Limited critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Poorly designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show fair organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate confused and poorly organized assessment of results and limited presentation of research work.
- Fail: Evidence of poor or inadequate understanding and grasp of the subject matter such that most of the learning outcomes are not attained. Poor critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Badly designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show little evidence of appropriate organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate incorrect interpretation and assessment of results and poor presentation of research work.

Course Type: Project-based course

To provide a stimulating capstone experience for Ecology & Biodiversity Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Ecology & Biodiversity Major through planning and carrying out a research project under the supervision of a member of staff. Students should seek approval from a prospective supervisor prior to selecting this course. After admission to the course is approved by the course coordinator, students will complete their project work under the guidance of their supervisor.

Course Website: http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/
Course Objectives
To provide a stimulating capstone experience for Food & Nutritional Science Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Food & Nutritional Science Major through planning and carrying out a research project under the supervision of a member of staff.

Course Contents & Topics
Students should seek approval from a prospective supervisor prior to selecting this course. After admission to the course is approved by the course coordinator, students will complete their project work under the guidance of their supervisor.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 critique and review appropriate scientific literature
CLO 2 use this information to generate a scientifically relevant research question
CLO 3 develop and formulate scientific hypotheses to test this question
CLO 4 design and undertake practical research work to formally test the hypotheses proposed
CLO 5 analyse and evaluate the data collected to test the hypotheses, present data in a professional manner to illustrate the outcomes
CLO 6 draw an objective series of conclusions based on the experimental work
CLO 7 highlight and discuss their research findings and place them into a holistic scientific context
CLO 8 submit their work following a specified journal format, present their work as a scientific conference talk

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level discipline core/elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Food & Nutritional Science Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above.
This capstone course is for Food & Nutritional Science Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Evidence of complete or near-complete understanding and a thorough grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by attainment of all learning outcomes. Excellent critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Well designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show excellent organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate comprehensive, critical, assessment of results and professional presentation of research work.

B Evidence of near-complete understanding and a good grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by attainment of the majority of learning outcomes. Good critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Appropriately designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show good organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate effective, critical, assessment of results and good presentation of research work.

C Evidence of adequate understanding and grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by general but incomplete attainment of most of the learning outcomes. Acceptable critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Adequately designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show fair organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate adequate but not necessarily critical, assessment of results and presentation of research work.

D Evidence of limited understanding and grasp of the subject matter as demonstrated by incomplete attainment of many of the learning outcomes. Limited critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Poorly designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show fair organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate confused and poorly organized assessment of results and limited presentation of research work.

Fail Evidence of poor or inadequate understanding and grasp of the subject matter such that most of the learning outcomes are not attained. Poor critique and knowledge of relevant literature and identification of research hypothesis. Badly designed experimental approach to test research hypothesis. Show little evidence of appropriate organizational and/or analytical skills and laboratory/fieldwork techniques. Demonstrate incorrect interpretation and assessment of results and poor presentation of research work.

Course Type
Project-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>formal lectures, seminars &amp; practical work</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Weighting in final course grade (%)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissertation</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>research seminar</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Course Information
A dissertation of about 9,000 - 12,000 words (80% weighting) and a research seminar (20% weighting).
As BIOL4992 "FNS project is a whole year course, students should enrol this course during the course selection period or the add/drop period in the 1st Semester only.

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/
Course Objectives

To provide a stimulating capstone experience for all Biological Sciences Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Biological Science Major through planning and carrying out a research project under the supervision of a member of staff.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- Critique and review appropriate scientific literature
- Use this information to generate a scientifically relevant research question
- Develop and formulate scientific hypotheses to test this question
- Design and undertake practical research work to formally test the hypotheses proposed
- Analyse and evaluate the data collected to test the hypotheses
- Present data in a professional manner to illustrate the outcomes
- Draw an objective series of conclusions based on the experimental work
- Highlight and discuss their research findings and place them into a holistic scientific context

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core / elective courses in the Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above.

This capstone course is for Molecular Biology & Biotechnology Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information

A dissertation of about 9,000 - 12,000 words (80% weighting) and a research seminar (20% weighting).

BIOL4994

Biological sciences project (12 credits)

Offering Department

Biological Sciences

Course Co-ordinator

Prol W W M Lee, Biological Sciences (hrzziwm@hku.hk)

Course Objectives

To provide a stimulating capstone experience for all Biological Sciences Major undergraduates to integrate and apply their knowledge and skills obtained from the Biological Science Major through planning and carrying out a research project under the supervision of a member of staff.

Course Contents & Topics

Students should seek approval from a prospective supervisor prior to selecting this course. After admission to the course is approved by the course coordinator, students will complete their project work under the guidance of their supervisor.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- Critique and review appropriate scientific literature
- Use this information to generate a scientifically relevant research question
- Develop and formulate scientific hypotheses to test this question
- Design and undertake practical research work to formally test the hypotheses proposed
- Analyse and evaluate the data collected to test the hypotheses
- Present data in a professional manner to illustrate the outcomes
- Draw an objective series of conclusions based on the experimental work
- Highlight and discuss their research findings and place them into a holistic scientific context

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core / elective biological sciences courses (BIOL3XXX or BIOL4XXX) in the Biological Sciences Major; and Cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above.

This capstone course is for Biological Sciences Major students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.
This course is intended for students who wish to understand the fundamentals of environmental biology/life science and importantly the relationship (connection) between environment and life. Here you will learn about the various biological/ecological principles and concepts of environmental science which are needed for critical discussion and evaluation of current global environmental issues including human ecology, urbanization, ecological economics, and climate change.

Course Contents & Topics
This course is a combination of lectures, group discussion/debate and field trips cum tutorials. We first explore the fundamental interactions between organisms and their environment. We then explore environmental constraints on life at various ecosystems (like marine, freshwater, and terrestrial). Students will also learn how factors such as urbanization, climate change, and anthropogenic impacts affect life at population and ecosystem levels. Similarly, students will be exposed to the incredible interrelationships that are basic to ecological principles and the impact that human development has upon these interrelationships. After learning basics of environmental life science, students will be stimulated to think about current life science issues such as biodiversity loss, organisms adaptation to climate change, tragedy of commons (human ecology) and applied life science topics such as biomaterial science.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand life, environment and their interactions
CLO 2 appreciate species and ecosystem responses to human-induced environmental change
CLO 3 attain ability to critically think and discuss about current environ-life science issues
CLO 4 be motivated and equipped: to tackle biological environmental science questions and to choose advanced environmental science courses

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) NIL


Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Evidence of original thought during the analysis of environmental life science issues. Show evidence of analytical, critical and multidimensional thinking about the study subject. Extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate excellent ability to apply what you have learned in the class room to critically analyze the real environmental life science issues. Show highly effective organizational, presentational and field trip skills.

B Show substantial knowledge and thought during the analysis of environmental life science issues. Show some evidence of some analytical, critical and multidimensional thinking about the study subject. Good knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate good ability to apply what you have learned in the class room to critically analyze the real environmental life science issues. Show effective organizational, presentational and field trip skills.

C Show a general but incomplete knowledge and original thought during the analysis of environmental life science issues. Fair knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate fair ability to apply what you have learned in the class room to critically analyze the real environmental life science issues. Show considerable organizational, presenational and field trip skills.

D Evidence to show a minimum knowledge (i.e. knowledge is very incomplete) and thought during the analysis of environmental life science issues. Show insufficient knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate poor ability to apply what you have learned in the class room to critically analyze the real environmental life science issues. Show very little organizational, presentational and field trip skills.

Fail Evidence of meager or inadequate knowledge and understanding of environmental life science issues. Show no evidence of knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Demonstrate no ability to apply what you have learned in the class room to critically analyze the real environmental life science issues. Show no evidence of familiarity with relevant reading material and field trip demonstrations, or any knowledge of organizational and presenational skills.
ENVS2001
Methods in environmental science (6 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Dr D M Baker, Biological Sciences (dmbaker@hku.hk)

Course Objectives:
To introduce students to a broad spectrum of field and laboratory methods for data collection in environmental science. Through exposure to environmental data collection, experimental design, data analysis, interpretation and reporting, students will gain a deeper appreciation of the process that underlies environmental science research and it’s relevancy to critical thinking and future careers in the sciences.

Course Contents & Topics:
This course will involve environmental data collection in both field and laboratory settings. In-class lectures will cover basic principles of specific methodologies and relevant applications in preparation for laboratory and field-based experiential learning. Having an interdisciplinary focus, the course will cover topics relevant to the study of the biosphere, encompassing terrestrial, aquatic, and atmospheric systems. Students will gain hands-on experience with the operation of standard and advanced sampling and analytical equipment, quality control, basic data analysis and reporting.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand how scientific data is used to address environmental problems
- CLO 2 have a basic understanding of the techniques and methodologies necessary for collecting environmental data
- CLO 3 understand some of the problems inherent in data collection, and how this impacts data interpretation
- CLO 4 understand how data collected in the lab and field can be used to critically evaluate ideas

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL1309 or EASC1401 or ENVS1301 or ENVS1401

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A  Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly effective lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B  Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C  Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D  Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Apply partially effective lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
E  Demonstrate limited grasp of the subject. Evidence of some understanding of the subject. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
F  Demonstrate no grasp of the subject. Apply little or no understanding of the subject. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Laboratory and workshop course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2.3.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website:
http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/isc/

ENVS2002
Environmental data analysis (6 credits)

Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Dr T C Bonebrake, Biological Sciences (tibone@hku.hk)

Course Objectives:
To provide students with the ability to analyze data; especially data which are relevant to issues and questions in environmental science. This course will enable students to accurately interpret, organize, display, test and analyze environmental data. The course will also introduce students to principles of a variety of important advanced approaches in analyzing environmental data including spatial analysis, geographic information systems, remote sensing, risk assessment, and time series analysis.

Course Contents & Topics:
The course will feature lectures on aspects of sampling, distributions, uncertainty, probability, and hypothesis testing in addition to lectures on advanced analysis topics. Special emphasis will be placed on qualities inherent to most environmental datasets such as large size, multivariate, and spatial. All material will be applied and practiced in environmental science contexts (e.g. chemistry, ecology, geology and oceanography) using a variety of datasets in a computer laboratory setting using the ‘R Project for Statistical Computing’ software (a graphical user interface will be implemented such that prior knowledge of coding or computer science is not required).

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 accurately interpret methods and approaches in the scientific literature
- CLO 2 evaluate critically data analyses in the environmental sciences
- CLO 3 perform standard and appropriate statistical analyses on a variety of data sources
- CLO 4 work comfortably with large datasets using applied software (e.g. R)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Present results of data analyses in a clear and transparent manner</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining most course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, ability to integrate and synthesize information, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective presentational skills. Strong evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, integration of materials and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate effective presentational skills. Evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective presentational skills. Little evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial and limited grasp of the subject and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Apply limited or barely effective computational skills and techniques for basic statistical analyses. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and statistical results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate limited or no grasp of the subject and skills required for attaining any of the course learning outcomes. Present evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical or coherent thinking. Apply minimally effective or ineffective computational skills and techniques for basic statistical analyses. Demonstrate misuse of data and statistical results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply minimally effective or ineffective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**: Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>problem-based learning/computer laboratory</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Content & Topics**

Ecological systems within cities and cities as ecological systems will both be covered in this course. Ecological concepts unique to or specialized within cities will be covered including sustainability, conservation, health, development, globalization, and restoration. Specific topics will include climate change (e.g. urban heat island effects), invasive species, infectious diseases and pollution. Examples will be taken globally but special emphasis will be placed on Hong Kong.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe and evaluate the processes and patterns that characterize urban ecological systems
- CLO 2 understand biodiversity and ecosystem responses to urbanization
- CLO 3 recognize energy flows within urban ecosystems and how energy use and waste improve or deteriorate environmental quality
- CLO 4 critically evaluate management and policy solutions to urban ecological problems

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in BIOL308 or EASC1401 or ENVS1301 or ENVS1401

**References**


**Course Website**

http://www.biosch.hku.hk/ecology/lsc/
## Course Content & Topics

Environmental change is a natural phenomenon, with ecosystems continually shifting, rearranging, emerging, and disappearing through geologic time with changes in climatic conditions. The activities of humans have added to this natural variation, increasing the magnitude and speed with which environmental change occurs. This course will focus principally on the effects of climate change on organisms and ecosystems but will also investigate other topics registering on a global scale including land use change, biological invasions, land degradation, disease, and, ultimately, impacts on biological systems.

The main goal of this course is to introduce students to the ways in which global environmental change affects biodiversity from organisms to ecosystems. This course will explore the contributions that human population growth and globalization have made to increases in greenhouse gases and associated climate change, biological invasions, land degradation, disease, and, ultimately, impacts on biological systems.

## Course Objectives

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** develop a basic understanding of climate change and other human-associated impacts, such as land use change, and how they are manifested on a global scale
- **CLO 2** explain the ways that global change affects organisms' traits and distributions, and biodiversity at the ecosystem level
- **CLO 3** understand the differences between climate change on a geologic time scale and recent climate change
- **CLO 4** be aware of the relationships between humans and global change

## Assessment Methods & Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Mid-term exam (20%), Final exam (30%)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Course Type

Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Offering Department</strong></td>
<td>Biological Sciences</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Co-ordinator</strong></td>
<td>Dr C Dingle, Biological Sciences (<a href="mailto:cdingle@hku.hk">cdingle@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Objectives</strong></td>
<td>The main goal of this course is to introduce students to the ways in which global environmental change affects biodiversity from organisms to ecosystems. This course will explore the contributions that human population growth and globalization have made to increases in greenhouse gases and associated climate change, biological invasions, land degradation, disease, and, ultimately, impacts on biological systems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Contents &amp; Topics</strong></td>
<td>Environmental change is a natural phenomenon, with ecosystems continually shifting, rearranging, emerging, and disappearing through geologic time with changes in climatic conditions. The activities of humans have added to this natural variation, increasing the magnitude and speed with which environmental change occurs. This course will focus principally on the effects of climate change on organisms and ecosystems but will also investigate other topics registering on a global scale including land use change, biological invasions, land degradation, disease, and, ultimately, impacts on biological systems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Learning Outcomes</strong></td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- CLO 1 develop a basic understanding of climate change and other human-associated impacts, such as land use change, and how they are manifested on a global scale</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- CLO 2 explain the ways that global change affects organisms' traits and distributions, and biodiversity at the ecosystem level</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- CLO 3 understand the differences between climate change on a geologic time scale and recent climate change</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- CLO 4 be aware of the relationships between humans and global change</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</strong></td>
<td>Pass in BIOL2306 or ENVS2001 or ENVS2002</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Offer in 2017 - 2018</strong></td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</strong></td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, ability to integrate and synthesize information, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective presentational skills. Strong evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, integration of materials and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate effective presentational skills. Evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective presentational skills. Little evidence of clear attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities and little attempt at integration. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited effectiveness in presentational skills. Lack of attention to thoughtful and reflective thinking.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Course Title: Environmental remediation (6 credits)
Offering Department: Biological Sciences
Teachers Involved: Dr J D Gu, Biological Sciences (jdg@hku.hk)
Course Co-ordinator: Dr J D Gu, Biological Sciences
Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/

Course Objectives:
- To introduce students with the environmental fate information of different pollutants/contaminants in the environment
- To understand the technologies available for environmental remediation of pollutants in soils and water, and the characteristics of each techniques relevant to the pollutants of concern
- To learn the fundamental physical, chemical and biochemical reactions involved in the remediation process
- To obtain skills for critical analysis of the recent technological development and the proposed applications

Course Contents & Topics:
Understanding the types of different pollutants and their fate in the environments including both terrestrial and aquatic; and relevant strategy of pollution control and treatment; advanced oxidation, microbiological treatment and phytoremediation; mechanisms of biochemical transformation of polyaromatic hydrocarbon, polychlorinated biphenols, agrichemicals and phthalate esters as well as both metals and metalloids; biochemical pathways and the specific genes involved in detoxification; chemotaxis and engineering the degradation pathways in bacteria; transport of microorganisms and monitoring in subsurface environment; survival of introduced organisms; evolution of the degradative genes in bacteria; in situ and ex situ remediation techniques; green technologies.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 explain the remediation technologies available to the type of pollutants of concern in remediation practice
- CLO 2 propose remediation strategies for polluted sites with the best technologies available considering the type of pollutants and the cost involved
- CLO 3 differentiate the technologies available for the specific pollutants and the fundamental process involved in terms of the catalysts and the effectiveness
- CLO 4 describe several key chemical and biochemical processes used in environmental remediation with adequate background information on their history and development

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in BIOL3109 or BIOL3110 or BIOL3401 or ENVIS3042

Offer in 2017 - 2018:
- Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: N

Grade Descriptors (A to F):
- A: Thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Thorough grasp of the subject matter. Show very strong analytical and critical abilities and high logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Substantial grasp of the subject. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: General but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. General but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
- D: Partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- F: Little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Minimally effective or barely effective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type: Lecture with laboratory component course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Required/recommended reading and online materials</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Website</strong></td>
<td><a href="http://moodle.hku.hk/">http://moodle.hku.hk/</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Course Information</strong></td>
<td>The course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers. Offer in alternate year from 2011-2012</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CAES1000
Core University English (6 credits)

Offering Department
English

Academic Year
2017

Quota
---

Teachers Involved
Dr N Fong, English (fongsn@hku.hk)
(Dr N Fong, Centre for Applied English Studies)

Course Co-ordinator

Course Objectives

Course Contents & Topics
The Core University English (CUE) course aims to enhance first-year students' academic English language proficiency in the university context. CUE focuses on developing students' academic English language skills for the Common Core Curriculum. These include the language skills needed to understand and produce spoken and written academic texts, express academic ideas and concepts clearly and in a well-structured manner and search for and use academic sources of information in their writing and speaking. Four online-learning modules through the Moodle platform on academic speaking, academic grammar, academic vocabulary, citation and referencing skills and avoiding plagiarism will be offered to students to support their English learning. This course will help students to participate more effectively in their first-year university studies in English, thereby enriching their first-year experience.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 identify and distinguish between main ideas and supporting details in lectures and written texts and demonstrate an understanding of the arguments / facts expressed
- CLO 2 form and express personal opinions through critical reading and listening
- CLO 3 argue for and defend a position in a clear and structured way using academic sources, through writing and speaking
- CLO 4 demonstrate control of grammatical accuracy and lexical appropriacy in academic communication

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
NIL

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y

1st sem
2nd sem
Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Examination
Dec May

Grade Descriptors

(A+ to F)

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Excellent to outstanding result. Students are able to produce spoken and written academic texts which are at all times appropriately structured. Students can clearly and concisely explain academic concepts and critically argue for a detailed position. Students always use appropriate academic sources to support their ideas in writing and speaking. They cite and reference correctly at all times. Students demonstrate an ability to fully comprehend and critically interpret spoken and written texts. Written language contains very few, if any, systematic errors in grammar and vocabulary. Spoken language is always comprehensible and fluent.

B

Good to very good result. Students are able to produce spoken and written academic texts which are appropriately structured with only minor errors. Students can almost always clearly and concisely explain academic concepts and almost always critically argue for a detailed position. Students almost always use appropriate academic sources to support their ideas in writing and speaking. They cite and reference correctly with only a few non-systematic errors. Students can comprehend and interpret texts with ease, although they may miss some implied meanings and opinions. Written language is mostly accurate but contains a few systematic errors in complex grammar and vocabulary. Spoken language is mostly comprehensible and fluent.

C

Satisfactory to reasonably good result. Spoken and written academic texts produced by students are sometimes not-well structured but there is some evidence of this ability. Students are sometimes unable to clearly and concisely explain academic concepts. While they can argue for a position, it is not very detailed and tend to be simplistic rather than critical. Students sometimes use sources which are nonacademic and/or not appropriate to support their ideas in writing and speaking. There are some systematic errors in citation and referencing but also evidence of correct systematic use. Students have some difficulty comprehending and critically interpreting texts. They can always understand the main ideas but may miss some of the writer's views and attitudes. Written language is sometimes inaccurate, although errors, when they occur, are more often in complex grammar and vocabulary. Spoken language is mostly comprehensible and fluent but at times places strain on the listener.

D

Barely satisfactory result. Spoken and written academic texts produced by students are often inappropriately structured but there may be some evidence of this ability. Students are often unable to clearly and concisely explain academic concepts and argue for a position. There is some evidence of an ability to explain academic concepts but not to critically argue for a position. Students often use sources which are nonacademic and/or not appropriate to support their ideas in writing and speaking. There are many systematic errors in citation and referencing however there is evidence of an understanding of some of the conventions of citation and referencing. Students often have difficulty comprehending and interpreting texts, sometimes failing to understand the main ideas and writer's views and attitudes. Written language is often inaccurate containing errors in a range of simple and complex grammar and vocabulary. Spoken language is generally comprehensible and fluent but at times places strain on the listener.

Fail

Unsatisfactory result. Productive skills are too limited to be able to successfully carry out spoken and written assessments. Texts are unstructured and unclear. Students are unable to follow and interpret texts. There are language errors in almost every sentence. Spoken language is often incomprehensible. Assessments may not have been attempted or contain plagiarism.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities
Details
No. of Hours
Lectures
30
Tutorials
6
Reading / Self study
84

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods
Details
Weighting in final course grade (%)
Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments
65
Examination
35

487
### CAES9820: Academic English for science students (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** English  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Ms E Law, English (ellielaw@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:** (Ms E Law, Centre for Applied English Studies)

#### Course Objectives
This six credit English-in-the-Discipline course will be offered to second year students studying in the Science Faculty. This course will help students develop the necessary skills to use both written and spoken English within their studies. Students will learn to better communicate and spontaneously discuss general and scientific concepts within their division, with other scientists as well as to a larger audience. Particular emphasis will be placed on enabling students to identify their own language needs and develop appropriate self-learning strategies to improve their proficiency.

#### Course Contents & Topics
Topics covered in the course will be:
- Finding, evaluating and using appropriate academic source materials;  
- Compiling an academic bibliography;  
- Contrasting academic and popular genres of Science;  
- Writing for a specific audience, including stance, shared knowledge, levels of formality; and  
- Organizing and articulating ideas in an academically suitable format including appropriate vocabulary and grammar; and  
- Critically examine their own language proficiency and analyze how that relates to their ability to perform successfully within their discipline. Developing self-directed learning strategies.

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 identify and summarize disciplinary sources related to a specified topic  
- CLO 2 produce texts (written and spoken) appropriate for a cross-disciplinary audience based on their disciplinary knowledge  
- CLO 3 identify their own language learning needs and implement a plan to meet those needs

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
NIL

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Year</th>
<th>1st sem</th>
<th>2nd sem</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Good to very good result. Usually demonstrates ability to summarize salient points accurately using mostly original language. Text mostly uses sources appropriately and demonstrates mostly accurate and appropriate grammatical, lexical and organizational characteristics. Language learning needs are stated with some evidence of planning and reflection although there is some misalignment between goals and self-study completed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Excellent result. Consistently demonstrates ability to summarize salient points accurately from appropriate and reliable sources using original language. Text uses sources appropriately and demonstrates accurate and appropriate grammatical, lexical and organizational characteristics. Language learning needs are clearly identified and aligned with evidence of planning, self-study and reflection.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Satisfactory to reasonably good result. Demonstrates some ability to summarize salient points using mostly original language although some inaccuracies are present. Text uses some sources appropriately and demonstrates appropriate but simple grammatical and lexical characteristics with some organizational flaws. Language learning needs are stated with some limited evidence of planning and reflection but goals and self-study are misaligned.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Barely satisfactory result. Demonstrates a limited ability to summarize salient points from sources with inaccuracies and little original language. Text uses sources inappropriately and demonstrates grammatical inaccuracy, inappropriate lexical choices and organizational flaws. There is a minimal statement of language learning needs, planning and reflection with little or no apparent alignment between goals and self-study.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Unsatisfactory result. Does not demonstrate ability to summarize salient points identified, interpret or appropriately paraphrase reliable sources. Text uses no sources and demonstrates serious grammatical, lexical and/or organizational errors. Does not demonstrate any meaningful attempt to identify language learning needs or implement a plan.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Type
Lecture-based course

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent learning work</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other genres of writing</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other genres of writing</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Grade Descriptors
- **A:** Excellent result. Consistently demonstrates ability to summarize salient points accurately from appropriate and reliable sources using original language. Text uses sources appropriately and demonstrates accurate and appropriate grammatical, lexical and organizational characteristics. Language learning needs are clearly identified and aligned with evidence of planning, self-study and reflection.
- **B:** Good to very good result. Usually demonstrates ability to summarize salient points accurately using mostly original language. Text mostly uses sources appropriately and demonstrates mostly accurate and appropriate grammatical, lexical and organizational characteristics. Language learning needs are stated with some evidence of planning and reflection although there is some misalignment between goals and self-study completed.
- **C:** Satisfactory to reasonably good result. Demonstrates some ability to summarize salient points using mostly original language although some inaccuracies are present. Text uses some sources appropriately and demonstrates appropriate but simple grammatical and lexical characteristics with some organizational flaws. Language learning needs are stated with some limited evidence of planning and reflection but goals and self-study are misaligned.
- **D:** Barely satisfactory result. Demonstrates a limited ability to summarize salient points from sources with inaccuracies and little original language. Text uses sources inappropriately and demonstrates grammatical inaccuracy, inappropriate lexical choices and organizational flaws. There is a minimal statement of language learning needs, planning and reflection with little or no apparent alignment between goals and self-study.
- **Fail:** Unsatisfactory result. Does not demonstrate ability to summarize salient points identified, interpret or appropriately paraphrase reliable sources. Text uses no sources and demonstrates serious grammatical, lexical and/or organizational errors. Does not demonstrate any meaningful attempt to identify language learning needs or implement a plan.

#### Course Website
http://caes.hku.hk/caes9820/

#### Additional Course Information
This a compulsory course for all students studying undergraduate degrees in the Faculty of Science.
Department of Chemistry

CHEM1041 Foundations of chemistry (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Chemistry Quota 156
Course Co-ordinator Dr A P L Tong, Chemistry (apltong@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
The course aims to provide students who do not have HKDSE Chemistry or an equivalent background but are interested in exploring Chemistry further, with an understanding of the essential fundamental principles and concepts of chemistry.

Course Contents & Topics

1. Chemistry: Matter and Measurement (2 hours)
   Elements, compounds, and mixtures; physical properties of matter; chemical changes and chemical properties; measuring mass, length, volume and temperature; atomic structure and subatomic particles; the mole concept and stoichiometry; solutions and concentrations; uncertainty in measurement and significant figures.

2. Gases: Their Properties and Behaviour (6 hours)
   Gas pressure; the gas laws; the ideal gas law and reaction stoichiometry; the kinetic-molecular theory of gases.

3. Chemical Bonding and Structures (7 hours)
   Covalent, ionic and metallic bonds; bond energy and chemical change; electronegativity and bond polarity; Lewis structures of molecules and ions; VSEPR Theory and molecular shape.

4. Intermolecular Forces: Liquids, Solids, and Phase Changes (8 hours)
   Physical states and phase changes; types of intermolecular forces; properties of liquid state; the solid state; structure, properties, and bonding; advanced materials e.g. electronic materials, liquid crystals, ceramic materials and polymeric materials.

5. Chemical Equilibrium (4 hours)
   The equilibrium state and the equilibrium constant; the equilibrium law: calculation of equilibrium constants and reaction quotient; Le Chelier? Principle

6. Introductory Organic Chemistry (9 hours)
   Homologous series and nomenclature; isomerism; typical reactions of selected functional groups.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding in relation to some chemical vocabulary, terminology and conventions
- CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of chemical stoichiometry, the properties of liquids and solids, the nature of gases, phase changes, chemical bonding and structures, and the nature of chemical equilibria
- CLO 3 demonstrate a basic knowledge of nomenclature, isomerism, and typical reactions of various functional groups of organic compounds
- CLO 4 apply the theories and concepts introduced in the course to solve problems, perform calculations, make predictions and rationalize trends
- CLO 5 organize and present chemical ideas in a clear, logical and coherent way
- CLO 6 demonstrate awareness and appreciation of the relevant applications of chemistry in society and in everyday life

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Level 3 or above in HKDSE Combined Science with Chemistry component or Integrated Science, or equivalent. Students without such background but keen on taking this foundation chemistry course may approach the course coordinator for consideration. Not for students with Level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or having taken any level 1 Chemistry course or above or any equivalent Chemistry course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y
Examination Dec

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

A
Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show thorough grasp of the subject. Demonstrate strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show substantial grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 20 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Examination 65 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6
Test 15 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6

Required/recommended reading and online materials
1) Petrucci; Herring; Madura; Bissonnette: General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications, latest edition, Pearson
3) Zumdahl; Zumdahl: Chemistry, latest edition, Brookes/Cole

Additional Course Information
Suggested follow-up course: CHEM1042 General Chemistry I
The course aims to provide students with a solid foundation of the basic principles and concepts of chemistry. It also provides students with hands-on training of basic laboratory skills and techniques including volumetric analysis, preparation, purification and characterization of chemical substances and some basic instrumental methods. Students will be equipped with a good foundation of theoretical and practical skills and knowledge for further studies in Chemistry.

Course Contents & Topics

1. Chemistry: its nature and method
   - Physical properties; chemical changes and chemical properties; elements and compounds; measuring mass, length, volume and temperature; atomic structure and subatomic particles; the mole concept and stoichiometry; solutions and concentrations; uncertainty in measurement and significant figures.
2. Atoms: the quantum world
   - Electromagnetic radiation and matter; Planck's quantum theory; the Bohr model of the hydrogen atom; the quantum mechanical model of the atom; quantum numbers, energy levels, and atomic orbitals; shapes of atomic orbitals; electron configurations; periodic trends: atomic radii, ionic radii, ionization energies, and electron affinities.
3. Chemical bonding and structures
4. Energetics and kinetics of reactions
   - Heat and work; the first law of thermodynamics; heat of reactions; spontaneity of changes. Reaction rate; factors that influence reaction rate; rate laws: differential and integrated rate laws; temperature and reaction rate; reaction mechanisms.
5. Acid-Base equilibrium
   - Acid-base concepts; equilibria in solutions of weak acids and in weak bases; ionization constants; molecular properties and acid strength; acid-base properties of salt solutions; buffer solutions; acid-base titrations.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 demonstrate a basic knowledge and understanding of the microscopic nature of atomic structure and concepts of chemical bonding and their relationships with the bulk properties of matter

CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding in relation to thermodynamics and kinetics of reactions as well as aqueous equilibria including acid-base equilibria

CLO 3 apply the theories and concepts introduced in the course to solve problems, perform calculations, make predictions and rationalize trends

CLO 4 carry out chemical experiments with proper procedures, record experimental observations accurately, and interpret and evaluate the experimental data

CLO 5 organize and present chemical ideas in a clear, logical and coherent way

CLO 6 demonstrate awareness and appreciation of the relevant applications of chemistry in society and in everyday life

Pre-requisites

Level 3 or above in HKDSE Chemistry or equivalent or a pass in CHEM1041. Not for students having taken any level 1 Chemistry course (except for CHEM1041) or above or any equivalent Chemistry course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show thorough grasp of the subject. Demonstrate strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Show highly effective lab skills and techniques. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show substantial grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Show effective lab skills and techniques. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Show moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
- Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate partially effective lab skills and techniques. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
- Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3.5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3.4.5.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3.5.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

1) Petrucci; Herring; Madura; Bissonnette: General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications, latest edition, Pearson

Additional Course Information

Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.
CHEM1043 General chemistry II (6 credits)  Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Chemistry  Quota 290

Course Co-ordinator Dr A P L Tong, Chemistry (apltong@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
This course is a continuation of CHEM1042 General Chemistry I. It aims to further consolidate some of the important fundamentals of chemistry that underlie many topics and principles across the physical sciences. The course prepares students to pursue a major in chemistry or in other aspects that require a good foundation in chemistry.

Course Contents & Topics
1. Gases
   Simple gas laws; ideal gas equation; gases in chemical reactions; mixture of gases; kinetic-molecular theory of gases; diffusion and effusion; non-ideal gases.
2. Structure and Bonding: The Delocalized Approach: Molecular Orbital Theory
   Bonding in homonuclear and heteronuclear diatomic molecules of first and second period of elements; bonding in some simple polyatomic molecules; bonding in metals (band theory).
3. Solutions and Their Properties
   Types of solutions; intermolecular forces and the solution process; solution formation and equilibrium; solubilities of gases; vapor pressures of solutions; osmotic pressure; freezing-point depression and boiling-point elevation of nonelectrolyte solutions; solutions of electrolytes; colloidal mixtures.
4. Solubility and Complex-Ion Equilibria
   Solubility product constant; relationship between solubility and Ksp; common-ion effect in solubility equilibria; limitations of the Ksp concept; precipitation; solubility and pH; equilibria involving complex ions; qualitative cation analysis.
5. Entropy & Gibbs Energy
   A quick review on entropy and the second & third laws of thermodynamics. Standard Gibbs energy change; Gibbs energy change and equilibrium; coupled reactions.
6. Electrochemistry
   Electrode potentials and their measurement; standard electrode potentials; Ecell, delta G, and K; Ecell as a function of concentrations; batteries; corrosion; electrolysis; industrial electrolysis processes.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 demonstrate a knowledge and understanding of the properties and behavior of gases and apply gas laws and kinetic-molecular theory to processes involving gases
CLO 2 demonstrate a knowledge and understanding in relation to solutions and their properties, solubility and complex-ion equilibria, and also electrochemistry
CLO 3 apply molecular orbital theory to explain the formation and properties of diatomic molecules of first and second period of elements and of some simple polyatomic molecules
CLO 4 demonstrate a knowledge and understanding of the relationship between free energy and spontaneity of reaction
CLO 5 apply the theories and concepts introduced in the course to solve problems, perform calculations, make predictions and rationalize trends
CLO 6 organize and present chemical ideas in a clear, logical and coherent way
CLO 7 demonstrate awareness of the relevant applications of chemistry in society and in everyday life

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in CHEM1042; and not for students in 2014-15 cohort or before having taken CHEM2541.

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A  Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show thorough grasp of the subject. Demonstrate strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B  Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show substantial grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C  Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D  Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
Fail  Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
1) Petrucci; Herring; Madura; Bissonnette: General Chemistry: Principles and Modern Applications, latest edition, Pearson
3) Zumdahl; Zumdahl: Chemistry, latest edition, Brookes/Cole
### CHEM1044

**Mathematics in chemistry (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some minor inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrates poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1-2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1-2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

Graham Doggett, Martin Cockett: Maths for Chemists, 2nd Edition, RSC

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in CHEM1042 or already enrolled in this course; and
Level 2 or above in Module 1 or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or
Pass in MATH1011

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the essential mathematics used in chemistry
- CLO 2 apply mathematical skills to solve basic problems in chemistry
- CLO 3 be more capable of coping with a higher level of mathematics required in relevant courses for chemistry major, in particular, in physical chemistry courses

---

### CHEM2041

**Principles of chemistry (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some minor inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrates poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1-2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1-2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

Graham Doggett, Martin Cockett: Maths for Chemists, 2nd Edition, RSC

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in CHEM1042; and
Not for students who have passed in CHEM2341, or have already enrolled in this course; and
Not for students who have passed in CHEM2441, or have already enrolled in this course; and
Not for students who have passed in CHEM2541, or have already enrolled in this course; and
Not for Chemistry major students.
### Course Objectives

The course aims to introduce the basic principles of chemical analysis. The principles of chemical measurement, including error analysis, quality assurance, calibration, data acquisition and processing, will be discussed with reference to methods of chemical analysis that are based on chemical equilibrium and stoichiometric reactions. The laboratory classes will include experiments demonstrating modern approaches of data acquisition and processing as well as chemical analysis based on chemical equilibrium.

### Course Contents & Topics

- Measurement: analog and digital measurement, accuracy and precision, comparing means and deviations, calibration curves and least square method for linear plots
- Quality assurance: validation of analytical procedures
- Chemical equilibrium and chemical analysis: aqueous solution and chemical equilibrium; analysis by acid-base reactivity, complexation reactivity, precipitation reactivity

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: explain the basic principles of chemical measurements
- CLO 2: explain the principles of classical methods of chemical analysis such as acid-base neutralization
- CLO 3: use laboratory apparatus for chemical analysis

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in CHEM1042 (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before);
- Pass in CHEM1042, and Pass in CHEM11043, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)

### Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td>Dec / May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

- Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

#### Activities | Details | No. of Hours
--- | --- | ---
Lectures | | 36
Tutorials | | 12
Reading / Self study | | 100

### Assessment Methods

#### Methods | Details | Weighting in final | Assessment
--- | --- | --- | ---
Assignments | | 25 | CLO 1,2
Examination | | 75 | CLO 1,2
Department of Chemistry

and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Contents</th>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Descriptors</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture with laboratory component course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## CHEM2441

### Organic chemistry I (6 credits)

#### Course Co-ordinator
Dr. Y Li (1st sem); Prof P Chiu (2nd sem), Chemistry (xiaoyuli@hku.hk; pchiu@hku.hk)

#### Teachers Involved
(Dr. Y Li, Chemistry)
(Prof P Chiu, Chemistry)

#### Course Objectives
To provide students with the basic principles to understand the structure and reactivity of organic molecules, with examples illustrating the role of organic chemistry in daily life and industry.

This course serves as the first part of the complete program on fundamental organic chemistry, to be followed up by CHEM3441 Organic Chemistry II.

#### Course Contents & Topics
- Structure and bonding of organic compounds, three dimensional structures of organic molecules, conformational stereochemistry, chirality. Chemistry of alkanes, cycloalkanes, alkenes, alkynes, haloalkanes, dienes, aromatics, compounds, alcohols, thiols, and amines. Organometallic chemistry for organic synthesis.

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: understand basic concepts and employ the vocabulary of organic chemistry
- CLO 2: visualize and draw three-dimensional, stereochemically correct representations of organic molecules
- CLO 3: recognize, discriminate and name chiral stereoisomers and diastereomers
- CLO 4: understand the reactivity of the functional groups
- CLO 5: understand reaction mechanisms and apply mechanistic knowledge to solve chemistry problems
- CLO 6: apply reactions to the synthesis of target molecules
- CLO 7: appreciate the relevance of organic chemistry in biological processes and daily life

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impeccitable combinations)
- Pass in CHEM1042; and NOT for students who have passed CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before)
- Pass in CHEM1042, or Pass in CHEM1043, or already enrolled in this course; and NOT for students who have passed CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

#### Examination
Dec

#### Grade Descriptors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of knowledge and understanding of facts and concepts pertaining to the chemical properties, reactions and mechanisms of organic chemistry. Show a strong understanding of theoretical concepts, and a strong ability to analyze and solve novel organic chemistry problems. Demonstrate highly effective organization, understanding, and execution of lab skills and techniques in organic chemistry experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts and concepts pertaining to the chemical properties, reactions and mechanisms of organic chemistry. Show evidence of ability to integrate knowledge and theory, and evidence of ability to analyze and solve novel organic chemistry problems. Demonstrate effective organization, understanding, and execution of lab skills and techniques in organic chemistry experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate a general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts and concepts pertaining to the chemical properties, reactions and mechanisms of organic chemistry. Show evidence of ability to integrate knowledge and theory, and evidence of some ability to analyze novel problems. Show a mostly correct use of knowledge to solve most familiar problems. Demonstrate adequately effective organization, understanding, and execution of lab skills and techniques in organic chemistry experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate a partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts and concepts pertaining to the chemical properties, reactions and mechanisms of organic chemistry. Show evidence of ability to integrate knowledge and theory, and a limited ability to analyze novel problems. Show some correct but also erroneous use of knowledge to solve most familiar problems. Demonstrate a partially effective organization, understanding and application of lab skills and techniques in organic chemistry experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts and concepts pertaining to the chemical properties, reactions and mechanisms of organic chemistry. Show little or no evidence of ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory, and little or no ability to analyze novel problems. Show little or no evidence of ability to solve most familiar problems. Demonstrate minimal or no organization, understanding and application of lab skills and techniques in organic chemistry experiments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>21</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Additional Course Information
Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

### CHEM2442

#### Fundamentals of organic chemistry (6 credits)

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Required/recommended reading and online materials
### Course Co-ordinator
Dr P H Toy, Chemistry (phtoy@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
(Dr P H Toy, Chemistry)

### Course Objectives
The major objective of this course is to give students a basic understanding of organic chemistry, especially in the context of daily life. This will be achieved through the introduction of the chemistry of organic functional groups that form the basis of organic molecules. The concepts presented in the lectures will be reinforced by a series of laboratory experiments.

### Course Contents & Topics
The chemistry of organic functional groups such as alkenes, alkynes, alkyl halides, alcohols, aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids and their derivatives, and amines will be discussed, as will the general concepts of molecular structure, conformation and stereochemistry.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- **CLO 1** demonstrate basic understanding of the structure of organic molecules
- **CLO 2** demonstrate basic understanding of the reactivity of organic molecules
- **CLO 3** appreciate how organic chemistry plays an important role in everyday life

### Pre-requisites
Pass in CHEM1042; and Not for students who have passed CHEM2441, or have already enrolled in this course.

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

### Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of organic chemistry with a broad range of knowledge, and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test/Quiz</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended online materials
Bruice, P.Y.; Essential Organic Chemistry (Pearson, 2016, 3rd edition)

### Additional Course Information
Students who are planning to CHEM3441 should take CHEM2441. Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.
Chem2451

Introductory physical chemistry (6 credits)

Academic Year: 2017

Offering Department: Chemistry
Quota: 200

Course Co-ordinator: Dr A M Y Yuen (1st sem); Dr J Y Tang (2nd sem), Chemistry (maiyan@hku.hk; jinyao@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved:
- Dr A M Y Yuen, Chemistry
- Dr J Y Tang, Chemistry

Course Objectives:
The course aims to provide a rigorous understanding of equilibrium thermodynamics and chemical kinetics. Students are required to apply mathematical skills (derivations and integrations) and basic physics to understand chemical reactions and related processes. Topics include the three laws of thermodynamics, thermodynamic properties of mixtures, solutions, chemical equilibrium, electrochemistry, rates of chemical reactions and reaction dynamics. Students will gain a good foundation of knowledge and skills for further study in Physical Chemistry.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Properties of Gases: States of gases and the gas laws with applications.
- Thermodynamics: The First Law of Thermodynamics, Basic concepts of work, heat, energy, expansion work, heat transactions, enthalpy and adiabatic changes and examples in relation to biochemistry and materials science.
- Thermodynamics: The Second and Third Laws of Thermodynamics, Direction of spontaneous change, entropy and the Third Law of Thermodynamics.
- Chemical Equilibrium: Spontaneous chemical reactions, the Gibbs energy minimum and equilibrium. Response of equilibria to pressure, temperature.
- Chemical Equilibrium: Electrochemistry, Electrochemical cell, relationship of electrochemical potential to thermodynamic functions. Applications of electrochemistry in energy, material science, sensing.
- Chemical Equilibrium: Molecules in Motion, Molecular motion in gases and liquids, kinetic model, collisions with surfaces, the rate of effusion and transport properties, conductivities of electrolyte solutions.
- Chemical Equilibrium: Rates of Chemical Reactions, Empirical chemical kinetics including experimental methods, rates of reactions, integrated rate laws and temperature dependence of reactions and Reaction mechanism.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the properties of gases, molecules in motion and the rates of chemical reactions.
- CLO 2 understand and demonstrate knowledge of the three laws of thermodynamics.
- CLO 3 understand and apply the concepts of chemical equilibrium and the response of chemical equilibria to temperature and pressure.
- CLO 4 understand and demonstrate knowledge of electrochemistry and its relationship to thermodynamics, can build electrochemical cell and calculate thermodynamic functions from electrochemical reactions.
- CLO 5 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of basic reaction dynamics including reaction mechanism and how mechanism determines reaction rate law.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
- Pass in CHEM1042; and NOT for students who have passed CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before);
- Pass in CHEM1042 and CHEM1043; and NOT for students who have passed CHEM2041, or already enrolled in this course (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)

Offer in 2017 - 2018:
- Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y
- Examination: Dec May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show thorough grasp of the subject. Demonstrate strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show substantial grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Demonstrate evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and
Course Type: Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- Activities: Details
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Methods: Details
  - Assignments: including tests
  - Examination: 30 (CLO 1,2,3,4)
  - Examination: 70 (CLO 1,2,3,4)

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- "Physical Chemistry" by P. W. Atkins, latest edition

Additional Course Information:
CHEM2541 will be offered in semester 2 only starting from 2018-19.

CHEM3141

Environmental chemistry (6 credits)

Offering Department: Chemistry

Quota: 100

Course Objectives:
This course introduces students to Environmental Chemistry and enables them to understand the chemical principles involved in various environmental phenomena and processes.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Atmosphere chemistry: atmospheric composition and behavior, ozone in the stratosphere, chemistry of the troposphere, air pollution
- Water Chemistry: property of water, water resources and cycle, chemical quality of natural water, acid-base chemistry, oxidation-reduction chemistry, water purification
- Organic pollutants: persistent organic pollutants, pesticides, toxicology
- Energy: energy resources, fossil fuels, solar energy, nuclear energy, energy conversion (heat engine, fuel cells)
- Waste treatment: domestic and hazardous waste treatment (landfill, incineration, air stripping, adsorption, oxidation)

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge on chemical principles of the various environmental phenomena and processes
- CLO 2 describe the practical processes of chemistry in atmosphere, water purification, waste treatment, and energy production
- CLO 3 critically discuss local and global environmental issues based on scientific principles and data
- CLO 4 apply knowledge to analyze chemical processes involved in various environmental problems

Course Type:
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- Activities: Details
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Methods: Details
  - Assignments: continuous assessment
  - Examination: 30 (CLO 1,2,3,4)
  - Examination: 70 (CLO 1,2,3,4)

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- C. Baird and M. Cann: Environmental Chemistry, Freeman, latest edition

Additional Course Information:
CHEM2541 will be offered in semester 2 only starting from 2018-19.

CHEM3142

Chemical process industries and analysis (6 credits)

Offering Department: Chemistry

Quota: 60

Course Objectives:
This course introduces students to Chemical Process Industries and Analysis and enables them to understand the chemical principles involved in various environmental phenomena and processes.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Atmosphere chemistry: atmospheric composition and behavior, ozone in the stratosphere, chemistry of the troposphere, air pollution
- Water Chemistry: property of water, water resources and cycle, chemical quality of natural water, acid-base chemistry, oxidation-reduction chemistry, water purification
- Organic pollutants: persistent organic pollutants, pesticides, toxicology
- Energy: energy resources, fossil fuels, solar energy, nuclear energy, energy conversion (heat engine, fuel cells)
- Waste treatment: domestic and hazardous waste treatment (landfill, incineration, air stripping, adsorption, oxidation)

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 critically discuss local and global environmental issues based on scientific principles and data
- CLO 2 describe the practical processes of chemistry in atmosphere, water purification, waste treatment, and energy production
- CLO 3 critically discuss local and global environmental issues based on scientific principles and data
- CLO 4 apply knowledge to analyze chemical processes involved in various environmental problems

Course Type:
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- Activities: Details
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Methods: Details
  - Assignments: continuous assessment
  - Examination: 30 (CLO 1,2,3,4)
  - Examination: 70 (CLO 1,2,3,4)

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- C. Baird and M. Cann: Environmental Chemistry, Freeman, latest edition

Course Type:
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- Activities: Details
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Methods: Details
  - Assignments: continuous assessment
  - Examination: 30 (CLO 1,2,3,4)
  - Examination: 70 (CLO 1,2,3,4)

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- C. Baird and M. Cann: Environmental Chemistry, Freeman, latest edition

Course Type:
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- Activities: Details
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Methods: Details
  - Assignments: continuous assessment
  - Examination: 30 (CLO 1,2,3,4)
  - Examination: 70 (CLO 1,2,3,4)

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- C. Baird and M. Cann: Environmental Chemistry, Freeman, latest edition
Course Co-ordinator: Prof G K Y Chan, Chemistry (hrscoky@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved:
(Dr V C Y Li, Chemistry)
(Dr Y H So, Chemistry)
(Visiting Professor, Chemistry)

Course Objectives:
To familiarize with typical chemical industries important in local and global economy. To understand the technology of chemicals manufacturing and chemical processes in general industry.

Course Contents & Topics:
Process flow charts, units and conversions, materials and energy balances, unit operations. Selection of chemical processes to include variation in products, scale, and types of operation, e.g. for petrochemical industries, industrial gases, beverage processes, chloroalkaline manufacturing.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1: solve basic problems of energy and mass balances in chemical and environmental processes
- CLO 2: be familiarized with a few common chemical industries and chemical processes
- CLO 3: understand some general principles of industrial practice through plant visits

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in CHEM2041 or CHEM2341 or CHEM2441 or CHEM2541

Offer in 2017 - 2018:
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Examination: May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):
A: Demonstrate thorough knowledge of industrial chemical processes and mastery of mass and energy balance skills required for attaining all of the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems in a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Critical use of data and sourcing of references. Apply highly effective organizational and presentation skills.

B: Demonstrate substantial knowledge of industrial chemical processes and command of mass and energy balance skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems in familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Correct use of data and sourcing of references. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills.

C: Demonstrate general but incomplete knowledge of industrial chemical processes and command of mass and energy balance skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems in most familiar situations. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and references. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills.

D: Demonstrate partial but limited knowledge of industrial chemical processes and command of mass and energy balance skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limited ability to use data and source references. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentation skills.

Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of knowledge of industrial chemical processes and command of mass and energy balance skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Misuse of data and references. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type:
Lecture with laboratory component course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
Assignments: continuous assessment (5)
Examination: (70)
Test: (25)

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
Felder and Rousseau: Elementary Principles of Chemical Processes

Additional Course Information:
Laboratory courses are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

CHEM3143 Introduction to materials chemistry (6 credits)

Offering Department: Chemistry
Quota: 100

Offering Department: Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator: Prof W K Chan, Chemistry (waichan@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved:
(Prof W K Chan, Chemistry)

Course Objectives:
This course provides an introduction to materials chemistry. The goal is to present the fundamental knowledge of various types of materials including their structure, synthesis, and properties. This course is essential for students who wish to take advanced materials courses.

Course Contents & Topics:
Classification of materials; structure of crystalline solids; phases and phase transformation; defects and mechanical properties; alloys and ceramics; introduction to soft matter; structure, synthesis, and properties of polymers; colloids; liquid crystals; viscoelasticity; applications of materials; characterization techniques.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1: describe different materials classification and their composition, structures, and properties, and to apprehend the concept of structure/property relationship
- CLO 2 explain different structures and phases, phase transformation in solid materials
- CLO 3 understand defects in crystalline solid materials and relate them with mechanical properties
- CLO 4 appreciate soft materials and some examples and characteristics
- CLO 5 understand the concept of molecular weight distribution in polymers, and explain the effect of polymerization kinetics to their properties
- CLO 6 identify examples of some important materials, and explain their structure-property relationship
- CLO 7 demonstrate knowledge in materials characterizations

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in CHEM2441; and Pass in CHEM2541 or CHEM2341

Offer in 2017 - 2018:
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Examination: Dec

Grade Descriptors:
A: Demonstrate thorough knowledge of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories related to classification of materials. Show
deep understanding of materials structures at different length scales and the relationship with materials properties particularly for classical solid materials and soft materials. Show extensive knowledge in synthesis, characterization and applications of common polymers. Demonstrate strong ability to apply/integrate knowledge and theory related to the synthesis and applications of materials. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data/experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions related to materials synthesis/characterization.

B
Demonstrate thorough knowledge of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories related to classification of materials. Show deep understanding of materials structures at different length scales and the relationship with materials properties particularly for classical solid materials and soft materials. Show limited knowledge in synthesis, characterization and applications of common polymers. Demonstrate evidence to apply/integrate knowledge and theory related to the synthesis and applications of materials. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data/experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions related to materials synthesis/characterization.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories related to classification of materials. Show some but insufficient understanding of materials structures at different length scales and the relationship with materials properties particularly for classical solid materials and soft materials. Show limited knowledge in synthesis, characterization and applications of common polymers. Demonstrate evidence to apply/integrate knowledge and theory related to the synthesis and applications of materials. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data/experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions related to materials synthesis/characterization.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories related to classification of materials. Show deep understanding of materials structures at different length scales and the relationship with materials properties particularly for classical solid materials and soft materials. Show limited knowledge in synthesis, characterization and applications of common polymers. Demonstrate evidence to apply/integrate knowledge and theory related to the synthesis and applications of materials. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data/experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions related to materials synthesis/characterization.

Fail
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories related to classification of materials. Show little or no understanding of materials structures at different length scales and the relationship with materials properties particularly for classical solid materials and soft materials. Show little or no knowledge in synthesis, characterization and applications of common polymers. Demonstrate limited or no evidence of ability to apply/integrate knowledge and theory related to the synthesis and applications of materials. Show little or no ability to analyze novel problems and mostly correct but erroneous use of data/experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions related to materials synthesis/characterization.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>(continuous assessment)</td>
<td>30 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in any CHEM2XXX level course

Chemical Engineering: An Introduction (6 credits)
Principles and applications of spectroscopic and analytical techniques

Offering Department
Chemistry

Course Co-ordinator
Dr X Li, Chemistry (xiangli@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

Course Objectives
To cover the principles and applications of modern practical spectroscopic and analytical techniques. This course is a pre-requisite for the advanced chemistry courses.

Course Contents & Topics

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the basic principles and applications of IR, UV/Vis, MS and NMR spectroscopic techniques
- CLO 2 describe and explain the terminology of IR, UV/Vis, MS and NMR spectroscopies
- CLO 3 perform chemical structure elucidation and analysis based on UV/Vis, MS and NMR spectroscopic data

Assessment to CLO Mapping -

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
<th>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A
Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations.

B
Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Fail
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>15 CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Academic Year
2017

Quota
200
CHEM3241  Analytical chemistry II: chemical instrumentation (6 credits)  Academic Year  2017
Offering Department  Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator  Dr W T Chan, Chemistry (wtchan@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved  (Dr I K Chu, Chemistry)
(Dr W T Chan, Chemistry)
Course Objectives  To cover the basic principles and applications of chemical instrumentation. This course aims to provide working knowledge, in addition to the principles, of instruments that are commonly used in chemical laboratories.
Course Contents & Topics  Optical methods: Beer’s Law; UV-visible, infrared, and atomic spectrometry; fluorescence; atomic mass spectrometry; grating spectrometer; photon detectors and thermal detectors.
Separation methods: partition; chromatography theories; high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and gas chromatography (GC); instrumental set up of HPLC and GC.
Mass spectrometry; fundamental concept of mass spectrometry; electrospray ionization (ESI) and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI); time-of-flight (TOF) and quadrupole (Q) mass analyzers.
Course Learning Outcomes  On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 explain the principles of the optical methods, separation methods, and mass spectrometry
- CLO 2 describe the basic experimental set up and the properties of the basic components of the instruments used in the laboratory classes
- CLO 3 apply experimental skills in chemical analysis including sample preparation, standard solution preparation, instrument calibration, and matrix effects correction (standard additions)
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)  Pass in CHEM2241
Offer in 2017 - 2018  Y 1st sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)  Examination  Dec
A - Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of strong analytical abilities, logical and independent thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. - Demonstrate highly proficient lab skills and techniques and critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. - Demonstrate highly effective organization and presentation skills
B - Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of analytical abilities and logical thinking, some evidence of independent thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. - Demonstrate proficient lab skills and techniques and correct use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate effective organization and presentation skills.
C - Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of some analytical abilities and logical thinking, little evidence of independent thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. - Demonstrate adequate lab skills and test techniques and mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate moderately effective organization and presentation skills.
D - Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. - Show evidence of limited analytical abilities, little or no evidence of independent thinking, and limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. - Demonstrate partially effective lab skills and techniques and limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate adequate or incomplete understanding of the subject. - Show little or no evidence of analytical abilities, logical and independent thinking, and very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. - Demonstrate minimal effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques and misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate inconsistent organization and poor presentation skills.
Fail - Demonstrate little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. - Show little or no evidence of analytical abilities, logical and independent thinking, and very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. - Demonstrate minimal effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques and misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate inconsistent organization and poor presentation skills.
Course Type  Lecture with laboratory component course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities  Assessment Methods and Weighing
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 24
Laboratory 28
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100
Assessment Methods and Weighing  Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination 65 CLO 1,2,3
Laboratory reports including an oral examination 25 CLO 1,2,3
Test 10 CLO 1,2,3
Additional Course Information  Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.
CHEM3242  Food and water analysis (6 credits)  Academic Year  2017
Offering Department  Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator  Dr K M Ng, Chemistry (kwannmg@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved  (Dr K M Ng, Chemistry)
Course Objectives  To cover areas in the application and new methodology development in analytical chemistry with focus on food and water analysis.
Course Contents & Topics  Chemical Analysis in Practicing Laboratories: Use of standard methods, guidelines and standards for food and water analysis; good laboratory practice; reliability and quality issues in chemical analysis.
Food Analysis: Requirement of nutritional labeling; determination of food nutritional value (e.g. total protein content, sodium content); detection of food adulteration and contamination (e.g. presence of banned additives, toxins, undeclared components); recent issues and case studies in food analysis.
Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 identify and determine errors and uncertainty of analytical results
CLO 2 apply measures taken to control quality and ensure reliability of analytical results
CLO 3 demonstrate a general knowledge in food and water analysis
CLO 4 understand issues in public health protection related to chemical analysis
CLO 5 carry out analytical techniques used in practicing food and water laboratories

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in CHEM2041 or CHEM2241 or CHEM2341 or CHEM2441 or CHEM2541.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate through a thorough grasp of the knowledge and skills required in theory and laboratory work in food and water analysis to acquire accurate results with full interpretation for analytical application as described in all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities, logical thinking and capability to apply knowledge learnt to solve a wide range of complex issues and problems related to the analysis of food and water. Apply highly effective organization and presentation skills as shown in class work.

B Demonstrate a substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities, logical thinking, and capability to apply knowledge learnt to solve a wide range of complex issues and problems related to the analysis of food and water. Apply effective organization and presentation skills as shown in class work.

C Demonstrate a general command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities, logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge learnt to solve a wide range of complex issues and problems related to the analysis of food and water. Apply effective organization and presentation skills as shown in class work.

D Demonstrate a partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes in Food and Water Analysis. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems related to the analysis of food and water. Apply limited or barely effective organization and presentation skill as shown in class work.

Fail Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems related to the analysis of food and water. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective as shown in class work.

Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>Experiment &amp; Lab report</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 2,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Additional Course Information

References to specialist texts and other published material will be made throughout the course. Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

CHEM3243

Introductory instrumental chemical analysis (6 credits)

Offering Department: Chemistry

Academic Year: 2017

Quota: 65
Offer in 2017 - 2018

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

**A**: - Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of strong analytical abilities, logical and independent thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. - Demonstrate highly proficient lab skills and techniques and critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. - Demonstrate highly effective organization and presentation skills.

**B**: - Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of analytical abilities and logical thinking, some evidence of independent thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. - Demonstrate proficient lab skills and techniques and correct use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate effective organization and presentation skills.

**C**: - Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of some analytical abilities and logical thinking, little evidence of independent thinking, and ability to apply to most familiar situations. - Demonstrate adequate lab skills and techniques and mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate moderately effective organization and presentation skills.

**D**: - Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. - Show evidence of limited analytical abilities, little or no evidence of independent thinking, and limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. - Demonstrate partially effective lab skills and techniques and limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate limited or barely effective organization and presentation skills.

**Fail**: - Demonstrate little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. - Show little or no evidence of analytical abilities, logical and independent thinking, and very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. - Demonstrate minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques and misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate Ineffective organization and poor presentation skills.

Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Additional Course Information

Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

CHEM3244

Offering Department: Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator: Dr X Li, Chemistry (xiangli@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr K C J Wong, Pharmacology and Pharmacy) (Dr X Li, Chemistry)

Course Objectives

This course is designed for Bachelor of Pharmacy students to provide an overview of different analytical and measurement techniques that are important to pharmacology and pharmaceutical sciences.

Course Contents & Topics

Principles and Applications of different analytical and measurement techniques in pharmaceutical sciences such as drug analysis and pharmacokinetics studies.

Analysis and quality assurance: statistical analysis of data, control chart.

Analysis by Optical methods: Beer’s Law; instrumentation, grating spectrometer, detectors; absorption spectrometry: UV-visible, infrared, and atomic; emission spectrometry;

Sample Separation and Purification: partition; chromatography theories; high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC) and gas chromatography (GC); instrumentation of HPLC and GC.

Molecular Mass Measurements: mass spectrometry-fundamental concepts; various ionization techniques including electrospray ionization (ESI) and matrix-assisted laser desorption ionization (MALDI); time-of-flight (TOF) and quadrupole (Q) mass analyzers; use of mass spectrometry in drug analysis.

Nuclear magnetic resonance: basic principles; instrumentation; applications in structure determination of molecules of biological and pharmaceutical importance.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the principles of different optical methods, separation methods, mass spectrometry, NMR spectroscopy and their applications in pharmaceutical sciences

CLO 2 describe the basic experimental set up and the properties of the basic components of the instruments used in the laboratory classes

CLO 3 apply experimental skills in chemical analysis including sample preparation, standard solution preparation, instrument calibration, matrix effects correction (standard additions)

Pre-requisites and Co-requisites

Pass in BPHM2136
(This course is for BPharm students only)

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem  Y 2nd sem  Examination  May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

**A**: - Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of strong analytical abilities, logical and independent thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. - Demonstrate highly proficient lab skills and techniques and critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. - Demonstrate highly effective organization and presentation skills.

**B**: - Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of analytical abilities and logical thinking, some evidence of independent thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. - Demonstrate proficient lab skills and techniques and correct use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate effective organization and presentation skills.

**C**: - Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. - Show evidence of some analytical abilities and logical thinking, little evidence of independent thinking, and ability to apply to most familiar situations. - Demonstrate adequate lab skills and techniques and mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. - Demonstrate moderately effective organization and presentation skills.

503
Inorganic chemistry II (6 credits)  

**Course Type**  
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Learning & Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2-3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**


**Additional Course Information**

This course is for Pharmacy students ONLY. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

**Course Contents & Topics**

Chemistry of selected classes of inorganic, coordination and organometallic compounds including mechanisms of their reaction where appropriate.  
Structure, bonding, magnetism and spectral properties of inorganic systems including examples in bioinorganic systems.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge of chemistry of selected classes of inorganic, coordination and organometallic compounds  
CLO 2 understand structure, bonding, magnetism and spectral properties of inorganic systems  
CLO 3 understand mechanisms of selected chemical reactions that are essential to coordination and organometallic compounds  
CLO 4 gain appropriate knowledge of coordination compounds in biological systems

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in CHEM2341

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Y 1st sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

**A**  
Demonstrate thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry, especially those related to structure and bonding of inorganic, coordination and organometallic compounds; mechanisms of reactions; and magnetic and spectral properties of inorganic systems including examples in bioinorganic systems. Show strong ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Show strong ability to analyze novel problems and critical use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions relating to the essential and more advanced foundation principles and knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Demonstrate highly effective laboratory skills and techniques, especially in the synthesis and reactivity study of inorganic compounds and metal complexes, and their characterization by various spectroscopic methods.

**B**  
Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry, especially those related to structure and bonding of inorganic, coordination and organometallic compounds; mechanisms of reactions; and magnetic and spectral properties of inorganic systems including examples in bioinorganic systems. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Show evidence to analyze novel problems and correct use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the essential and more advanced foundation principles and knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Demonstrate effective laboratory skills and techniques, especially in the synthesis and reactivity study of inorganic compounds and metal complexes, and their characterization by various spectroscopic methods.

**C**  
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry, especially those related to structure and bonding of inorganic, coordination and organometallic compounds; mechanisms of reactions; and magnetic and spectral properties of inorganic systems including examples in bioinorganic systems. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the essential and more advanced foundation principles and knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Demonstrate moderately effective laboratory skills and techniques, especially in the synthesis and reactivity study of inorganic compounds and metal complexes, and their characterization by various spectroscopic methods.

**D**  
Demonstrate partial but limited knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry, especially those related to structure and bonding of inorganic, coordination and organometallic compounds; mechanisms of reactions; and magnetic and spectral properties of inorganic systems including examples in bioinorganic systems. Show evidence of limited abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Show limited ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the essential and more advanced foundation principles and knowledge of inorganic chemistry. Demonstrate partially effective laboratory skills and techniques, especially in the synthesis and reactivity study of inorganic compounds and metal complexes, and their characterization by various spectroscopic methods.

**Fail**  
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the more advanced foundation knowledge of inorganic chemistry, especially those related to structure and
### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>including lab report &amp; test</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- Catherine, Housecroft & Sharpe, Inorganic Chemistry (3rd Ed.), Prentice Hall, 2008

### Additional Course Information
Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

### Course Information

#### Course Code
CHEM3342

#### Course Title
Bioinorganic chemistry (6 credits)

#### Course Description
This course is a continuation from Basic Inorganic Chemistry and Basic Organic Chemistry, giving further and more details of inorganic chemistry in biological systems, with examples relevance to biological processes and medical science, suited to the needs of those intending to extend their studies in (bio)chemistry and biomedical science.

### Course Objectives

- This course is a continuation from Basic Inorganic Chemistry and Basic Organic Chemistry, giving further and more details of inorganic chemistry in biological systems, with examples relevance to biological processes and medical science, suited to the needs of those intending to extend their studies in (bio)chemistry and biomedical science.

### Course Contents & Topics

- Bioinorganic Chemistry of selected topics of interest. Examples include the inorganic chemistry (and biochemistry) behind the requirement of biological cells for metals such as zinc, iron and copper; and metals in medicine such as mechanisms by which organisms obtain required metal ions from their environment, and use of metal-containing compounds in treating diseases such as cancer.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the principles and concepts of inorganic/organic chemistry in biological system
- CLO 2 understand structure, bonding, and spectral properties of selected metals in proteins and nucleic acids
- CLO 3 understand chemical mechanisms of selected metal homeostasis (i.e. uptake, transport and storage)
- CLO 4 understand the role of metal complexes medicine

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in CHEM2341

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry, especially those related to hard-soft acid-base theory; chelation; structure and bonding of metals in biological systems; thermodynamic and kinetic aspects of metal ions in biological processes and their relevance to metal homeostasis; metal-based drugs. Show strong ability to analyze novel problems and correct use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Demonstrate highly effective basic techniques, especially in the characterization of inorganic active site and overall metallo-biomolecules.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry, especially those related to hard-soft acid-base theory; chelation; structure and bonding of metals in biological systems; thermodynamic and kinetic aspects of metal ions in biological processes and their relevance to metal homeostasis; metal-based drugs. Show evidence to analyze novel problems and correct use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Demonstrate effective basic techniques, especially in the characterization of inorganic active site and overall metallo-biomolecules.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry, especially those related to hard-soft acid-base theory; chelation; structure and bonding of metals in biological systems; thermodynamic and kinetic aspects of metal ions in biological processes and their relevance to metal homeostasis; metal-based drugs. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Demonstrate moderately effective basic techniques, especially in the characterization of inorganic active site and overall metallo-biomolecules.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate limited but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry, especially those related to hard-soft acid-base theory; chelation; structure and bonding of metals in biological systems; thermodynamic and kinetic aspects of metal ions in biological processes and their relevance to metal homeostasis; metal-based drugs. Show evidence of limited abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Show limited ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Demonstrate partially effective basic techniques, especially in the characterization of inorganic active site and overall metallo-biomolecules.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry, especially those related to hard-soft acid-base theory; chelation; structure and bonding of metals in biological systems; thermodynamic and kinetic aspects of metal ions in biological processes and their relevance to metal homeostasis; metal-based drugs. Show little or no evidence of abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Show little or no ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of bioinorganic chemistry. Demonstrate minimally effective basic techniques, especially in the characterization of inorganic active site and overall metallo-biomolecules.</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As a continuation from CHEM2441 Organic Chemistry I, this course aims to provide a solid foundation of organic chemistry together with CHEM2441. It focuses primarily on the basic principles to understand the structure and reactivity of organic molecules, with examples illustrating the role of organic chemistry in daily life and industry.

Course Contents & Topics
Chemistry of common organic functional groups: ketones and aldehydes; carboxylic acids and their derivatives; amines; aromatic compounds. Principles of organic synthesis. Detailed considerations of reaction mechanisms. Spectroscopic tools (UV-Vis, IR, NMR, and MS) for characterization and identification of organic compounds.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 draw correct structural representations of organic molecules
CLO 2 understand the basic principles of structure and reactivity of organic molecules
CLO 3 determine structures of organic compounds based on spectroscopic data
CLO 4 write reasonable mechanisms for transformations of common functional groups (alcohols, ethers, carbonyl compounds, aldehydes, ketones, carboxylic acids, acyl halides, anhydrides, esters, amides, nitriles, and amines)
CLO 5 appreciate the importance of organic chemistry in daily life
CLO 6 devise synthetic pathways to organic compounds using functional group chemistry

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in CHEM2441

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination Dec May

Course Type Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Methods
Assignments (continuous assessment of assignments and presentation) 25 CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination 75 CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Lippard, S. J. and Berg, J. M. Principles of Bioinorganic Chemistry (University Science Books; Mill Valley, CA, 1994)

CHEM3441 Organic chemistry II (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator Dr X Y Li (1st sem); Prof D Yang (2nd sem), Chemistry (xiaoyuli@hku.hk; yangdan@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr X Li,Chemistry)
(Prof D Yang,Chemistry)
Course Objectives
Chemistry of common organic functional groups: ketones and aldehydes; carboxylic acids and their derivatives; amines; aromatic compounds. Principles of organic synthesis. Detailed considerations of reaction mechanisms. Spectroscopic tools (UV-Vis, IR, NMR, and MS) for characterization and identification of organic compounds.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 have a basic understanding of biologically important organic molecules
CLO 2 have a basic understanding of enzyme catalysis
CLO 3 devise synthetic pathways to organic compounds using functional group chemistry
CLO 4 appreciate the importance of organic chemistry in daily life
CLO 5 be able to apply knowledge to most familiar situations.
CLO 6 demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Grade Descriptors
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.

Assessment Methods Details No. of Hours
Examination 1 x 3 hr written examination 70 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6
Test Test and assignments 30 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6

CLO 3 appreciate how organic chemistry plays an important role in biology and biochemistry

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</th>
<th>Pass in CHEM2442 or CHEM2443 or CHEM3441</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer in 2017 - 2018</td>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td>Examination Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive biomolecule organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of biomolecule organic chemistry with a broad range of knowledge, and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of biomolecule organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar problems. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of biomolecule organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of biomolecule organic chemistry knowledge, and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CHEM3443</th>
<th>Organic chemistry laboratory (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Quota</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr A M Y Yuen, Chemistry (<a href="mailto:muyian@hku.hk">muyian@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr A M Y Yuen,Chemistry)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>To provide students with intensive hands-on training of experimental chemistry techniques on organic reactions; and the opportunity to develop analytical and critical thinking skills through scientific investigations in organic chemistry experiments. The course focuses on the practical aspects of a variety of organic reactions, including and multistep syntheses. Chromatographic, instrumental, and spectroscopic techniques are also discussed to give a holistic training of experimental organic chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>The course will include the following laboratory skills and practices: laboratory safety practice; preparation, purification, and characterization of organic compounds; gas and liquid chromatography; ultraviolet-visible spectrophotometry; infrared spectroscopy; NMR spectroscopy and melting point determination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM2441; and pass in CHEM3441, or already enrolled in this course: NOT for students who have passed CHEM3441A in semester 1, 2015-16, or CHEM3441 in or before 2014-2015 (for students admitted in 2014-15 or before) Pass in CHEM2441 or CHEM2442 or CHEM2443; and Pass in CHEM3441 or CHEM3442, or already enrolled in any of these two courses (for students admitted in 2015-16 or thereafter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td>Examination May</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate extensive knowledge and thorough command of concepts and principles which are required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Competently conduct experiment with efficient lab skills and techniques. Critically appraise data to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show substantial grasp and mastery of the subject knowledge. Demonstrate evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show general but incomplete grasp of the subject knowledge. Demonstrate evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Show moderately effective lab skills and techniques.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show partial comprehension of basic concepts and principles and weak ability to apply them. Demonstrate evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate partially effective lab skills and techniques. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Ability to recall some of factual information of the subject. Show a partial comprehension of basic concepts and principles and weak ability to apply them. Demonstrate evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate partially effective lab skills and techniques. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Type</td>
<td>Lecture with laboratory component course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>12 x 4-hr lab sessions</td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>(20% practical exam and 30% written exam)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>(Include Lab quiz, lab performance, pre-lab worksheet and lab report)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Required/recommended reading and online materials

- **John W. Lehman**: *Operational Organic Chemistry - A Problem-Solving Approach to the Laboratory Course* (Pearson, latest edition)

## Additional Course Information

Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

## CHEM3445

### Integrated laboratory (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Quota</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Teachers Involved   | Dr A M Y Yuen, Chemistry (maiyan@hku.hk) |

| Course Objectives   | This course aims to provide students with experience using techniques employed in synthetic organic and organometallic chemistry. This advanced synthesis course covering a variety of synthetic methods, including vacuum and inert atmosphere techniques to prepare organic and organometallic compounds; methods for separation of mixtures and isolation of products by use of column and thin-layer chromatography, sublimation and extraction techniques. Experiments on characterization and identification by chemical and spectrometric methods form an important part of the course. The use of the chemical literature in molecular design and synthesis planning is also included. |

### Course Contents & Topics

The course will include the following laboratory skills and practices: laboratory safety practice; molecular design, synthesis planning, experimental set up, purification, and characterization of organic compounds using modern instrumentation techniques.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1**: Demonstrate a good practice of laboratory safety and exercise proper procedures for safe handling and usage of chemicals
- **CLO 2**: Demonstrate proficiency in synthetic chemical laboratory techniques
- **CLO 3**: Apply modern instrumentation techniques to characterize organic compounds and draw conclusions from the results
- **CLO 4**: Analyze the influence of chemical structure on the physical and chemical properties of organic molecules
- **CLO 5**: Demonstrate problem-solving skills, critical thinking and analytical reasoning

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in CHEM3443 or already enrolled in this course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>No Exam</td>
<td>A: Demonstrate extensive knowledge and thorough command of concepts and principles which are required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Competently conduct experiment with efficient lab skills and techniques. Critically appraise data to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show substantial grasp and mastery of the subject knowledge. Demonstrate evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Show effective lab skills and techniques and critical analysis of experimental data. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show general but incomplete grasp of the subject knowledge. Demonstrate evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Show moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Demonstrated some ability to analyze experimental data critically. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining course learning outcomes. Ability to recall some of factual information of the subject. Show a partial comprehension of basic concepts and principles and weak ability to apply them. Demonstrate evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate partially effective lab skills and techniques. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Organization and presential skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>(Practical Examination 25%; Lab report 10%; Lab performance 10%)</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>(Include Lab quiz, lab performance, pre-lab worksheet and lab report)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Test/ Quiz</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>35</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Additional Course Information

- **John W. Lehman**: *Operational Organic Chemistry - A Problem-Solving Approach to the Laboratory Course* (Pearson, latest edition)
**CHEM3541**

**Physical chemistry: Introduction to quantum chemistry (6 credits)**

**Offering Department:** Chemistry  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof G H Chen, Chemistry (ghc@yangtze.hku.hk)

**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof A S C Cheung, Chemistry

**Course Objectives:** The course presents fundamental principles and topics on quantum chemistry in order to provide a soiled foundation for students intending to further their studies in chemistry.


**Course Learning Outcomes:** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

1. Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and general but incomplete grasp of the subject, ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.

2. Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and substantial grasp of the subject, ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.

3. Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and general but incomplete grasp of the subject, ability to apply knowledge to familiar situations. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

4. Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show partial but limited grasp of the subject, retention of some relevant information of the subject, ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

5. Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject, very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):** Pass in CHEM2541

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- **A** Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.

- **B** Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and substantial grasp of the subject, ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.

- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and general but incomplete grasp of the subject, ability to apply knowledge to familiar situations. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show partial but limited grasp of the subject, retention of some relevant information of the subject, ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject, very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

**Course Type:** Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

- Lectures: 24 hours  
- Laboratory: 24 hours  
- Tutorials: 6 hours  
- Reading / Self study: 100 hours

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

- Examination: 70%  
- Laboratory reports: 20%  
- Test: 10%

**Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**

- CLO 1, 2, 3
- CLO 1, 2, 3, 4
- CLO 1, 2, 3

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- D. A. McQuarrie: Quantum Chemistry (2nd Edition, 2007)

**Additional Course Information**

Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

---

**CHEM3542**

**Physical chemistry: statistical thermodynamics and kinetics theory (6 credits)**

**Offering Department:** Chemistry  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr. J Yang, Chemistry (juyang@hku.hk)

**Course Co-ordinator:** (Dr. J Yang, Chemistry)

**Course Objectives:** The course presents fundamental principles and topics on statistical thermodynamics and kinetic theory in order to provide a solid foundation for students intending to further their studies in physical chemistry and related fields.

**Course Contents & Topics:** Principles of Statistical Thermodynamics  
- Thermodynamic laws  
- Ensembles and partition functions: microcanonical, canonical and grand-canonical  
- Systems of independent molecules: ideal gas  
- Molecular degrees of freedom: translation, rotation, vibration, and electronic  
- Ideal gas mixture: chemical equilibrium, binding, and titration  
- Quantum statistics

Chemical equilibrium and kinetics theory

---
Course Learning Outcomes

- Rate theory: collision theory, transition state theory, electron transfer
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1 understand and use the terminology and nomenclature in statistical thermodynamics and topics discussed in the course
  - CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of basic concepts in statistical thermodynamics
  - CLO 3 understand correlation between macroscopic observables and microscopic statistical model systems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in CHEM2541

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors

(A+ to F)

A

Thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate evidence of strong analytical / critical abilities and logical thinking. Can apply the knowledge to practical questions in Physical Chemistry.

B

Substantial command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate evidence of analytical / critical abilities and logical thinking. Understand the scope of Physical Chemistry questions that can be applied with the knowledge.

C

General but incomplete command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate evidence of analytical thinking. Can apply the knowledge to familiar situations.

D

Partial but limited command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate limited evidence of analytical thinking. Understand the question to be solved with knowledge.

Fail

Little or no evidence of command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics.

Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>continuous assessment of on class quizzes &amp; assignments</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

P. Atkins, Physical Chemistry (10th edition)

Course Website

Nil

Additional Course Information

Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass the course.

Students are strongly recommended to take CHEM3541 Physical Chemistry: Introduction to Quantum Chemistry before taking this course.

References:
KA Dill, Molecular driving forces: statistical thermodynamics in biology, chemistry, physics and nanoscience; T. L. Hill, An introduction to Statistical Thermodynamics

CHEM3999

Directed studies in chemistry (6 credits)

Offering Department
Chemistry

Course Co-ordinator
Prof D L Phillips, Chemistry (philips@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Various teachers in the Department, Chemistry)

Course Objectives
This course is designed for third year students who would like to take an early experience on research. It offers students an opportunity to carry out small scale chemical projects by themselves.

Course Contents & Topics
Students interested in taking this course should contact their prospective supervisors in May to determine the contents and the nature of their project in the coming academic year. Prior approval from both the prospective supervisor and the course coordinator is required.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the terminology and nomenclature associated with the small scale chemical project they worked on in the course
- CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of basic concepts involved in their chemical project
- CLO 3 understand the relationships of the their particular chemical project to the wider area of chemistry

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major including a pass in CHEM2341 or CHEM2441 or CHEM2442 or CHEM2541 or CHEM3146.

This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only.

This course is designed for third year students who would like to take an early experience on research.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors

(A+ to F)

A

Show an extensive comprehension of the subject. Demonstrate very able analytical and critical thought with presence of some originality. Illuminating utilization and critical analysis / evaluation of information acquired from a wide range of high quality sources. Critical employment of data and results to synthesize appropriate and illuminating conclusions. Demonstrate integration of a wide range of appropriate theories, principles, data and methods. Employ very effective organizational and presentational skills. [Work of A+ should demonstrate substantial additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.]

B

Show a substantial comprehension of the subject. Demonstrate able analytical and critical thinking with use of relevant information from sources. Demonstrate ability to compose meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations. Correct utilization of data and results to form appropriate conclusions. Compose general integration of theories, principles, data and methods. Perform effective organizational and presentational skills.

C

Show a general but incomplete comprehension of the subject. Presence of some analytical and critical thinking with use of relevant information from sources. Demonstrate ability to compose comparisons between different interpretations. Mainly correct but some incorrect utilization of data and results to form appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate some partial integration of theories, principles, data and methods. Perform moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D

Show a partial but limited comprehension, with knowledge of some relevant information, of the subject. Presence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show utilization and reference of several sources, but mostly via summary instead of by analysis and comparison. Limited ability to employ data and results to form appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate limited integration of theories, principles, data and methods. Perform limited or marginally effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail

Show little or no comprehension of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent

Department of Chemistry

510
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Project-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>discussion &amp; meetings to be arranged by the student and the supervisor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissertation</td>
<td>including a written report and an oral presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required/recommended reading and online materials</td>
<td>Recommended reading material will be assigned depending on the project.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Course Information</td>
<td>Exceptional academic strength of the students is required for taking this course. The course may involve Laboratory component as Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**CHEM4142**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Course Co-ordinator</th>
<th>Teachers Involved</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td>Prof V W W Yam, Chemistry (<a href="mailto:wwyam@hku.hk">wwyam@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td>(Prof C M Che, Chemistry) (Prof V W W Yam, Chemistry)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Objectives**

To introduce the concepts of symmetry and group theory and to apply them in solving chemical problems. This course also provides an introductory treatment of bonding theories, inorganic electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. This course is essential for students who wish to take advanced courses in inorganic chemistry and all types of spectroscopy.

**Course Contents & Topics**

Symmetry elements and symmetry operations; symmetry point groups; reducible and irreducible representations; character tables; direct products; symmetry-adapted linear combinations; projection operators; hybrid orbitals; molecular orbital theory for organic, inorganic and organometallic systems; selected applications in electronic and vibrational spectroscopy.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

1. **CLO 1** understand the basic principles and concepts of symmetry and group theory and to apply them in solving chemical problems
2. **CLO 2** demonstrate knowledge and understanding in the use of character tables and projection operator techniques
3. **CLO 3** demonstrate knowledge and understanding of bonding theories involving hybrid orbitals and molecular orbitals for organic, inorganic and organometallic systems
4. **CLO 4** demonstrate knowledge and understanding in the application of symmetry and group theory in electronic and vibrational spectroscopy

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in CHEM3341

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>1st sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Dec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to symmetry and group theory and their applications in solving chemical problems, especially those related to symmetry elements and symmetry operations; symmetry point groups; reducible and irreducible representations; character tables; direct products; symmetry-adapted linear combinations; projection operators; treatment of bonding theories including hybrid orbitals and molecular orbitals for organic, inorganic and organometallic systems; and applications in electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show strong ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic principles and concepts of symmetry and group theory and their applications in bonding, and electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show strong ability to analyze novel problems and critical use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions relating to the principles and applications of symmetry and group theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to symmetry and group theory and their applications in solving chemical problems, especially those related to symmetry elements and symmetry operations; symmetry point groups; reducible and irreducible representations; character tables; direct products; symmetry-adapted linear combinations; projection operators; treatment of bonding theories including hybrid orbitals and molecular orbitals for organic, inorganic and organometallic systems; and applications in electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show evidence of some ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic principles and concepts of symmetry and group theory and their applications in bonding, and electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show evidence to analyze novel problems and correct use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the principles and applications of symmetry and group theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to symmetry and group theory and their applications in solving chemical problems, especially those related to symmetry elements and symmetry operations; symmetry point groups; reducible and irreducible representations; character tables; direct products; symmetry-adapted linear combinations; projection operators; treatment of bonding theories including hybrid orbitals and molecular orbitals for organic, inorganic and organometallic systems; and applications in electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show evidence of some ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic principles and concepts of symmetry and group theory and their applications in bonding, and electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the principles and applications of symmetry and group theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to symmetry and group theory and their applications in solving chemical problems, especially those related to symmetry elements and symmetry operations; symmetry point groups; reducible and irreducible representations; character tables; direct products; symmetry-adapted linear combinations; projection operators; treatment of bonding theories including hybrid orbitals and molecular orbitals for organic, inorganic and organometallic systems; and applications in electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show evidence of limited abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic principles and concepts of symmetry and group theory and their applications in bonding, and electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show limited ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the principles and applications of symmetry and group theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to symmetry and group theory and their applications in solving chemical problems, especially those related to symmetry elements and symmetry operations; symmetry point groups; reducible and irreducible representations; character tables; direct products; symmetry-adapted linear combinations; projection operators; treatment of bonding theories including hybrid orbitals and molecular orbitals for organic, inorganic and organometallic systems; and applications in electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show little or no evidence of abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic principles and concepts of symmetry and group theory and their applications in bonding, and electronic and vibrational spectroscopy. Show little or no ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the principles and applications of symmetry and group theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Course Information

## CHEM4143
### Interfacial science and technology (6 credits)
#### Offering Department
Chemistry

#### Course Co-ordinator
Prof G K Y Chan, Chemistry (hrsccky@hku.hk)

#### Course Objectives
To understand the science and technology of interfacial phenomena and processes often appeared in high value added products and modern technologies.

#### Course Contents & Topics
Physics and Chemistry of Interfaces: coatings and surfactants, colloids and interfaces, wetting, microemulsion, thin films, nanomaterials, porous materials.

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand interfacial phenomena and their origin from molecular details
- CLO 2 solve problems in interfacial science and technology by applying knowledge of general chemistry, thermodynamics, and kinetics
- CLO 3 be familiarized with technologies that require application of interfacial science, including nanomaterials, nanotechnology, detergency, composite polymers, and porosimetry

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in CHEM3541

#### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
- **A**: Demonstrate thorough knowledge of interfacial science and technology, and mastery of skills required for attaining all of the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems in a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Critical use of data and sourcing of references. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B**: Demonstrate substantial knowledge of interfacial science and technology and command of skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems in familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Correct use of data and sourcing of references. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete knowledge of interfacial science and technology and command of skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems to most familiar situations. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and references. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited knowledge of interfacial science and technology and command of skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limited ability to use data and source references. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of knowledge of interfacial science and technology, and command of skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Misure of data and references. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting
- **Assignments (continuous assessment)**: 25 %
- **Examination**: 75 %

#### Course Type
Lecture-based course

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>or discussion</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Additional Course Information
- **Teachers Involved**: (Prof W K Chan, Chemistry)
- **Course Co-ordinator**: Prof W K Chan, Chemistry
- **Offering Department**: Chemistry
- **Quota**: 50
- **Academic Year**: 2017

## CHEM4144
### Advanced materials (6 credits)
#### Offering Department
Chemistry

#### Course Co-ordinator
Prof W K Chan, Chemistry (waichan@hku.hk)

#### Course Objectives
This course is a continuation from Introduction to Materials Chemistry. It provides a more comprehensive overview on materials chemistry and application of materials in advanced technology. The most recent development in materials chemistry will also be discussed.

#### Course Contents & Topics
Advanced polymerization methods: copolymerization and applications of copolymers, coordination polymerization, control of stereochemistry in polymers; ionic and radical living polymerization. Materials for specialty applications: high strength materials; high temperature polymers, polyelectrolytes, conducting polymers, optical information

---

**References**
- Barnes and Gentle: Interfacial Science
storage, sensors, photonics, electronics, nanotechnology, Advanced materials characterization techniques.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **A:** Demonstrate thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show strong ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show strong ability to analyze novel problems and critical use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions relating to advanced materials synthesis and their properties.

- **B:** Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show evidence to analyze novel problems and correct use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to advanced materials synthesis and their properties.

- **C:** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to advanced materials synthesis and their properties.

- **D:** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show evidence of limited abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show limited ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to advanced materials synthesis and their properties.

- **E:** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show little or no evidence of abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show little or no ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to advanced materials synthesis and their properties.

**Grade Descriptors (A to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrates thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show strong ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show strong ability to analyze novel problems and critical use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate highly effective basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrates substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show evidence to analyze novel problems and correct use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate moderate ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show strong ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrates general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrates partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show evidence of limited abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show limited ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Demonstrates little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to frontier approach in polymer synthesis, properties, application, and characterization of materials for advanced technology. Show little or no evidence of abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show little or no ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Contents & Topics

- Drug discovery, design, and development: lead discovery, pharmacophore, structure-activity relationships (SAR), computer-aided drug design, combinatorial chemistry and high-throughput drug screening
- Drug-Receptor interactions
- Proteins (and enzymes) and nucleic acids as drug targets
- Metals in medicine
- DNA-Drug interactions
- Drug metabolism and produgs and drug delivery

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1:** demonstrate knowledge of drug discovery, design and development
- **CLO 2:** understand drug-biomolecule interactions where appropriate
- **CLO 3:** gain appropriate knowledge of drug metabolism and drug delivery

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in CHEM3441 or CHEM3442

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry, especially those related to drug discovery, design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationships; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show strong ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show strong ability to analyze novel problems and critical use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate highly effective basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show evidence to analyze novel problems and correct use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate moderate ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the synthesis and applications of advanced materials. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>(continuous assessment)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Requirement/Recommended reading and online materials

- Other specialist references will be given throughout the course.
to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry, especially those related to drug discovery; design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationship; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show evidence to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate effective basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry; especially those related to drug discovery; design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationship; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate moderately effective basic techniques, basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.

B
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry; especially those related to drug discovery; design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationship; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show evidence of limited abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show limited ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate partially effective basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.

A
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry; especially those related to drug discovery; design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationship; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show little or no evidence of abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show little or no ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate minimally effective basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

- Activities
  - Lectures
  - Tutorials
  - Reading / Self study

- Details
  - No. of Hours
  - Lectures 36
  - Tutorials 12
  - Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting

- Methods
  - Assignments
  - Examination

- Details
  - Weighting in final course grade (%)
  - No. of Hours
  - Assignments 25
  - Examination 75

- Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
  - CLO 1,2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials
An Introduction to Medicinal Chemistry (3/e), G.L. Patrick, Oxford University Press, 2005
Medicinal Chemistry--An Introduction, G. Thomas, John Wiley, 2000

Additional Course Information
This course is also offered to RPg students, and the course code for RPg students is CHEM6113.

CHEM4147
Supramolecular chemistry (6 credits)

Offering Department
Chemistry

Quota
40

Course Co-ordinator
Dr H Y Au-Yeung, Chemistry (hoyauy@bku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Dr H Y Au-Yeung, Chemistry)
(Prof Y F Wang, Chemistry)

Course Objectives
Supramolecular chemistry concerns the chemistry beyond that of molecules. This course aims at introducing students to concepts and techniques in supramolecular chemistry, demonstrating how molecular assembly and supramolecular structures leads to functions and properties, and their relevance to material and biological science.

Course Contents & Topics
Basic concepts in molecular recognition and self-assembly; non-covalent interactions and common supramolecular building blocks; methods in supramolecular chemistry. Selected topics in modern supramolecular chemistry, such as macrocycles and cages, molecular capsule and container molecules, synthetic receptors, interlocked structures, supramolecular polymers and supramolecular chemistry of biomolecules and biomaterials, will also be discussed.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 Understand important principles and concepts in supramolecular chemistry.
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete amount of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry; especially those related to drug discovery; design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationship; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and properties of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate generally effective basic techniques, basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.

- CLO 2 Demonstrate knowledge and understanding in the nature of non-covalent interactions and to apply these concepts in the design and explanation of the structures, properties and functions of different supramolecular systems.
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry; especially those related to drug discovery; design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationship; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and properties of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate generally effective basic techniques, basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.

- CLO 3 Interpret and analyse physical characterization data of supramolecular systems and extract relevant chemical information to explain the properties of the supramolecular systems.
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete amount of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles, and theories relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry; especially those related to drug discovery; design and development; drug targets; drug lead optimization; structure activity relationship; pharmacokinetics; drug delivery and its relevance to toxicity. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory relating to the basic foundation knowledge of medicinal chemistry. Show ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations and mostly correct but erroneous use of data and experimental results to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the basic principles and properties of medicinal chemistry. Demonstrate generally effective basic techniques, basic techniques for medicinal chemistry, especially in drug discovery and metabolism.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in CHEM3441 and CHEM3441

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- A
  - Demonstrate thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts and principles in supramolecular chemistry, especially those relating to non-covalent interactions, molecular recognition and self-assembly. Show strong ability to apply and integrate knowledge in supramolecular chemistry in explaining the formation and properties of, and in designing different supramolecular systems. Show strong ability to analyze and interpret experimental data to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the advanced principles and properties of supramolecular systems.

- B
  - Demonstrate substantial knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts and principles in supramolecular chemistry, especially those relating to non-covalent interactions, molecular recognition and self-assembly. Show evidence to apply and integrate knowledge in supramolecular chemistry in explaining the formation and properties of, and in designing different supramolecular systems. Show evidence to analyze and interpret experimental data to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the advanced principles and properties of supramolecular systems.

- C
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete amount of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts and principles in supramolecular chemistry, especially those relating to non-covalent interactions, molecular recognition and self-assembly. Show some ability to apply and integrate knowledge in supramolecular chemistry in explaining the formation and properties of, and in designing different supramolecular systems. Show some ability to analyze and interpret experimental data to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the advanced principles and properties of supramolecular systems.

- D
  - Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts and principles in supramolecular chemistry, especially those relating to non-covalent interactions, molecular recognition and self-assembly. Show evidence of limited ability to apply and integrate knowledge in supramolecular chemistry in explaining the formation and properties of, and in designing different supramolecular systems. Show limited ability to analyze and interpret experimental data to draw appropriate conclusions relating to the advanced principles and properties of supramolecular systems.
Course Type: Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Tests/Assignments 20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Additional Course Information
References to specialist texts and other published materials will be made throughout the course.

CHEM4241
Modern chemical instrumentation and applications (6 credits)

Offering Department: Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator: Dr I K Chu, Chemistry (ivanchu@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr I K Chu, Chemistry) (Dr W T Chan, Chemistry)

Course Objectives
The aim of the course is to provide an understanding of modern instrumentation, covering both fundamental principles and practical aspects of instrument design. The course will be of particular benefit to those pursuing a higher research degree or a career in technical sales/service.

Course Contents & Topics
Biological Mass spectrometry: Liquid Chromatography-Tandem Mass Spectrometry for Proteomics & Metabolomics.
Laser Spectroscopy: Principle of laser; three-level and four-level lasers; laser instrumentation (Q-switching and frequency conversion); laser-induced fluorescence; laser atomic spectrometry; laser remote sensing; signal-to-noise enhancement by boxcar integration and photon counting.
Atomic Plasma Spectrometry: Inductively couple plasma-atomic emission spectrometry (ICP-AES) and mass spectrometry (ICP-MS); signal-production processes in ICP spectrometry; Echelle grating spectrometer; array detectors; interferences in ICP-AES and ICP-MS.
Atomic X-Ray Spectrometry: x-ray fluorescence; wavelength-dispersive (WDXRF) and energy-dispersive (EDXRF) X-ray fluorescence spectrometers.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 explain the principles of the modern mass spectrometric methods for proteins and metabolites identification and quantification.
- CLO 2 explain how proteins are identified and sequenced experimentally and how data is generated in proteomics experiments.
- CLO 3 use the database searching techniques and software tools to analyze high-throughput proteomics data.
- CLO 4 apply LC/MS/MS method for target quantitative analysis of small molecules.
- CLO 5 explain the principles of the laser spectroscopy, atomic plasma spectrometry, and atomic x-ray spectrometry.
- CLO 6 describe the basic experimental set up and the properties of the basic components of the instruments used in the laboratory classes.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in CHEM3241

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem
Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles and theories relating to the modern chemical instrumentations and applications. Show strong ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory, and strong ability to analyze problems related to fundamental principles and practical aspects of instrument design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles and theories relating to the modern chemical instrumentations and applications. Show evidence to apply and integrate knowledge and theory, and ability to analyze problems related to fundamental principles and practical aspects of instrument design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles and theories relating to the modern chemical instrumentations and applications. Show evidence of some abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory, and to analyze problems to most familiar situations to fundamental principles and practical aspects of instrument design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles and theories relating to the modern chemical instrumentations and applications. Show evidence of limited abilities to apply and integrate knowledge and theory, and limited ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations related to fundamental principles and practical aspects of instrument design.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of essential facts, concepts, principles and theories relating to the modern chemical instrumentations and applications. Show little or no ability to apply and integrate knowledge and theory, and little or no ability to analyze problems to most familiar situations related to fundamental principles and practical aspects of instrument design.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Department of Chemistry
CHEM4242  Analytical chemistry (6 credits)  Academic Year 2017

Offering Department  Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator  Dr K M Ng, Chemistry (kwammng@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved  (Dr K M Ng, Chemistry)

Course Objectives
This course focuses on the basic principle, practice and methodology in chemical and biochemical analysis. The course emphasizes on the integration of analytical concepts and technologies to solve practical analytical and bioanalytical problems. This course will be particularly useful for students who plan to pursue their career related to analytical and bioanalytical chemistry.

Course Contents & Topics
Analytical measurement concepts: Statistical treatment & evaluation of chemical measurement data; Figures of merits of analytical methods; Validation of analytical methods; Quality assurance in chemical analysis and testing laboratories
Theoretical background and practical techniques of sample preparation, separation and detection: Sample preparation and enrichment techniques for biomedical, pharmaceutical and forensic chemical analysis; Advanced separation technologies for complex mixture analysis (e.g. multidimensional LC); Derivatization methods for chromatographic analysis and spectroscopic detection; Analytes characterization and detection techniques based on mass spectrometry
Problem-based design of analytical strategy for chemical & biochemical analysis. Expert sharing of practical knowledge and experience related to selected fields of research; Case study and review of analytical chemistry literature/ scenario.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 apply statistical methods to assess analytical measurement data quality and interpret their significance, validate analytical methods and results
CLO 2 demonstrate understanding on the working principle of different analytical techniques and recognize their advantages and limitations
CLO 3 integrate different analytical techniques to solve analytical and bioanalytical problems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in CHEM3241 or CHEM3242

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A  Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities, logical thinking and capability to apply knowledge learnt to solve a wide range of complex issues and problems related to chemical analysis. Apply highly effective organization and presentation skills as shown in class work.
B  Demonstrate a substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities, logical thinking, and capability to apply knowledge learnt to solve a wide range of complex issues and problems related to chemical analysis. Apply effective organization and presentation skills as shown in class work.
C  Demonstrate a general command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities, logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge learnt to solve a wide range of complex issues and problems related to chemical analysis. Apply effective organization and presentation skills as shown in class work.
D  Demonstrate a partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems related to chemical analysis. Apply limited or barely effective organization and presentation skill as shown in class work.
Fail  Demonstrate little or no evidence for the command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems related to chemical analysis. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective as shown in class work.

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>6 x 4-hour of laboratory practical</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>Experiment &amp; Lab report 10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
A. Manz, P. S. Dittrich, N. Pamme, D. Isssifidis: Bioanalytical Chemistry (Imperial College Press, latest edition)

Additional Course Information
References to specialist texts and other published materials will be made throughout the course.
Labaratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

CHEM4341  Advanced inorganic chemistry (6 credits)  Academic Year 2017
### Course Objectives
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the principles and concepts of organometallic chemistry.
- CLO 2 understand the electronic structure and bondings of novel metal-metal and metal-ligand multiple bonded complexes.
- CLO 3 understand and realize the activation of small molecules by metal complexes.
- CLO 4 demonstrate knowledge and understanding in the application of organometallics in organic synthesis, and the importance of such activation in chemical catalysis of global interest, green chemistry and energy saving reactions.

### Course Contents & Topics
Selected advanced topics of current interest. Examples include metal-metal bonds and metal-ligand multiple bonded complexes, inorganic and supramolecular photochemistry, lanthanide chemistry, bio-inorganic and medicinal chemistry, and activation of small molecules by metal complexes.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the principles and concepts of organometallic chemistry.
- CLO 2 understand the electronic structure and bondings of novel metal-metal and metal-ligand multiple bonded metal complexes.
- CLO 3 understand and realize the activation of small molecules by transition metal complexes and realize the importance of such activation in chemical catalysis of global interest, green chemistry and energy saving reactions.
- CLO 4 understand the role of metal complexes in bio-inorganic and medicinal chemistry.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in CHEM3341

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>including literature survey &amp; presentation</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>(continuous assessment)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Additional Course Information
References to specialist texts and other published materials will be made throughout the course. (Students are strongly recommended to take CHEM4142 Symmetry, group theory and applications if they wish to take this course.)

### CHEM4342

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Chemistry</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Quota</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof V W W Yam, Chemistry (<a href="mailto:wwyam@hku.hk">wwyam@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>Prof V W W Yam,Chemistry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(Prof H Y Au-Yeung,Chemistry)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>To give further, more detailed, treatment to organometallic chemistry mentioned in CHEM3341 Inorganic Chemistry II. The course also aims to introduce and familiarize students with advanced laboratory techniques, and to prepare students for graduate work in inorganic and organometallic chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>Lectures: Main group and transition metal organometallics. Transition metal cluster chemistry. Bonding, structure and reactivities of organometallics. Application of organometallics in organic synthesis and catalysis.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laboratory: To introduce and familiarize students with advanced laboratory techniques which include the synthesis and manipulation of air- and moisture-sensitive compounds, and their characterization by various spectroscopic methods.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1 understand the advanced principles and concepts in organometallic chemistry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the bonding, structure and reactivities of main group and transition metal organometallics, especially in transition metal clusters, metal alkyls, metal alkylidenes and metal alkylidyne</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and understanding in the application of organometallics in organic synthesis, polymerization and catalysis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 4 demonstrate ability in advanced laboratory techniques including the synthesis and manipulation of air- and moisture-sensitive compounds, and their characterization by various spectroscopic methods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites</td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3341</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHEM4441 Advanced organic chemistry (6 credits) Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Chemistry
Course Co-ordinator Prof D Yang, Chemistry (yangdan@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved Prof D Yang, Chemistry

Course Objectives
To provide students with knowledge in organic chemistry reaction mechanisms and organic compound structure determination.

Course Content & Topics
The course covers chemical bonding, advanced stereochmistry, conformational analysis, techniques for investigating reaction mechanisms, reactive intermediates, rearrangement reactions, and pericyclic reactions.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 describe, analyze and interpret the structure and reactivity relationship of organic molecules
CLO 2 identify and predict the selectivities (chemoselectivity, regioselectivity and stereoselectivity) in organic reactions
CLO 3 describe the general approaches to study organic mechanisms
CLO 4 have a general understanding and working knowledge of pericyclic reactions, reactive intermediates (radicals, carbenes and nitrenes), and polar rearrangements
CLO 5 suggest reasonable mechanistic pathways for some types of organic reactions
CLO 6 apply the knowledge of reaction mechanisms in design of synthetic routes for organic compounds

Assessment Methods
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments (continuous assessment) 30 CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination 70 CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended readings

Additional Course Information
Reference to specialist texts and other published materials will be made throughout the course. Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

Pre-requisites
Pass in CHEM3441

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination Dec
### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### Course Objectives

To introduce aspects of modern organic reactions with relevance to and in the context of the synthesis of natural products, drugs and medicinal chemistry to provide an integrated approach to the subject, and to provide training in advanced organic laboratory skills, and further hands-on experience in synthesis and characterization, as preparation for graduate studies or research in organic chemistry.

### Course Contents & Topics

Building on the organic chemistry covered in the foundational courses CHEM1003 and CHEM2402, this course will present modern synthetic methods and synthetic planning. The course is organized into units based on target drug molecules. In each unit, the chemical biology of these compounds are briefly presented and the syntheses of these molecules are introduced, accompanied by in-depth discussions of the reactions involved with emphasis on their mechanisms, selectivity, stereochemistry, scope and limitations. Concept of synthetic design including retrosynthetic analysis, stereoselectivity and enantioselective control elements will be emphasized. A laboratory section provides training in the practical skills of synthesis.

### Course Learning Outcomes

- CLO 1 understand the rationale, selectivities, and mechanisms of various reactions and reagents in organic chemistry
- CLO 2 able to solve mechanistic and synthetic chemistry problems
- CLO 3 perform organic synthesis experiments at an increased level of technical difficulty, using additional skills in experimental design and execution, spectroscopic analysis, and reporting of results
- CLO 4 integrate lecture material and literature search, to learn chemistry independently

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in CHEM3441; or
- Pass in CHEM3441 (without lab component) and CHEM3443

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>2nd sem</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate a thorough mastery at an advanced level of knowledge and understanding of concepts, principles, reactions and mechanisms related to synthetic organic chemistry. Show a strong ability to integrate knowledge and theory, and a strong ability to analyze novel synthetic organic chemistry situations and problems. Show a critical use of knowledge and data to apply to the solution of novel and complex synthetic problems. Demonstrate highly effective organization and application of lab skills and techniques in synthetic experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a substantial command of knowledge and understanding of concepts, principles, reactions and mechanisms related to synthetic organic chemistry. Show evidence of ability to integrate knowledge and theory, and evidence of ability to analyze synthetic organic chemistry situations and problems. Show a correct use of knowledge and data to apply to the solution of some novel and most familiar synthetic problems. Demonstrate effective organization and application of lab skills and techniques in synthetic experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate a general but incomplete command of knowledge and understanding of concepts, principles, reactions and mechanisms related to synthetic organic chemistry. Show evidence of some ability to integrate knowledge and theory, and evidence of some ability to analyze synthetic organic chemistry situations and problems. Show a correct but erroneous use of knowledge to apply to the solution of most familiar problems. Demonstrate moderately effective organization and application of lab skills and techniques in synthetic experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate a partial but limited command of knowledge and understanding of concepts, principles, reactions and mechanisms related to synthetic organic chemistry. Show evidence of a limited ability to integrate knowledge and theory, and a limited ability to analyze familiar situations and problems. Show some correct but erroneous use of knowledge to apply to the solution of most familiar problems. Demonstrate partially effective organization and application of lab skills and techniques in synthetic experiments.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and understanding of concepts, principles, reactions and mechanisms related to synthetic organic chemistry. Show little or no evidence of ability to integrate knowledge and theory in synthetic organic chemistry, and little or no ability to analyze most familiar situations and problems. Show mostly erroneous use of knowledge to apply to the solution of familiar problems. Demonstrate minimally effective organization and application of lab skills and techniques in synthetic experiments.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CHEM4444**

- **Offering Department:** Chemistry
- **Course Co-ordinator:** Dr X C Li (xuechenl@hku.hk)
- **Teachers Involved:** (Dr X C Li, Chemistry)
- **Course Objectives:** To understand how to use chemical approaches to emulate biological systems to study natural molecules and generate new functional molecules. Useful as an introduction to research in areas of chemical biology, medicinal chemistry and biotechnology.
- **Course Contents & Topics:** Chemical biology of nucleic acids, protein chemistry, protein posttranslational modifications, carbohydrate chemistry, chemical glycomics and tools and techniques in chemical biology.
- **Course Learning Outcomes:** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1 understand chemical biology approaches in studying biology.
  - CLO 2 give examples of how to use chemical methods to produce natural biomolecules and new biomolecules with altered functions.
  - CLO 3 compare chemical biology and traditional biology approaches in drug discovery.
- **Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):** Pass in BIOL3601 or CHEM3441
- **Offer in 2017 - 2018:** Y 2nd sem
- **Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):**
  - A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/referencing aptly.
  - B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/referencing aptly.
  - C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/referencing aptly.
  - D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison.
  - Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them.
- **Assessment Methods and Weighting:**
  - **Lectures:** 36
  - **Tutorials:** tutorials/discussion 12
  - **Reading / Self study:** 100
  - **Examination:** 60 CLO 1,2,3
  - **Test:** tests & presentations 40 CLO 1,2,3
- **Required/recommended reading and online materials:** Foundations of Chemical Biology by C.M. Dobson, J.A. Gerrard and A.J. Pratt.
- **Course Website:** Nil
- **Additional Course Information:** Nil

**CHEM4544**

- **Offering Department:** Chemistry
- **Course Co-ordinator:** ----, Chemistry (/)
- **Teachers Involved:** The course presents fundamental principles and topics on statistical thermodynamics and kinetic theory in order to provide a solid foundation for students intending to further their studies in physical chemistry and related fields.
- **Course Contents & Topics:** Principles of Statistical Thermodynamics
  - Thermodynamic laws
  - Ensembles and partition functions: microcanonical, canonical and grand-canonical
  - Systems of independent molecules: ideal gas
  - Molecular degrees of freedom: translation, rotation, vibration, and electronic
  - Ideal gas mixture: chemical equilibrium, binding, and titration
- Lattice statistics: Ising model and phase transition
- Quantum statistics

Chemical equilibrium and kinetics theory
- Rate theory: collision theory, transition state theory

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand and use the terminology and nomenclature in statistical thermodynamics and topics discussed in the course

CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of basic concepts in statistical thermodynamics

CLO 3 understand correlation between macroscopic observables and microscopic statistical model systems

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in CHEM541

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Through mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate evidence of strong analytical / critical abilities and logical thinking. Can apply the knowledge to practical questions in Physical Chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Substantial command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate evidence of analytical / critical abilities and logical thinking. Understand the scope of Physical Chemistry questions that can be applied with the knowledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>General but incomplete command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate evidence of analytical thinking. Can apply the knowledge to familiar situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Partial but limited command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics. Demonstrate limited evidence of analytical thinking. Understand the question to be solved with knowledge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Little or no evidence of command of knowledge of statistical thermodynamics and reaction dynamics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>continuous assessment of on class quizzes &amp; assignments</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

T. L. Hill, An Introduction to Statistical Thermodynamics
P. Atkins, Physical Chemistry

**Additional Course Information**

Laboratory classes are mandatory. Students must complete ALL experiments and laboratory reports to pass this course.

**CHEM4542**

Computational chemistry (6 credits)

**Offering Department**

Chemistry

**Course Co-ordinator**

Prof G H Chen, Chemistry (ghc@yangtze.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**

This course covers topics in computational chemistry including first-principles methods and molecular dynamics methods. It is offered to undergraduate and postgraduate students interested in computational chemistry, computational physics and computational biology.

**Course Contents & Topics**


**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand the basic concepts of density-functional theory

CLO 2 understand the basic numerical techniques of molecular mechanics method and quantum mechanics/molecular mechanics method

CLO 3 employ the existing computational software to calculate the chemical, physical properties of various molecular systems include organic molecules, inorganic materials and biomolecules

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in CHEM3541 or PHYS3351

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Mastery of advanced knowledge on following topics: density-functional theory, Kohn-Sham equation, time-dependent density-functional theory, open system, molecular dynamics, force field, and quantum mechanics/molecular mechanics. Strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. With strong ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Substantial command of a broad range of knowledge on following topics: density-functional theory, Kohn-Sham equation, time-dependent density-functional theory, open system, molecular dynamics, force field, and quantum mechanics/molecular mechanics. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Command of knowledge on following topics: density-functional theory, Kohn-Sham equation, time-dependent density-functional theory, open system, molecular dynamics, force field, and quantum mechanics/molecular mechanics. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to complex problems in physical chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Partial but limited command of knowledge on following topics: density-functional theory, Kohn-Sham equation, time-dependent density-functional theory, open system, molecular dynamics, force field, and quantum mechanics/molecular mechanics. Evidence of some coherent analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with limited ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Little or no evidence of command of knowledge on following topics: density-functional theory, Kohn-Sham equation, time-dependent density-functional theory, open system, molecular dynamics, force field, and quantum mechanics/molecular mechanics. Lack of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with very little or no ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

521
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CHEM4542</strong></th>
<th>Advanced physical chemistry (6 credits)</th>
<th><strong>Academic Year</strong></th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Offering Department</strong></td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td><strong>Quota</strong></td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Co-ordinator</strong></td>
<td>Prof G H Chen, Chemistry (<a href="mailto:ghc@yangtze.hku.hk">ghc@yangtze.hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td><strong>Course Content &amp; Topics</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Teachers Involved</strong></td>
<td>(Prof D L Phillips,Chemistry)</td>
<td>(Prof G H Chen,Chemistry)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Objectives</strong></td>
<td>This course covers advanced topics in physical chemistry. It is offered for students majoring in physical chemistry and for students who are interested in postgraduate studies.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Contents &amp; Topics</strong></td>
<td>Time-resolved spectroscopy methods, excited states and reactive intermediates, photochemistry and photochemical processes, chemical reaction mechanisms, advanced quantum mechanical methods, reaction pathways and surface crossings.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Learning Outcomes</strong></td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1 understand the basic concepts of quantum chemistry, statistical thermodynamics and molecular dynamics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 understand Hartree-Fock method, statistical ensembles, quantum statistics, H-theorem, and reaction dynamics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 understand the elementary numerical procedures in Hartree-Fock and molecular mechanics methods</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</strong></td>
<td>Pass in CHEM3541</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Mastery of advanced knowledge on following topics: variation method in quantum mechanics, Hartree-Fock method, perturbation theory, advanced statistical thermodynamics, reaction dynamics. Strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with strong ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Substantial command of a broad range of knowledge on following topics: variation method in quantum mechanics, Hartree-Fock method, perturbation theory, advanced statistical thermodynamics, reaction dynamics. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Command of knowledge on following topics: variation method in quantum mechanics, Hartree-Fock method, perturbation theory, advanced statistical thermodynamics, reaction dynamics. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with ability to apply knowledge to familiar problems in physical chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Partial but limited command of knowledge on following topics: variation method in quantum mechanics, Hartree-Fock method, perturbation theory, advanced statistical thermodynamics, reaction dynamics. Evidence of some coherent analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with limited ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Little or no evidence of command of knowledge on following topics: variation method in quantum mechanics, Hartree-Fock method, perturbation theory, advanced statistical thermodynamics, reaction dynamics. Lack of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with very little or no ability to apply knowledge to practical problems in physical chemistry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Type</strong></td>
<td>Lecture-based course</td>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>No. of Hours</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assessment Methods and Weighting</strong></td>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>Details</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>(continuous assessment)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Required/recommended reading and online materials</strong></td>
<td>P. W. Atkins: Physical Chemistry</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ira N. Levine: Quantum Chemistry (Prentice Hall, 4th ed.)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. C. Tolman: The Principles of Statistical Mechanics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R. D. Levine, R. B. Bernstein: Molecular Reaction Dynam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Website</strong></td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Course Information</strong></td>
<td>Nil</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>CHEM4544</strong></th>
<th>Electrochemical science and technology (6 credits)</th>
<th><strong>Academic Year</strong></th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Offering Department</strong></td>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td><strong>Quota</strong></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Co-ordinator</strong></td>
<td>Prof G K Y Chan, Chemistry (<a href="mailto:hrscoky@hku.hk">hrscoky@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td><strong>Course Objectives</strong></td>
<td>To understand the science of electrochemistry, methods to characterise electrochemical cells, and factors affecting electrochemical applications and technologies.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Teachers Involved</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Course Contents &amp; Topics</strong></td>
<td>Thermodynamics, kinetics, and transport of electrochemical processes. Electrochemical characterization by controlled potential, current, and hydrodynamics. Voltammetry for analytical chemistry. Electrochemical power sources, sensors, synthesis and separation processes. Electrolytes, separators, and electrode materials. Models of electrochemical processes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Objectives</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assignments</strong></td>
<td>(continuous assessment)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 Understand the thermodynamic and kinetics of a charge transfer process at the electrode-electrolyte interface and transport of relevant species in molecular and macroscopic scales.

- CLO 2 Apply voltammetry methods to characterize an electrochemical process.

- CLO 3 Correlate performance of electrochemical cells to materials, design, and operation parameters.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in CHEM3542

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

#### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough knowledge of electrochemical science and technology, and mastery of skills required for attaining all of the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems in a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Critical use of data and sourcing of references. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial knowledge of electrochemical science and technology and command of skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to solve problems in familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Correct use of data and sourcing of references. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete knowledge of electrochemical science and technology and command of skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge solve problems to most familiar situations. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and references. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited knowledge of electrochemical science and technology and command of skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limited ability to use data and source references. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of knowledge of electrochemical science and technology, and command of skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Misuse of data and references. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

- Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>Laboratory/Project</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>Laboratory or Project Report/Term Paper</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Test/Quiz</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### CHEM4910

- Chemistry literacy and research (6 credits)

### Offering Department

- Chemistry

### Course Co-ordinator

- Dr. X Li, Chemistry (xiangli@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved

- Various teachers in the Department, Chemistry

### Course Objectives

This course is designed for final year students who would like to gain experience on research methods and techniques by working on small projects on literature research and chemistry research.

### Course Contents & Topics

The course provides training on chemistry literature research techniques. Students will work on a small project on literature research and a short laboratory-based research project. The laboratory-based projects are provided by the students’ supervisors who are assigned by the department.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 Demonstrate knowledge of academic databases and search engines of chemistry literature
- CLO 2 Understand the terminology and nomenclature associated with their own research project
- CLO 3 Demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the chemical techniques they used to do the research in their own research project
- CLO 4 Demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the results of their own research project and its context in the broader research area

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major including CHEM3241, and CHEM3341, and CHEM3441, and CHEM3541.

This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Show an extensive comprehension of the research project. Demonstrate very able analytical and critical thought with presence of some originality. Illuminating utilization and critical analysis / evaluation of information acquired from a wide range of high quality sources. Critical employment of data and results to synthesize appropriate and illuminating conclusions. Demonstrate integration of a wide range of appropriate theories, principles, data and methods. Employ very effective organizational and presentational skills. [Work of A+ should demonstrate substantial additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.]</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>No Exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Show a substantial comprehension of the research project. Demonstrate able analytical and critical thinking with use of relevant information from sources. Demonstrate ability to compose meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations. Correct utilization of data and results to form appropriate conclusions. Compose general integration of theories, principles, data and methods. Perform effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>No Exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Show a general, incomplete comprehension of the research project. Presence of some analytical and critical thinking with use of relevant information from sources. Demonstrate ability to compose comparisons between different interpretations. Mostly correct but some incorrect utilization of data and results to form appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>No Exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Show a partial but limited comprehension, with knowledge of some relevant information, of the research project. Presence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show utilization and reference of several sources, but mostly via summary instead of by analysis and comparison. Limited ability to employ data and results to form appropriate conclusions. Demonstrate limited integration of theories, principles, data and methods. Perform limited or marginally effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>No Exam</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course Type**
Project-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>12 hrs tutorials; 46 hrs of workshops and 100 hrs reading/self study</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Research report</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
Reading materials will be assigned depending on the project.

**Additional Course Information**
Satisfactory completion of this course will be counted towards the Capstone requirement.

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr A P L Tong, Chemistry (apltong@hku.hk)

**Course Objectives**
This project-based course with the theme of Chemistry for a Better Living in a Foreseeable Future aims to provide students with a capstone experience. It aims to enable students to think what are the key issues the world is facing with that have to be solved by chemistry and related technology. Students will need to apply what they have learnt in classroom and conduct literature search regarding advanced chemistry research and related technology under development to solve the problems identified in their project using various channels.

**Course Contents & Topics**
No formal teaching. It is expected that students are actively engaged and should devote 120-140 hours to working on this project.

Students will work in groups of two or three, under the supervision of the course coordinator. The duration of the project will be two to three months. The time of running this project-based course is in the summer (May - August).

**Course Learning Outcomes**
CLO 1 observe and evaluate the various issues we are facing with and determine ways in which chemistry can be used to solve the problems

CLO 2 integrate theory and practice, and to understand limitations of their current knowledge

CLO 3 work in a team and to collaborate with people with different background

CLO 4 express scientific ideas effectively in both written and oral forms

CLO 5 develop further logical, critical thinking and creativity

CLO 6 advocate to others the appreciation for chemistry as to its relevance to our daily life

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Students are expected to have satisfactorily completed all introductory chemistry disciplinary core courses and at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses in the Chemistry Major.

Students who are interested in taking the course should contact the course coordinator for application in April - May. Late application may not be considered.

This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y Summer Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Examination**
No Exam

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**
A
Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Show integration of the full range of appropriate theories, principles, evidence and techniques. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. [Work of A+ should show considerable additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.]

B
Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show general integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show some partial integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show limited integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Show little or no or inapt integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**
Project-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Meeting with supervisor</td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>Assessment Group work or project</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>40% Presentation; 10% Participation; 10% Peer evaluation</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Research report</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and**
No specific list of textbooks and references. Students are encouraged to obtain information via various channels (main library, e-journals, internet, and discussions with classmates and teachers, etc.).

**CHEM4911**
Capstone experience for chemistry undergraduates: HKUtopia (6 credits)

**Offering Department**
Chemistry

**Academic Year**
2017

**Quota**
---
### CHEME4966
**Chemistry internship (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**: Chemistry

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr H Y Au-Yeung, Chemistry (hoyuyau@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**: (Dr H Y Au-Yeung, Chemistry)

**Course Objectives**

This course aims to offer students the opportunities to gain work experience in the industry related to their major of study. The workplace learning experience would be of great benefits to the students to apply their knowledge gained in the study to the real work environments. Students have to take on at least 160 hours of internship work either within the University or outside the University arranged by the School/Departments.

- Within the University: The student will be supervised by a staff member (Supervisor), working on a project or various tasks as instructed by the Supervisor.
- Outside the University: The student will work in an external agency related to the major of study. The student will be supervised by a staff member of the external agency (the External Supervisor) and a staff member of the Department/School of the student (the Internal Supervisor). The work to be performed by the student will normally be instructed by the External Supervisor, with prior agreement of the Internal Supervisor.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- A short research project provided by a member of staff (e.g. the students supervisor).
- To provide experience of research techniques by working on a short project under the direct supervision of a member of staff. This course would prepare students for graduate school work in chemistry.
- To gain first hand work experience in the industry related to their major study.
- Outside the University: The student will work in an external agency related to the major of study. The student will be supervised by a staff member of the external agency (the External Supervisor) and a staff member of the Department/School of the student (the Internal Supervisor). The work to be performed by the student will normally be instructed by the External Supervisor, with prior agreement of the Internal Supervisor.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 apply knowledge in their major study in solving practical problems in the work place
- CLO 2 gain first hand work experience in the industry related to their major study

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major. This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

**Course Type**

Internship

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Y 1st sem 2nd sem Summer Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors (Pass /Pass with distinction /Fail)**

Pass

- Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfils the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of “Distinction”.

Fail

- Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

- Written report
  - written report, employer’s feedback and oral presentation 100 CLO 1,2

**Additional Course Information**

Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on “Pass/Fail” basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval. Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

---

### CHEME4999
**Chemistry project (12 credits)**

**Offering Department**: Chemistry

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr J Y Tang, Chemistry (jinyao@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**: (Various teachers in the Department, Chemistry)

**Course Objectives**

To provide experience of research techniques by working on a short project under the direct supervision of a member of staff. This course would prepare students for graduate school work in chemistry.

**Course Contents & Topics**

A short research project provided by a member of staff (e.g. the students supervisor).

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the terminology and nomenclature associated with their own research chemistry project
- CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the chemical techniques they used to do the research in their own chemical project
- CLO 3 demonstrate critical thinking skill in their own research project and understanding the motivation and target of the research
- CLO 4 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the results of their own research project and its context in the broader research area
- CLO 5 demonstrate ability to integrate the knowledge acquired from previous courses and develop fundamental knowledge of designing research projects.

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective chemistry courses (CHEM3XXX or CHEM4XXX) in the Chemistry Major including CHEM3241, and CHEM3341, and CHEM3441, and CHEM3541. This capstone course is for Chemistry Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Y Year long Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors (A to F)**

A

- Show an extensive comprehension of the research project. Demonstrate very able analytical and critical thought with presence of some originality. Illuminating utilization and critical analysis / evaluation of information acquired from a wide range of high quality sources. Critical employment of data and results to synthesize appropriate and illuminating conclusions. Demonstrate integration of a wide range of appropriate theories, principles, data and methods. Employ very effective organizational and presentational skills. [Work of A+ should demonstrate substantial additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.]

B

- Show a substantial comprehension of the research project. Demonstrate able analytical and critical thinking with use of relevant information from sources. Demonstrate ability to compose meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations. Correct utilization of data and results to form appropriate conclusions. Compose general integration of theories, principles, data and methods. Perform effective organizational and presentational skills.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Project-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</strong></td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>8 hours per week for 24 weeks or longer discussions &amp; meetings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Assessment Methods and Weighting</strong></td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dissertation</td>
<td>including a written report and an oral presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Required/recommended reading and online materials</strong></td>
<td>Specialist texts dependant on the selected topic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Additional Course Information</strong></td>
<td>Third year students with exceptional academic achievement may also apply for this course</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course Objectives**

This course aims to enhance the students’ competence using Chinese for professional communication. It helps the students to master the techniques of writing different types of documents such as memos, emails, letters, announcements, notice, brochures, leaflets, and reports. In addition, topics addressing presentation and discussion techniques, the style and rhetoric of reader-based writings are included to heighten the students’ linguistic sensitivity.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Grammar & vocabulary of modern Chinese
- The Chinese writing system
- Techniques of writing short messages: good-news and goodwill messages, bad-news messages, and persuasive messages
- Techniques of writing electronic documents: emails; presentations
- Styles and rhetoric of reader-based reports, proposals and presentations

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 develop a balanced competency in modern Chinese and write well-formed sentences
- CLO 2 employ rhetorical devices and stylistics, as well as practical writing skills specific to their discipline
- CLO 3 explore new tactics of communication, initiate discussions and debates and address new challenges
- CLO 4 apply their disciplinary knowledge and their Chinese writing skills and professional presentation techniques analytically, critically and creatively in different social or professional discourses

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

NIL

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>The student acquired a superb ability to achieve the intended learning outcomes of the course at all levels of learning: describe, apply, evaluate, and synthesize the language techniques for effective communication in all situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>The student acquired the ability to achieve the intended learning outcomes of the course at all levels of learning: describe, apply, evaluate, and synthesize the language techniques for effective communication in most situations.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>The student acquired adequate ability to achieve the intended learning outcomes of the course at low levels of learning (i.e. describe and apply the language techniques for effective communication) but not at high levels of learning (i.e. evaluate and synthesize the language techniques for effective communication).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>The student only has basic familiarity with the subject.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>The student has very limited familiarity with the subject.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>Small group tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>Workshops</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>Reading/self study (20 hours) and preparation (12 hours)</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Self-access &amp; online exercises (40%) and Tutorial discussion (10%)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Earth Sciences Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr Z H Liu, Earth Sciences (zhlui@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr S H Li,Earth Sciences) (Dr Z H Liu,Earth Sciences)
Course Objectives This course provides an introduction to the study of global climate systems and climate change. We study the controls of temporal and spatial variations in earth's climate and its histories of past climates preserved in the geological record. We look at modern research methods that are used in paleoclimatic and paleoenvironmental reconstructions.
Course Contents & Topics Global climatic systems, climate classification, natural variability of climate, physical causes for changes through geologic time, external and internal forcing mechanisms, solar orbital variations, major climatic events of the past and their effects on how our planet has developed, glacial and interglacial oscillations, predicting future global change.
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 identify major aspects of climatology and approaches to climatological study
CLO 2 explain the factors and physical processes controlling climate system
CLO 3 understand the driving forces of Earth's climate change
CLO 4 recognize the history of Earth's climate change
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) NIL
Grade Descriptors (A to F) A
Grade Description: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Show insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly.
B
Grade Description: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate correct use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show critical use of relevant information from sources and ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly.
C
Grade Description: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
D
Grade Description: Demonstrate general but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison.
Fail
Grade Description: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Show limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them.
Course Type Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 25 CLO 2,3
Examiniation 50 CLO 1,2,3,4
Project reports 25 CLO 1,4
Assessment Methods Required/recommended reading and online materials
EASC1401 Blue Planet (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Earth Sciences Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr P Bach, Earth Sciences (pabach@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr P Bach,Earth Sciences)
Course Objectives The aim is to provide those students who are taking a first course in Earth System Sciences with a fundamental knowledge of how our diverse and living planet Earth works with weaving together an understanding of the dynamic and interactive processes in the Earth's lithosphere, hydrosphere, biosphere and atmosphere. In addition, students should become familiar with the way the study of Earth Sciences blends observation, information, hypothesis, communication and decision making for a better understanding of the future of our planet.
Course Contents & Topics The course will introduce and discuss the following topics:
- Introduction to Earth Systems and Habitable Planet Earth
- Lithosphere (Earth Materials, Plate Tectonics, Volcanism, Earthquakes, Surface Processes and Rock Cycle)
- Hydrosphere (Surface- and Groundwater, Oceans and Water Cycle)
- Atmosphere (Composition, Weather, Climate, Green House Effect, Oxygen Cycle)
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the terminology and nomenclature appropriate to the introductory study of Earth Sciences
CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the underlying concepts associated with the study of the Earth Systems and their dynamic interactive processes
CLO 3 understand the extent and nature of global change and environmental concerns around us

EASC1401
Blue Planet (6 credits)

Offering Department Earth Sciences Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr P Bach, Earth Sciences (pabach@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr P Bach,Earth Sciences)
Course Objectives The aim is to provide those students who are taking a first course in Earth System Sciences with a fundamental knowledge of how our diverse and living planet Earth works with weaving together an understanding of the dynamic and interactive processes in the Earth's lithosphere, hydrosphere, biosphere and atmosphere. In addition, students should become familiar with the way the study of Earth Sciences blends observation, information, hypothesis, communication and decision making for a better understanding of the future of our planet.
Course Contents & Topics The course will introduce and discuss the following topics:
- Introduction to Earth Systems and Habitable Planet Earth
- Lithosphere (Earth Materials, Plate Tectonics, Volcanism, Earthquakes, Surface Processes and Rock Cycle)
- Hydrosphere (Surface- and Groundwater, Oceans and Water Cycle)
- Atmosphere (Composition, Weather, Climate, Green House Effect, Oxygen Cycle)
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the terminology and nomenclature appropriate to the introductory study of Earth Sciences
CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the underlying concepts associated with the study of the Earth Systems and their dynamic interactive processes
CLO 3 understand the extent and nature of global change and environmental concerns around us

EASC1020 Introduction to climate science (6 credits)

Offering Department Earth Sciences Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr Z H Liu, Earth Sciences (zhlui@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr S H Li,Earth Sciences) (Dr Z H Liu,Earth Sciences)
Course Objectives This course provides an introduction to the study of global climate systems and climate change. We study the controls of temporal and spatial variations in earth's climate and its histories of past climates preserved in the geological record. We look at modern research methods that are used in paleoclimatic and paleoenvironmental reconstructions.
Course Contents & Topics Global climatic systems, climate classification, natural variability of climate, physical causes for changes through geologic time, external and internal forcing mechanisms, solar orbital variations, major climatic events of the past and their effects on how our planet has developed, glacial and interglacial oscillations, predicting future global change.
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 identify major aspects of climatology and approaches to climatological study
CLO 2 explain the factors and physical processes controlling climate system
CLO 3 understand the driving forces of Earth's climate change
CLO 4 recognize the history of Earth's climate change
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) NIL
Grade Descriptors (A to F) A
Grade Description: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Show insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly.
B
Grade Description: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate correct use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show critical use of relevant information from sources and ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly.
C
Grade Description: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
D
Grade Description: Demonstrate general but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison.
Fail
Grade Description: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Show limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them.
Course Type Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 25 CLO 2,3
Examiniation 50 CLO 1,2,3,4
Project reports 25 CLO 1,4
Assessment Methods Required/recommended reading and online materials

528
Course Type: Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:

- Lectures: 24 hours
- Laboratory: 24 hours
- Field work: Compulsory 2-day field camp - 16 hours
- Reading / Self study: 100 hours

Assessment Methods and Weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project report</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Text</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials: Skinner B.J and Murck B.W.: The Blue Planet (2011)
Murphy, B and Damian N.: Earth Science Today (1999)

EASC1402: Principles of geology (6 credits)

Offering Department: Earth Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences (minsun@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr J A King,Earth Sciences) (Prof M Sun,Earth Sciences)
Course Objectives:

This course is an introduction to fundamental principles and concepts in geology:
- Earth's formation, history and geological time scale
- Rocks and rock cycle
- Plate tectonics: a unifying theory
- Earthquakes and Earth's interior
- Igneous processes and igneous rocks
- Geomorphology and surficial processes
- Sedimentary rocks
- Folds, Faults and Metamorphism
- Metamorphic rocks
- Principles of stratigraphy; stratigraphic dating methods
- Biostratigraphic methods; fossils and index fossils
- Radiometric dating methods

Course Learning Outcomes:

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1: recite the rock cycle and the rock material in the earth's crust
  - CLO 2: describe the overall structure of the earth and the key external and internal processes
  - CLO 3: explain the major geological phenomena in the context of plate tectonics theory
  - CLO 4: describe the methods in geological dating
  - CLO 5: name the major events in earth's history

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations): NIL

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):

- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge / competencies/skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining most or all of the course learning outcomes. Shows clear understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and strong abilities to apply and relate them in a range of complex interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates highly effective observational skills in field as well as organizational skills to present important observations made and uses them to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions with an impressive level of depth and original thoughts.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge / competencies/skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Shows evidence for understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and some abilities to apply and relate them in a range of complex interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates effective observational skills in field as well as organizational skills to present important observations made and uses them to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions with some level of depth.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge / competencies/skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Shows evidence for some understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and some abilities to apply and relate them in some interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates moderately effective observational skills in field as well as organizational skills to present observations made mostly correct but with some erroneous use and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge / competencies/skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Shows evidence of limited understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and limited abilities to apply and relate them in some interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates limited observational skills in field; Applies limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills to present observed details and facts correctly. Limited ability to draw appropriate conclusions.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge / competencies/skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Shows little or no evidence of understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and little or no abilities to apply and relate them in interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates poor observational skills in field. Applies incoherent organizational and poor presentational skills. Ineffective presentation of observed details and facts and unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

Grade Descriptors:

- A+: Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge / competencies/skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence for understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and some abilities to apply and relate them in some interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates moderately effective observational skills in field as well as organizational skills to present observations made mostly correct but with some erroneous use and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Shows evidence of limited understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and some abilities to apply and relate them in some interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates limited observational skills in field; Applies limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills to present observed details and facts correctly. Limited ability to draw appropriate conclusions.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Shows little or no evidence of understanding of introductory terminology and concepts and little or no abilities to apply and relate them in interactive processes between Earth Systems. Demonstrates poor observational skills in field. Applies incoherent organizational and poor presentational skills. Ineffective presentation of observed details and facts and unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

- A+: Demonstrate substantial command of knowledge / competencies/skills at an Earth Science introductory level required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>6 sessions x 2 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>4 field trips (3 compulsory guided field trips + 1 self-decided trip)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>1 presentation and report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>1 essay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>1 group presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 group project</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 essay</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2-hour written examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 group presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 group project</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required/recommended reading and online materials</th>
<th>Tarbuck E.J. and Lutgens F.K.: The Earth: An Introduction to Physical Geology (latest edition)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EASC1403</th>
<th>Geological heritage of Hong Kong (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year 2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Quota 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof M F Zhou, Earth Sciences (<a href="mailto:mfzhou@hku.hk">mfzhou@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>To give an overview of the geology of Hong Kong, potential geological resources for tourism and the role of geology in the development of Hong Kong's infrastructure.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>6 Lectures on general geology of Hong Kong, geology of Hong Kong's Country Parks, and aspects of geological knowledge pertaining to large scale construction project plus at least 4 weekend field trips (equivalent to a total of 32 hours) guided by experts to localities of geological interest.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1</td>
<td>acquire an appreciation of the processes leading to the formation of various landforms</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 2</td>
<td>demonstrate understanding of the major morphological features in Hong Kong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td>enhance the observation and analytical skills, and physical ability through participation in the field excursion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 4</td>
<td>understand the different impacts of / importance of geological heritage of Hong Kong</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impersmisable combinations)</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td>Examination May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough understanding at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills with evidence for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Evidence of original thoughts, excellent field observation and ability to solve problems. Highly effective organization and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial understanding at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills with evidence for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Evidence of original thoughts and abilities of field observation and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete understanding required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Moderately effective organization and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited understanding for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>No or little knowledge about the subject. No evidence for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Very little or no ability for field observation and for solving problems. Poor organization and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EASC1404</th>
<th>Early life on earth (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year 2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Quota 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>TBC, Earth Sciences ()</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course Objectives**
This course focuses on the origins of life. It provides an overview of Earth's early environments, how life is thought to have originated on Earth, and how the Earth's dynamic environment impacted the origin of life. This course will also provide a basic overview of habitable environments on Earth and elsewhere in the Solar system.

**Course Contents & Topics**
This course will cover the following topics: the composition and properties of the early Earth and Earth's first oceans; the central role of water in life; abundance of biological elements on the early Earth and elsewhere in the Solar system; possible conditions for the synthesis of life's first building blocks; the (geo)chemical roots of early life on Earth and the search for life's signatures in the solar system and beyond.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 describe the basic physical and chemical conditions on the early Earth
- CLO 2 explain and describe the role of water and extreme geochemical conditions in the synthesis of biological molecules
- CLO 3 understand the role that different geological environments played during the origins of life
- CLO 4 identify challenges associated with each step in the origins of life
- CLO 5 investigate a current origins of life topic

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
NIL

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
N

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>Academic Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>Quota</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>1 midterm, group presentations, short-essay</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>Academic Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written examination</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>Quota</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
Sections from:
- Mason, S.F.: Chemical Evolution (Oxford University Press, 1991)

**EASC1405**
Peaceful use of nuclear technologies (6 credits)

**Offering Department**
Earth Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr S H Li, Earth Sciences (shli@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
To provide students with the science backgrounds and knowledge on application of nuclear technologies in daily life and to invoke an awareness of current applications of nuclear sciences by case studies.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Man and radiation; principles of nuclear technology; case studies of nuclear techniques applied in arts, engineering, biological, physical and social sciences; radiation on earth and beyond; industrial application of nuclear techniques; nuclear techniques in medical study. Future development in nuclear technologies.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 recognize the science fundamentals in nuclear technologies
- CLO 2 explain and describe the principles of nuclear technologies applied
- CLO 3 have the awareness of current applications of nuclear sciences
- CLO 4 demonstrate the knowledge and understanding of the underlying concepts associated with nuclear technologies

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
NIL

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
N

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>70</td>
<td></td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Objectives**
This course focuses on the origins of life. It provides an overview of Earth's early environments, how life is thought to have originated on Earth, and how the Earth's dynamic environment impacted the origin of life. This course will also provide a basic overview of habitable environments on Earth and elsewhere in the Solar system.
### Course Description

The course provides an introduction to the biosphere, including physical, chemical, geological, and biological interpretations on the co-evolution of the biosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere and geosphere through deep geological time, the current Earth-Life interactions with the influence of human beings and the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Course Objectives
- To understand the biological process as an agent of the modern and past Earth system.
- To understand the connections between the geosphere, hydrosphere and biosphere of the modern Earth and in the geological past. Can demonstrate the interactions between human beings and the nature only happen in the latest geological time.
- To understand some of the analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Moderately effective organization and presentation skills.
- To get no or little knowledge about the subject. No evidence for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Poor organization and presentational skills.

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Group activities and reports</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>Individual Report</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Contents & Topics
- A habitable planet, the carbon cycle; plate tectonics, climate and life; mountains and climate change; the emergence and persistence of life; life in the Phanerozoic; the Earth at extremes; the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
- Pass in EASC1401

#### Course Type
- Lecture-based course

#### Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
- **Offering Department**: Earth Sciences
- **Course Objectives**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Course Contents & Topics**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Course Learning Outcomes**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Pre-requisites**: To be announced

---

### EASC2401

### Course Description

This course provides students with an introduction to the biosphere, including physical, chemical, geological, and biological interpretations on the co-evolution of the biosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere and geosphere through deep geological time, the current Earth-Life interactions with the influence of human beings and the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Course Objectives
- To understand the biological process as an agent of the modern and past Earth system.
- To understand the connections between the geosphere, hydrosphere and biosphere of the modern Earth and in the geological past. Can demonstrate the interactions between human beings and the nature only happen in the latest geological time.
- To understand some of the analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Moderately effective organization and presentation skills.
- To get no or little knowledge about the subject. No evidence for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Poor organization and presentational skills.

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Group activities and reports</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Contents & Topics
- A habitable planet, the carbon cycle; plate tectonics, climate and life; mountains and climate change; the emergence and persistence of life; life in the Phanerozoic; the Earth at extremes; the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
- Pass in EASC1401

#### Course Type
- Lecture-based course

#### Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
- **Offering Department**: Earth Sciences
- **Course Objectives**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Course Contents & Topics**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Course Learning Outcomes**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Pre-requisites**: To be announced

---

### EASC1406

### Course Description

This course provides students with an introduction to the biosphere, including physical, chemical, geological, and biological interpretations on the co-evolution of the biosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere and geosphere through deep geological time, the current Earth-Life interactions with the influence of human beings and the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Course Objectives
- To understand the biological process as an agent of the modern and past Earth system.
- To understand the connections between the geosphere, hydrosphere and biosphere of the modern Earth and in the geological past. Can demonstrate the interactions between human beings and the nature only happen in the latest geological time.
- To understand some of the analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Moderately effective organization and presentation skills.
- To get no or little knowledge about the subject. No evidence for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Poor organization and presentational skills.

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Group activities and reports</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>Individual Report</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Contents & Topics
- A habitable planet, the carbon cycle; plate tectonics, climate and life; mountains and climate change; the emergence and persistence of life; life in the Phanerozoic; the Earth at extremes; the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
- Pass in EASC1401

#### Course Type
- Lecture-based course

#### Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
- **Offering Department**: Earth Sciences
- **Course Objectives**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Course Contents & Topics**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Course Learning Outcomes**: Dr Y L Li, Earth Sciences
- **Pre-requisites**: To be announced

---

### EASC2401

### Course Description

This course provides students with an introduction to the biosphere, including physical, chemical, geological, and biological interpretations on the co-evolution of the biosphere, atmosphere, hydrosphere and geosphere through deep geological time, the current Earth-Life interactions with the influence of human beings and the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Course Objectives
- To understand the biological process as an agent of the modern and past Earth system.
- To understand the connections between the geosphere, hydrosphere and biosphere of the modern Earth and in the geological past. Can demonstrate the interactions between human beings and the nature only happen in the latest geological time.
- To understand some of the analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Moderately effective organization and presentation skills.
- To get no or little knowledge about the subject. No evidence for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Poor organization and presentational skills.

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Group activities and reports</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Contents & Topics
- A habitable planet, the carbon cycle; plate tectonics, climate and life; mountains and climate change; the emergence and persistence of life; life in the Phanerozoic; the Earth at extremes; the future of the Human-Earth system.

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
- Pass in EASC1401

#### Course Type
- Lecture-based course

#### Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>92</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Course Objectives
This course provides an overview of the physical and chemical principles that govern Earth processes.

Course Contents & Topics
List topics with approximate number of weeks:
- Earth in the laboratory, scaling time and space (1)
- Introduction to thermodynamics, and the concept of equilibrium (2)
- States of matter, phase diagrams - sublimation, condensation, crystallisation and melting (2)
- Mineral-solution interfaces (1)
- Energy exchange in Earth environments: convection, conduction and radiation (2)
- Kinetics, reaction rates and isotope fractionation on geological time scales (1)
- Newtonian mechanics and basic laws of motion (1)
- Fluid flow and particle transport (1)
- Gravitational, geostrophic and centripetal forces (1)

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand basic principles of thermodynamics as applied to the Earth Sciences
CLO 2 use phase diagrams to explain processes of fluid/solid interactions
CLO 3 describe how energy is exchanged throughout the Earth System
CLO 4 demonstrate an understanding of the kinetics of geochemical reactions
CLO 5 comprehend the principles of motion and the basic forces affecting movement of gases, liquids and solids on Earth

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in EASC1401 or EASC1402

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presential skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presential skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presential skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presential skills.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presential skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 12 sessions x 2 hour 24
Laboratory paper exercises 24
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 60 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Examination 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5

Required/recommended reading and online materials

EASC2402
Field and laboratory methods (6 credits)

Offering Department Earth Sciences
Course Co-ordinator Dr P Bach, Earth Sciences (pabach@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved Dr P Bach, Earth Sciences (Prof Y Q Zong, Earth Sciences)

Course Objectives
This course is hands-on field and laboratory-based that introduces basic geological and geomorphological field mapping techniques and the use of geological equipment and air photographs, an overview of the geology and natural environment of Hong Kong.

Course Contents & Topics
- Maps and map reading, map reference system (lectures and class practice)
- Interpretation of geological and topographic maps: topographic and geological cross sections, geological structures from outcrop patterns and structural contour lines (horizontal, inclined strata, folded, and faulted strata, unconformities (lectures and class practice)
- Interpretation and use of air photographs (class practice)
- Field observation and description of rocks, outcrops (with fieldtrips in Hong Kong)
- Field observation and description of landscape units (with fieldtrips in Hong Kong)
- Laboratory equipment and techniques (lectures and lab sessions)

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 read geological maps and comprehend 3-D geological structures from 2-D geological maps
CLO 2 construct a geological cross section showing interpreted subsurface rocks and structures, and natural landscape units
CLO 3 demonstrate techniques for basic field observations, measurements and identifications
CLO 4 create and interpret an internally consistent geological and landscape maps from a set of collected field observations and data
CLO 5 develop skills in integrating geological field data in determining a geological and landscape history and writing a structured field report
CLO 6 understand to the basics of a series of laboratory techniques for geological and environmental studies

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible)
Pass in EASC1401 or EASC1402
**EASC2404**  
**Introduction to atmosphere and hydrosphere (6 credits)**  
**Offering Department**: Earth Sciences  
**Quota**: 50  
**Offering Quota**:  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Co-ordinator</th>
<th>Teachers Involved</th>
<th>Course Objectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dr J R Ali, Earth Sciences</td>
<td>(Dr J R Ali, Earth Sciences) (Prof P P C Wu, Earth Sciences)</td>
<td>This course introduces the atmosphere and hydrosphere systems, and explains at a basic level how they interact with one another.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Contents & Topics**  
Introduction and course plan, Earth within a broader context (Solar System and other key features); Geological forces shaping the floor of the Oceans and Seas; Water Structure, Ocean Structure and Seawater Composition/Chemistry; Introduction to the Atmosphere; Heating Earth’s surface and Atmosphere; Temperature; Moisture and Atmospheric Stability; Forms of condensation and precipitation; Hydrological Cycle - an overview; Air Pressure and Winds; Intro to Atmospheric Circulation and Weather Systems; Ocean Circulation; Waves; Tides; Coasts; Groundwater basins; Groundwater usage, contamination, caves and karst; Glaciers and glacial landscapes; Climate system, proxy data, causes of climate change; Effects of climate change.  

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- **CLO 1** understand the important features which distinguish Earth from the other planets within our Solar System, particularly with regards to its outer fluid envelopes  
- **CLO 2** appreciate that on a geologic timescale, the ocean basins and the seas are continually changing their location and morphology, and why this is the case  
- **CLO 3** understand the key features of water, and the critical role the compound plays in the Atmosphere-Hydrosphere system  
- **CLO 4** understand the basic physical phenomena associated with the Atmosphere and the Oceans/Seas and their important lower-order elements  
- **CLO 5** have an awareness of the scientifically "hot" Atmosphere and Hydrosphere topics  

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**  
Pass in EASC1401 or EASC1402  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td><strong>A</strong> Thorough grasp of the subject; evidence of strong critical abilities and logical thinking; highly effective organizational and presentational skills; insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly; integration of the full range of appropriate theories, principles, evidence and techniques.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td><strong>B</strong> Substantial grasp of the subject; evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking; effective organizational and presentational skills; critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly; some partial integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td><strong>C</strong> General but incomplete grasp of the subject; evidence of some critical abilities and logical thinking; moderately effective organizational and presentational skills; use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly; partial integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td><strong>D</strong> Limited grasp of the subject; retention of some relevant information of the subject; evidence of limited critical abilities; limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills; use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison; limited integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td><strong>Fail</strong> Little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject; little or no evidence of critical abilities and logical / coherent thinking; incoherent organization and poor presentational skills; limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them; little or no or inapt integration of theories, principles, evidence and techniques.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### EASC2406 Geochemistry (6 credits)

**Offering Department**: Earth Sciences  
**Quota**: ---

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr D Chung, Earth Sciences (dianec@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved**: (Dr D Chung, Earth Sciences)  
(Prof GC Zhao, Earth Sciences)  
(Prof MF Zhou, Earth Sciences)

**Course Objectives**: This course provides an understanding of the fundamentals and approaches for geochemical analysis. It introduces students to the basic chemical principles, modern techniques and quantitative analysis for studying the earth.

**Course Contents & Topics**:  
- Physical and chemical state of the earth,  
- Differentiation of and cosmic abundance of elements,  
- Aqueous solutions and chemistry of natural water,  
- Trace element,  
- Chemistry of igneous rocks,  
- Chemical controls on soil formation,  
- Radioactive isotope geochemistry,  
- Stable isotope geochemistry,  
- Oxidation and reduction,  
- Chemical weathering

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate an understanding of basic principles of geochemistry and their applications to geological studies  
- CLO 2 describe element distribution in major rocks  
- CLO 3 apply the principles of isotopes to dating and studies of petrogenesis and climate changes  
- CLO 4 demonstrate knowledge of the chemical weathering processes

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**: Pass in EASC1402

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**: Y  
**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**:  
- **A**: Demonstrate extensive knowledge and skills at an advanced level required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply highly effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities, and limited ability to apply partially effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking, and ability to apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**: Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>12 sessions x 2 hours</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>paper exercises</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**:  
Walther J.V.: Essentials of Geochemistry (Jones and Bartlett Publishers 2005)

---

### EASC2407 Mineralogy (6 credits)

**Offering Department**: Earth Sciences  
**Quota**: 30

**Course Co-ordinator**: Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences (minsun@hku.hk)

---

### Department of Earth Sciences
Planetary geology (6 credits)

12 sessions x 2 hours

Pre-requisites
Pass in EASC1402

Teachers Involved
(Prof M F Zhou, Earth Sciences)
(Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences)

Course Objectives
To provide essential knowledge of mineralogy, to familiarize students with common minerals that are basis for study of petrography of igneous, sedimentary and metamorphic rocks.

Course Contents & Topics
- Mineral crystallography, mineral chemistry
- Mineral symmetry, Miller indices
- Physical properties of minerals
- Mineral composition, structure and classification
- Identification of rock forming minerals-hand specimens
- Use of petrographic microscope
- Optical properties under plane polarized light
- Optical properties under orthoscopic illumination
- Optical properties under conoscopic illumination
- Identification of rock forming minerals-thin sections
- Precious minerals
- Chemical variations of minerals
- Trace elements
- Instrument analysis for minerals

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 describe the methods and systems used in classification of minerals
CLO 2 apply the physical and chemical properties used in identification of rock-forming mineralogy and mineral structure
CLO 3 describe the principle of optical mineralogy
CLO 4 identify the common rock-forming minerals in hand specimens and thin sections
CLO 5 understand some principles of mineral chemistry

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Examination 60 CLO 1,2,3,4,5

Required/recommended reading and online materials

EASC2408 Planetary geology (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Earth Sciences Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr M H Lee, Earth Sciences (mthlee@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr J Michalski, Earth Sciences)
(Prof M H Lee, Earth Sciences)

Course Objectives
This course provides students with an introduction to the origin, evolution, structure, composition and distribution of matter in the Solar System condensed in the form of planets, satellites, comets, asteroids and rings, with particular emphasis on surface features, internal structures and histories from a geological point of view. The course incorporates the findings from recent space investigations, planetary imagery, remote sensing and Earth analogues to extraterrestrial features into a fascinating portrayal of the geological activities and histories in our Solar System.

Course Contents & Topics
Formation, evolution, internal structure and surface processes of planetary bodies; the terrestrial planets Mercury, Venus, the Earth-Moon system, and Mars; the giant planets Jupiter, Saturn, Uranus, and Neptune and their moons; Pluto, Charon and the Kuiper Belt; asteroids, meteorites, comets and the Oort cloud; Origin of our Solar System.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 describe the basic features of our Solar System and its constituents
CLO 2 explain how this knowledge is acquired through observations and experiments
CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the key geological, physical and chemical processes governing the structure, formation and evolution of planetary bodies
CLO 4 compare and contrast our own planet Earth with other planetary bodies
### EASC2409

**Offering Department**
- Earth Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**
- Dr J R Ali (jrali@hku.hk)
- (Taiwan Field Trip, Earth Sciences)

**Course Objectives**
- This course is field-based and introduces geology of China, Taiwan and/or regions in the vicinity of Hong Kong through hands-on studies and field excursions.
- The course is compulsory for majors in Geology (accredited pathway).

**Course Contents & Topics**
- The course will introduce the following topics:
  - Geological studies in Southern China and/or Taiwan
  - Geological history of S. China & Taiwan
  - Recognition of rock units and minerals in the field
  - Field recognition and description of geological structures
  - Stratigraphic measurements
  - Field geology of active and passive margins
  - Engineering geology
  - Management of geological hazards
  - Basic geological mapping techniques

**Course Learning Outcomes**
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1: have acquired a broad understanding of the geology of east Asia, in particular, Taiwan and South China
  - CLO 2: be able to undertake basic field observations, stratigraphic measurements and identifications of rocks and minerals
  - CLO 3: have acquired at least 3 days of experience in independent stratigraphic logging and geological mapping
  - CLO 4: develop skills in integrating geological field data in determining a geological history and writing a structured field report

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
- Pass in EASC1401 or EASC1402 or PHYS1650

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
- Y 2nd sem, Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**
- **A**: Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**
- Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>12 sessions x 2 hours</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>12 sessions x 2 hours</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
EASC2410 Data analysis and modeling in earth sciences (6 credits)  
Offering Department: Earth Sciences  
Offer in Academic Year 2017 - 2018: Y  
Offer in Academic Year 2016 - 2017: Y  
Course Contents & Topics: This course uses a hands-on approach to introduce the basic principles of data analysis and modeling in earth sciences through practical examples.  
Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1: Explain basic statistical concepts and their applications to earth science data processing and modeling  
- CLO 2: Demonstrate knowledge in basic numerical methods, their applications in earth sciences, and limitations  
- CLO 3: Apply appropriate methods to analyze, process and visualize earth science data, with the help of computer software such as MATLAB and GIS  
Pre-requisites: Pass in EASC1401  
Course Objectives: This course will explore the role of humans in global change and the environmental responses to such changes. Global warming, greenhouse gas emission, past climates, climatic and environmental changes vs. culture evolution, natural vs. anthropogenic climate change, model projections of future climate change, scientific uncertainty, impacts of climate change, including sea level, fresh water, food, ecosystems and human health  
Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1: Recognise the complexity of global climate systems  
- CLO 2: Recognise the controversy of anthropogenic global warming  
- CLO 3: Identify modern environmental issues  
- CLO 4: Assess the credibility of various scientific arguments  
Pre-requisites: Pass in EASC2404 or ENV52001  
Offer in Academic Year 2017 - 2018: Y  
Grade Descriptors:  
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.  
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.  
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.  
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.  
- E: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.  
- F: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.  
---
of relevant information from sources and ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly.

C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use of relevant information from sources and ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly.

D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Show use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison.

Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Show limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them.

### Course Type
- Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

#### Activities
- Lectures: 36
- Project work: 30
- Tutorials: 12
- Discussion: 24
- Reading / Self study: 48

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

#### Methods
- Essay: Coursework Assessment 25 CLO 1,2,4
- Examination: One 2-hour written examination 50 CLO 1,2,4
- Project report: 25 CLO 1,2,4

### Course Contents & Topics
- Magma and magmatism: textures and structures of igneous rocks, classification of igneous rocks, including volcanism and plutonism
- Basic igneous rocks
- Intermediate igneous rocks
- Acid igneous rocks
- Sedimentary diagenesis, classification of sedimentary rocks; textures and structures of sedimentary rocks.
- Clastic sedimentary rocks: conglomerate and sandstone, siltstone and mudstone
- Biochemical sedimentary rocks: limestone and dolostone
- Metamorphism; controlling factors of metamorphism; textures and structures of metamorphic rocks; classification of metamorphic rocks
- Metapelitic rocks
- Metabasic rocks
- Meta-carbonate rocks and meta-felsic rocks

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 identify major igneous rocks and their textures and structures in both hand specimens and under microscope
- CLO 2 identify major sedimentary rocks and their textures and structures in both hand specimens and under microscope
- CLO 3 identify major metamorphic rocks and their textures and structures in both hand specimens and under microscope
- CLO 4 make full description and write report on the above rock types

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in EASC2407

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
- Y: 2nd sem
- Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

### Course Type
- Lecture with laboratory component course

#### Activities
- Lectures: 12 sessions x 2 hours
- Laboratory specimen descriptions & thin-section observations under microscope: 24
- Reading / Self study: 100

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project report</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Offer Department
- Earth Sciences

### Course Co-ordinator
- Prof G Zhao, Earth Sciences (gzhao@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
- (Dr M Pittman,Earth Sciences)
- (Prof G Zhao,Earth Sciences)
- (Prof M Sun,Earth Sciences)

### Grade Descriptors

- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations.

- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.

- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.

- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Show limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them.

- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Required/recommended reading and online materials</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EASC3403</td>
<td>Sedimentary environments (6 credits)</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Lecture with laboratory component course</td>
<td>Details: Lectures, Laboratory, Field work, Project work, Reading / Self study</td>
<td>Methods: Examination, Laboratory reports, Presentation, Test</td>
<td>Sedimentology and Stratigraphy (Second Edition), Gary Nichols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
<td>Weighting in final course grade (%)</td>
<td>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EASC3404</td>
<td>Structural geology (6 credits)</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Lecture with laboratory component course</td>
<td>Details: Lectures, Laboratory, Field work, Project work, Reading / Self study</td>
<td>Methods: Examination, Laboratory reports, Presentation, Test</td>
<td>Sedimentology and Stratigraphy (Second Edition), Gary Nichols</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
<td>Weighting in final course grade (%)</td>
<td>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
- Faults and fault systems
- Fault plane solutions
- Folds
- Shear Zones
- Fabrics (foliations, lineations)
- Contractual and extensional systems
- Kink method for cross-section construction
- Structurally focused map interpretation
- Balanced cross sections
- Key Structures in HK

Fieldwork
- Joints - Pokfulam Reservoir plus an associated day of self-survey work
- Folds plus - Ma Shi Chau
- Shear zone - Sai O; and overturned fold limb Ma Tso Lung

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLO</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1</td>
<td>Understand a moderate level rock deformation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 2</td>
<td>Interpret structural data from a geology map</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td>Plot and interpret structural data on a stereonet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 4</td>
<td>Appreciate 3D rock and 4D rock-time relationships</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in EASC2402 and EASC3402

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
**Y** 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>eleven 2-hour sessions</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>stereonets, map interpretation with a structural focus</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>3 days field work</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td>additional 1-2 days self directed 'field' studies of facing stones showing interesting structural features</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Additional Course Information
Structural geology has lots of associated textbooks with many in the HKU library. Furthermore there are lots of web-hosted materials. Therefore the four named works are not required purchases.

### EASC3405
Environmental remote sensing (6 credits)  Academic Year 2017  Quota 36

### Course Contents & Topics
1. Explanation of the fundamentals of remote sensing
2. Description of key remote sensing platforms, sensors and their purposes.
3. How to obtain data of sites on Earth and other planets.
4. How to process, analyse and correct remote sensing data.
5. How to interpret remote sensing data.
6. How to use software for remote sensing. You will be an expert in highly employable skills if you work hard.
7. How to integrate remote sensing data with Geographic Information Systems (GIS)
8. How to apply remote sensing to modern problems in geoscience, climate science, planetary science, and your science.
9. How to relate your work to bigger career goals and how to be a professional scientist.
10. How to integrate your new skills into your CV so that you have an advantage in the job market.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge of how remotely sensed data are acquired
- CLO 2 comprehend the basic techniques of image processing
- CLO 3 handle remotely sensed data within geographic information systems
- CLO 4 understand how remotely sensed be used for environmental assessment
- CLO 5 evaluate and interpret remotely sensed data
- CLO 6 present and discuss results

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in EASC2404 or EASC2406 or EASC2407 or ENVS2002

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y  Examination  No Exam

**Grade Descriptors**

(A+ to F)

- A Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Correct use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities, and limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**

Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Written assignments (weekly)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project report</td>
<td>Report on a topic of interest</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Two in-class examination (25% each)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- Remote Sensing: Principles and Applications (3rd edition)
  Author(s): Floyd F. Sabins
  Publisher: Waveland Press
  Edition: 3rd
  Print ISBN : 9781577665076, 1577665074
eText ISBN : 9781478618171.0

If you sign up for the course, plan on buying the book. The e-version is inexpensive. You will be expected to know the material from the book.

**Course Website**

http://www.clays.space

**Additional Course Information**

You can learn more by visiting the website http://www.clays.space

**EASC3406**

Reconstruction of past climate (6 credits)  
Academic Year 2017

**Offering Department**

Earth Sciences  
Quota ---

**Course Co-ordinator**

Dr S H Li, Earth Sciences (shli@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**

(Sh Li, Earth Sciences)

**Course Objectives**

This course provides students with an understanding of how dynamic earth is and how it has changed over the last 2.6 million years. This course introduces the theory and methods of climate reconstructions.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- The Quaternary period (1)
- Climate changes in the last 2.6 million years (1)
- Driven forces of climate change (1)
- Quantitative reconstruction methods (1)
- Pollen analysis and biological proxies (2)
- Climate change in arid regions (1)
- Quaternary geochronology (1)
- Climate changes in East Asia (1)
- Climate change impacts on human evolution and society (1)
- Global warming and future climate change (1)
- Climate change in Asia and Europe

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the earth climate during last 2.6 million years
- CLO 2 understand the driving forces of climate changes in different scales
- CLO 3 learn the methods for palaeo-environment reconstruction
- CLO 4 understand the impacts of climate changes
- CLO 5 synthesize and interpret data sets of climate change proxies

**Pre-requisites**

Pass in EASC2401
### Geophysics (6 credits)

**Course Objectives**
- An overview of the geophysical characteristics and processes of the solid earth and a survey of the various geophysical disciplines, including seismology, gravity, geothermometry, geomagnetism and paleomagnetism, as well as exploration geophysical methods for studying the earth's interior and near subsurface structure.

**Course Contents & Topics**
- Earth's Dimension and Motion in Space
- Gravity and gravity anomalies
- Isostasy and Geodesy
- Geomagnetism
- Paleomagnetism and rock magnetism
- Thermal Properties of the Earth
- Earthquake Seismology
- Seismic waves and free oscillations
- Applied Geophysical Methods: seismic method
- Applied Geophysical Methods: Electrical methods

**Course Learning Outcomes**
- CLO 1 describe the approaches and methods geophysicists use to study the interior of the earth
- CLO 2 apply basic techniques in measurements of earthquakes and interpret a seismogram
- CLO 3 describe the procedure to determine gravity anomalies and their interpretation
- CLO 4 understand the methods of paleomagnetism and describe the processes of rock magnetisation
- CLO 5 describe how density, pressure and temperature of the earth's interior are determined

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**
- W.F. Ruddiman: Earths climate: Past and future (Freeman, 2008, 2nd ed.)

**Additional Course Information**
- Previous course code & title: EASC2131 A Cool World: Ice Ages and Climate Change
Department of Earth Sciences

Igneous and metamorphic petrogenesis (6 credits)

Offering Department
Earth Sciences

Course Co-ordinator
Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences (mprops@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Prof G Zhao, Earth Sciences)
(Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences)

Course Objectives
To provide a comprehensive coverage of the principles and techniques used in the study of petrogenesis of igneous and metamorphic rocks and their cause-and-effect relationships with tectonic settings and crustal evolution.

Course Contents & Topics
- Magma generation: physicochemical conditions and tectonic settings.
- Application of trace elements and isotopes to the study of magma genesis
- Basaltic magmatism and mantle characteristics
- Granitic magma and crustal characteristics
- Magmatism at convergent boundaries
- Magmatism and crustal growth
- Types of metamorphism
- Chemical equilibrium/disequilibrium in metamorphism; metamorphic phase diagrams (ACF, A'KF, AFM, etc)
- Metamorphic processes and reactions
- Metamorphic petrogenesis and evolution of pelitic rocks
- Metamorphic petrogenesis and evolution of mafic rocks
- Metamorphism in different tectonic settings; metamorphic pressure-temperature-time (P-T-t) paths and their tectonic implications.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 use rock associations, textures, structures and geochemical characteristics to infer the petrogenesis of major igneous rocks
CLO 2 use magmatic rocks to study the mantle and crustal characteristics
CLO 3 apply mineral assemblages, microtextures, mineral reaction relationships and metamorphic P-T paths to infer the tectonothermal evolution of metamorphic rocks
CLO 4 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of magmatic and metamorphic processes and their cause-and-effect relationships with tectonic settings and crustal evolution

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in EASC3402

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate extensive knowledge and skills at an advanced level required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply highly effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentional skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities, and limited ability to apply partially effective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentional skills.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking, and ability to apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques to solve problems. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentional skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Additional Course Information
John D Winter: An Introduction to Igneous and Metamorphic Petrology (Prentice Hall, 2001)

EASC3410
Hydrogeology (6 credits)

Offering Department
Earth Sciences

Course Co-ordinator
Prof J J Jiao, Earth Sciences (jiao@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Prof J J Jiao, Earth Sciences)

Course Objectives
This course aims to introduce some basic concepts and theories of groundwater flow with special reference to case
studies in HK. It consists of three components: 1) Fundamentals of groundwater physics; 2) well hydraulics and evaluation of groundwater as a resource; and 3) influence of groundwater on geotechnical and environmental engineering.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Hydrologic Cycle And water Budgets, Introduction to Hydrogeology (1 Week)
- Properties Of Aquifers (2 Weeks)
- Hydraulic head and flow net (2 Weeks)
- Basic Equations of Groundwater Flow (1 Week)
- Groundwater Flow To Wells (1 Week)
- Analysis Of Aquifer Test (2 Weeks)
- Well installation & pumping test design (1 Week)
- Regional Groundwater Flow Systems (HK case study) (1 Week)
- Groundwater contamination (China case study) (Week 12)

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 appreciate the importance of hydrogeology in geotechnical and environmental engineering
- CLO 2 understand basic concepts of hydrological cycle and water balance, and interaction between groundwater and surface water
- CLO 3 appreciate the close relationship between groundwater system and geology and topography
- CLO 4 understand basic concepts of aquifer and aquifer properties, hydraulic head, flow net, and basic principles of groundwater flow

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in EASC2402

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>A+ to F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offer in 2017 - 2018</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td>Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Dec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

- Activities: Details: No. of Hours
  - Lectures: 12 sessions x 2 hours
  - Laboratory: 10 x 2 hours
  - Field work: Half day field trip
  - Reading / Self study: 5

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

- Methods: Details: Weighting in final course grade (%): Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
  - Assignments: 30
  - Examination: 70: CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>EASCS3412</th>
<th>Earth resources (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof M F Zhou, Earth Sciences (<a href="mailto:mfzhou@hku.hk">mfzhou@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Prof M F Zhou, Earth Sciences)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>To provide students with knowledge about the classification of mineral deposits and their basic features; to understand the processes that lead to their formation; to gain hand on experience with mining procedures. In addition, students should gain knowledge about the world wide distributions of mineral and industrial resources.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>Concepts in mineral deposits and mining industrial; exploration and mining methods, classification of mineral deposit, mineral deposit models, magmatic oxide and sulfide deposits, skarn deposits, porphyry deposits, volcanicogenic massive sulfide deposits, coal, oil and gas, resource evaluation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- CLO 1</td>
<td>understand the terminology and nomenclature in the mining industrial and mineral deposits</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- CLO 2</td>
<td>understand basic concepts of hydrological cycle and water balance, and interaction between groundwater and surface water</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- CLO 3</td>
<td>appreciate the close relationship between groundwater system and geology and topography</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- CLO 4</td>
<td>understand basic concepts of aquifer and aquifer properties, hydraulic head, flow net, and basic principles of groundwater flow</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in EASC2402 or EASC3402</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer in 2017 - 2018</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex practical problems. Apply highly effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most practical problems. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to some practical problems. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherently logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve practical problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve practical problems. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Key</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex practical problems. Apply highly effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most practical problems. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to some practical problems. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherently logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve practical problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentation skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve practical problems. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Type</td>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lecture with laboratory component course</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) | Pass in EASC3410 and EASC3414, or already enrolled in these courses | This course is only for final year students. |

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>2 hour lectures per week for 10 weeks</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>1 overseas camp</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Oversea field trip (compulsory)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

TBC

---

**EASC3413**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Engineering geology (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr L N Y Wong, Earth Sciences (<a href="mailto:lnywong@hku.hk">lnywong@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr L N Y Wong,Earth Sciences) (Prof J J Jiao,Earth Sciences)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</th>
<th>Pass in EASC3410 and EASC3414, or already enrolled in these courses</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>This course is only for final year students.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>2 hour lectures per week for 10 weeks</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>1 overseas camp</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Oversea field trip (compulsory)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### EASC3414

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Soil and rock mechanics (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Earth Sciences</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr L N Y Wong, Earth Sciences (<a href="mailto:jiao@hku.hk">jiao@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr L N Y Wong,Earth Sciences)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>2 hour lectures per week for 10 weeks</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>1 overseas camp</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Oversea field trip (compulsory)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

**Course Objectives**  
To provide a basic knowledge of soil and rock mechanics for those wishing to consider further studies on a career in engineering geology/geotechnics.

**Course Contents & Topics**  
Stress and strain; properties and classifications of soil and rock; clay minerals; pore pressure and effective stress; strength and failure criteria, initial stresses and their measurement; deformation; consolidation; planes of weakness in rocks; ground treatment methods.

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 understand basic concepts of stress and strain, pore pressure and effective stress, strength and failure criteria  
- CLO 2 understand basic properties and classifications of soil and rock  
- CLO 3 appreciate the process of rock deformation and soil consolidation

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**  
Pass in EASC3410, or already enrolled in this course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Course Co-ordinator</th>
<th>Teachers Involved</th>
<th>Course Objectives</th>
<th>Course Contents &amp; Topics</th>
<th>Course Learning Outcomes</th>
<th>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**  
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

- **Activities**
  - Lectures: 24
  - Laboratory: 24
  - Reading / Self study: 100

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

- **Methods**
  - Assignments: 30%
  - Examination: 70%

**Course Co-ordinator**

- Dr. Z H Liu, Earth Sciences (zhiwu@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**

- (Dr Z H Liu, Earth Sciences)

**Course Objectives**

- This course provides students with a modern understanding of weather by examining at an advanced level the processes that govern atmospheric structure and behavior, weather elements, and weather systems.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Energy budget, radiative forcing, and greenhouse effect; stability, convection, and lapse rates; equation of state and pressure; thermodynamic diagrams; weather charts; Forces, winds, and general circulation; Monsoons, air masses, and fronts; thunderstorms, mid-latitude cyclones, and tropical cyclones; basic equations of the atmosphere; weather forecasting.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
  - CLO 1 describe key aspects of weather phenomena  
  - CLO 2 explain essential elements of atmospheric processes governing weather  
  - CLO 3 apply physical principles to construct models for some basic aspects of weather  
  - CLO 4 explain synoptic charts (weather maps)  
  - CLO 5 interpret Hong Kong weather (typhoons etc.)

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

- Pass in EASC2404

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Type</td>
<td>Lecture-based course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td><strong>Activities</strong></td>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td><strong>No. of Hours</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project work</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td><strong>Methods</strong></td>
<td><strong>Details</strong></td>
<td><strong>Weighting in final course grade (%)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project report</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Objectives**

To present key concepts of modern geochemistry and geochronology and their application to environmental and Earth science problems.

**Course Contents & Topics**

1. Principles of radiogenic isotopic dating and modern instruments
2. Zircon U-Pb isotopic dating and its application
3. Principles and techniques for dating mineral deposits
4. Introduction to Quaternary geochronology
5. Principle, development and applications of Luminescence dating

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge of concepts and ideas of modern geochemistry
- CLO 2 explain principles of radiogenic isotopic dating
- CLO 3 understand how modern analytical techniques are applied to dating earth materials
- CLO 4 understand howgeochemical methods are applied to gain insight into process in environmental and Earth sciences

**Pre-requisites and Co-requisites**

Pass in EASC2401 or EASC2406 or EASC2407

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- **A**
  - Student demonstrates thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all course learning outcomes. Shows strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and the ability to apply his/her knowledge to a wide range of problems in geochemistry, and at the same, can combine fundamental knowledge in geochemistry to understand the interactions among minerals, fluids and gases and how these processes impact fluxes of materials over geological time periods and on a global scale. Student shows the ability to apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B**
  - Student demonstrates substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and apply his/her knowledge to a range of problems in geochemistry, and at the same combine knowledge in geochemistry to understand material fluxes among minerals, fluids and gases over geological time periods and on a global scale. Student shows the ability to apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C**
  - Student demonstrates general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply his/her knowledge to a range of problems in geochemistry and how interactions among minerals, fluids and gases impact material fluxes on a global scale. Student shows the ability to apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D**
  - Student demonstrates partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to understand key topics in geochemistry and limited capability to transfer this knowledge to geological phenomena. Student shows the ability to apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **Fail**
  - Student demonstrates little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Shows very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Show limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them.

**Course Type**

Lecture with laboratory component course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>Up to 24 hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Discussion</td>
<td>Up to 24 hours</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project report</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

Geochemistry by William M. White (Wuley, Apr 1, 2013).
### Course Objectives
To introduce the concept of geological time and basic geological principles. To provide an understanding of the fossil record and the integration of Earth Systems and plate tectonics. To gain an appreciation of our place in the Universe, an understanding of the evolution of Earth and life on Earth through time.

### Course Contents & Topics
Geological time, the origin of life, fossils and diversification of life through time, Important events in Earth history such as Snowball Earth, the Cambrian explosion of life, the Permian/Triassic mass extinction, the Cretaceous Tertiary extinction event, the origins of humans.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1**: Define basic geological principles
- **CLO 2**: Explain critical geological relationships
- **CLO 3**: Outline the history of the development of our planet
- **CLO 4**: Interpret the geological record of evolution through time
- **CLO 5**: Compare and contrast various hypotheses put forward to explain major events in Earth history
- **CLO 6**: Describe major fossil groups

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in EASC3403

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project report</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 2,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Course Grade (%)

- **A**: Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Attend all the laboratory classes; showing strong ability in experiments, data processing and analysis; presenting lab reports with accurate language and correct results.
- **B**: Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Attend all the laboratory classes; showing ability in experiments, data processing and analysis; presenting lab reports with correct results.
- **C**: Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Attend most of the laboratory classes; showing ability in experiments, data processing and analysis; presenting lab reports with mostly correct results.
- **D**: Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Attend >50% of the laboratory classes; showing ability in experiments, data processing and analysis; presenting lab reports with acceptable results.
- **Fail**: Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Miss more than half of lab work; not able to turn laboratory reports; cannot properly use computer and software for data processing; the lab report fail to give correct result.

### Outcomes
To introduce the concept of geological time and basic geological principles. To provide an understanding of the fossil record and the integration of Earth Systems and plate tectonics. To gain an appreciation of our place in the Universe, an understanding of the evolution of Earth and life on Earth through time.

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- **A**: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations.
- **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations.

---
Directed studies in earth sciences (6 credits)

The student is expected to spend at least 120 hours on research in earth sciences.

Offering Department: Earth Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences (minsun@hku.hk)

Course Type: Project-based course

Course Objectives:
- To enhance the student's knowledge of a particular topic and the student's self-directed learning and critical thinking skills.

Course Contents & Topics:
The student undertakes a self-managed study on a topic in earth sciences under the supervision of a staff member. The topic is preferably one not sufficiently covered in the regular curriculum. The directed study can be a critical review or a synthesis of published work on the subject, or a laboratory or field study that would enhance the student's understanding of the subject. The project may not require an element of originality.

Course Learning Outcomes:
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1 enhance the ability in self-learning, data-collection and analysis, critical thinking, doing independent research in earth sciences
  - CLO 2 write scientific dissertation, and conduct oral presentation of the research results

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
- Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in the Geology or Earth System Science Majors;
- Cumulative GPA of 2.5 or above.

This course is not a capstone course and students cannot use this course to fulfill the capstone requirement of the Earth System Science and Geology Majors.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
- Y Year long

Grade Descriptors (A to F)

A
- Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw insightful conclusions and solve problems. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. [Work of A+ should show considerable creative thinking and additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.]

B
- Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions to draw insightful conclusions and solve problems. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
- Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
- Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>Labs &amp; Field work</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

EASC4403 Biogeochemical cycles (6 credits)

Offering Department: Earth Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Dr Y Li, Earth Sciences (yiliang@hku.hk)

Course Objectives:
- This course presents how the basic geochemistries of the Earth system, from atmosphere to the geosphere and to hydrosphere, have been and are being affected by the origin, evolution and existence of life. Human activities in particular, from the rapid consumption of resources to the destruction of the rainforests and the expansion of cities, are leading to rapid changes in the geochemistry of the Earth systems.

Course Contents:
- 1) Origin of elements, the Solar system and the Earth
### Course Contents & Topics

2) Geobiology and biogeochemical cycles: their role in the Earth system
3) Terrestrial biogeochemical cycles
4) Aquatic biogeochemical cycles
5) Marine biogeochemical cycles
6) Phosphorous cycle
7) Sulfur cycle
8) Carbon cycle
9) Nitrogen cycle
10) Biogeochemical cycles and impacts from human activities

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe the major geochemical cycles on Earth
- CLO 2 illustrate the interactions between the geochemical cycles and the main environments on Earth
- CLO 3 draw connections between changes to the Earth systems and the cause/effect relationships of changes to biogeochemical cycles
- CLO 4 knows why the anthropogenic activities become a significant part of globe change

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in EASC3403 or EASC3416 or ENVS3313

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>PBL group work</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td>Writing course thesis</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### Course Objectives

To review the concepts and processes that shape the configuration of the Earth, from core to crust. This course is intended to provide students with an understanding of the driving forces of Earth processes and the global outcome of these processes through an examination of direct and indirect observations, the evolution of hypotheses, and critical thinking.

### Course Contents & Topics

- Earth as a heat engine; Earth's interior; major features of the continents and oceans;
- Plate tectonics; orogenesis; crustal growth;
- Mantle convection; hot spots and plumes;
- Energy and driving forces of Earth processes;
- Methods of investigation of large scale structures and processes;
- Structure and physical properties of the planet;
- Isostasy; continental drift;
- Sea floor spreading; ocean ridges; transform faults;
- Subduction zones; mountain belts and orogenesis;
- Formation of continental crust;
- Continental rifts and continental margins;
- Sedimentary basins;
- Mechanism, consequence and implication of plate tectonics.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 have an appreciation of the Earth as a dynamic planet
- CLO 2 understand how energy release within the Earth is translated into geological processes
- CLO 3 appreciate the importance of a knowledge of the history of investigation of global scale tectonic processes
- CLO 4 distill of a wide range of data to differentiate competing geological theories
- CLO 5 produce concise written and oral summaries of literature research on specific topics in global dynamics

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in EASC3403 or EASC3404 or EASC3408 or EASC3409

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>1st sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Dec</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Grade Descriptors

- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical activities and logical thinking.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcome. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Show interest in the taught topics, and to answer most questions correctly.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. She limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Show some interest in the taught topics. Able to answer more than half of question correctly.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Does not show positive attitude in learning; not able to answer most of questions.

### EASC4406

Earth dynamics & global tectonics (6 credits)

### Academic Year

2017

### Quota

---

### Teachers Involved

Prof G Zhao, Earth Sciences (ghzhao@hku.hk)

### Course Objectives

To review the concepts and processes that shape the configuration of the Earth, from core to crust.
Course Type: Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:

- **Activities**: Details | No. of Hours
  - Lectures
  - Tutorials: student seminars and exercises | 12
  - Reading / Self study: essay, presentation plus additional reading | 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting:

- **Methods**: Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
  - Assignments: 10 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
  - Essay: Including essays and seminars | 40 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
  - Examination: | 50 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5

Required/recommended reading and online materials:

- Davies, Geoffrey F., Mantle convection for geologists (Cambridge 2011)

Course Objectives:

This course explores regional geologies as well as the approaches that geologists use to resolve regional geological questions.

Course Contents & Topics:

We will use case studies to explore how regional investigations integrating field-based and analytical research tools can test models for the evolution of large-scale geological systems. Likely case studies include exploration of various climate-tectonic interactions across mountain belts (Andes, Himalaya), the complex intraplate deformation of East Asia, and the progressive development of metamorphic core complexes via low-angle normal faults (N. America, NE China). Students will advance their abilities to synthesize and communicate geological knowledge by creating new Wikipedia pages complete with original figures on regional geological topics of their interest.

Course Learning Outcomes:

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 appreciate the influential (and commonly conflicting) models that have been proposed to explain a range of regional tectonic phenomena
- CLO 2 understand the various "tools" that are commonly used by geo-scientists to test and develop models for the evolution of tectonically complicated regions
- CLO 3 carry out an in-depth scientific literature review on a key regional geological issue and to present the findings via visual and written communication in an engaging, comprehensive online format

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):

- Pass in EASC3402; and (EASC3403 or EASC3404)

Offer in 2017 - 2018 grade descriptors (A to F):

- **A**: Thorough grasp of the subject; evidence of strong critical abilities and logical thinking; highly effective organizational and presentational skills; insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a wide range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly.
- **B**: Substantial grasp of the subject; evidence of critical abilities and logical thinking; effective organizational and presentational skills; critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly.
- **C**: General but incomplete grasp of the subject; evidence of some critical abilities and logical thinking; moderately effective organizational and presentational skills; use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly.
- **D**: Limited grasp of the subject, retention of some relevant information of the subject; evidence of limited critical abilities; limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills; use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison.
- **Fail**: Little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject; little or no evidence of critical abilities and logical / coherent thinking; incoherent organization and poor presentational skills; limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them.

Assessment Methods and Weighting:

- **Methods**: Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
  - Assignments: 10 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
  - Essay: Including essays and seminars | 40 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
  - Examination: | 50 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5
### Course: Special topics in earth sciences (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** Earth Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr M H Lee, Earth Sciences (mhlee@hku.hk)

#### Course Objectives

The overall aim of this special topic is to develop an advanced understanding of our planet's place within the wider universe, the origins of our planetary system, and geological processes in extreme extraterrestrial environments. Students will explore the concept of abiotic chemical evolution and learn about various important biomarkers targeted for life detection in modern space exploration missions. The course also provides opportunities to study meteorites and their relationship to the origin of the Earth, solar system & universe, and survey planetary topics, including impacts, differentiation, and volcanism on planetary objects.

#### Course Contents & Topics

The course will cover the following aspects of planetary science. The following topics will be covered in lectures:

1. The interstellar medium
2. Star formation and the accretion of planets
3. Meteorites and comets
4. Impacts and craters
5. Evolution of other terrestrial planets
6. Prebiotic chemistry and the origins of life
7. Biosynthetic isotopic fractionations
8. Biomarker and molecular signatures
9. Symmetry-breaking mechanisms
10. Mass spectrometry for organic geochemists
11. Planetary mission concepts
12. Life detection on habitable planet and moons

#### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** identify various planetary materials in the Solar System and understand how they formed and evolve
- **CLO 2** understand how planetary events shaped the history of the Earth and the structure of our solar system
- **CLO 3** recognize and differentiate between the organic signatures of biotic and abiotic materials, and appreciate the use of particular chemical structures as molecular fossils to interpret past life based on understandings of extant life
- **CLO 4** evaluate contemporary theories on the origin of life and the formation of complex organic molecules in space and their delivery to planetary surfaces
- **CLO 5** use modern analytical techniques to reconstruct organic constituents in samples and interpret data generated from the latest planetary missions
- **CLO 6** nurture their interests and curiosity in the field of planetary science

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in any EASC3XXX or EASC4XXX course

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: N</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes, and evidence of productive reading supplementing lectures. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate critical use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations, but falling short on excellence in some of these aspects. Demonstrate correct use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate limited ability to use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate misuse of data, literature reviews, and other sources and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>12 sessions x 2 hours</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>6 sessions x 2 hours</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td>preparation + presentation</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>6 sessions x 2 hours</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>30</td>
<td><strong>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>group presentation</td>
<td>20</td>
<td><strong>CLO 1,2,3,4,6</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project report</td>
<td>individual essay</td>
<td>50</td>
<td><strong>CLO 1,2,3,4,6</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### EASC4911
#### Earth system: contemporary issues (6 credits)
**Offering Department:** Earth Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr S C Chang, Earth Sciences (sucxin@hku.hk)

#### Teachers Involved
- Dr S C Chang, Earth Sciences

#### Course Objectives
This is a capstone course that provides students with an opportunity to synthesize and correlate the knowledge gained in previous courses in Earth System Science for them to gain a more in-depth appreciation and awareness of the Earth System, the interplay between its component parts, and some of the global issues. Students will also get some basic concepts on how to do strategic analysis on global trends of natural resources.

#### Course Contents & Topics
- The Earth as an integrated system.
- The interactions between Earth’s component parts.
- The evolution of Earth’s global climates in deep time.
- The Earth as a fine-tuning system.
- Natural resource and managements.
- Natural hazards and managements.
- Bio-resources and Bioethics.
- Global trend in oil and natural gas.
- Global trend in mineral resources (non-metals, ferrous metals and rare earth elements).

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 comprehend in some depth the nature of the issues confronting humankind as part of the Earth System
- CLO 2 understand the basis of interrelationships through feedback loops within the Earth System
- CLO 3 synthesize scientific data available from a variety of sources and apply the data to problem solving, particularly in areas of contemporary concern
- CLO 4 understand how past and present activities on the planet will affect its future

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in the Earth System Science Major including at least two of the following courses: EASC3410, EASC3415 or ENV3313.

This capstone course is for Earth System Science Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
- Y 2nd sem  
  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

#### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all of the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate critical use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Demonstrate correct use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Demonstrate mostly correct but some erroneous use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to synthesize and apply knowledge to solve problems. Demonstrate limited ability to use of data, literature reviews, and other sources to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research report</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Type
Project-based course

#### Required/recommended reading and online materials

---

### EASC4955
#### Integrated field studies (6 credits)
**Offering Department:** Earth Sciences  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr J A King, Earth Sciences (jessking@hku.hk)

#### Teachers Involved
- Dr A G Webb, Earth Sciences
- Dr J A King, Earth Sciences
- Dr R McKenzie, Earth Sciences

#### Course Objectives
The aims of a geological field camp activities are to provide:
1) essential training and experience in geological mapping techniques.
2) the opportunity to gain confidence in independently applying these skills to areas of structural and stratigraphic complexity.
3) opportunities to study at first-hand areas of particular geological interest and importance of an overseas locality.
Course Contents & Topics

The course requires integration of geological knowledge from multiple geological disciplines. Students will visit areas of geological interest and will undertake independent and group mapping and problem solving exercises in each area. The curriculum comprised 3 x 6-day long projects (based on an ~2x5km area of interest), where each week long project is typically scheduled as follows:

Day 1-2: Instructor-lead learning.
Day 3-5: Technique application/independent field mapping and site visit.
Day 6: Field examination.
Day 7: Write up/Rest.

For each project area students is required to produce:
A detailed geologic map of the area. (15% x 3 = 45%)
A cross-section of the area. (5% x 3 = 15%)

To accompany these maps, the students must prepare ONE report (15%) - this field report should include the tectonic evolution of region, synthesized from the all three projects and site visits, complete with interpretations of depositional environments, magmatic events and structural data.

To assess field skills:
3 one-day field exam, where students, working INDEPENDENTLY of other students and faculty, construct a geologic map and cross sections in a small (~1km x ~1km) area that they have not previously visited. (5% for each one-day field exam)

10% will be awarded for professional conduct.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 Describe the petrography and petrogenesis of rocks and minerals.
- CLO 2 Identify geological setting from lithologies and stratigraphy.
- CLO 3 Measure, record and analyse structural data.
- CLO 4 Construct geological maps and cross-sections.
- CLO 5 Synthesize varied geological information pertaining to an area in order to derive a basic model of tectonic evolution.
- CLO 6 Identify and basically evaluate areas of potential natural hazard/economic potential.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in the Geology Major. This must include either a PASS in, or student must be already enrolled in EASC5403, EASC3404 or EASC3409.

This capstone course is for Geology Major students only.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y  2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y  Examination  No Exam

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Letter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly fieldwork skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective fieldwork skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective fieldwork skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Apply partially effective fieldwork skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fail. Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Apply minimally effective or ineffective fieldwork skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Field camps

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>18 sessions x 1 hour</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>18 field days x 5 hours/day</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Area Maps &amp; Cross-sections (3 x 20% each)</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>1 Final Report (15%) + 10% for professional conduct</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>3 Field Test (5% each)</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Course Information

Course Coordinator reserve the right to withdraw any students with unsatisfactory performance in pre-requisite courses underway during the semester (semester 2) prior to leaving for field camp (May/June). This will be decided on satisfactory mid-examination result or laboratory performance.

EASC4966 Earth sciences internship (6 credits)

Offering Department: Earth Sciences

Academic Year: 2017

Quota: ---

Course Co-ordinator: Dr X R Zuo, Earth Sciences (xuranzuo@hku.hk)

Course Objectives

This course aims to offer students the opportunities to gain work experience in the industry related to their major of study. The workplace learning experience would be of great benefits to the students to apply their knowledge gained in the study to the real work environments. Students have to take on at least 160 hours of internship work either within the University or outside the University arranged by the School/Departments.

Course Contents & Topics

1. Within the university: The student will be supervised by a staff member (Supervisor), working on a project or various tasks as instructed by the Supervisor.

2. Outside the university: The student will work in an external agency related to the major of study. The student will be supervised under a staff member of the external agency (the External Supervisor) and a staff member of the Department/School of the student (the Internal Supervisor). The work to be performed by the student will normally be instructed by the External Supervisor, with prior agreement of the Internal Supervisor.

Course Learning

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
Outcomes

CLO 1 gain at least 4 weeks of work experience in a geosciences-related firm or the Government
CLO 2 acquire an understanding and appreciation of the real work environment
CLO 3 have some experience with applying learned knowledge to solving real world problems

Pre-requisites
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in the Geology or Earth System Science Majors.

This course is not a capstone course and students cannot use this course to fulfill the capstone requirement of the Earth System Science and Geology Majors.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Summer Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors
Pass
Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of "Distinction".

 Fail
Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

Course Type
Internship

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Internship work it is expected that students are to work at least 160 hours (or the equivalent of 4 weeks full-time) 160

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Written report written report, employer's feedback and oral presentation 100 CLO 1,2,3

Additional Course Information
This course will be assessed on "Pass/Fail" basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval.

Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

EASC4999
Earth sciences project (12 credits)
Academic Year 2017
Quota ---

Offering Department Earth Sciences
Course Co-ordinator Prof M Sun, Earth Sciences (minsung@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved Various teachers in the Department.Earth Sciences

Course Objectives
To enhance the student’s knowledge, ability and interest in advanced studies in the Earth Sciences by providing the student with an opportunity to be engaged in an advanced research project.

Course Contents & Topics
The student undertakes a research project in the form of a senior thesis under the supervision of a staff member.

The project could be based on a particular component of a staff member's research or one proposed and designed by the student. The student must involve in the project in a non-trivial manner, and play a major role in the project formulation, data collection and analysis, and presentation. The project should contain an element of originality.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 acquire first-hand research experience in earth sciences by doing an individual research project independently under the supervision of a supervisor
CLO 2 select research topics, design research path, choose research technology, and more importantly use critical thinking
CLO 3 enhance the ability in doing independent earth/environmental research with field/laboratory components

Pre-requisites
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in the Geology or Earth System Science Majors; and Cumulative GPA of 2.7 or above.

This course is not a capstone course and students cannot use this course to fulfill the capstone requirement of the Earth System Science and Geology Majors.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y Year long Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors
A
Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and creative thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of first-hand data and results to draw insightful conclusions and solve problems. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. [Work of A+ should show considerable creative thinking and additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.]

B
Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and creative thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of first-hand data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and creative thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of first-hand data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use first-hand data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Miseuse of first-hand data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Reading / Self study The student is expected to spend at least 240 hours on the project 240

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Dissertation Dissertation and presentation 100 CLO 1,2,3

556
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Credits</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ENVS1401</td>
<td>Introduction to environmental science</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENVS3004</td>
<td>Environment, society and economics</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Objectives

#### Course Learning Outcomes

- **CLO 1**: Explain and describe connections between the physical and biological components of the environment.
- **CLO 2**: Discuss the impacts of human activities on the environment.
- **CLO 3**: Explain the concept of environmental sustainability and give examples of how society can adapt behavior to achieve sustainability.
- **CLO 4**: Understand how we are overusing our resources and compare different approaches to resolving specific problems presented in class.

#### Course Contents & Topics

The teaching and learning will be organized around key issues, and loosely divided into three sections:

**Part I: The Basics**
- Application of science to solve environmental problems
- Key ecological, chemical, and earth science concepts
- Understanding the underlying causes of environmental problems
- Human population growth and economics

**Part II: Using and conserving our resources**
- How we use and misuse key natural resources
- Difficulty in assuring a sustainable supply of energy
- Waste management and air pollution issues

**Part III: Global issues**
- How do our actions change the face of the planet?
- Urban ecology and understanding our contribution to global climate change

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

- **Lecture-based course**
- **Tutorials and group discussions**
- **Case studies**
- **Field work**
- **Two half day field trips**
- **Reading and Self study**

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Pre-requisites and Co-requisites

- **ENVS1401**
  - **NIL**

### Course Type

- **Lecture-based course**

### Course Co-ordinator

Dr C A Not, Earth Sciences (cnot@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved

Dr C A Not, Earth Sciences

### Grade Descriptors

- **A**: Demonstrate thorough understanding of the subject and an ability to apply knowledge gained in class to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Show evidence of logical thinking and some original thought. Coursework completed on time and to a high academic standard.
- **B**: Demonstrate a good understanding of the subject and an ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Show evidence of logical thinking abilities. Coursework completed on time and to a good academic standard.
- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete understanding of the subject and an ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Show some evidence of logical thinking, but with some inconsistencies. Some coursework incomplete, but submitted on time and in an adequate academic standard.
- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp of the subject and a limited ability to apply knowledge to some familiar situations. Show only ability to apply knowledge to simple examples. Show little evidence of logical thinking. Coursework submitted late to a poor standard.
- **Fail**: Demonstrate little or no understanding of the subject and very little or no ability to apply knowledge to familiar situations. Show no evidence of logical or coherent thinking. Coursework missing or substandard.

### Examination

- **Y**: 1st sem
- **Offer in 2018 - 2019**: Y
- **Examination**: Dec
### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in one of the following courses: CHEM2041, EASC2404, ENV2001 or ENV2002

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y 1st sem</td>
<td>Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>12 sessions of 2 hrs</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group work</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- Tietenberg and Lewis: Environmental economics and policy
- Keller and Botkin: Essential Environmental Science (John Wiley & Sons, 2008)
- Kaufmann and Cleveland: Environmental Science (Amazon, 2008)

### Additional Course Information

- Previous course code: ENV2004
- Compulsory to 4-year students

---

### ENVS3007

**Natural hazards and mitigation (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**
Earth Sciences

**Course Co-ordinator**
Prof P P C Wu, Earth Sciences (ppwu@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**

**Course Objectives**

This course introduces students the mechanisms of major natural hazards including earthquake, storm and flood, landslide and tsunami. The teaching emphasizes the fundamental concepts: natural hazards are not entirely natural, and understanding the frequency and processes of these hazards is essential in developing prevention, protection and mitigation measures. With case studies, the course will help students explore the political, economical and engineering means of dealing with natural hazards.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Key characteristics of natural hazards
- Geological hazards and mitigation measures
- Climatic hazards and mitigation measures
- Preparedness and responses to large natural disasters
- Risk assessment and disaster management
- Financial (insurance) instruments for economic recovery

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and critical understanding of the key characteristics of major natural hazards, the human aspects of the hazards, and technologies used to protect lives and properties

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in EASC2404 or ENV2001 or ENV2002

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>Project tutorials</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Discussion</td>
<td>Group discussion</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final Assessment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Course Overview

This multi-disciplinary course will introduce students to the most important physical, chemical and biological contaminants that pollute the environment. The course will provide the basics of contaminant transport, toxicology, pollution monitoring and environmental risk assessment. The course will also explore in details different mechanisms and pathways for water, atmosphere, soil and land pollution. The student will also be invited to reflect on the socio-economic aspect of pollution and remediation.

## Course Contents & Topics
- Overview of Global Pollution
- Physical, Chemical and Biological Contaminants
- Contaminants Transport Processes
- Environmental Toxicology
- Water Pollution
- Atmospheric Pollution
- Soil and Land Pollution
- Monitoring and Risk Assessment Strategy
- The Future Pollution

## Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: identify the most important pollutants
- CLO 2: describe the mechanisms responsible for the transport of pollutants in the environment
- CLO 3: evaluate the environmental toxicity of different type of contamination
- CLO 4: present the most important cases of environmental pollution
- CLO 5: analyze lab-generated data and communicate the results and interpretations

## Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in EASC2401 or CHEM2241 or BIOL2103 or ENVS2001

## Assessment Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Grade (%)</th>
<th>Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail: Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

## Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

## Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Midterm (20%) Final (30%)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Required/recommended reading and online materials
Environmental and Pollution Science, Second Edition, 2006 by Ian L. Pepper (Author), Charles P. Gerba (Author), Mark L. Brusseau (Author)

## Recommended reading and online materials
- Environmental Hazards: Assessing Risk and Reducing Disaster (Routledge, 2004)
- Natural Hazards (Cambridge University Press, 2005)
- Natural Hazards and Disasters (Amazon, 2009)

## Additional Course Information
This class contains theoretical and case study-based laboratories

---

# Course Details

## ENVS3042
- **Pollution (6 credits)**
- **Offering Department**: Earth Sciences
- **Course Co-ordinator**: Dr B Thibodeau, Earth Sciences (bthib@hku.hk)
- **Course Objectives**: This multi-disciplinary course will introduce students to the most important physical, chemical and biological contaminants that pollute the environment. The course will provide the basics of contaminant transport, toxicology, pollution monitoring and environmental risk assessment. The course will also explore in details different mechanisms and pathways for water, atmosphere, soil and land pollution. The student will also be invited to reflect on the socio-economic aspect of pollution and remediation.
- **Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**: Pass in EASC2401 or CHEM2241 or BIOL2103 or ENVS2001
- **Assessment Methods**: Examination (50%), Project reports (50%), Assignments (50%), Laboratory (24%), Lectures (30%)
- **Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**: A+ to F
- **Grade Weighting (%)**: A+ (90), A (85), A- (80), B+ (75), B (70), B- (65), C+ (60), C (55), C- (50), D+ (45), D (40), D- (35), F (0)
- **Course Type**: Lecture with laboratory component course
- **Course Teaching & Learning Activities**: Details of different types of activities and their duration
- **Assessment Methods and Weighting**: Details of assessment methods and their respective weightings
- **Required/recommended reading and online materials**: List of recommended reading and online materials
- **Additional Course Information**: Any additional information relevant to the course
### Course Learning Outcomes

(paleo)climate, coastal resources, and nutrient cycling. Case studies specifically examining changes in sea level rise, El Nino, and (paleo)climate will be used to connect oceanographic principles to environmental problems.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

1. CLO 1 describe the major surface and deep currents of the ocean
2. CLO 2 identify and describe important processes in the ocean controlling large scale circulation and nutrient transport
3. CLO 3 describe sources and distribution of critical chemicals and seawater properties in the ocean
4. CLO 4 illustrate connections between physical ocean processes, climate systems, and biological activity

### Pre-requisites

Pass in BIOL2306 or EASC2404 or ENV52001 or ENV52002

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>May</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>12 sessions x 2 hours</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>10 labs x 2 hours</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>1 day field trip</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project work</td>
<td>group project</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### Additional Course Information

Course will be offered every year starting from 2014-2015 and coordinated by DES.

### ENVS3999

Directed studies in environmental science (6 credits) Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Earth Sciences

Course Co-ordinator Dr Z H Liu, Earth Sciences (zhl@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved Various teachers in the Department, Earth Sciences

Course Objectives To enhance students knowledge on a particular topic in environmental science and students self-directed learning and critical thinking skills.

Course Contents & Topics Students undertake extensive reading on a selected topic guided by a staff member. Reading should cover material beyond textbooks. Students are required to analyze the material read, formulate their own scientific argument, and present it in written form.

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

1. CLO 1 complete a research task independently in one or more topical areas of the major
2. CLO 2 show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited critical abilities. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
3. CLO 3 demonstrate limited but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and critical thinking, but with limited critical abilities. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in Environmental Science Major. Cumulative GPA of 2.5 or above in Environmental Science Major. This capstone course is for Environmental Science Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 Y Examination No Exam

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>No Exam</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>No Exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Project-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>research work &amp; report</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods

Methods Details Weighting in final Assessment

---

560
ENVS4955

Environmental science in practice (6 credits)

Academic Year: 2017
Quota: 10

Offering Department: Earth Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Dr M Yasuhara, Biological Sciences (yasuhara@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr M Yasuhara, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives
To provide students experiential learning experience in the field of environmental science. The course is primarily based on an array of experiential studies covering essential areas of environmental science during a residential field trip.

Course Contents & Topics
Students will attend a residential field trip outside Hong Kong to learn about environmental science in practice. The residential field trip will be, for example, to Japan and may include marine environmental survey, sediment core sampling, practical learning of ecological, paleoecology and environmental problems, environmental geology/paleontology excursion, and other activities. Students are required to write an independent report on the learning outcome of the field trip.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 recognize ways of environmental science in practice
- CLO 2 gain knowledge of current environmental problems and solutions
- CLO 3 present and communicate their field observations and findings

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in Environmental Science Major.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y
Examination: No Exam

Grade Descriptors
A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Apply highly effective lab/fieldwork skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply effective lab/fieldwork skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Apply moderately effective lab/fieldwork skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Apply partially effective lab/fieldwork skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

CLO 1,2,3 present and communicate their field observations and findings
CLO 2 gain knowledge of current environmental problems and solutions
CLO 3 present and communicate their field observations and findings

Assessment Methods
Course Type: Laboratory and workshop course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td>Field work and other learning students will participate in at least 66 hours of field trips and other learning 66 hours</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>field reports</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>group presentations</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td>individual report</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Course Information
Enrollment Procedure: The actual capacity of this course is limited and will vary year by year, regardless of the quota set. Interested student must apply for the course with a short proposal (2 pages maximum) and CV via e-mail to Dr. Moniaki Yasuhara (yasuhara@hku.hk) and Ms. Maria Lo (gylo@hku.hk) not later than 1st August (Note: this is 2nd semester course, but we need applications well in advance, on or before this date). Late applications will not be accepted. The proposal should include the following: (1) the specific reason(s)/motivation why you are interested in joining this course; (2) merit that you expect to receive from this course, especially regarding your future academic/career path; (3) brief description of academic interests. The CV should include: (1) Personal and academic details; (2) ID photograph; (4) GPA; (5) Pre-requisite courses taken and grades received.

Selection of students will be made based on the quality of proposal and the justification of academic merit, in considering other factors. Only accepted students through this application process will be able to register this course.

The residential field trip will be organized in the reading week. Students will need to pay for their own travel cost for the residential field trip (please contact us for details and financial difficulty).

This course will be offered subject to a minimum enrollment number and availability of teachers.

ENVS4966

Environmental science internship (6 credits)

Academic Year: 2017
Quota: ---

Offering Department: Earth Sciences
Course Co-ordinator: Dr C Dingle, Biological Sciences (cdingle@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr C Dingle, Biological Sciences)

Course Objectives
This course offers students the opportunity to gain work experience related to their major of study. This work experience will allow the students to apply their knowledge gained in their studies to the real environmental issues.

Course Contents & Topics
Students will be supervised by a staff member (the Internal Supervisor) within the University of Hong Kong as instructed by the Internal Supervisor. In the case of the work being carried out in an external agency, students will be supervised by a staff member of the external agency (the External Supervisor) and a staff member of the University (the Internal Supervisor). The work to be performed by students will normally be instructed by the
Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: gain at least 4 weeks of work experience environmental-related firm or the Government
- CLO 2: acquire an understanding and appreciation of the real work environment
- CLO 3: have some experience with applying learned knowledge to solving real world problems

Pre-requisites

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in Environmental Science Major.

This capstone course is for Environmental Science Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Fail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td>Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of “Distinction”:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods Details</td>
<td>Written report written report, employer’s feedback and oral presentation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighting in final course grade (%)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Internship

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Internship work</td>
<td>It is expected that students are to work at least 160 hours (or the equivalent of 4 weeks full-time)</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written report</td>
<td>written report, employer’s feedback and oral presentation</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information

No formal lecture is to be given, but it is expected that students are to work for at least 160 hours (or the equivalent of 4 weeks full-time), supervised by a staff member.

Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on "Pass/Fail" basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval.

Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

ENVS4999

Environmental science project (12 credits)

Academic Year: 2017

Offering Department: Earth Sciences

Quota: ---

Teachers Involved: (Various teachers in the Department, Earth Sciences)

Course Objectives

To enhance students knowledge and research skills in advanced level of environmental science.

Course Contents & Topics

Students undertake a research project in the form of an undergraduate dissertation under the supervision of a staff member. The project could be based on one of the four areas covered by the major and must show elements of interdisciplinary nature. The dissertation should show an element of originality and the research in a non-trivial manner.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: complete a dissertation project of undergraduate level in one of the four areas of major
- CLO 2: show competence in formulation, data collection, analysis, and presentation of a research project

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (level 3 or 4) disciplinary core/elective courses in Environmental Science Major; and

Students must have a cumulative GPA of 3.0 or above in Environmental Science Major.

This capstone course is for Environmental Science Major students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>Pass</th>
<th>Fail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>Demonstrates excellent understanding of the topic, excellent development of argument, logical analysis and insight into the topic, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Presented in high academic standard. [Work of A+ should show considerable additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.</td>
<td>Show little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Details</td>
<td>Most aspects of the chosen topic were addressed and researched adequately. Demonstrates understanding of most key concepts, evidence of elementary analysis and development of argument. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations. Presented in adequate standard.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
<td>240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods Details</td>
<td>Research work &amp; report</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Weighting in final course grade (%)</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>research work &amp; report</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dissertation</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Additional Course Information

Previous course code: ENVS3015.

Consent from major coordinator is required.
MATH1009 Basic mathematics for business and economics (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Mathematics Quota 380
Course Co-ordinator Dr Y M Chan (1st sem); Dr K H Law (2nd sem), Mathematics (ymchan@maths.hku.hk; lawkaho@maths.hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr K H Law, Mathematics) (Dr Y M Chan, Mathematics)
Course Objectives This course aims at introducing important topics of mathematics for introductory or intermediate level courses in Business and Economics. Mathematical concepts and methods, as well as some Business and Economics applications, would be emphasized so that students could be furnished with the essential mathematical skills for the senior courses in these disciplines.
Course Contents & Topics
1. Logic
2. Linear Equations
3. Quadratic Equations
4. Graphs and Functions
5. Differentiation
6. Unconstrained optimization
7. Partial differentiation
8. Constrained optimization
9. Integration
10. Geometric series
11. Difference equations (optional)
12. Differential equations (optional)
13. Matrix algebra (optional)

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the essential mathematics used in business and economics
CLO 2 apply mathematical skills to model and solve basic problems in business and economics
CLO 3 be more capable of coping with a higher level of mathematics required in various economic disciplines

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) NIL

The course has no pre-requisite, but students are expected to have already achieved Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent. Not for students who have passed MATH1011 or MATH1013, or have already enrolled in these courses. This course is exclusively for non-Science and non-Engineering students (i.e. not for students from the Faculty of Science or Engineering).

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
Fail Demonstrates poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments Tutorials and Assignments 10 CLO 1.2.3
Examination 50 CLO 1.2.3
Test 40 CLO 1.2.3


Course Website moodle.hku.hk
Additional Course Information Tutorial timetable:
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

MATH1011 University mathematics I (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Mathematics Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr H Y Zhang, Mathematics (hyzhang@maths.hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr H Y Zhang, Mathematics)
Course Objectives This course aims at students with only HKDSE Mathematics (or equivalent) background and provides them with basic knowledge of mathematics that serves as essential foundation in various disciplines. It is expected to be followed by MATH1013.
Course Contents & Topics - Sets, Venn diagram, set operations.
- Permutations, combinations and elementary probabilities.
- Mathematical induction.
- Exponential and logarithmic functions.
- Trigonometric functions, trigonometric formulae.
- Limits of algebraic, exponential and logarithmic functions.
- Derivatives of algebraic, exponential and logarithmic functions.
- Differentiation rules: addition, product, quotient and chain rule.
### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 use the set notations; calculate probabilities; and prove by induction
- CLO 2 solve problems involving exponential, logarithmic and trigonometric functions
- CLO 3 evaluate limits and derivatives
- CLO 4 compute simple definite and indefinite integrals
- CLO 5 solve practical problems such as determining maxima and minima; finding area

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

The course has no pre-requisite, but students are expected to have achieved Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent before enrolling the course; and Not for students with Level 2 or above in Module 1 or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent.

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>assignments, tutorials, participation, etc</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>3 tests</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>45</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Course Information

- Custom textbook: MATH1011 (Pearson, 2014)
- Moodle: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

### Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe properties of a function and an inverse function
- CLO 2 evaluate various kinds of limits, and determine continuity and differentiability of functions
- CLO 3 apply advanced rules/techniques of differentiation and integration to compute derivatives and; integrals; sketch graphs of functions
- CLO 4 solve problems involving complex numbers
- CLO 5 solve simple first order ordinary differential equations

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1009 or MATH1011; and
- Not for students who have passed MATH1821, or (MATH1851 and MATH1853), or have already enrolled in this course.

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y 1st sem 2nd sem</td>
<td>Dec May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Course Objectives

This course introduces a powerful and free computer software Scilab for scientific research. The programming language will be taught via a number of mathematical models in Physics, Chemistry, Biology, Ecology, Statistics and Management. Some basic and important techniques in Calculus and Linear Algebra will also be covered.

## Course Contents & Topics


## Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 recognize the importance of numerical methods in mathematical modeling
- CLO 2 demonstrate basic algebraic and arithmetic computations in the Scilab environment
- CLO 3 write and interpret programs in Scilab programming language
- CLO 4 solve simple numerical problems using interactive Scilab commands
- CLO 5 solve moderately complicated numerical problems by writing Scilab programs

## Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

NIL

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and Scilab skills by being able to identify the appropriate Scilab environments and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and efficiently presenting correct algorithms and being able to solve numerical problems by writing Scilab programs carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and Scilab skills by being able to identify the appropriate Scilab environments and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in identifying the appropriate Scilab components or presenting correct algorithms or with some minor programming/computational errors.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and Scilab skills by being able to correctly identify appropriate Scilab environments, but with some inadequacies in solving numerical problems with Scilab through incorrectly analysing problems with inappropriate Scilab environments or with a number of minor programming/computational errors.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and Scilab skills by being able to correctly identify appropriate Scilab environments, but with substantial inadequacies in solving numerical problems with Scilab through incorrectly analysing problems with inappropriate Scilab environments or with substantial programming/computational errors.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate Scilab environments or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Assessment Methods and Weighting

### Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

| Examination | 50 | CLO 1,2,3,4,5 |
| Test        | 50 | CLO 1,2,3,4,5 |

## Required/recommended reading and online materials

To be decided by the course instructor.


## Additional Course Information

Adrian Banner: The Calculus Lifesaver: All the Tools You Need to Excel at Calculus (Princeton University Press, 2007)

George B. Thomas, Maurice D. Weir and Joel Hass: Thomas' Calculus (12th edition, Addison Wesley)

## Tutorial timetable:

http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf
MATH1851

Mathematics for actuarial science I (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator: Dr K M Tsang, Mathematics (kmtsang@maths.hku.hk)

Teachers Involved:
(Dr J T Chan, Mathematics)

Course Objectives:
- Differential and integral calculus (single variable) (limits and continuity, derivatives, (higher-order) derivatives of elementary functions, derivatives by implicit differentiation, the mean value theorem, L'Hôpital's rule, parametric representation of curves, polar coordinates, indefinite integrals, integration by parts, partial fractions decomposition, definite integrals, the fundamental theorem of calculus, and their applications)
- Ordinary differential equations (first order equations, integrating factors and linear equations, Bernoulli equations,

Course Contents & Topics:
- Functions; graphs; inverse functions.
- Limits, continuity and differentiability.
- Mean value theorem; implicit differentiation; L'Hôpital's rule.
- Bisecion method and Newton's method.
- Higher order derivatives, maxima and minima, graph sketching.
- Taylor approximation and error estimation.
- Improper integrals, partial fractions, integration by parts.
- Numerical integration, Trapezoidal rule and Simpson's rule.
- Basic matrix and vector (of orders 2 and 3) operations, determinants.
- Simple differential equations.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 describe properties of a function and an inverse function

CLO 2 evaluate various kinds of limits, and determine continuity and differentiability of functions.

CLO 3 apply advanced rules/techniques of differentiation and integration to compute derivatives and integrals; sketch graphs of functions

CLO 4 approximate integrals by numerical methods

CLO 5 perform matrix and vector operations, compute determinants

CLO 6 solve simple first and second order ordinary differential equations

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Level 4 or above in HKDSE Mathematics plus Module 1, or Level 4 or above in HKDSE Mathematics plus Module 2, or equivalent; and
Not for students who have passed MATH1013 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853), or have already enrolled in these courses.

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
- Lectures
- Tutorials
- Reading / Self study

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination Test</td>
<td>2 tests</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
George B. Thomas; as revised by Maurice D. Weir and Joel Hass; Thomas' Calculus (Addison Wesley, 12th edition)

Steven J. Leon: Linear Algebra with Applications (Pearson Prentice Hall)

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

MATH1851

Calculus and ordinary differential equations (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator: Prof K M Tsang (1st sem); Dr Y K Lau (2nd sem), Mathematics (kmtsang@maths.hku.hk; yklau@maths.hku.hk)

Teachers Involved:
(Dr W F Lee, Mechanical Engineering)
(Dr Y Chen, Mechanical Engineering)
(Dr Y K Lau, Mathematics)
(Prof K M Tsang, Mathematics)
(Prof W Chow, Mechanical Engineering)

Course Objectives:
In this course, students will be introduced to fundamental concepts of calculus and ordinary differential equations with a view on applications in different engineering fields. A concrete foundation of mathematics that underpins the various engineering subjects will be built. Mathematical concepts and principles, as well as some typical engineering applications, would be emphasized so that students could enhance their mathematical skills in solving engineering problems, and be well prepared in learning a higher level of applied mathematics required in different engineering disciplines.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Differential and integral calculus (single variable) (limits and continuity, derivatives, (higher-order) derivatives of elementary functions, derivatives by implicit differentiation, the mean value theorem, L'Hôpital's rule, parametric representation of curves, polar coordinates, indefinite integrals, integration by parts, partial fractions decomposition, definite integrals, the fundamental theorem of calculus, and their applications)
- Ordinary differential equations (first order equations, integrating factors and linear equations, Bernoulli equations,
separable equations, homogeneous equations, exact differential equations, higher-order homogeneous linear equations with constant coefficients, characteristic polynomials, methods of undetermined coefficients and variation of parameters, higher-order inhomogeneous linear ordinary differential equations, choice of particular solutions and physical implication of resonance, Cauchy-Euler equations, and their applications.

- Laplace transforms [Laplace transforms of elementary functions, inverse Laplace transforms, transforms of derivatives and integrals, derivatives of Laplace transform, first and second shifting theorems, convolutions, partial fractions, solution of linear differential equations (initial value problems) using Laplace transforms]

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of basic calculus and ordinary differential equations as well as their relationship with some typical physical/engineering applications; unerringly perform the calculation details for the solution, and accurately correlate the solution approach with the fundamental concepts involved

CLO 2 apply mathematical skills to model and solve some basic physical/engineering problems: analyze the given problem, identify the appropriate mathematical skills, articulate a convincing rationale for the approach used, clearly give the mathematical formulation, and correctly find the solution

CLO 3 understand well established methods to solve differential equations, and correlate qualitatively with potential applications in engineering topics like oscillations and electric circuits. Identify the occurrence of resonance where large amplitude displacements can be expected

CLO 4 explore the technique and usage of integral transform, using the Laplace transform as an illustrative example. Appreciate the power of these techniques in initial value problems and applications like vibrations and signal processing

CLO 5 be well prepared to cope with a higher level of engineering mathematics required in different engineering disciplines

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1011.

(This course is exclusively for Engineering students.)

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A to F)

Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y Examination Dec May

A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and methods and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and methods and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems and methods or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify appropriate theorems and methods, but with some inadequacies in applying them through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems and methods, but with substantial inadequacies in applying them through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems and methods or their applications, and not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 tests</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

(Textbook) Introduction to Calculus and Differential Equations (Pearson)


Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information

There will be no 'make-up' for a missed test or assignment under normal circumstances. Students are advised not to take MATH1851 and MATH1853 together in the same semester.

This course is offered by the Department of Mathematics and the Faculty of Engineering.

Tutorial timetable:

http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

MATH1853

Linear algebra, probability and statistics (6 credits)

Academic Year: 2017

Offering Department

Mathematics

Course Co-ordinator

Prof W K Ching (1st sem); Dr G Han (2nd sem), Mathematics (wching@hku.hk; ghan@maths.hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

(Dr G Han,Mathematics)

(Prof W K Ching,Mathematics)

Course Objectives

As the complementary course of MATH1851, students will be introduced to more topics of mathematics commonly applied in engineering so that students could be further enhanced with a concrete skill in mathematics underpinned for different engineering subjects. The course emphasizes mathematical concepts, principles, analysis, and their relationships to the modelling of engineering systems. Students could be equipped with the essential mathematical skills to analytically tackle some typical engineering problems to prepare for all the engineering subjects.

Course Contents & Topics

- Linear algebra [vectors and scalars, inner product, vector projection, linear dependence and independence, matrix, determinant, matrix inverse, system of linear equations, matrix equation, Gaussian elimination, Cramer's rule, matrix rank, eigenvalue, eigenvector, matrix diagonalization, positive, negative and semi-definiteness, and their applications]
- Elementary complex variables [arithmetics of complex numbers, representations of complex numbers, De
Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of linear algebra, complex numbers, probability theory and statistics as well as their relationship with some typical physical/engineering applications: unerringly perform the calculation details for the solution, and accurately correlate the solution approach with the fundamental concepts involved

CLO 2 apply such knowledge and understanding to solve certain practical problems that are relevant to physical/engineering applications: analyze the given problem, identify the appropriate mathematical skills, articulate a convincing rationale for the approach used, and clearly give the mathematical formulation, and correctly find the solution

CLO 3 be well prepared to cope with a higher level of engineering mathematics required in different engineering disciplines

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1011. (This course is exclusively for Engineering students.)

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>Activities</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Lectures 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study 100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examinations</td>
<td>Assignments 20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination 80</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

D.C. Lay: Linear Algebra and its Applications (Addison-Wesley, 2012, 4th ed.)
S.J. Leon: Linear Algebra with Applications (Pearson Education, 2006, 7th ed.)

Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information

There will be no ‘make-up’ for a missed quiz or assignment under normal circumstances. Students are advised not to take MATH1851 and MATH1853 together in the same semester. This course is offered by the Department of Mathematics and the Faculty of Engineering. Tutorial timetable:

http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

MATH2012

Fundamental concepts of mathematics (6 credits)

Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Mathematics

Quota ---

Course Co-ordinator Dr Y M Chan (1st sem); Prof J H Lu (2nd sem), Mathematics (ymchan@maths.hku.hk; jhlu@maths.hku.hk)

Teachers Involved Dr Y M Chan, Mathematics

Prof J H Lu, Mathematics

Course Objectives

To provide students with solid background on fundamental concepts of mathematics and methods of mathematical proofs. Such concepts and methods are important for subsequent studies in all higher level courses in mathematics. This course can be taken concurrently with other Level 2 or above courses.

Course Contents & Topics

- Elementary set theory.
- Statement calculus.
- Mathematical proofs.
- Relations and functions.
- Finite and infinite sets.
- Natural numbers and mathematical induction.
- Real numbers and the limit of a sequence.
- Examples of groups.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand the definition of a set and apply set theory in simple daily life problems
CLO 2 construct the truth table of a given statement
CLO 3 apply different proof strategies (e.g. proof by contradiction and mathematical induction) in proving a
mathematical statement

CLO 4 demonstrate the basic properties of equivalence relations
CLO 5 understand the definition of the limit of a sequence of real numbers
CLO 6 demonstrate the operational properties of groups

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</th>
<th>Pass in MATH1013 or MATH1821 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Dec May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minimal computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analyzing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analyzing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Tutorials and Assignments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td>moodle.hku.hk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Course Information</td>
<td>Students with good grades in HKDSE Math Module 1 or Math Module 2 and have strong interests in math may also apply. Tutorial timetable: <a href="http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf">http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf</a> <a href="http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf">http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MATH2014</th>
<th>Multivariable calculus and linear algebra (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>Dr H Y Zhang, Mathematics (<a href="mailto:hyzhang@maths.hku.hk">hyzhang@maths.hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>To provide students with a solid foundation in calculus of several variables and linear algebra, which they will need in the study of mathematics related subjects.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  CLO 1 understand the geometric meaning of partial and directional derivatives  CLO 2 optimize multivariate objective functions (with/without constraints)  CLO 3 evaluate integrals over curvilinear regions in space  CLO 4 understand the concept of vector spaces, basis, dimension  CLO 5 solve simple eigenvalue problems and apply the theory to practical problems</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in MATH1013 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853). Not for students who have passed MATH2822 or (MATH2101 or MATH2102) and MATH2211, or have already enrolled in these courses.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Dec May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analyzing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minimal computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analyzing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analyzing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course Type**  
Lecture-based course

**Offering Department**  
Mathematics

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Dr K H Law, Mathematics (lawkaho@maths.hku.hk)

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in MATH1013 or MATH1821 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853)

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Vector Geometry in R^2 and R^3: Revision of addition and scalar multiplication of vectors, dot product, lines and planes; and applications to geometry.
- Matrix Algebra: Matrix addition and multiplication, determinant and inverse of square matrices, system of linear equations as a matrix equation.
- Systems of Linear Equations: Gauss-Jordan elimination, elementary row operations, row echelon form, elementary matrices, matrix inversion.
- Vector Spaces: Coordinate system in R^n, the Euclidean spaces as vector spaces, its subspaces, span of vectors, linear independence, basis, dimension, applications.
- Linear Transformations: Definition and examples of linear transformations in R^2 and R^3, standard matrices of linear transformations.
- Eigenvalue Problem: Eigenvalues and eigenvectors, diagonalization of matrices (with distinct eigenvalues), applications.
- Inner Product: Gram-Schmidt process, least square problems.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 handle matrix operations and use them in some practical problems
- CLO 2 solve systems of linear equations by Gauss-Jordan elimination and also compute inverses of square matrices
- CLO 3 understand the concept of vector spaces, basis, dimension, and linear transformations and compute the matrix representations of some linear transformations
- CLO 4 solve some simple eigenvalue problems and apply the theory to some practical problems
- CLO 5 solve some minimization problems by the least squares method

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- [Tutorials timetable](http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf)
- [Tutorial timetable](http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf)

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- **A** - Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
- **B** - Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
- **C** - Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
- **D** - Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
- **Fail** - Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

**Additional Course Information**

**Teacher Involved**

Dr K H Law, Mathematics

**Examination**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</strong></td>
<td>Y</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### MATH2102 Linear algebra II (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Mathematics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof W Zang, Mathematics (<a href="mailto:wzang@maths.hku.hk">wzang@maths.hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Prof W Zang, Mathematics)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Objectives
- Understand the notions of inner product space and adjoints of operators. Be able to do calculations.
- Topics
  1. Vector spaces: definition of field, subspaces/quotient spaces, direct sum, existence of basis, dual space
  2. Linear transformations: kernel and image, isomorphisms, matrix representations of linear transformations, determinant
  3. Linear operator: eigenvalues and eigenspaces, algebraic/geometric multiplicity, diagonalizability, Cayley-Hamilton theorem, canonical form (optional)
  4. Inner product space: inner product, orthonormal basis, orthogonal complement and projection
  5. Linear operators on inner product space: adjoints of operators, orthogonal/unitary operators, orthogonal/unitary diagonalization of self-adjoint/normal operators, symmetric bilinear form and quadratic form
  6. Additional selected topics up to the instructor

#### Course Contents & Topics
- Vector spaces: definition of field, subspaces/quotient spaces, direct sum, existence of basis, dual space
- Linear transformations: kernel and image, isomorphisms, matrix representations of linear transformations, determinant
- Linear operator: eigenvalues and eigenspaces, algebraic/geometric multiplicity, diagonalizability, Cayley-Hamilton theorem, canonical form (optional)
- Inner product space: inner product, orthonormal basis, orthogonal complement and projection
- Linear operators on inner product space: adjoints of operators, orthogonal/unitary operators, orthogonal/unitary diagonalization of self-adjoint/normal operators, symmetric bilinear form and quadratic form
- Additional selected topics up to the instructor

#### Pre-requisites
Pass in MATH2101 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)

#### Grade Descriptors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50 CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50 CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Type
Lecture-based course

#### Pre-requisites
Pass in MATH2101 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)

#### Additional Course Information
- Teachers Involved: Dr Z Hua (1st sem); Prof W S Cheung (2nd sem), Mathematics (huazheng@maths.hku.hk; wscheung@hku.hk)
- Course Website: moodle.hku.hk
- Additional Course Information: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

### MATH2211 Multivariable calculus (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Mathematics</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr Z Hua (1st sem); Prof W S Cheung (2nd sem), Mathematics (<a href="mailto:huazheng@maths.hku.hk">huazheng@maths.hku.hk</a>; <a href="mailto:wscheung@hku.hk">wscheung@hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr Z Hua, Mathematics) (Prof W S Cheung, Mathematics)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Objectives
- Students of this course will learn the theory of multivariable calculus and learn how to apply the theory to solve practical problems. This is a required course for Mathematics and Mathematics/Physics Majors, and is suitable for all students in Science, Engineering, Economics and Finance, and other students who will use multivariable calculus in their areas of study. This is also a required course for all Minors offered by the Department of Mathematics, and is a pre-requisite of many advanced level mathematics courses.

#### Course Contents & Topics
- Vectors: vectors in 2-, 3-, and n-dimensions; dot product and cross product; lines and planes; polar, cylindrical, and spherical coordinates.
- Differentiation in several variables: limits and derivatives; the chain rule; directional derivatives and gradients.
- Vector-valued functions: parametrized curves; arc-length; vector fields; gradient, divergence, curl, and the del operator.
Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand and demonstrate the basic theory of calculus of functions in several real variables
CLO 2 evaluate partial derivatives and multiple integrals; compute line integrals and surface integrals
CLO 3 apply the knowledge to solve some practical problems, such as constrained optimization problems and other problems involving differentiation and integration of multivariable functions

Pre-requisites
Pass in MATH1013 or MATH1821 or (MATH1851 and MATH1853)

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

Outcomes
CLO 1 understand and demonstrate the basic theor-
proof techniques in novel situations. Ability to present solutions clearly and logically, and evidence of innovative ideas in solving problems are expected.

C Demonstrate a good understanding of the mathematical notions and proof techniques taught in the course by being able to handle abstract mathematical arguments and to apply appropriate theorems correctly. Ability to present solutions clearly and logically is expected.

D Demonstrate some understanding of the mathematical notions taught in the course by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems for applications and to carry out logical arguments that are leading to complete solutions.

Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems for applications, or not being able to apply the theorems correctly.

Course Type Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100
Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments Tutorials and Assignments 10 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Examination 50 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Test 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information
Tutorial timetable:
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

MATH2822
Mathematical methods for actuarial science II (6 credits)

Offering Department Mathematics
Quota ---

Course Co-ordinator Dr J T Chan, Mathematics (jchan@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
This course is the second of the two mathematics courses designed to provide actuarial science students with a solid background of calculus of one and several variables and an introduction to linear algebra. The course focuses on multivariable calculus and linear algebra. It aims at students with MATH1821. It can be followed by other 2000 or 3000 level mathematics courses.

Course Contents & Topics
- Matrices, systems of linear equations, determinants.
- Eigenvectors and eigenvectors, diagonalization of matrices.
- Quadratic functions and their standard forms.
- Vector spaces and subspaces.
- Functions of several variables; partial differentiation.
- Gradients and directional derivatives.
- Taylor approximation, Newton's method.
- Maxima and minima; Lagrange multipliers.
- Double and triple integrals, areas and volumes.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand and recognize various topics in linear algebra such as the basic arithmetic of matrices, determinants, systems of linear equations, eigenvalues and eigenvectors, diagonalizable matrices, basis and dimension, and the rank-nullity theorem

CLO 2 understand and recognize various topics in functions of several variables including partial differentiation, the Hessian test for local extrema, vector-valued functions, Jacobians, the method of Lagrange multipliers, double/triple integrals and the change of variable formula

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in MATH1821.
For BSc(ActuarSc) students only.

Examination May

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100
Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination 50 CLO 1,2
Test 2 tests 50 CLO 1,2

Required/recommended reading and
George B. Thomas; as revised by Maurice D. Weir and Joel Hass: Thomas' Calculus (Addison Wesley, 12th edition)
### MATH3001

**Offering Department**: Mathematics  
**Course Co-ordinator**: TBC, Mathematics  
**Teachers Involved**:  
**Course Objectives**: To acquaint the students with the origin and growth of basic mathematical concepts. To assist the students to gain a deeper insight and broader view of mathematics as a discipline and human endeavour. To provide the students with an opportunity to write on and talk about mathematics, and to engage in independent study.  
**Course Contents & Topics**:  
- Selected topics in the development of mathematics from ancient to modern times depending on interest of the students and the lecturer, with attention paid to the evolvement of mathematical ideas and the process of mathematical thinking and problem solving.  
**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 understand and describe the origin and development of basic mathematical concepts  
- CLO 2 recognize and demonstrate the intellectual and the socio-cultural aspects of mathematics, and appreciate mathematics as both an academic discipline and a human endeavour  
- CLO 3 discuss, argue, and write about the development of various mathematical concepts and ideas  
- CLO 4 engage in independent study on a topic about the history or development of mathematics  
**Pre-requisites**:  
- Pass in MATH2101, MATH2102, MATH2211 and MATH2241  
**Offer in 2017 - 2018**:  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019: N</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course Type**: Lecture-based course  
**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Assessment Methods and Weighting**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Required/recommended reading and online materials**:  
To be decided by the course instructor.  
- R. Laubenbacher and D. Pengelley: Mathematical Expeditions (Springer-Verlag, 1999)  

---

### MATH3002

**Offering Department**: Mathematics  
**Course Co-ordinator**: TBC, Mathematics  
**Teachers Involved**:  
**Course Objectives**: This is a seminar style course intended for those who have very strong interests and good ability in mathematics. Students will be given book chapters and elementary research articles for private study and then make presentations in front of the whole class. Individual meetings with the instructors will be arranged prior to their presentations. Active participation in all the discussions is expected. The aim of the course is to let students learn how to initiate self-independent study in mathematics.  
**Course Contents & Topics**: Topics chosen by the instructors, including chapters from books and elementary research articles.  
**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1 Initiate private independent study on some interesting mathematical topics  
**Pre-requisites**:  
- Pass in MATH2012, MATH2101, MATH2211 and MATH2241  
(This course is for second year BSc students only.)  
**Offer in 2017 - 2018**:  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019: A</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Organizational Skills in Mathematics

**Course Information**

**Course Title:** Matrix theory and its applications (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** Mathematics

**Course Type:** Lecture-based course

### Course Objectives

This course aims to present those fundamental topics and techniques of algebra that are finding wide applications in mathematics and the applied sciences. It is complete in itself, and may also be followed by MATH3402 Algebra II and MATH7502 Topics in Applied Discrete Mathematics.

### Course Contents & Topics

- Groups: examples of groups, subgroups, cosets, Lagrange theorem, quotient groups, normal subgroups, group homomorphisms, direct product of groups, group actions.
- Rings: examples of rings, integral domains, ideals, fields of fractions, principal ideal domains, unique factorization domains.
- Fields: definition and examples of fields.
- Polynomials: polynomial rings in one variable over fields and over the integers.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

1. **CLO 1:** write down the precise definitions of the basic concepts in the "Course Contents"
2. **CLO 2:** give examples for each of the concepts in the "Course Contents"
3. **CLO 3:** understand basic properties of groups, rings, and fields.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in MATH2101

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

- **Y:** 1st sem

### Grade Descriptors (A to F)

- **A:** Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation, and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
- **B:** Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
- **C:** Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
- **D:** Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
- **Fail:** Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Additional Course Information

- **Course Website:** moodle.hku.hk
- **Course Website:** http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

## References

### Course Objectives
Matrix theory has a close connection with other mathematical subjects such as linear algebra, functional analysis, and combinatorics. It also plays an important role in the development of many subjects in science, engineering, and social sciences. In this course, students will be taught the fundamentals of matrix analysis and its application to various kinds of practical problems. Mathematical software may be used in the course, so that students can learn how to use the computer to solve matrix problems.

### Course Contents & Topics
- Eigenvalues and eigenvectors: similarities, applications on difference equations and differential equations.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1**: have a good understanding on matrices, determinants, linear transformations, eigenvalues and eigenvectors.
- **CLO 2**: understand the concept of similar matrices and the eigenvalue decomposition.
- **CLO 3**: understand the concept of orthogonality.
- **CLO 4**: understand the concept of unitary, normal, and Hermitian matrices.
- **CLO 5**: find the singular value decomposition of a matrix and apply the theory of singular values to study polar decomposition, pseudo inverse and spectral norm of matrices.
- **CLO 6**: understand the concept of the Jordan blocks, Jordan matrices and the Jordan canonical form of a matrix.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in MATH2101 and MATH2102.

### Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
- Jack L. Goldberg: Matrix Theory with Applications (McGraw-Hill, 1991)
- Steven J. Leon: Linear Algebra with Applications (Macmillan, 1994, 4th edition)
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) | CLO 5 | understand the prime number theorem  
---|---|---  
CLO 6 | understanding some longstanding problems in number theory  
Pass in MATH2101 and MATH2211
|  
| Y | 2nd sem | Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y | Examination | May  
Offer in 2017 - 2018
| Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) | A | Demonstrate a thorough and coherent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing number theoretic problems, clearly presenting correct logical reasoning and presentation, and being able to draw complex connections among various concepts and apply the theorems through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.  
B | Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing number theoretic problems, but with some minor errors/inadequacies in arguments and being able to present coherent logical reasoning and drawing out computations carefully and correctly.  
C | Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through correctly analysing problems with weak and fragmentary argument and presentation, or moderate computational errors.  
D | Demonstrate some superficial understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation, or with substantial computational errors.  
Fail | Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding of the key concepts and ideas by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.  
Course Type | Lecture-based course  
Course Teaching & Learning Activities | Activities | Details | No. of Hours  
---|---|---|---  
Lectures | 36  
Tutorials | 12  
Reading / Self study | 100  
Assessment Methods and Weighting | Methods | Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Weighting in final course grade (%)  
---|---|---|---  
Assignments | Tutorials and Assignments | 20 | CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6  
Examination | 50 | CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6  
Test | 30 | CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6  
Course Website | moodle.hku.hk  
Additional Course Information | Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~mathTimetable/tutorials1718_52.pdf  
MATH3401 | Analysis I (6 credits)  
Offering Department | Mathematics  
Teachers Involved | Prof W S Cheung, Mathematics (wscheung@hku.hk)  
Course Objectives | This course extends to more general situations some basic results covered in Calculus and introduces some fundamental concepts which are essential for advanced studies in mathematical analysis.  
Course Contents & Topics | Basic properties of metric spaces; openness; closedness; interior; closure; derived set; boundary; compactness; completeness; continuity; connectedness; pathwise connectedness; uniform continuity; uniform convergence; Banach’s fixed point theorem.  
Course Learning Outcomes | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
CLO 1 | demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the basic features of mathematical analysis and point set topology (e.g., able to identify objects that are topological equivalent)  
CLO 2 | apply knowledge and skills acquired in mathematical analysis to analyze and handle novel situations in a critical way (e.g., able to determine whether a specific function is uniformly continuous)  
CLO 3 | think creatively and laterally to generate innovative examples and solutions to non-standard problems (e.g., able to provide counterexamples to inaccurate mathematical statements)  
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) | Pass in MATH2211  
Offer in 2017 - 2018 | Y | 1st sem | Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y | Examination | Dec  
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) | A | Demonstrate a thorough understanding of all concepts and ideas by being able to draw complex connections among various concepts and apply the theorems through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.  
B | Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor errors/inadequacies in arguments and being able to present coherent logical reasoning and drawing out computations carefully and correctly.  
C | Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through correctly analysing problems with weak and fragmentary argument and presentation.  
D | Demonstrate some superficial understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation.  
Fail | Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding of the key concepts and ideas by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.  
Course Type | Lecture-based course  
Course Teaching & Learning Activities | Activities | Details | No. of Hours  
---|---|---|---  
Lectures | 36  
Tutorials | 12  
Reading / Self study | 100  
Assessment Methods and Weighting | Methods | Details | Weighting in final course grade (%)  
---|---|---|---  
Examination | 50 | CLO 1,2,3  
Test | 50 | CLO 1,2,3  
Required/recommendedreading and online materials | Apostol: Mathematical Analysis
MATH3403
Functions of a complex variable (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics

Course Co-ordinator: Prof N Mok, Mathematics (nmok@hku.hk)

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in MATH2211 and MATH2241

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 recognize the theory of functions of a complex variable as a rigorous and foundational subject in mathematics.
CLO 2 grasp the techniques from Cauchy-Riemann equations, power series expansion and Cauchy integral formulas to study analytic functions from different perspectives.
CLO 3 compute contour integrals by calculating residues.
CLO 4 apply such techniques to determine improper integrals such as those for certain rational functions on the real line.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Complex number system.
- Analytic functions and elementary functions.
- The Cauchy-Riemann equations.
- Cauchy's theorem and its applications.
- Taylor's series.
- Laurent's series.
- Zeros, singularities and poles.
- The Residue Theorem and its applications.

Course Objectives:
This course is indispensable for studies in higher mathematical analysis and the more theoretical aspects of physics. In this course, the students are introduced to the fundamental concepts and properties of analytic functions and are shown how to look at analyticity from different points of view. At the same time, the techniques of solving problems without losing sight of the geometric picture are emphasized.

Assessment Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination 50 CLO 1,2,3,4
Test 50 CLO 1,2,3,4

Additional Course Information:
Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

MATH3405
Differential equations (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics

Course Co-ordinator: Dr T K Wong, Mathematics (takkwong@maths.hku.hk)

Course Objectives:
The standard topics in the wide field of ordinary differential equations (ODEs) included in this course are of importance to students of sciences and engineering. Our emphasis is on principles rather than routine calculations and our approach is a compromise between diversity and depth.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Review of elementary differential equations.
- Existence and uniqueness theorems.
- Second order differential equations, Wronskian, variation of parameters.
- Power series method, Legendre polynomials, Bessel functions.
- Linear systems, autonomous systems.
- Qualitative properties of solutions.
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- The Laplace transform.

Course Learning Outcomes

CLO 1 solve simple first order and second order (linear or nonlinear) ODEs by various techniques, including auxiliary equations, variation of parameters, Laplace transform, and series method

CLO 2 solve systems of first order linear ODEs with constant coefficients, of which the number of equations and the number of unknown functions are no more than three

CLO 3 discuss qualitatively the solutions of nonlinear ODEs or systems of nonlinear ODEs by studying their linear approximations or their phase diagrams

CLO 4 apply the theory of differential equations to study quantitatively/qualitatively problems arising from physical and life sciences

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighing

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


E.A. Coddington: An Introduction to Ordinary Differential Equations (Prentice-Hall)

Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information

Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

MATH3408

Computational methods and differential equations with applications (6 credits)

Academic Year 2017

Offering Department

Mathematics

Course Co-ordinator

Prof W K Ching, Mathematics (wching@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

(Prof W K Ching,Mathematics)

Course Objectives

This course covers topics in the fields of differential equations and numerical analysis which are of importance to sciences students. The emphasis is practical applications of basic principles.

Course Contents & Topics

- Solution of linear difference equations.
- Numerical differentiation and integration.
- LU factorization for solving linear system of equations.
- Matrix norms and iterative solutions of matrix equations.
- Solution of nonlinear systems of equations.
- Elementary differential equations and power series method.
- Numerical solutions of ordinary and partial differential equations.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 construct and implement numerical methods for numerical integration and differentiation, and the solution of linear and nonlinear system of equations

CLO 2 explain mathematical ideas of numerical methods in solving linear difference equations, ordinary and partial differential equations

CLO 3 construct one-step and linear multistep methods for the numerical solution of initial-value problems for ordinary differential equations and systems of such equations and analyze their stability and accuracy properties

CLO 4 construct finite difference methods for the numerical solution of partial differential equations and analyze their stability and accuracy properties

CLO 5 implement numerical methods for solving initial and boundary value problems by software packages like Scilab

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)
Course Type: Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

- D.F. Parkhurst: Introduction to Applied Mathematics for Environmental Science (Springer)
- E.A. Coddington: An Introduction to Ordinary Differential Equations (Prentice-Hall)
- M.A. Armstrong: Basic topology (UTM), Springer

Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information

Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

MATH3541

Introduction to topology (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics

Course Objective:

This course aims at introducing students to fundamental knowledge in topology and some of its applications. We will emphasize more on building geometric intuition and links between topology and other subjects. It can help prepare students for more advanced Mathematics and Physics courses and future research in Mathematics, Physics, Computer Science and Biology.

Course Contents & Topics

Topics will be chosen among the following:

(i) Basic point-set topology: topological spaces, product and quotient spaces.
(ii) Triangulation, Euler characteristics, classification of graphs and surfaces.
(iii) Brouwer fixed point theorem, winding number.
(iv) Fundamental groups, covering spaces.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand basic constructions in point-set topology
CLO 2 give examples and counter examples for concepts in "course contents"
CLO 3 understand basic ideas of fundamental groups and its application to the surface classification problem

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in MATH2101 and MATH2241. Students are recommended to have passed or already enrolled in MATH3301 and MATH3401.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and computational methods and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and computational methods and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems and computational methods or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems and computational methods, but with some inadequacies in applying them through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems and computational methods, but with substantial inadequacies in applying them through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail

Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems and computational methods or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Recommended reference:
2. M.A. Armstrong: Basic topology (UTM), Springer
MATH3600 Discrete mathematics (6 credits)  

Offering Department: Mathematics  
Academic Year: 2017  

Course Co-ordinator: Dr K H Law, Mathematics (lawkaho@maths.hku.hk)  

Course Objectives:  
- To introduce students to the basic ideas and techniques of discrete mathematics.  
- Counting: combinations, permutations, pigeonhole principle, inclusion-exclusion, recurrence relations, and generating functions.  
- Graph theory: paths, circuits, trees, connectivity, planarity, etc.  
- Applications of counting techniques and graph theory.  

Course Contents & Topics:  
- Counting: combinations, permutations, pigeonhole principle, inclusion-exclusion, recurrence relations, and generating functions.  
- Graph theory: paths, circuits, trees, connectivity, planarity, etc.  
- Applications of counting techniques and graph theory.  

Course Learning Outcomes:  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1: demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the basic ideas and techniques of discrete mathematics.  
- CLO 2: solve various real-world problems by using counting techniques and graph theory.  
- CLO 3: develop their ability to read, comprehend, and create mathematical arguments.  

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):  
Pass in (MATH1013 and any 1 of Level 2 MATH courses) or (MATH1851 and MATH1853 and any 1 of level 2 MATH courses) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)  

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y  
1st sem  
Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y  
Exam in: Examination  
Dec  

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):  
A: Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations correctly and carefully, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.  
B: Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.  
C: Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.  
D: Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.  
Fail: Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.  

Course Type: Lecture-based course  

Assessment Methods and Weighting:  
- Assignments: assignments, tutorials, participation, etc  
- Examination:  
- Test:  
- Weighting in final course grade (%):  
- Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping:  

Required/recommended reading and online materials:  
Richard A. Brualdi: Discrete Mathematics (Pearson)  

Course Website: moodle.hku.hk  
Additional Course Information:  
Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

MATH3601 Numerical analysis (6 credits)  

Offering Department: Mathematics  
Academic Year: 2017  

Course Co-ordinator: Dr Z Zhang, Mathematics (zhangzw@maths.hku.hk)  

Course Objectives:  
This course covers both the theoretical and practical aspects of numerical analysis. Emphasis will be on basic principles and numerical methods of solution, using high speed computers.  
- Different types of errors, condition number, and convergence order.  
- Polynomial interpolation and function approximation.  
- Solution of equations of one variable.  
- Direct and iterative methods for solving linear systems.  
- Numerical differentiation and integration.  
- Simple initial value problems for Ordinary Differential Equations.  

Course Contents & Topics:  
- Different types of errors, condition number, and convergence order.  
- Polynomial interpolation and function approximation.  
- Solution of equations of one variable.  
- Direct and iterative methods for solving linear systems.  
- Numerical differentiation and integration.  
- Simple initial value problems for Ordinary Differential Equations.  

Course Learning Outcomes:  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1: construct and implement algorithms to find the zeros of functions, apply the bisection, Newton, Secant and fixed point iteration methods; and construct and implement Newton's method to solve a system of nonlinear equations.  
- CLO 2: apply direct and iterative methods for solving linear equation systems.  
- CLO 3: construct interpolation polynomials in Lagrange, Newton, Hermite and spline forms.  
- CLO 4: understand the basic numerical integration and differentiation methods.  
- CLO 5: solve initial value problems using Taylor series and Runge-Kutta methods of varying orders.  
- CLO 6: use software package such as Scilab or Matlab to solve numerical problems.  

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):  
Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)  

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y  
1st sem  
Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y  
Exam in: Examination  
Dec  

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):  
A: Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and methods by being able to identify the appropriate theorems/algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical
### Course Information

**MATH3603**

- **Probability theory (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**: Mathematics

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr Z Qu, Mathematics (zhengqu@maths.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**: Dr Z Qu, Mathematics

**Course Objectives**

The emphasis of this course will be on probability models and their applications. The primary aim is to elucidate the fundamental principles of probability theory through examples and to develop the ability of the students to apply what they have learned from this course to widely divergent concrete problems.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Basic probability theory: random variable, discrete and continuous probability distributions, expectation, variance, moment generating function, strong law of large numbers, central limit theorem.
- Conditional probability theory: conditional probability, Bayes theorem, conditional expectation, conditional variance, compound random variable, Polya’s urn model, Bose-Einstein statistics.
- Markov chain theory: concepts of states and transition probability, irreducibility, stationary distribution, limiting variances, compound random variable, Polya’s urn model, Bose-Einstein statistics.
- Poisson process and reliability theory: exponential distribution, memoryless property, Poisson process, concepts of reliability, applications to server queue problems.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand and recognize the fundamental principles of probability theory
- CLO 2 explain the typical proofs and computational techniques in probability theory and apply them to concrete problems
- CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of various types of probability models

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLO</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or with a number of minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems/ algorithms, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems/methods through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems/algorithms or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- Instructor's Lecture Notes

**Course Website**

http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf
Course Website: moodle.hku.hk
Additional Course Information: Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

MATH3901
Offering Department: Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator: Prof X Yuan, Mathematics (xmyuan@hku.hk)
Course Objectives:
The objective is to provide a fundamental account of the basic results and techniques of Linear Programming (LP) and its related topics in operations research. There is an equal emphasis on all three aspects of understanding, algorithms and applications. The course serves, together with a course on network models, as essential concept and background for more advanced studies in operations research.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Linear Programming
- Duality Theory
- Sensitivity Analysis and Parametric Linear Programming
- Network Flow Problems
- Matrix Games

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the fundamental concept and approach of linear programming appropriate to the further study of operations research
CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the underlying techniques of the simplex method and its extensions such as the dual simplex algorithm and the transportation simplex algorithm
CLO 3 understand and apply the theory of LP duality such as in sensitivity analysis, matrix games and network flow problems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in MATH2014 or MATH2101 or MATH2102

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and to solve problems with some innovative approaches.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail: Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms or their applications, or not being able to complete or compute the solution.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework assessment</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
J.P. Ignizio: Goal Programming and Extensions (Lexington Books, 1976)
P.R. Thie: An Introduction to Linear Programming and Game Theory (Wiley 2/e 1988)

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information: Tutorial timetable:
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

MATH3904
Offering Department: Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator: Prof W Zang, Mathematics (wzang@maths.hku.hk)
Course Objectives:
This course introduces students to the theory and techniques of optimization, aiming at preparing them for further studies in operations research, mathematical economics and related subject areas.

Course Contents & Topics:
- Unconstrained and constrained optimization.
- Necessary conditions and sufficient conditions for optimality, convexity, duality.
- Algorithms and numerical examples.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the basic theory and techniques of optimization
CLO 2 solve various optimization problems encountered in practice
CLO 3 understand the connection between the purely analytical character of an optimization problem and the behavior of algorithms for solving it

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible):
Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)
### Course Information

**Course Title:** Queueing theory and simulation (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** Mathematics

**Offering Academic Year:** 2017

**Lecture-based course**

**Course Website:** moodle.hku.hk

**Course Content:**

- Introduction of the Monte Carlo (MC) method and Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) method.
- Simulation of queueing models and discrete-event systems.
- Simulation of queueing models and discrete-event systems.
- Introduction of the Monte Carlo (MC) method and Markov Chain Monte Carlo (MCMC) method.

**Required/recommended reading and online materials:**


**Course Objectives:**

- This course introduces students to the models and theory of queueing system, as well as the technique of simulation as a practical tool of analysis.

**Course Learning Outcomes:**

- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1 understand the terminology and nomenclature appropriate to queueing theory
  - CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of various queueing models
  - CLO 3 formulate concrete problems using queueing theoretical approaches
  - CLO 4 become familiar with fundamental principles of simulation and compare different simulation techniques
  - CLO 5 use Monte Carlo method and Markov Chain Monte Carlo method to conduct numerical simulations

**Pre-requisites:**

- Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822)

**Assessment Methods:**

- **Methods**
  - Examination 50 CLO 1,2,3
  - Test 50 CLO 1,2,3

**Assessment Weights:**

- **Weighting in final course grade (%)**
  - Examination: 50
  - Test: 50

**CLO to Mapping:**

- CLO 1,2,3

**Additional Course Information:**

- Tutorial timetable: [http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf](http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf)

---

**Grade Descriptors**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or with a number of minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

- Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Additional Course Information:**

- Tutorial timetable: [http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf](http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Financial calculus (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr S P Yung, Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr S P Yung, Mathematics)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>This course gives an elementary treatment for the modeling of financial derivatives, asset pricing and market risks from an applied mathematician's point of view. Stochastic calculus and solution methods will be introduced.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>- An introduction to financial instruments: stocks, bonds, options, forward and future contracts.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1 understand the terminology and nature of bonds, interest rates, forwards, futures, stocks, options, and the no-arbitrage-principle.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge on using binomial tree models to find option prices via the risk-neutral concept.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 describe basic properties of a Brownian motion and the Black-Scholes stock price model.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 4 implement stochastic calculus (such as Itô's Lemma) to derive Black-Scholes pricing partial differential equation on various type of options; and find a solution to this partial differential equation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014 or (MATH1821 and MATH2822) or STAT2801.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer in 2017 - 2018</td>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Type</td>
<td>Lecture-based course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities Details</td>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods Details</td>
<td>Weighting in final course grade (%)</td>
<td>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required/recommended reading and online materials</td>
<td>A. Etheridge: A Course in Financial Calculus (Cambridge University Press)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>R. Jarrow and S. Turnbull: Derivative Securities (South-Western College Publishing, 1994)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Course Information</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutoring timetable:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf">http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Game theory and strategy (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Mathematics</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr K H Law, Mathematics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr K H Law, Mathematics)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>Game theory is the logical analysis of situations of conflict and cooperation. This course will introduce the students to the basic ideas and techniques of mathematical game theory in an interdisciplinary context.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>- Combinatorial games and Szemelő's Theorem; Prisoner’s Dilemma; pure and mixed strategies, minimax theorem; mixed Nash equilibria.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Application to biology: evolutionary stable strategies; games in coalition form; Shapley value.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>- Application to politics: Shapley-Shubik power index; core and von Neumann-Morgenstern solution; bargaining set.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1 understand the basic terminology and solution concepts in game theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 compute explicitly different solution concepts for some simple cooperative and non-cooperative games.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 apply game theoretical ideas and methods to solve some problems in economics and biology.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or (MATH1821 and MATH2822).</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas of Game Theory by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Network models in operations research (6 credits)

**Course Description:**
The objective is to provide a fundamental account of the basic results and techniques of network flows and the duality aspects in such methods of flow computations. The course serves, together with a course on linear programming, to provide essential concept and background for more advanced studies in operations research.

**Course Objectives:**
- Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas of Game Theory by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and to solve problems with some innovative approaches.
- Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications and some minor computational errors.
- Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas of Game Theory by being able to correctly identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with some minor computational errors.
- Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas of Game Theory by being able to correctly identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with some substantial computational errors.
- Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas of Game Theory by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with some substantial computational errors.
- Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas of Game Theory by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with some substantial computational errors.

**Course Contents & Topics:**
- Graphs and algorithms.
- Trees, matchings and paths.
- Network models of transportation and assignment problems.
- Ford-Fulkerson network flow theory and computation for maximum flow and minimum cost flow algorithms.
- Applications to combinatorial optimization problems such as allocation, location and sequencing.
- Project networks, if time permits.

**Course Learning Outcomes:**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand the fundamental concept and approach of graphs and network models appropriate to the further study of operations research
- CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the underlying techniques of the various graph and network algorithms and their extensions
- CLO 3 understand the theory of network flows and the duality aspects in such methods of flow computations

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):**
- Pass in (MATH2101 and MATH2211) or MATH2014; and Pass in MATH3901, or already enrolled in this course.

**Course Type:** Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>assignments, tutorials, participation etc</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Offering Department:** Mathematics

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities:**
- **Activities:**
  - Lectures: 36 hours
  - Tutorials: 12 hours
  - Reading / Self study: 100 hours

**Assessment Methods and Weighting:**
- **Methods:**
  - Assignments: 5%
  - Examination: 50%
  - Project reports: 20%
  - Test: 25%

**Course Website:** moodle.hku.hk

**Additional Course Information:**
Tutorial timetable:
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

**Required/recommended reading and online materials:**
- M.S. Bazaraa, J.J. Jarvis and H.D. Sheral: Linear Programming and Network Flows. (2/e 1990)
MATH3999

Directed studies in mathematics (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator: Prof T W Ng, Mathematics (ntw@maths.hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (All teaching staff, Mathematics)
Course Objectives: This course is designed for students who would like to have early experiences on research related independent studies.
Course Contents & Topics: The subject matter of the project will be determined by consultation between the student and the supervisor. The student must achieve good standing and get the approval from both the prospective supervisor and the course coordinator to take this course.
Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to: CLO 1 study independently a topic that is not available in the regular curriculum
CLO 2 understand how mathematical theories are applied and/or extended in problem-solving
CLO 3 gain experience in project writing and oral presentation
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations): Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors, in addition to a pass in MATH2101, MATH2102, MATH2211 and MATH2241.
Subject to approval by the Department.
This capstone course is for Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors students only.
The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Graduate (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical evaluation of information drawn from a broad range of high quality sources and to reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentation skills.
B Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to reference aptly. Correct use of data to results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentation skills.
Fail Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type: Project-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities: Activities Details No. of Hours
Reading / Self study independent work & to attend meetings & seminars 120
Method: Details Weighting in final course grade (%)
Dissertation Written report plus oral presentation 100 CLO 1,2,3
Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

MATH4302

Algebra II (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator: Prof J H Lu, Mathematics (jhu@maths.hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Prof J H Lu, Mathematics)
Course Objectives: This course is an extension of MATH3301 and goes deeper into the various topics treated in that course. Together, the two courses are complete in themselves, and may be followed by MATH7501 and MATH7502.
Course Contents & Topics: - Principal ideal domains and unique factorization domains;
- Structure theorem for finitely generated modules of principal ideal domains with applications to finitely generated abelian groups and canonical forms of matrices;
- Field extensions; elements of Galois theory
Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand basic examples of principal ideal domains and why principal ideal domains are unique factorization domains
CLO 2 understand the classification of finitely generated modules of principal ideal domains and certain canonical forms of matrices
CLO 3 understand and compute splitting fields of irreducible polynomials
CLO 4 compute examples of Galois groups
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations): Pass in MATH2102 and MATH3301

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Graduate (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or...
### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

### Additional Course Information
Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

---

### MATH4402 Analysis II (6 credits)

#### Offering Department
Mathematics

#### Course Co-ordinator
Dr Y M Chan, Mathematics (ymchan@maths.hku.hk)

#### Teachers Involved
Dr Y M Chan, Mathematics

#### Course Objectives
This course gives a comprehensive and rigorous treatment on calculus of several variables, and a modern treatment of integration theory in the language of differential forms which is essential for more advanced studies in analysis and geometry.

#### Course Contents & Topics
- Integration in R^n: Basic definitions, measure zero and content zero sets, integrability, Fubini's Theorem, partition of unity, change of variables.
- Integration on chains: tensors, alternating tensors, vector fields, differential forms, Poincaré Lemma, Stokes' Theorem.

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the modern language of mathematical analysis and geometry (e.g., able to manipulate differential forms)
- CLO 2 apply knowledge and skills acquired in mathematical analysis to analyze and handle novel situations in a critical way (e.g., able to determine the differentiability and integrability of specific functions)
- CLO 3 think creatively and laterally to generate innovative solutions to novel problems (e.g., able to do integration of specific functions on chains)

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in MATH3401

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
2nd sem

#### Grade Descriptors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Course Title
Introduction to partial differential equations

### Offering Department
Mathematics

### Course Co-ordinator
Dr H Y Zhang, Mathematics (hyzhang@maths.hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
(Takkwon Won, Mathematics)

### Course Objectives
This course introduces students to the basic knowledge of linear functional analysis, an important branch of modern analysis.

### Course Contents & Topics
- Bounded linear operators, Normed spaces of operators, dual space.
- Riesz's representation theorem. Adjoint operator, self-adjoint, normal and unitary operators.
- Spectral theory of linear operators.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

**CLO 1** compare and contrast (i) finite and infinite dimensional linear spaces, (ii) complete and incomplete linear spaces, and (iii) normed and inner product spaces; in particular, recognize the importance of completeness and discuss how vectors are represented in these spaces.

**CLO 2** understand the notions of Banach spaces and Hilbert Spaces. State and apply fundamental theorems in these spaces.

**CLO 3** discuss the dual spaces of some standard Banach spaces.

**CLO 4** discuss the boundedness of linear operators and the spectra of special linear operators.

### Pre-requisites
Pass in MATH2101, MATH2102, MATH2211, MATH2241 and MATH3401

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

### Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications or presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
- **Assignments**: 10 CLO 1,2,3,4
- **Examination**: 50 CLO 1,2,3,4
- **Tutorials**: 12
- **Lectures**: 36
- **Reading / Self study**: 100

### Additional Course Information
- **Course Website**: moodle.hku.hk
- **Course Website**: Tutorial timetable: http://hkmath.hku.hk/~math/ Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf

### MATH4406
Introduction to partial differential equations (6 credits)

### Offering Department
Mathematics

### Course Co-ordinator
Dr H Y Zhang, Mathematics (hyzhang@maths.hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
(Takkwon Won, Mathematics)

### Course Objectives
This course introduces students to the basic techniques for solving partial differential equations as well as the underlying theories.

### Course Contents & Topics
- Green's function, generalized functions and fundamental solutions.
- Maximum principle, existence, uniqueness and continuous dependence on data.
- If time permits Cauchy-Kowalevski theorem, variational method, nonlinear partial differential equations.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

**CLO 1** apply the tools of calculus, linear algebra, mathematical analysis in a coherent way to PDE problems

**CLO 2** understand the basic theory of partial differential equations and the methods to solve them

**CLO 3** apply the knowledge of partial differential equations to physical sciences and engineering

### Pre-requisites
Pass in MATH2101, MATH2102, MATH2241; and Pass in MATH3405, or already enrolled in this course.

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

### Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications or presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
As geometric forms often appear in nature, the study of geometry helps us to understand better the universe in which we live. Moreover, geometry has much intrinsic beauty and the study of it is an excellent training in intuitive thinking. In this course we study the differential geometry of curves and surfaces in 3-space. In the study of regular surfaces in 3-space we exhibit geometric notions that are definable in terms of metrical properties of these surfaces alone, leading to the intrinsic geometry of surfaces.

Course Contents & Topics
- Plane and space curves, regular surfaces in three-dimensional Euclidean space.
- The Gauss map, Gaussian and mean curvatures, Gauss’s Theorema Egregium, Gauss-Bonnet Theorem.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand the fundamental theorems on curves
- CLO 2 compute the Gaussian and mean curvatures
- CLO 3 understand the basics of intrinsic geometry of surfaces

Required/recommended reading and online materials
W.A. Strauss: Partial Differential Equations: An Introduction, 2nd ed. (Wiley)

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information
Tutorial timetable:
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

MATH4501

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities                  Details                  No. of Hours
Lectures                   36
Tutorials                  12
Reading / Self study       100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods                  Details                  Weighting in final course grade (%)                  Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination                50                  CLO 1,2,3
Test                      50                  CLO 1,2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk/

Additional Course Information
Tutorial timetable:
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S1.pdf

MATH4511

Introduction to differentiable manifolds (6 credits)

Assessment

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through correctly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities                  Details                  No. of Hours
Lectures                   36
Tutorials                  12
Reading / Self study       100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods                  Details                  Weighting in final course grade (%)                  Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination                50                  CLO 1,2,3
Test                      50                  CLO 1,2,3
### Course Objectives
The course aims at introducing students to the notion of differentiable manifolds and basic concepts and tools for their study. The course also aims at presenting concrete examples that are relevant to further fields of study.

### Course Contents & Topics
- Review on functions of several variables, inverse mapping theorem, implicit function theorem.
- Differentiable manifolds: definitions and examples.
- Maps between manifolds, submanifolds. Differential forms and exterior differentiation.
- Integration on manifolds.
- The tangent bundle, distributions and Frobenius Theorem.
- Further topics.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: speak the language of differentiable manifolds such as that of vector fields, differential forms, vector bundles, and integration on manifolds.
- CLO 2: present a number of examples of differentiable manifolds and carry out explicit calculations on such examples.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in MATH3401 (having taken MATH4501 would be helpful; the course can also be taken concurrently with MATH4402).

### Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify correctly appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type & Learning Activities
Lecture-based course

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

---

### MATH4602

- **Scientific computing (6 credits)**
- **Academic Year**: 2017
- **Offering Department**: Mathematics
- **Quota**: ---

### Teachers Involved
- **Course Co-ordinator**: Dr Z Zhang, Mathematics (zhangzw@maths.hku.hk)
- **Course Objectives**: This course introduces mathematical theories and computational techniques for solving various kinds of matrix computation problems, ordinary differential equations (ODEs), partial differential equations (PDEs), and stochastic differential equations (SDEs) that are often encountered in scientific or industrial applications.

In addition, this course will introduce some recent development in scientific computing, such as Monte Carlo method and fast direct solvers based on low-rank approximation and data sparsity.

### Course Contents & Topics
The matrix computation part covers basic methods such as direct and iterative solution of large linear systems, including LU decomposition, splitting method (Jacobi iteration, Gauss-Seidel iteration); eigenvalue and vector computations including the power method and QR iteration; spectral radius, Schur's Theorem, and Gershgorin's Theorem; Singular values decomposition and its application in data analysis.

The PDE parts include finite difference and finite element for elliptic/parabolic/hyperbolic equation.

Some selected topics: Monte Carlo method, Quasi-Monte Carlo method, and numerical methods for stochastic differential equation (SDE) arising from mathematical finance, etc.

Programming is a significant part of the course.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: apply direct method in solving a linear system
- CLO 2: analyze the complexity of a numerical algorithm
- CLO 3: give a proof for Schur's Theorem and Gershgorin's Theorem
- CLO 4: apply iterative methods in solving a linear system
- CLO 5: compute the singular values of a matrix

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in MATH3601

### Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and numerical algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify correctly appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Courses Offered in 2018 - 2019

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MATH4602</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Additional Information
- Required/recommended reading and online materials:
MATH4902 Operations research II (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Mathematics Quota ---
Teachers Involved Dr G Han, Mathematics (ghan@maths.hku.hk)
Course Objectives
The objective is to provide a fundamental account of the basic results and techniques of integer programming (IP), dynamic programming (DP) and Markov decision processes (MDP) in operations research. There is emphasis on aspects of algorithms as well as applications. The course serves, together with courses on linear programming and network models, to provide essential optimization concept and algorithms for more advanced studies in operations research.
Course Contents & Topics
- Integer programming and heuristics.
- Dynamic programming (deterministic/stochastic).
- Markov decision process (discounted/average costs).
Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the terminology and nomenclature appropriate to integer programming, dynamic programming and Markov decision process
CLO 2 explain the typical techniques employed in integer programming, dynamic programming and Markov decision process
CLO 3 demonstrate the knowledge on algorithms for a variety of problems in operations research
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in MATH2101 and MATH2211; and
Pass in MATH3901, or already enrolled in this course.
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and to solve problems with some innovative approaches.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor computational errors.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify basic principles, appropriate theorems, algorithms and their applications but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with some minor computational errors.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify appropriate theorems and numerical algorithms, with some inadequacies in applying them through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems and numerical algorithms or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.
Course Type Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100
Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination 50 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Test 50 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Required/recommended reading and online materials
James W. Demmel: Applied Numerical Linear Algebra, SIAM, 1 Aug 1997
Peter E. Kloeden and Eckhard Platen: Numerical Solution of Stochastic Differential Equations
Course Website moodle.hku.hk Additional Course Information
Tutorial timetable: http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/TimeTable/tutorials1718_52.pdf
P. Thie: Markov Decision Processes (COMAP, Inc. 1983)
MATH4907  Numerical methods for financial calculus (6 credits)  Academic Year  2017
Offering Department  Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator  Dr C W Wong, Mathematics (cwwongab@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved  (Dr C W Wong, Mathematics)
Course Objectives  This course aims at providing effective numerical methods as well as their theoretical aspects for solving problems arisen from financial derivatives and asset pricing.
Course Contents & Topics  - Introduction to the mathematical theory of vanilla and exotic options, both the PDE and the Martingale approach.  
  - Lattice methods, Monte Carlo simulations and their performance analyses.
Course Learning Outcomes  On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
  CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the martingale theory in option pricing as well as related financial derivatives  
  CLO 2 implement and analyse various numerical methods on the Black-Scholes pricing differential equation  
  CLO 3 understand the connection between the binomial tree method and the finite difference method of the Black-Scholes pricing differential equation  
  CLO 4 implement and analyse Monte Carlo simulation methods on the martingale pricing formula
Pre-requisites  Pass in MATH3906 or equivalent.
Grade Descriptors  (A+ to F)  
A  Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly solving problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
B  Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
C  Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
D  Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
Fail  Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.
Course Type  Lecture-based course
Assessment Methods and Weighting  Methods  Details  No. of Hours  
Lectures  36  
Tutorials  12  
Examination  100
Methods  Details  Weighting in final course grade (%)  Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination  50  CLO 1,2,3,4
Test  50  CLO 1,2,3,4
Required/recommended reading and online materials  J. Strikwerda: Finite Difference Schemes and PDEs (Wadsworth & Brooks, 1989)  
Alison Etheridge: A Course in Financial Calculus (Cambridge University Press)  
Course Website  http://moodle.hku.hk/
Additional Course Information  Tutorial timetable:  
http://hkumath.hku.hk/~math/Timetable/tutorials1718_S2.pdf
MATH4910  Senior mathematics seminar (6 credits)  Academic Year  2017
Offering Department  Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator  Prof W S Cheung, Mathematics (wscheung@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved  (Dr Z Hua, Mathematics)  
(Prof W S Cheung, Mathematics)  
Course Objectives  This seminar style capstone course aims to provide students with the experience of intense reading of journal articles and book chapters, followed by group discussions through which knowledge acquisition and synthesis will be attained. Students will look at particular mathematical topics in depth, and will master the topics through reading, listening, discussing and writing.
Course Contents & Topics  This seminar course may be in the form of research seminar, reading seminar, or a combination of both. Research seminar provides first-hand research experience to students, who will discuss the advancement of knowledge brought about by the readings, and the difficulties they encounter in the research process. Reading seminar involves discussions on arguments delivered by the authors of books or articles, and how convincing the arguments are. Participants will experience the process of argumentation in the construction of knowledge and development of research idea. Student performance is manifested in their preparedness, quality of comments, responsiveness to comments and overall engagement in the seminar. The end product is a research paper or written report and oral presentations. Topics will be chosen by the instructors, including journal articles and book chapters.
Course Learning Outcomes  On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
CLO 1 explain and discuss the contents of the topics they studied  
CLO 2 critique and argue about the ideas and theories of the work they studied  
CLO 3 organize and synthesize the material they have learned, and report orally and in writing using mathematical language
Pre-requisites  Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX,  
MATH3XXX)
Seminars: Students take turns to give presentations to the class.

No Exam

Reading material and preparation for presentations and oral presentation using mathematical language.

Course Type
Project-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meeting with supervisor</td>
<td>Seminars: Students take turns to give presentations to the whole class; group discussions.</td>
<td>20 CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>Reading material and preparation for presentations; writing of reports/research papers.</td>
<td>30 CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment

Course CLOs

Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

A) Demonstrate an excellent understanding of the material by lucid exposition, Engage constructively by providing insightful analyses and raising critical points in group discussion. Demonstrate clear and critical analysis, coherent synthesis, and effective application of knowledge through writing and oral presentation using mathematical language.

B) Demonstrate a good understanding of the material by mostly clear and effective presentation. Engage actively in group discussion most of the time by providing helpful points and asking questions that advance the discussion. Demonstrate mostly clear and effective analysis, synthesis, and application of the knowledge through writing and oral presentation using mathematical language.

C) Demonstrate a general understanding of the material by moderately effective presentation. Engage in group discussion most of the time, with some useful input. Demonstrate limited clear and effective analysis, synthesis, and application of the knowledge through writing and oral presentation using mathematical language.

D) Demonstrate a basic but limited understanding of the material by partially effective presentation. Plays a passive role, or gives limited useful contribution to group discussion. Demonstrate limited or barely effective analysis, synthesis, and application of the knowledge through writing and oral presentation using mathematical language.

Fail

Students may take the course only in conjunction with their supervisor(s). Students will work collaboratively in small groups on a project under the guidance of their supervisor(s). Emphasis of this capstone project is on the integration and/or application of mathematical knowledge acquired by the students. The project topic is not limited to academic context, but can also be extended to a community or corporate outreach project. Projects may take the form of a combination of literature research, survey, data analysis, creation of artifacts or media contents, exhibition, public lectures, development of solution plan for the problem under study, etc. Assessment may take the form of written report, oral presentation, media production, portfolio, and/or peer evaluation, etc. Topics are either chosen by the supervisor(s), or proposed by the students and approved by their supervisor(s).

Pre-requisites
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors.

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/
Meeting with supervisor or to discuss their progress. Project work: Students work on their project 120

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dissertation</td>
<td>Coursework assessment: Based on participation and collaboration throughout the whole project.</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>Oral presentation components of the project may include seminars, lectures, oral reports, audio recordings, etc.</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research report</td>
<td>Written report / media production: This part may include written reports, booklets, exhibition materials, video productions, computer software, etc.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Teacher Involved: (All teaching staff, Mathematics)

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk/

### MATH4966

**Mathematics internship (6 credits)**

**Offering Department:**
Department of Mathematics

**Course Co-ordinator:**
Dr T K Wong, Mathematics (takkwong@maths.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved:**
(All teaching staff, Mathematics)

**Course Objectives:**
This course aims to offer students the opportunities to gain work experience in the industry related to their major of study. The workplace learning experience would be of great benefits to the students to apply their knowledge gained in the study to the real work environments. Students have to take on at least 160 hours of internship work either within the University or outside the University arranged by the department. Within the university: each student will be supervised by a staff member (supervisor), working on a project or various tasks as instructed by the supervisor.

Outside the university: each student will carry out approved work under the guidance and supervision of an external supervisor.

**Course Contents & Topics:**
Within the university: each student will be supervised by a staff member (supervisor), working on a project or various tasks as instructed by the supervisor. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

**Course Learning Outcomes:**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 gain work experience in an industry related to mathematical sciences
- CLO 2 have an understanding of how mathematics is used to solve real-world problems

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):**
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors. This capstone course is for Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors students only.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018:**
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Summer Offer in 2016 - 2019: Y

**Examination:**
No Exam

**Grade Descriptors (Pass /Pass with distinction /Fail):**
- **Pass**
  - Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of “Distinction”.
- **Fail**
  - Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

**Weighting in final course grade (%)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Method</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Written report</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Written report, employer's feedback and oral presentation</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLO</th>
<th>Item</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>study independently and in depth an advanced topic that is not available in the regular curriculum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>have an understanding of how mathematics is used to solve real-world problems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>gain work experience in an industry related to mathematical sciences</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type:**
Internship

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Internship work</td>
<td>it is expected that students are to work at least 160 hours (or the equivalent of 4 weeks full-time)</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Additional Course Information:**
Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on “Pass/Fail” basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval. Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

**MATH4999**

**Mathematics project (12 credits)**

**Offering Department:**
Department of Mathematics

**Course Co-ordinator:**
Prof T W Ng, Mathematics (ntw@maths.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved:**
(All teaching staff, Mathematics)

**Course Objectives:**
The aim of the course is to provide students with the opportunity to formulate and to investigate, in depth, problems of practical interest and/or to have a foretaste of mathematical research. The work, to be done on an individual basis, is considered a highly desirable part of the training of a mathematician.

**Course Contents & Topics:**
The subject matter of the project will be determined by consultation between the student and his/her supervisor. The projects will be selected from areas of pure and applied mathematics. Students must achieve good standing and get the approval from both the prospective supervisor and the course co-ordinator to take this course.

**Course Learning Outcomes:**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 study independently and in depth an advanced topic that is not available in the regular curriculum

**Academic Year:**
2017

**Quota:**
---
Intermediate complex analysis (6 credits)

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y Year long Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem

Offer Descriptors
Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical evaluation of information drawn from a broad range of high quality sources and to reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presential skills.

B Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to reference aptly. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presential skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presential skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presential skills.

Fail Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presential skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods and Weights

Methods
Details
Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Dissertation Written report plus oral presentation 100 CLO 1,2,3,4

COURSE TYPE

Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities Details No. of Hours
Reading / Self study independent work & to attend meetings & seminars 240

Course Contents & Topics

- In the course we study meromorphic functions on compact Riemann surfaces and on open Riemann surfaces using analytic and algebraic techniques. Topics on meromorphic functions include the constructions of meromorphic functions on compact Riemann surfaces, elliptic functions, Poincare series, the Mittag-Leffler Problem and the Weierstrass Problem on compact Riemann surfaces and on open Riemann surfaces.

- In the course of study of meromorphic functions, sheaf cohomology theory and cohomology theories in terms of differential forms will be introduced.

- A choice of other topics may be included. Examples of possible topics include normal families, the Riemann Mapping Theorem, geometric theory of holomorphic mappings, potential theory in one complex variable, complex dynamics, and special functions.

COURSE LEARNING OUTCOMES

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 deal with rational functions on the Riemann Sphere and deal with elliptic functions, equivalently meromorphic functions on elliptic curves

- CLO 2 formulate various classical existence problems on meromorphic functions and reduce them to analytic or cohomological problems, being able to solve them in certain typical cases

- CLO 3 identify the key arguments in the proofs of various mathematical results concerning meromorphic functions on compact Riemann surfaces or on plan domains

- CLO 4 identify the key elements in the theoretic foundation of various additional topics covered in the course and to make use of them in solving problems

PRE-REQUISITES AND IMPERMISSIBLE COMBINATIONS

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) in the Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors including MATH3301, MATH3401, and MATH3403.

Subject to approval by the Department.

This capstone course is for Mathematics, and Mathematics/Physics Majors students only. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

R. Narasimhan: Complex Analysis in One Variable (Birkhauser, 2001, 2nd edition)
O. Forster: Lectures on Riemann Surfaces (Springer-Verlag, 1981)
J.B. Conway: Functions of One Complex Variable I (Springer-Verlag, 1995)
K. Chandrasekharan: Elliptic Functions (Springer-Verlag, 1985)

**MATH7201**

**Topics in geometry (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**: Mathematics

**Course Co-ordinator**: TBC, Mathematics (/)

**Teachers Involved**: TBC

**Course Objectives**: This course introduces students a main area of differential geometry beyond the notion of manifolds and the calculus of differential forms and prepares them to study further and to do research in geometry.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- The topic varies according to the year and the instructor. For example, it can be one of (but not restricted to) the following:
  1. Riemannian geometry: affine and Levi-Civita connection, Riemann curvature tensor, spinor bundles, Laplace and Dirac operators, harmonic forms and spinors, applications in relativity;
  2. Symplectic geometry: symplectic vector spaces, symplectic manifolds, Lagrangian submanifolds, Hamiltonian group actions, moment maps, symplectic quotients, convexity theorems, localization;
  3. Vector bundles: vector bundles, connection and curvature, characteristic forms and classes, superconnections, transgression, topological K-theory, introduction to index theory.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 have a working knowledge of the calculus of differential forms beyond the level of MATH3511
- CLO 2 understand the keys points of the particular subject chosen and be ready to learn other topics in Geometry

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in (MATH4402 or MATH4501) and (MATH4511 or the approval of the course coordinator)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**: N

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- A: Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
- B: Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
- C: Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
- D: Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
- Fail: Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

**Course Type**: Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

TBC

**MATH7202**

**Complex manifolds (6 credits)**

**Academic Year**: 2017

**Offering Department**: Mathematics

**Course Co-ordinator**: TBC, Mathematics (/)

**Teachers Involved**: TBC

**Course Objectives**: This course aims to present the foundation of the theory of complex manifolds and to introduce students to a variety of research topics, focusing on compact complex manifolds.

**Course Contents & Topics**

- This course contains an introductory part on basic notions on complex manifolds including sheaf cohomology, cohomology theories in terms of differential forms, Hermitian and Kahler manifolds, and Hermitian holomorphic vector bundles.
- It proceeds to introduce the theory of harmonic forms, establishing fundamental results on compact complex manifolds including Serre duality, the Kodaira Vanishing Theorem, the Kodaira Embedding Theorem and Hodge decomposition on compact Kahler manifolds.
- The course concludes with a choice of topics on analytic and geometric aspects of the theory of complex manifolds. Examples of such topics include
  1. Siegel's Theorem on the field of meromorphic functions on a compact complex manifold;
  2. geometry of compact quotients of bounded symmetric domains and Hermitian symmetric manifolds;
  3. an introduction to the deformation theory of compact complex submanifolds in a complex manifold;
  4. an introduction to the deformation theory of complex structures on a compact complex manifold.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 grasp the notion of holomorphic line bundles, understand various ways for establishing the existence of global holomorphic sections of line bundles, and to relate them to the embedding of compact complex manifolds.
**Course Objectives**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand and be able to utilize various models and results in investment and interest rate
- CLO 2 grasp the methodology in derivative pricing and the modeling of volatilities
- CLO 3 understand and be able to utilize the concept of risk measures and risk management, subject to the topics chosen that year

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and impermissible combinations)**

Pass in an advanced level mathematics courses (MATH3XXX, MATH4XXX, or MATH7XXX) and subject to the approval of the course coordinator.

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- K. Kodaira: Complex Manifolds and Deformation of Complex Structures (Grundlehren der mathematischen Wissenschaften 283, Springer-Verlag, Berlin-Heidelberg 1986)

**MATH7217**

Topics in financial mathematics (6 credits)

**Offering Department**

Mathematics

**Teachers Involved**

Dr. J Song, Mathematics (txjsong@hku.hk)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- A: Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
- B: Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.
- C: Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
- D: Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
- F: Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

**Assessment Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Grade (%)</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Risk measures and risk management.**

- Investment models and portfolio theory.
- Interest rate modeling.
- Mathematics of financial derivatives, pricing and hedging.
- Estimation and modeling of volatilities.
- Risk measures and risk management.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

This course aims at introducing students to fundamental knowledge in financial mathematics and risk management. It can help preparing students to research or take more advanced courses in those directions.
### Topics in applied functional analysis (6 credits)

**Offering Department:** Mathematics  
**Course Co-ordinator:** TBC, Mathematics ()

**Course Objectives:** This is a graduate to advanced undergraduate university level course on applied functional analysis, which aims at introducing to students the basic knowledge of using functional analysis on various applied topics in mathematics. This course would lay a foundation for students in studying more advanced mathematical courses.

**Course Contents & Topics:**

- Generalized functions (also called distributions), delta function, generalized Fourier Transform. Applications to differential equations, Fundamental solution, Green's function.
- Sobolev spaces, Sobolev Embedding Theorem, Trace.
- Hilbert space linear operator theory (bounded operators, compact operators, closed unbounded operators), spectral theory. Applications to differential equations (infinitesimal generator, semigroup of linear operators).
- Applications to optimization problems.

Wherever needed, we shall also review techniques for Metric spaces (Category Theorem), Banach spaces (Hahn-Banach Theorem, Opening Mapping Theorem, Closed Graph Theorem and Uniform Boundedness Principle) and Hilbert spaces (Orthogonality and best approximation, Fourier isometry).

**Course Learning Outcomes:** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand Sobolev spaces and how to apply them in the process of solving differential equations
- CLO 2 understand Hilbert space linear operator theory and apply it in solving differential equations
- CLO 3 apply these results to optimization problems

**Pre-requisites**

Pass in MATH3401 and MATH4404, or approval of the course coordinator.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.</td>
<td>N</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type:** Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

TBC

---

599 Department of Mathematics
(A+ to F) and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail Demonstrates poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

---

**MATH7501**

Topics in algebra (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics

Course Co-ordinator: Dr J Liu, Mathematics (jliu02@hku.hk)

Course Objectives: To provide students specializing in mathematics with the opportunity to study some topics in algebra in greater depth.

Course Contents & Topics: A selection of advanced topics in algebra such as group theory; rings and modules; Galois theory; quadratic forms; multilinear algebra; algebraic number theory; group representations; commutative algebra; Grobner basis theory; introduction to algebraic geometry. Topics may vary from year to year.

Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 acquire knowledge in the covered topics to considerable depth
- CLO 2 if he/she wishes, pursue more advanced studies in areas of algebra

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in MATH4302


Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):

- **A** Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

- **B** Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

- **C** Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

- **D** Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

- **Fail** Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
To be decided by the course instructor.

### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk/

---

**MATH7502**

Topics in applied discrete mathematics (6 credits)

Offering Department: Mathematics

Course Co-ordinator: Prof W Zang, Mathematics (wzang@maths.hku.hk)

Course Objectives: This is a follow-up of the course MATH2600/MATH3600. It introduces students to some powerful linear algebra and probabilistic methods that have been used with striking success in discrete mathematics, and covers some of the most fundamental and beautiful results obtained by these methods.

Course Contents & Topics:

1. Linear algebra method: rank argument, eigenvalue technique, polynomial technique, general position method.

Department of Mathematics
Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of some research areas of applied discrete mathematics

CLO 2 solve various discrete mathematics problems using linear algebra and probabilistic methods

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in (MATH3301 or MATH3600), and approval of the course coordinator.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination ---

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>coursework assessment</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2.5-hour written examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Instructor's lecture notes.

Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

MATH7503

Topics in mathematical programming and optimization (6 credits)

Offering Department

Mathematics

Course Co-ordinator

TBC, Mathematics

Teachers Involved

A study in greater depth of some special topics in mathematical programming or optimization. It is mainly intended for students in Operations Research or related subject areas.

Course Contents & Topics

- A selection of advanced topics, which may include convex, quadratic, geometric, stochastic programming, multi-objective programming and goal programming; or discrete and combinatorial optimization. The selection may vary from year to year.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand the advanced concept and approach of the mathematical programming topic(s) and/or optimization approaches as appropriate in Operations Research

CLO 2 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the underlying theory and techniques of the various formulations and algorithms plus their extensions

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in MATH3901, MATH3904 and MATH4002

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N Examination ---

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly, and to solve problems with some innovative approaches.

B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inadequacies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications and presentation or with some minor computational errors.

C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.

D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.

Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>coursework assessment based on assignments and two class tests</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2.5-hour written examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

N. Christofides et al (ed.): Combinatorial Optimization (John Wiley & Sons, 1979)
MATH7504
Geometric topology (6 credits)
Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator TBC, Mathematics
Teachers Involved

Course Objectives
This course gives a geometric introduction to some of the methods of algebraic topology. The emphasis throughout will be on the geometric motivations and applications of the theory.

Course Contents & Topics
- Continuity. Compactness. Connectedness. The fundamental group. Triangulations and classification of surfaces. Theory and applications of simplicial homology. Theory of covering spaces. Theory of attaching spaces. On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand basic ideas and constructions which are important both in pursuing the deeper theories as well as in many applications in algebraic topology
CLO 2 understand the ideas of attaching space, complexes, lifting and extension properties, and surgery on manifolds

Pre-requisites
Pass in MATH3301 and MATH3401

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y        Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y
N        Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)
A Demonstrate an excellent understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation and being able to carry out computations carefully and correctly.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inaccuracies in arguments, identifying the appropriate theorems or their applications or presentation or with some minor computational errors.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument and presentation or a number of minor computational errors.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation or with substantial computational errors.
Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, or not being able to complete the solution.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments coursework assessment 50 CLO 1,2
Examination One 2.5-hour written examination 50 CLO 1,2

Required/recommended reading and online materials
M.A. Armstrong: Basic Topology (Springer-Verlag UTM)
J. Rotman: An Introduction to Algebraic Topology (Springer-Verlag GTM)

MATH7505
Real analysis (6 credits)
Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Mathematics
Course Co-ordinator Prof K M Tsang, Mathematics (kmtsang@maths.hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Prof K M Tsang, Mathematics)

Course Objectives
The aim of the course is to introduce the basic ideas and techniques of measure theory and the Lebesgue integral.

Course Contents & Topics
- Lebesgue Measure on R: Measurable sets and Lebesgue measure, Measurable functions.
- The Lebesgue Integral: The Lebesgue integral, modes of convergence.
- Lebesgue Measure on R: Measurable sets and Lebesgue measure, Measurable functions.
- The L^p Spaces: The L^p spaces, convergence and completeness, bounded linear functionals.
- General Measure and Integration Theory: Measurable spaces, measurable functions, integration, convergence theorems, the Radon-Nikodym theorem.
- The L^p Spaces: The L^p spaces, convergence and completeness, bounded linear functionals.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 describe basic properties of Lebesgue measure and measurable functions
CLO 2 construct the Lebesgue integral, elucidate its basic properties and appreciate the existence of other useful integration theories besides Riemann's
CLO 3 understand the basic features of L^p spaces

Pre-requisites
Pass in MATH3401

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)
A Demonstrate a thorough understanding of all concepts and ideas by being able to draw complex connections among various concepts and apply the theorems through correctly analysing problems, clearly and elegantly presenting correct logical reasoning and argumentation, and with some innovative approaches to solving problems.
B Demonstrate a good understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to identify the appropriate theorems and their applications through correctly analysing problems, but with some minor inaccuracies in arguments, reasoning, identifying the appropriate theorems, applications, or presentation.
C Demonstrate an acceptable understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with some inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with acceptable argument and presentation.
D Demonstrate some understanding of key concepts and ideas by being able to correctly identify appropriate theorems, but with substantial inadequacies in applying the theorems through incorrectly analysing problems with poor argument or presentation.
Fail Demonstrate poor and inadequate understanding by not being able to identify appropriate theorems or their applications, and not being able to complete the solution.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Methods</td>
<td>Details</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2.5-hour written final examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required/recommended reading and online materials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H.L. Royden: Real Analysis (Pearson)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W. Rudin: Real and Complex Analysis (McGraw Hill)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td>moodle.hku.hk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Additional Course Information</td>
<td>Tutorial timetable:</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PHYS1055 How things work (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Physics Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr M K Yip, Physics (mankit@bohr.physics.hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr M K Yip,Physics) (Prof K S Cheng,Physics)
Course Objectives This course is designed for students in all disciplines and all years who are curious about science in daily life. The course covers the working principles and mechanisms of the things and phenomena around us. Logical thinking and appreciation of science are emphasized with mathematics kept at a minimum. Students are trained to develop scientific intuition and to understand that many "magical" things in everyday life can be predictable.
Course Contents & Topics Topics include: the science in the household and the science of driving, sports and amusement. Daily applications and appreciation of science are emphasized with mathematics kept at a minimum. Students are trained to develop scientific intuition and to understand that many 'magical' things in everyday life can be predictable.
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 describe and explain the physical principles of mechanics, electricity and magnetism
CLO 2 apply these principles to situations of the physical and engineering world
CLO 3 analyze and solve basic problems using the calculus-based approach
CLO 4 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1011

This course is exclusive for Engineering students.

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Course Learning Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Defines general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Defines general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Defines general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Defines general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Defines general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CLO 1 grasp and apply the principles of mechanics, electricity and magnetism.
CLO 2 apply these principles to situations of the physical and engineering world.
CLO 3 analyze and solve basic problems using the calculus-based approach.
CLO 4 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws.

Reading / Self study 72
Tutorials 8
Lectures 36
Laboratory 6
Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Examination 2-hour written exam 10 CLO 1,2,3
Laboratory reports 10 CLO 1,4
Test 10 CLO 1,2,3

Course Website http://moodle.hku.hk

PHYS1050 Physics for engineering students (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Physics Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Prof K S Cheng, Physics (hrspksc@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved (Dr C C Ling,Physics) (Dr M K Yip,Physics) (Prof K S Cheng,Physics)
Course Objectives This course offers a comprehensive training of physics for engineers. It covers the major physical laws on mechanics, electricity and magnetism. A calculus-based approach is adopted.
Course Contents & Topics This course will introduce and discuss the following topics:
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 describe and explain the physical principles of mechanics, electricity and magnetism
CLO 2 apply these principles to situations of the physical and engineering world
CLO 3 analyze and solve basic problems using the calculus-based approach
CLO 4 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or Combined Science with Physics components or equivalent, and Level 2 or above in Module 1, or Module 2 of HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent, or Pass in MATH1011)

This course is exclusive for Engineering students.

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Course Learning Outcomes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Defines thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Defines substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Defines general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Defines partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some limited analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Defines limited or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentation skills are minimal effective or ineffective. Apply moderately effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Activity Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Laboratory 6
Tutorials 8
Reading / Self study 72

Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 10 CLO 1,2,3
Examination 2-hour written exam 70 CLO 1,2,3
Laboratory reports 10 CLO 1,4
Test 10 CLO 1,2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
R. Serway and J.W. Jewett: Physics for Scientists and Engineers (Thomson, 2009, 8th edition)
R. D. Knight: Physics for Scientists and Engineers (Pearson, 2008, 2nd edition)
Course Website http://moodle.hku.hk
## Course Content

The course will encompass topics on: basic physical principles on weather phenomena like: wind, temperature, humidity, cold/warm fronts, thunderstorms and tropical cyclones; introductory weather analysis, forecast and interpretation of meteorological information, climatology and climate change.

Experts from the Hong Kong Observatory (HKO) will participate in the course to cover aspects on daily weather forecasts, public weather services, local severe weather phenomena, tropical cyclones, climatology of Hong Kong, and climate change. They will also supervise course projects that involve a visit to the HKO to study the meteorological facilities and understand the operational activities on weather and climate.

## Course Objectives

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** recall the basic principles of weather and climate
- **CLO 2** apply the principles to interpret weather / climate information, for example from the HKO web site, internet or media
- **CLO 3** identify and explain the differences of weather and climate in Hong Kong as compared to other parts of the world
- **CLO 4** explain the basic causes of climate change and its potential impacts
- **CLO 5** describe and discuss the daily operational activities in the HKO

**Grade Descriptors**

* Grade: A+ to F

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pre-requisites**

NIL

**Offering Department**

Physics

**Offering Department**

Physics

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self Study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Objectives**

Weather and climate play an important role in human activities and history. In this course, we shall introduce to students the fundamentals of weather, climate and climate changes, to arouse their interests in the scientific and technological advancements.

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods**

Online materials and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

**Weighting in final course grade (%)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weighting</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Assignments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Presentation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Website**

http://www.physics.hku.hk/~phys1055/
Department of Physics

Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 80

Assessment Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
Frederick Lutgens and Edward Tarbuck: The Atmosphere (Pearson Prentice Hall, 2013)

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

PHYS1057

Kitchen science (6 credits)

Offering Department
Physics

Course Co-ordinator
Prof A B Djurisic, Physics (dalek@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
The course aims to improve students' understanding of basic science behind the common daily activities related to food and cooking and to develop their critical thinking skills.

Course Contents & Topics
The course will introduce basic scientific concepts and principles necessary to understand different methods of food preparation, as well as kitchen tools. The introduced concepts will be illustrated in recipes and practical demonstrations.

The topics include: basic food molecules (water, carbohydrates, fats, protein); foams and bubbles (various examples, beer, sodas, ice-cream); colloids, emulsions, gelation (various sauces, jelly); crystallization (sugar, sugar syrups, honey, chocolate); taste and flavor (herbs, spices); cooking processes and chemical reactions (Maillard reactions, caramelization, etc.); chemical reactions for rising dough with application to cakes, bread and cookies; fermentation (alcoholic beverages, fermented dairy products, tofu); pH values in cooking, natural and artificial food colorings, culinary curiosities; molecular gastronomy (novel flavors and textures); principles of operation of kitchen tools such as non-stick cookware, pressure cookers, induction heating ranges, microwave ovens, etc.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 describe principles of operation of kitchen tools encountered in daily life
CLO 2 explain basic physical and chemical processes involved in food preparation
CLO 3 illustrate how preparation method affects the flavor and texture of food
CLO 4 analyze common methods of food preparation and understand scientific reasons for performing procedures in certain ways

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
NIL

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N

Offer in 2018 - 2019
N

Examination
---

Grade Descriptors

A
Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities
Details
No. of Hours
Lectures
36
Tutorials
including demonstration (12 hours)
24
Reading / Self study
72

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>essay &amp; student presentations</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
T. Lister and H. Blumenthal: Kitchen Chemistry (Royal Society of Chemistry, 2005)

PHYS1150

Problem solving in physics (6 credits)

Offering Department
Physics

Course Co-ordinator
Dr S Z Zhang, Physics (shizhong@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
Dr S Z Zhang, Physics

Course Objectives
This course provides a basic training on the methods and tools that are commonly used in physics. It prepares
Course Contents & Topics
This course introduces the principles and theories of various tools that are useful to read physics and solve its problems. Topics include: Dimensional analysis, polynomials and complex numbers, rudimentary of matrix operation, conic sections and topics related to practical calculus; limits, differentiation and integration. Applications to physical systems and various practical problems solving skills are discussed. Whenever applicable, Matlab will be used to illustrate the topics discussed.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 state physical systems by the language of mathematics and employ mathematical logic and reasoning to read physics
- CLO 2 apply calculation to solve problems
- CLO 3 review the features of various solving tools in physics as well as plan and select appropriate tools when solving physical problems
- CLO 4 describe the connections between mathematical equations and physical problems
- CLO 5 formulate and operate physical problems both qualitatively and quantitatively

Course Objectives
This course aims at providing students a solid background and knowledge in physics as well as its connection with our daily life phenomena and activities.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent;
Students without Level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics but having a pass in PHYS1240 may be allowed to take this course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination May

Grade Descriptors
A+ to F

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 3,5,6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator

Required Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

PHYS1240
Physics by inquiry (6 credits)

Offering Department
Physics

Course Co-ordinator
Dr F K Chow, Physics (judychow@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Dr F K Chow, Physics)

Course Objectives
This course aims at providing students a solid background and knowledge in physics as well as its connection with our daily life phenomena and activities.

Course Contents & Topics
The course has a general coverage in most physics topics and is conducted with no descriptions in differential and integral calculus. Emphasis will be stressed on the understanding of various physical phenomena in daily life through qualitative and simple quantitative analysis. The course contents cover: Mechanics, Heat, Optics, Waves, Electricity and Magnetism.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe and distinguish the concepts and principles in introductory study of physics
- CLO 2 recognize the underlying physical principles behind various daily life phenomena
- CLO 3 explain physical phenomena using proper physical laws and theories
- CLO 4 apply simple mathematical techniques for quantitative analysis in solving physics problems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
NIL

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination Dec

Grade Descriptors
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course

students the necessary knowledge to learn the subject. Students will explore the basic ideas, methods and skills through tackling physical problems. Rudimentary of analytic as well as numerical calculation using Matlab will be introduced. It is complete in itself, or may also be followed by Methods in Physics I. This course can be regarded as a survival guide in physics study.

Offering Department
Department of Physics
**Course Type**
Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO MAPPING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>in-class participation (10%)</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

**Course Website**
http://moodle.hku.hk/

---

**PHYS1250**
Fundamental physics (6 credits)

**Offering Department**
Physics

**Offering Year**
2017

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr M K Yip, Physics (mankit@bohr.physics.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
(Dr K M Lee, Physics)
(Dr M K Yip, Physics)

**Course Objectives**
This course covers the fundamental blocks in physics in one semester. It serves as a first course to students who are planning to take physics, astronomy, or mathematics/physics as major. It also serves students who intend to take physics or astronomy as minor. Conceptual ideas in physics are emphasized and the mathematical treatment is moderate.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Topics include: Mechanics, Wave Motions, Geometric and Physical Optics, Thermodynamics, Electromagnetism, and Modern Physics.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** describe and explain the fundamental physical principles
- **CLO 2** apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world
- **CLO 3** analyse and solve problems with the aids of mathematics
- **CLO 4** acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws

**Pre-requisites**
Level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics or equivalent;
Students without Level 3 or above in HKDSE Physics but having a pass in PHYS1240 may be allowed to take this course.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>1st sem</th>
<th>2nd sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO MAPPING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- **A**
  - Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

- **B**
  - Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

- **C**
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining of most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

- **D**
  - Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

- **Fail**
  - Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Nature of the universe (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr K M Lee, Physics (<a href="mailto:kmlee@lily.physics.hku.hk">kmlee@lily.physics.hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr K M Lee, Physics)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>This general education course is designed for students in all disciplines and all years. No prior knowledge in astronomy, physics, and higher mathematics is required, but will help.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>Topics covered include the observational aspect of astronomy (including constellations and planets), the physics of our solar system, and our own Sun, stars and their evolution, galaxies, blackholes, and cosmology. It also provides students with a basic understanding of the relationship of astronomy to life and how our nature works on the macroscopic level. Students are expected to participate actively in the night sky observations.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to: CLO 1 identify and describe the major objects in our Solar System and our universe (including stars and galaxies), and explain their main properties CLO 2 use the celestial sphere model to describe the apparent trajectories of celestial objects CLO 3 review the evolution of the world-view from the geocentric model to the heliocentric model and the discovery of the expansion of the universe on our world-view CLO 4 apply quantitative physical laws, including Kepler's three laws of planetary motion, Newton's law of universal gravitation, Doppler shift formula and Hubble's law to calculate and solve simple astronomical problems CLO 5 explain the evolution of stars and the evolution of the universe CLO 6 communicate astronomical problems and solutions using appropriate astronomical terminology and good English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>NIL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td>A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentional skills. Apply highly effective observation skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentional skills. Apply effective observation skills and techniques. Correct use of data to results to draw appropriate conclusions. C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentional skills. Apply moderately effective observation skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentional skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective observation skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentional skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective observation skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Type</td>
<td>Lecture with laboratory component course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities Details No. of Hours</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures 36</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Laboratory 12</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study 64</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments 25 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination 50 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Text 25 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required/recommended reading and online materials</td>
<td>E. Chaisson and S. McMillan: Astronomy Today (Pearson, 2011)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td><a href="http://moodle.hku.hk">http://moodle.hku.hk</a></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Introduction to relativity (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td>Quota</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr K M Lee, Physics (<a href="mailto:kmlee@lily.physics.hku.hk">kmlee@lily.physics.hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Dr K M Lee, Physics)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>This course aims at introducing students the essence of special relativity. It is designed as an elective for students in all disciplines and all years with science background.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>Topics include: “Common-sense” concepts of space and time versus Einstein's conceptions of space and time. Examples of time dilation and space contraction. Paradoxes of relativity including the famous twin paradox and the “pole-in-the-barn”. Four vectors and Lorentz invariant. Some discussion on general relativity.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to: CLO 1 recall the setup and significance of Michelson-Morley experiment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Course Contents & Topics

Solutions of ordinary differential equations in first and second orders and their applications in particle dynamics, circuit theories and nuclear physics; Principles of vectors; Analytic geometry in three dimensions; Vector functions; Cartesian, cylindrical and spherical coordinates; Partial derivatives, extremes of multi-variable functions and the Taylor series in two-variable functions; Double and triple integrals in Cartesian, cylindrical and spherical coordinates; Change of variables and the Jacobians; Calculations of centers of mass, moments of inertia, and electric potentials.

### Examination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 2,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 review the theory and principles of mathematical methods and compare the features of various methods
- CLO 2 describe the connections between mathematical equations and physical problems
- CLO 3 state and set up mathematical equations to describe the dynamics and evolution of physics systems
- CLO 4 demonstrate knowledge of choosing correct solution of mathematical equations
- CLO 5 interpret and judge the physical meaning of results after calculations

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in MATH1011 or MATH1013 or MATH1851 or PHYS1150

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator

### Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk
### PHYS2155

**Offering Department:** Physics  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr F K Chow, Physics ([judycho@hku.hk])  
**Teachers Involved:** (Dr F K Chow, Physics)

**Course Contents & Topics**
A review on coordinate systems in three dimensions; Gradient, divergence, curl and Laplacian; Line integrals, surface integrals and volume integrals; Conservative fields and potentials; Green's theorem, divergence theorem and the Stokes' theorem; Curvilinear coordinates; Applications of vector calculus in classical mechanics and electrodynamics; Matrix algebra; Properties of some special matrices: Hermitian matrices and unitary matrices, etc; Eigenvalue problems and diagonalization of matrices; Applications of matrix theory in physical problems.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
- CLO 1: Review the theory and principles of mathematical methods and compare the features of various methods.
- CLO 2: Describe the connections between mathematical equations and physical problems.
- CLO 3: State and set up mathematical equations to describe the dynamics and evolution of physics systems.
- CLO 4: Demonstrate knowledge of choosing correct solution of mathematical equations.
- CLO 5: Solve various problems and operate the calculations with computer.
- CLO 6: Interpret and judge the physical meaning of result after calculations.

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in MATH1011 or MATH1013 or MATH1851 or PHYS1150

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 2nd sem  
Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>35</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

**Course Website**
http://moodle.hku.hk
Course Contents & Topics


Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe and explain the fundamental physical principles
- CLO 2 apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world
- CLO 3 analyse and solve problems with the aids of mathematics
- CLO 4 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in PHYS1050 or PHYS1250

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Examination

Dec May

Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk

PHYS2255

Introductory electricity and magnetism (6 credits)

Offering Department

Physics

Quota

---

Course Co-ordinator

Dr J C S Pun, Physics (jcspun@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

(Dr J C S Pun,Physics)

Course Objectives

This course covers the foundation of electricity and magnetism in one semester. It serves as a core course for students who are planning to take physics, astronomy, or mathematics/physics as major. It also serves students who intend to take physics as minor. Both conceptual ideas and mathematical treatment in mechanics are emphasized.

Course Contents & Topics

Topics include: Vector notation and vector field, Electric force and electric field, Gauss' law and electric conductors, Electric potential energy and potential, Capacitance and DC circuits, Magnetic force, Magnetic field, Faraday's law of induction, Inductance, AC circuit, Maxwell's equations and electromagnetic waves.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe and explain the fundamental physical principles
- CLO 2 apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world
- CLO 3 analyse and solve problems with the aids of mathematics
- CLO 4 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in PHYS1050 or PHYS1250

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Examination

May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>A+ to F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limit ability or barely effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Teacher Involved

Dr J C S Pun, Physics (jcspun@hku.hk)

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors</th>
<th>A+ to F</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Limit ability or barely effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentation skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course Type**
Lecture with laboratory component course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- P. A. Tipler and G. Mosca: Physics for Scientists and Engineers (Freeman, 2008, 6th edition)

**Course Website**
http://moodle.hku.hk

**PHYS2260**
Heat and waves (6 credits)

**Offering Department**
Physics

**Offering Course Coordinator**
Dr M Su, Physics (mengsu84@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
(Ch M Su, Physics)

**Course Objectives**
This course covers the foundation of heat and waves in one semester. It serves as a core course for students who are planning to take physics, astronomy, or mathematics/physics as major. It also serves students who intend to take physics as minor. Both conceptual ideas and mathematical treatment in heat and waves are emphasized.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Topics include: type of waves; Sinusoidal wave including transverse velocity and phase, Wave propagation through a stretched string as an example for transverse wave, Sound wave as an example for longitudinal wave, Wave equation, Energy in wave motion, The principle of superposition, Interference of waves, Standing waves and resonance, Beats, The Doppler Effect, Light wave as an electromagnetic wave, Reflection, Refraction, Double slit interference, Interference from thin films, Single slit diffraction, Multiple slit and grating, Polarization, Temperature and equilibrium, Ideal gas law, Molecular view of pressure, Mean free path, distributions of molecular speed and energy, Concept of heat, First law of thermodynamic, Work done on or by an ideal gas, Internal energy of an ideal gas, Molar heat capacities at constant volume and constant pressure, Different thermodynamic processes including adiabatic, isothermal, constant-volume, cyclical and free expansion, Reversibility of process, definition of entropy change, The second law of thermodynamic, Carnot engine, Statistical view of entropy.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe and explain the fundamental physical principles
- CLO 2 apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world
- CLO 3 analyse and solve problems with the aids of mathematics
- CLO 4 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in PHYS1050 or PHYS1250

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**
Lecture with laboratory component course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Required/recommended reading and online materials

- P. A. Tipler and G. Mosca: Physics for Scientists and Engineers (Freeman, 2008, 6th edition)
- P. A. Tipler and G. Mosca: Physics for Scientists and Engineers Extended Version (Freeman, 2008, 6th edition)

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

PHYS2850
Atomic and nuclear physics (6 credits)

Offering Department
Physics

Offering Department
Dr S Z Zhang, Physics (shizhong@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
Dr S Z Zhang, Physics

Teachers Involved

Course Objectives
This course will introduce students to the fundamentals of atomic physics and rudimentary nuclear physics. It aims to provide a coherent and concise coverage of traditional atomic and nuclear physics. Important topics of current research interest will also be discussed, such as laser cooling and trapping which plays an important role in the realization of Bose-Einstein condensate in atomic vapors.

Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS1050 or PHYS1250

PHY2265
Modern physics (6 credits)

Offering Department
Physics

Course Co-ordinator
Dr F K Chow, Physics (judychow@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Dr F K Chow,Physics)

Teachers Involved
(Prof H F Chau,Physics)

Course Objectives
This course covers the foundation of modern physics in one semester. It serves as a core course for students who are planning to take physics, astronomy, or mathematics/physics as major. It also serves students who intend to take physics as minor. Both conceptual ideas and mathematical treatment in modern physics are emphasized.

Course Contents & Topics

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 describe and explain the fundamental physical principles
- CLO 2 apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world
- CLO 3 analyse and solve problems with the aids of mathematics
- CLO 4 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS1050 or PHYS1250

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

A
Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.

B
Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presenational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presenational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

Fail
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presenational skills are minimaly effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

Assessment
Lecture with laboratory component course

Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Laboratory 6
Tutorials 8
Reading / Self study 80
Course Contents & Topics
Topics include: Atomic structure of hydrogen and hydrogen-like atom, multi-electron atom, atom in electromagnetic field, spectroscopy, laser trapping and cooling; nuclear structure, shell model and nuclear reactions. Applications of the basic principles of atomic and nuclear physics will be mentioned when appropriate.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 apply general considerations of quantum physics to atomic and nuclear system; make general orders of magnitude of estimation of physical effects
- CLO 2 explain how light interacting with atom; the working principle of laser trapping and cooling
- CLO 3 recognize the general features of atomic/nuclear spectroscopy
- CLO 4 apply quantum physics to understand the basic features of simple nuclei, binding of deuteron et al

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS2265

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y  1st sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
- F: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
- Activities: Details: No. of Hours
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 18
  - Reading / Self study: 9

Assessment Methods and Weighting
- Methods: Details: Weighting in final course grade (%) to CLO Mapping
  - Assignments: 20 CLO 1,2,3,4
  - Examination: 50 CLO 1,2,3,4
  - Text: 30 CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials
- Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
- W. Demtroder, Atoms, molecules and photons (Springer, 2nd, 2011)
- K. Krane, Introductory nuclear physics (John Wiley & Sons, 1988)

Course Website
http://www.physics.hku.hk/~phys2626/

PHYS3150
Theoretical physics (6 credits)

Offering Department
Physics

Course Co-ordinator
Prof Z D Wang, Physics (zwang@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
The aim of this course is to provide students with the conceptual skills and key analytical tools for solving real problems in all major areas of physics.

Course Contents & Topics
This course will introduce and address the following topics: Application of complex variables including the Cauchy’s integral formula and calculus of residues, Partial differential equations (the general wave equation, the Schrodinger equation, the Poisson equation, and the diffusion equation), Properties of special functions widely used in Physics (Gamma functions, Beta functions, Bessel functions, spherical harmonics etc.), Fourier Series, and Fourier Transform.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 analyse and examine the analytical properties of complex functions
- CLO 2 calculate various definite integrals using the method of residues
- CLO 3 apply the special functions in handling various physical problems
- CLO 4 apply general considerations of quantum physics to atomic and nuclear system; make general orders of magnitude of estimation of physical effects
- CLO 5 use the Fourier Series and Fourier transform in describing, respectively, any periodic function and wave

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in (PHYS2250 or PHYS2255 or PHYS2265) and (MATH2211 or PHYS2150)

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y  1st sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.
- F: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

Academic Year: 2017
Quota: ---
Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials:

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator


PHYS3350 Classical mechanics (6 credits) Academic Year: 2017

Offering Department: Physics

Course Co-ordinator: Dr S Z Zhang, Physics (shizhong@hku.hk)

Course Objectives:

Build on the foundation course PHYS2250, this course discusses classical mechanics in the advanced undergraduate level using Lagrangian formalism. It serves as a core course for physics major students as well as an elective core for those who are interested in gaining a deep understanding of classical mechanics and to apply related techniques in their own majors. This is also an essential course for those who plan to pursue postgraduate studies in physics or related disciplines. Both conceptual ideas and mathematical treatment are emphasized.

Course Contents & Topics:

This course will be essentially divided into two parts. In the first part, fundamental concepts related to Lagrangian mechanics will be treated. Topics include the variational principle, conservation laws and its relation to Newtonian mechanics. In the second part, we shall discuss applications of the Lagrangian mechanics. Topics include the central force problem, the coupled harmonic oscillators and rigid-body dynamics. Lagrangian mechanics in non-inertial frame will also be discussed.

Course Learning Outcomes:

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the logical structure of Lagrangian mechanics and its advantage over the Newtonian formulation;
- CLO 2 write down the form of Lagrangian for a mechanical system and solve the dynamic equations in simple cases;
- CLO 3 understand the general feature of a many-body system and the role of center of mass frame in two-body, as well as many-body and rigid body dynamics.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):

Pass in PHYS2250

Offer in 2017 - 2018:

Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):

A - Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.

B - Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.

C - Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

D - Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

Fail - Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

Course Type: Lecture with laboratory component course

Assessment Methods and Weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials:

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator:

- Steven Thornton and Jerry Marion: Classical Dynamics of Particles and Systems, (Cengage Learning India, 2012)

Course Website: http://moodle.hku.hk
### PHYS3351

**Offering Department:** Physics  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof W Yao, Physics (wangyao@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:** (Prof W Yao,Physics)  
**Course Objectives**  
Build on the foundation course PHYS2265, this course discusses quantum mechanics in the advanced undergraduate level with rigorous mathematical treatment. It serves as a core course for physics major students as well as an elective core for those who are interested to gain a deep understanding of quantum mechanics and to apply related techniques in their own majors. This is also an essential course for those who plan to pursue postgraduate studies in physics or related disciplines. Both conceptual ideas and mathematical treatment are emphasized.

**Course Contents & Topics**  
Time-dependent Schrodinger equation; statistical interpretation of wave function; probability density; probability current and continuity equation; momentum; physical observable and expectation value; Heisenberg uncertainty principle; time-independent Schrodinger equation; Hamiltonian and stationary states; particle in a square well; transmission and reflection at a barrier; harmonic oscillator problem using ladder operators; free particle and wavepacket; delta function potential; Dirac notations; state vectors; Hilbert space; Hermitian operators; eigenstates and eigenvalues; generalized statistical interpretation; generalized uncertainty principle; angular momentum; hydrogen atom; atomic orbits; spin; non-degenerate perturbation theory.

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 describe the statistical interpretation of quantum mechanical systems, and calculate expectation values and uncertainty of physical observables
- CLO 2 formulate energy eigenvalue problems, and solve them in examples where potentials have simple analytical forms
- CLO 3 formulate time evolution of the wavefunction and the expectation value of physical observables with known energy eigenfunctions
- CLO 4 judge the applicability of time-independent perturbation theory and formulate leading order energy corrections in certain perturbations applied to the physical system
- CLO 5 acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws

**Pre-requisites**  
Pass in PHYS2265

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018 : Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**  

**Course Website**  
http://moodle.hku.hk

---

### PHYS3450

**Offering Department:** Physics  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof X D Cui, Physics (xd cui@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:** (Prof X D Cui,Physics)  
**Course Objectives**  
Build on the foundation course PHYS2255, this course discusses electromagnetism in the advanced undergraduate level with vigorous mathematical treatment. It serves as a core course for physics major students as well as an elective core for those who are interested to gain a deep understanding of electromagnetism and to apply related techniques in their own majors. This is also an essential course for those who plan to pursue postgraduate studies in physics or related disciplines. Both conceptual ideas and mathematical treatment are emphasized.
### Course Contents & Topics

Topics include electric fields and potential, methods in electrostatics, conductors and dielectrics, magnetostatics and electromagnetic induction, magnetic properties of materials and Maxwell's equations.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** identify the fundamental physics in electrostatics and magnetism
- **CLO 2** apply mathematical tools to describe electrostatics and magnetism
- **CLO 3** use the Maxwell's equations to explain various electrostatic and magnetic phenomena
- **CLO 4** differentiate between electrostatics in vacuum and in dielectric materials
- **CLO 5** differentiate between temperature in vacuum and magnetic materials
- **CLO 6** apply essential skills of making measurements with appropriate instruments in physics, experiments; interpret the experimental data and compare with the prediction of underlying physical principle

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in PHYS2255

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>3-hour written exam</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator


Course Website

http://moodle.hku.hk

---

### PHYS3550

**Statistical mechanics & thermodynamics (6 credits)**

**Academic Year**: 2017

**Offering Department**: Physics

**Course Co-ordinator**: Prof M H Xie, Physics (mhxie@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**: (Prof M H Xie, Physics)

### Course Objectives

Build on the foundation course PHYS2260, this course discusses statistical mechanics and thermodynamics in the advanced undergraduate level with vigorous mathematical treatment. It serves as a core course for physics major students as well as an elective core for those who are interested to gain a deep understanding of statistical mechanics and thermodynamics and to apply related techniques in their own majors. This is also an essential course for those who plan to pursue postgraduate studies in physics or related disciplines. Both conceptual ideas and mathematical treatment are emphasized.

### Course Contents & Topics


### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** describe and explain the fundamental physical principles
- **CLO 2** apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world
- **CLO 3** analyse and solve problems with the aids of mathematics
- **CLO 4** acquire and interpret experimental data to examine the physical laws

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in PHYS2260

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>May</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examination

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1.6</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
<td>CLO 1.2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

### Department of Physics
Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.

Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
Daniel V. Schroeder: An Introduction to Thermal Physics (Pearson, 2014).

### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

### PHYS3551
Introductory solid state physics (6 credits)

#### Offering Department
Physics

#### Course Co-ordinator
Prof J Gao, Physics (jugao@hku.hk)

#### Teachers Involved

#### Course Objectives
To provides a broad introduction to modern theories of the behaviour and properties of the solid state of matter. It is designed as a self-contained course which at the same time will serve as a basis for more advanced courses and projects in solid state physics.

#### Course Contents & Topics
Crystal structures and symmetry. The formation of crystals. The reciprocal lattice and X-ray diffraction in crystals. Lattice vibrations and thermal properties. Free-electron theory of metals. Energy bands; metals, semiconductors, and insulators. If time permits, special topics such as superconductor will be briefly mentioned.

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

**CLO 1** demonstrate knowledge for crystal structures and characterization

**CLO 2** describe the behavior of solid matter and explain the underlying physical concepts

**CLO 3** apply physical principles and mathematical equations to discuss the physical properties of materials

**CLO 4** apply essential skills of making measurements with appropriate instruments in physics experiments

**CLO 5** interpret the experimental data and compare with the prediction of underlying physical principle

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS2260 and PHYS2265

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018
N
Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N

#### Grade Descriptors (A to F)

**A**
Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.

**B**
Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques.

**C**
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

**D**
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

**Fail**
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

### Course Type
Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Academic Year</td>
<td>Offerin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PHYS3650</td>
<td>Observational astronomy (6 credits)</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS1650 and (PHYS2250 or PHYS2265)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Objectives

An introduction to tools of contemporary observation astronomy, with a focus on those used at optical wavelengths, as well as an introduction to observational aspects of stars and galaxies at optical wavelengths. An emphasis is placed on a hands-on approach for students to gain experience in doing astronomical observations and data reduction.

### Course Contents & Topics

Topics include: properties and configurations of optical telescopes; properties of light, atmospheric effects on observations; properties of astronomical detectors (PMT, CCD); astronomical imaging and magnitude system; astronomical spectroscopy; observations of stars and galaxies including blackbody radiation, color-magnitude system, emission and absorption spectrum, and astronomical redshifts.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** describe and explain the workings of astronomical telescopes and modern astronomical detectors at optical wavelengths.
- **CLO 2** describe the effects of the properties of light and Earth's atmosphere on astronomical observations.
- **CLO 3** explain how the methods of astronomical photometry and spectroscopy are applied to the observations of stars, galaxies, and the universe.
- **CLO 4** operate a small optical telescope to conduct simple day and night sky observations.

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Method</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- **Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator**
- Additional online resources are recommended for further reading and self-study.

---

**PHYS3651**

The physical universe (6 credits)

### Course Objectives

To introduce basic physical principles of astronomy and build a foundation in modern astrophysics.

### Course Contents & Topics

Topics include: the sky and celestial coordinates, spherical geometry, optics and telescopes, basic celestial mechanics, two-body problem, radiative transfer, and blackbody radiation.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** calculate the transformation between different celestial coordinate systems
- **CLO 2** describe the formation of spectral lines and basic structures of telescopes
- **CLO 3** derive the orbits in two body problem from first principle
- **CLO 4** recall the radiative transfer equation

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites)

Pass in PHYS1650 and (PHYS2250 or PHYS2265)
Course Website
http://www.physics.hku.hk/~phys3651/
**PHYS3750**  
**Offering Department:** Physics  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof S J Xu, Physics (sjxu@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:** (Prof S J Xu,Physics)  
**Course Objectives:** The course aims at providing a broad introduction to major types of lasers and modern laser spectroscopy. Fundamentals of optical processes and spectroscopic techniques. Lasers as spectroscopic light sources. Components of spectroscopic instruments. Photoluminescence. Raman spectra.  
**Course Contents & Topics:**  
**Course Learning Outcomes:**  
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
  - CLO 1: restate the properties of fundamental optical processes.  
  - CLO 2: describe fundamental operation principle of modern lasers.  
  - CLO 3: demonstrate solid knowledge of modern laser spectroscopic techniques.  
  - CLO 4: identify main components of modern optical spectroscopic instruments.  
  - CLO 5: employ laser photoluminescence setup to measure low-temperature photoluminescence spectra of solid samples.  
  - CLO 6: interpret the experimental data and compare with the prediction of underlying physical principle.  
**Pre-requisites:** Pass in PHYS3551, or already enrolled in this course.  
**Offer in 2017 - 2018:** Y  
**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):**  
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.  
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.  
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.  
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.  
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.  
**Assessment Methods and Weighing:**  
- Lectures: 36  
- Laboratory: 10  
- Tutorials: 8  
- Reading / Self study: 80  
- Assignments: 20 CLO 1,2,3,4,6  
- Examination: 60 CLO 1,2,3,4  
- Laboratory reports: 20 CLO 5,6  
**Methods Details**:  
- Lectures:  
- Laboratory:  
- Tutorials:  
- Reading / Self study:  
- Assignments:  
- Examination:  
- Laboratory reports:  
**Required/recommended reading and online materials:**  
- Lecture Notes prepared by Course Coordinator  
**Assessment Methods Details**:  
- CLO Mapping:  
- Lecture Notes prepared by Course Coordinator:  
**PHYS3751**  
**Offering Department:** Physics  
**Course Co-ordinator:** TBC, Physics ()  
**Teachers Involved:** (TBC,Physics)  
**Course Objectives:** This course is designed to let senior undergraduate students and fresh postgraduate students know fundamental concepts and physical properties of nanomaterials including two-dimensional quantum wells, one-dimensional quantum wires and zero-dimensional quantum dots.  
**Course Contents & Topics:** Introduction to nanomaterials and quantum size effect. Dimensionalities and density of states of various nanomaterials. Optical and transport properties of quantum wells, superlattices and two-dimensional electron gas. Physical properties of carbon nanotubes and semiconductor nanowires. Physical properties of quantum dots and nanocrystals. Fundamental principles of scanning tunneling microscopy and advanced thin-film growth techniques such as molecular beam epitaxy and metalorganic chemical vapor deposition.  
**Course Learning Outcomes:** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
- CLO 1: recall basic concepts and knowledge of dimensionality, density of states, quantum size effect.  
- CLO 2: identify and compare optical and transport properties of quantum wells, superlattices and two-dimensional electron gas.  
- CLO 3: recognise the fundamental principles of scanning tunneling microscopy and advanced thin-film growth techniques such as molecular beam epitaxy and metalorganic chemical vapor deposition.  
- CLO 4: describe the basic physics of carbon nanotubes and semiconductor nanowires.  
- CLO 5: explain physical properties of zero-dimensional quantum dots and nanocrystals.  
**Pre-requisites:** Pass in PHYS3351; and Pass in PHYS3351, or already enrolled in this course.
Offer in 2017 - 2018

Course Type: Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities:
- Activities: Details | No. of Hours
  - Lectures: 36
  - Laboratory: 8
  - Tutorials: 8

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Methods: Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
  - Assignments: 15 | CLO 1.2,3
  - Examination: 2-hour written exam | 60 | CLO 1.2,3
  - Laboratory reports: 10 | CLO 1
  - Test: 15 | CLO 1.2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
- Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
PHYS3951

Atomic and nuclear physics (6 credits)

Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Physics

Course Co-ordinator Dr J H C Lee, Physics (jleepnc@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Dr J H C Lee, Physics)

Course Objectives This course will introduce students to the fundamentals of atomic physics and nuclear physics. It will also discuss nuclear astrophysics and applications of atomic and nuclear science. It aims to provide students a conceptual framework of atomic and nuclear physics and serves as an elective course to better prepare students for graduate studies in relevant subjects.

Course Contents & Topics Properties of Atoms and Nuclei, Nuclear Composition, Liquid Drop Model, Shell Model in Atoms and Nuclei, Particle & Gamma Decay, Nuclear Reactions, Radiation Detectors, Nuclear Astrophysics, Frontier research and applications in atomic and nuclear science.

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 describe and explain the basic features of atoms and nuclei
CLO 2 apply general considerations of quantum mechanics to atomic and nuclear system
CLO 3 make general orders of magnitude in estimation of physical effects in atoms and nuclei
CLO 4 describe nuclear decay processes and nuclear reactions in nucleosynthesis

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in PHYS2250, PHYS2255 and PHYS2265

Offer in 2017 - 2018 Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentional skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentional skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentional skills. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentional skills. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentional skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions.

Course Type Lecture with laboratory component course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities Details No. of Hours

Lectures 36
Laboratory 6
Tutorials 8
Assessment 80

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Assignments 10 CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination 60 CLO 1,2,3,4
Laboratory reports 10 CLO 1
Test 20 CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes from the Course Coordinator

W. Demtroder: Atoms, molecules and photons (Springer, 2011, 2nd ed.)
K. Krane: Introductory nuclear physics (John Wiley & Sons, 1988)

PHYS3999

Directed studies in physics (6 credits)

Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Physics

Course Co-ordinator Prof K S Cheng, Physics (hhrpskc@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Various teachers in the department, Physics)

Course Objectives This capstone course is offered to students majoring in physics, math/physics or astronomy. It should be taken normally in their final year of study. It provides students with the opportunity to study a small problem by themselves, either theoretical, experimental or numerical, under the supervision of an academic staff using the subject materials the student has learn in all years of his/her major study. The available projects range from small scale research, critical literature review and comment, and to development of university-level physics or astronomy teaching tools.

Course Contents & Topics Students interested in taking this course should contact their prospective supervisors in May to determine the contents and the nature of their projects in the coming academic year. They must get the approval from both the prospective supervisor and the course coordinator to take this course.

Students will receive training in research literature reading and reviewing, under the supervision of a staff member. For theoretical project, students may need to fill in mathematical gaps of some sophisticated derivations and the critically analyze the research methods used in the field. For numerical projects, students need to use computers to reproduce existing numerical or simulation results. For experimental projects, students have to understand the design of the experiment, carrying it out and analyze the sources of errors.

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 review the knowledge of a physics or astronomy problem in depth through literature review of books and
PHYS4150 Computational physics (6 credits)  

Offering Department: Physics  
Quota: ---

Course Co-ordinator: Prof J Wang, Physics (jianwang@hku.hk)  
Teachers Involved: (Prof J Wang,Physics)

Course Objectives:  
The aim of the course is show how the power of computers enables to computational approach to solving physics problems to be adopted, which is distinct from, and complimentary to, traditional experimental and theoretical approaches. The material covered will be found useful in any project or problem solving work that contains a strong computational or data analysis element. The course is designed such that a significant fraction of the student's time is spent actually programming specific physical problems rather than learning abstract techniques.

Course Contents & Topics:  
The course will cover the following problems: Introductory computational physics and computer algebra, integration and differentiation, interpolation and extrapolation, ordinary differential equation such as those of classical mechanics, partial differential equations (such as the Maxwell's equation, the diffusion equation, and the Schrodinger equation), matrix methods (such as systems of equations and eigenvalue problems applied to Poisson's equation and electronic structure calculations), Monte Carlo (Metropolis algorithm) and other simulation methods (such as molecular dynamics), and several physics projects.

Course Learning Outcomes:  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge in essential methods and techniques for numerical computation in physics
- CLO 2 apply Monte Carlo method and other simulation methods to solve deterministic as well as probabilistic physical problems
- CLO 3 employ appropriate numerical method to interpolate and extrapolate data collected from physics experiments
- CLO 4 use appropriate numerical method to solve the differential equations governing the dynamics of physical systems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)  
Pass in (MATH3301 or MATH3401 or MATH3403 or MATH3405 or PHYS3150); and  
Pass in any three of the following courses: PHYS3360, PHYS3351, PHYS3450, PHYS3550

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y  
Examination: Dec

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):  
A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show evidence of strong logical and independent thinking. Insightful use and critical analysis/evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.  
B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Show evidence of logical and independent thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.  
C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Show some evidence of logical and independent thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.  
D: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Show limited evidence of logical and independent thinking. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.  
Fail: Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Show little or no evidence of logical and independent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

CLO 1,3,4,5:

- CLO 1,3,4,5

Research report

To be provided by individual project supervisor

Assessment Methods and Weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meeting with supervisor</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>including supervisor's comments (10%)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research report</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CLO Mapping:

- CLO 1,3,4,5

Grade Descriptors:

- A: Show strong analytical and logical abilities and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply effective lab skills and techniques.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most limited extent. May show some evidence of logical and independent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Course Type | Course Teaching & Learning Activities | Details | No. of Hours |
--- | --- | --- | --- |
| Lecture with laboratory component course | Activities | No. of Hours |
| Lectures | 36 |
| Laboratory | 12 |
| Tutorials | 8 |

Assessment Methods and Weighting | Methods | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping |
--- | --- | --- | --- |
| Assignments | 20 | CLO 1.3,4 |
| Examination | 40 | CLO 1.3,4 |
| Presentation | 15 | CLO 1 |
| Project report | 25 | CLO 1.2,3,4 |

Required/recommended reading and online materials | Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator |
--- | --- |

PHYS4151 | Data analysis and modeling in physics (6 credits) | Academic Year | 2017 |
Offering Department | Physics |
Course Co-ordinator | Prof H F Chau, Physics (hfchau@hku.hk) |
Teachers Involved | (Prof H F Chau,Physics) |
Course Objectives | This course covers general modeling and data analysis techniques used in physics and related subjects with special emphasis on their uses in complex systems, nonlinear systems and adaptive systems. The focus is on the basic principles and concepts rather than the use of computer packages. This course provides a solid foundation for students who intended to do computational physics and complex systems research. It also prepares students to work in related industries. |
Course Contents & Topics | Topics include basic data analysis techniques, linear and non-linear fittings, determining the goodness of the fit, basic hypothesis testing techniques, modeling physical and related systems via differential (ordinary and/or partial), difference equations as well as discrete models such as cellular automata, introduction to complex systems, complex adaptive systems and nonlinear dynamics, the use of computer package such as Matlab in modeling and data analysis. The emphasis is on the basic principles and concepts rather than a particular software package or physical model. Depending on the mutual interests of the coordinators and the students, illustrative examples will be drawn from conventional fields such as classical mechanics, electromagnetism and quantum mechanics as well as more recent fields like biophysics, econophysics and sociophysics. |
Course Learning Outcomes | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to: |
| CLO 1 | describe and explain state-of-the-art modeling methods used in physics |
| CLO 2 | apply basic modeling techniques, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world |
| CLO 3 | analyse and solve problems with the aid of computer packages such as Matlab |
| CLO 4 | critically interpret experimental data from physics experiments |
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) | Pass in (MATH3301 or MATH3401 or MATH3403 or MATH3405 or PHYS3150); and Pass in any one of the following courses: PHYS3350, PHYS3351, PHYS3450, PHYS3350 |
Offer in 2017 - 2018 | N |
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) | A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply highly effective computer modeling skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. |
| B | Demonstrate substantial command of the knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities, reasoned logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations using effective organizational and presentation skills. Apply effective computer modeling skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. |
| C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. Apply moderately effective computer modeling skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. |
| D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presntational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. |
| Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. |
Advanced classical mechanics (6 credits)

Course Contents
Topics include: Hamiltonian principles, Lagrangian formulation of dynamics, nonlinear problems, many-body systems, variational principle, generalized coordinates, simple application of Lagrangian equation.

Course Objectives
Build on the advanced undergraduate level course PHYS3350, this course further discusses concepts and mathematical techniques in classical mechanics through special topics and applications. It serves as an elective course to better prepare students for their postgraduate studies in physics or other related disciplines.

Pre-requisites
Pass in PHYS3350

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of the knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments 20 CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination 3-hour written exam 60 CLO 1,2,3,4
Test 20 CLO 1,2,3,4

PHYS4351
Advanced quantum mechanics (6 credits)

Course Objectives
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 review the perturbation theory and some other approximation methods on various quantum systems
CLO 2 apply physics principles to describe the physical properties of various quantum systems
CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and discuss the underlying physical concepts associated with the selected quantum systems

Pre-requisites
Pass in PHYS3351

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk
--- | --- | --- | --- | --- | ---
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)  | A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| B | Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. |  |  |  

Course Type  | Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities  | Activities Details | No. of Hours
--- | --- | ---
Lectures  | 36
Tutorials  | 12
Reading / Self study  | 80

Assessment Methods and Weighting  | Methods Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
--- | --- | --- | ---
Assignments  | 20 | CLO 1,2,3
Examination  | 3-hour written exam 60 | CLO 1,2,3
Test  | 20 | CLO 1,2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials  | Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator

Course Website  | http://www.physics.hku.hk/~phys4351/

PHYS4450  | Advanced electromagnetism (6 credits)  | Academic Year  | 2017
Offering Department  | Physics
Course Co-ordinator  | Prof X D Cui, Physics (xdcui@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved  | (Prof X D Cui,Physics)
Course Objectives  | Build on the advanced undergraduate level course PHYS3450, this course further discusses concepts and mathematical techniques in electromagnetism through special topics and applications. It serves as an elective course to better prepare students for their postgraduate studies in physics or other related disciplines.
Course Contents & Topics  | Topics include Maxwell's Equations, Poynting theorem, wave equations, reflection and transmission of waves, wave guides, retarded potentials, gauge transformations, dipole radiation, special theory of relativity.
Course Learning Outcomes  | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 review and discuss the fundamental physics in classical electrodynamics
- CLO 2 apply Maxwell's equations to analyze complicated electrostatic and magnetic phenomena
- CLO 3 evaluate how special relativity is incorporated in the study of electromagnetism
- CLO 4 formulate and solve problems in electromagnetism using appropriate mathematical techniques
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)  | Pass in PHYS3450
Offer in 2017 - 2018  | Y  | 1st sem  | Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y  | Examination  | Dec
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)  | A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| B | Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. |  |  |  
| Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. |  |  |  

Course Type  | Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities  | Activities Details | No. of Hours
--- | --- | ---
Lectures  | 36
Tutorials  | 12
Reading / Self study  | 80

Assessment Methods and Weighting  | Methods Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
--- | --- | --- | ---
Assignments  | 20 | CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination  | 3-hour written exam 60 | CLO 1,2,3,4
Test  | 30 | CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials  | Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator

PHYS4550  | Advanced statistical mechanics (6 credits)  | Academic Year  | 2017
## Course Objectives

Build on the advanced undergraduate level course PHYS355, this course further discusses concepts and mathematical techniques in statistical mechanics through special topics and applications. It serves as an elective course to better prepare students for their postgraduate studies in physics or other related disciplines.

## Course Contents & Topics


## Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 describe and explain the fundamental physical principles
- CLO 2 apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to situations of the physical world
- CLO 3 analyses and solve problems with the aids of mathematics

## Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites (and Impermissible combinations))

Pass in PHYS3550

## Offer in 2017 - 2018

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with some analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Course Type

Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>3-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator


---

### PHYS4551

Solid state physics (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Physics</th>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>---</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof J Wang, Physics (<a href="mailto:jianwang@hku.hk">jianwang@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>Prof J Wang, Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>To provide a broad introduction to modern theory of the solid state physics. Some advanced topics will also be discussed.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites (and Impermissible combinations))</td>
<td>Pass in (PHYS2255 or PHYS2260) and PHYS3351</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>2nd sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with some analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Course Type

Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activity</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Activities</td>
<td></td>
<td>No. of Hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Selected topics in astrophysics (6 credits)

Offering Department: Physics
Course Co-ordinator: Dr S C Y Ng, Physics (ncy@bohr.physics.hku.hk)

Teachers Involved: (Dr S C Y Ng, Physics)

Course Objectives:
To introduce students some current topics in astrophysics. It may be taken as a self-contained course or as background to research work in astrophysics.

Course Contents & Topics:
Topics include: Brief review of thermodynamical equilibrium, radiation mechanisms and general relativity. Physics stresses on the underlying physical processes. Knowledge in quantum mechanics and statistical mechanics will be advantageous.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: describe what is stars and to classify different types of stars
- CLO 2: analytically calculate and solve problems related to the structure and evolution of stars including the use of stellar structure equations and Saha equations
- CLO 3: critically examine the physical processes occurring in stars and how these processes affect the evolution of stars
- CLO 4: assess selected research papers in the field of stellar astrophysics

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in PHYS3351 and PHYS3651

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
Lecture notes provided by course coordinator.

Course Website:
http://www.physics.hku.hk/~phys4650/

Francis, LeBlanc, An Introduction to Stellar Astrophysics (Wiley, 2010)

PHYS4650 Stellar physics (6 credits) Academic Year 2017

Offering Department: Physics
Course Co-ordinator: Dr S C Y Ng, Physics (ncy@bohr.physics.hku.hk)

Teachers Involved: (Dr S C Y Ng, Physics)

Course Objectives:
To introduce the basic theory of stellar structure and evolution. It follows a vigorous mathematical treatment that stresses on the underlying physical processes. Knowledge in quantum mechanics and statistical mechanics will be advantageous.

Course Contents & Topics:

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: describe what is stars and to classify different types of stars
- CLO 2: analytically calculate and solve problems related to the structure and evolution of stars including the use of stellar structure equations and Saha equations
- CLO 3: critically examine the physical processes occurring in stars and how these processes affect the evolution of stars
- CLO 4: assess selected research papers in the field of stellar astrophysics

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in PHYS3351 and PHYS3651

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
Lecture notes provided by course coordinator.

Course Website:
http://www.physics.hku.hk/~phys4650/

Francis, LeBlanc, An Introduction to Stellar Astrophysics (Wiley, 2010)
neutron stars and quark stars. Elements of cosmology: classical and relativistic dynamical theories, observational parameters.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 apply physics principles to describe the physical properties of various astrophysical systems
- CLO 2 explain the observed phenomena of some selected astrophysical objects
- CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and discuss the underlying physical concepts associated with the astrophysical systems and their dynamic interactive processes

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS3351 or PHYS3450 or PHYS3550 or PHYS3651

### Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator

### Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

### PHYS4652

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Planetary science (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Offering Department
- Physics

### Course Co-ordinator
Dr M H Lee, Physics (mhlee@hku.hk)

### Teachers Involved
- Dr M H Lee, Physics

### Course Objectives
This course provides students with a modern advanced-level understanding of the properties of our Solar System and planetary systems around other stars and of the physical, chemical, and geological processes that govern them.

### Course Contents & Topics
Terrestrial planets, giant planets, moons and minor bodies in our Solar System; planetary dynamics; energy transport; planetary atmospheres, surfaces, and interiors; planet formation; extrasolar planets.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 describe key aspects of our Solar System and extrasolar planetary systems acquired through observations and experiments
- CLO 2 explain essential elements of the processes governing the properties of planetary bodies
- CLO 3 apply physical principles to construct models for some basic aspects of the structure, formation and evolution of planetary bodies

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS3651 or (PHYS3350 and PHYS3550)

### Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
Lecture-based course
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td>Essay</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Test</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required/recommended reading and online materials</th>
<th>Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator</td>
<td>I. de Pater and J. J. Lissauer: Planetary Sciences (Cambridge Univ. Press, 2010, 2nd Ed.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Website</th>
<th><a href="http://moodle.hku.hk">http://moodle.hku.hk</a></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHYS4653</th>
<th>Cosmology (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof K S Cheng, Physics (<a href="mailto:hrspksc@hku.hk">hrspksc@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>The aim of the course is to offer an advanced introduction to cosmology, to familiarize students with the mathematical formulation used to model the evolution and dynamics of the universe, and to provide an up to date discussion of the big bang theory and structure and galaxy formation.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1 apply physics principles to describe the observational/experimental aspects of cosmology</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 explain the observed phenomena of cosmology</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and discuss the underlying physical concepts associated with the cosmological evolution of the universe and with the dynamic interactive processes that take place in the universe</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS3851 or PHYS3852</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) | A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. |
| | B | Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills. |
| | C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills. |
| | D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills. |
| | Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture with laboratory component course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td>Test</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required/recommended reading and online materials</th>
<th>Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator</td>
<td>M. Lachieze-Rey: Cosmology: A First Course (Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, 1995)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Website</th>
<th><a href="http://moodle.hku.hk">http://moodle.hku.hk</a></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PHYS4654</th>
<th>General relativity (6 credits)</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>2017</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr M Su, Physics (<a href="mailto:mengsu84@hku.hk">mengsu84@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>Dr M Su (Physics)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>To introduce students to the field of general relativity. To provide conceptual skills and analytical tools necessary for astrophysical and cosmological applications of the theory.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents</td>
<td>The Principle of equivalence. Inertial observers in a curved space-time. Vectors and tensors. Parallel transport and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

632
& Topics

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 apply the mathematical and physical ideas of the theory of general relativity for the study of various systems in astrophysics and cosmology

CLO 2 explain the observational effects at the scale of the Solar System that cannot be described by Newtonian gravity from a general relativistic point of view

CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and discuss the dynamic interactive physical processes in astrophysics by using a general relativistic approach

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS2055 and PHYS3350

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Contents & Topics
This course provides students with an advanced-level understanding of the processes responsible for the absorption and emission of continuum and line radiation from gas and dust in stellar atmospheres and interstellar space, and their astrophysical applications and implications.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 express what exists between stars in spiral and elliptical galaxies

CLO 2 apply physical principles to describe excitation/ionization and de-excitation/recombination of atoms and ions

CLO 3 recognize which process or processes occur or dominate in which object or phase of the interstellar medium

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS3651 or (PHYS3351 and PHYS3550)

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
B. Schutz: A First Course in General Relativity (Cambridge University Press, 2009)

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk

PHYS4655
Interstellar medium (6 credits)

Offering Department
Physics

Course Co-ordinator
Dr M H Lee, Physics (mhlee@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved

Course Objectives
This course provides students with an advanced-level understanding of the processes responsible for the absorption and emission of continuum and line radiation from gas and dust in stellar atmospheres and interstellar space, and their astrophysical applications and implications.

Course Contents & Topics
Gas, dust, atoms, molecules, radiation; physical and radiative properties of hydrogen, helium and heavier elements; hydrogen clouds, molecular clouds; HI regions, nebulae, supernovae.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 express what exists between stars in spiral and elliptical galaxies

CLO 2 apply physical principles to describe excitation/ionization and de-excitation/recombination of atoms and ions

CLO 3 recognize which process or processes occur or dominate in which object or phase of the interstellar medium

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS3651 or (PHYS3351 and PHYS3550)

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
B. Schutz: A First Course in General Relativity (Cambridge University Press, 2009)

Course Website
http://moodle.hku.hk
### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>15</td>
<td>CLO 1.2.3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator


---

### PHYS4750

**Experimental physics (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Teachers Involved</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(TBC,Physics)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Objectives</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TBC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Contents &amp; Topics</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Learning Outcomes</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>TBC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:**

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

PASS in PHYS3351

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th></th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

---

### PHYS4850

**Particle physics (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Quota</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Teachers Involved</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dr Y J Tu, Physics</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(<a href="mailto:yanjuntu@hku.hk">yanjuntu@hku.hk</a>)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Objectives</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Dr Y J Tu,Physics)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Contents &amp; Topics</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Learning Outcomes</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:**

**CLO 1** describe and explain the fundamental physical principles for the standard model of particle physics.

**CLO 2** apply these principles, together with logical and mathematical reasoning, to analyze particle physics processes.

**CLO 3** capture the frontier and progress of particle physics.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in PHYS3351

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th></th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture-based course

---

### Teachers Involved

Dr Y J Tu, Physics

(yanjuntu@hku.hk)

---

### Department of Physics
No Exam
NIL, Physics

PHYS4966

Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Physics
Course Co-ordinator Dr J C S Pun, Physics (jcspun@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (NIL, Physics)

Course Objectives

This capstone course is offered to students majoring in physics, math/physics or astronomy. It should be taken normally in the summer immediately before their final year of study. It provides students with the opportunity to gain working experience in the field of physics or astronomy through intern placement. Students are expected to use what they have learnt in their majors in this intern.

Course Contents & Topics

Students will work as an intern for at least 160 hours within the University or outside the University in a company, government department or NGO. The work nature must be related to physics or astronomy. The internship should be arranged by the Department or obtained by students themselves. In the latter case, it must be approved before the commencement of the internship.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 apply physics or astronomy knowledge students have learnt in their majors to real working environment
- CLO 2 help to create, propose or design part of the project he/she is working on during the internship
- CLO 3 employ effective technical and inter-personal communication skills

Pre-requisites

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level (3XXX level or above) discipline core/elective courses of the Physics Major, Mathematics/Physics Major or Astronomy Major curriculum.

This capstone course is for Astronomy, Mathematics/Physics, and Physics Majors students only.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y Summer Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Examination No Exam

Course Type Internship

Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Details No. of Hours

Internship work it is expected that students are to work at least 160 hours (or the equivalent of 4 weeks full-time)

160

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Assignments 20 CLO 1.2,3

Examination 50 CLO 1.2,3

Test 30 CLO 1.2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator


PHYS4999

Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Physics
Course Co-ordinator Prof J Wang, Physics (jianwang@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Various teachers in the department, Physics)

Course Objectives

This capstone course is offered to students majoring in physics, math/physics or astronomy. It is designed for those who are interested in tackling a research project in physics and/or astronomy. It should be taken normally in their final year of study. It provides students with the opportunity to study a specific problem by themselves, either theoretical, experimental or numerical, under the supervision of an academic staff using the knowledge the student gained in all years of his/her major study. The available projects are close to postgraduate level research in physics and/or astronomy.

Course Contents & Topics

Students interested in taking this course should contact their prospective supervisors in May to determine the contents and the nature of their projects in the coming academic year. They must get the approval from both the prospective supervisor and the course coordinator to take this course.

For theoretical and numerical projects: Students will receive training in research literature reading and reviewing, and make investigation which is close to research work in nature, under the supervision of a staff member. The student may need to perform some original calculations, to fill in mathematical gaps of some sophisticated derivations, or a combination of both. For numerical projects, students also need to use computers to find numerical or simulation results.
### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLO 1</th>
<th>Plan and execute a theoretical, numerical or experimental research project on a topic in physics or astronomy.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLO 2</td>
<td>Review the knowledge of a physics or astronomy problem in depth through literature review of books and research journals based on what they have learnt in their majors.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 3</td>
<td>Criticize existing approaches for solving the selected physics or astronomy problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 4</td>
<td>Describe and explain connections between the physical principles and the study problem.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 5</td>
<td>Identify the key issues of the problem and solve them independently either by analytical or numerical means, and compare the results with predictions or existing solutions (for theoretical or computational projects).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLO 6</td>
<td>Propose and execute physics experiments or astronomical observations, analyze results and sources of errors of the experiment or observation in comparison with predictions (for experimental projects).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- **A+**
  - Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis/evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. Work of A+ should show considerable additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.

- **A**
  - Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B**
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C**
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D**
  - Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **Fail**
  - Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Course Type

- **Course Teaching & Learning Activities**
  - Project-based course

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Meeting with supervisor</td>
<td>Project</td>
<td>54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>Oral presentation, including supervisor’s comments (10%)</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PHYS7350</td>
<td>Pass in PHYS4350</td>
<td>CLO 2,4,5,6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Required/recommended reading and online materials | To be provided by individual project supervisor |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A+</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Course Type** | Lecture-based course
---|---
**Course Teaching & Learning Activities** | Activities | Details | No. of Hours
---|---|---|---
Assessment Methods and Weighting | Methods | Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
---|---|---|---|---
Required/recommended reading and online materials | TBC

**PHYS7351**  
**Graduate quantum mechanics (6 credits)**  
**Offering Department** | Physics
---|---
**Course Co-ordinator** | Prof S Q Shen, Physics (sahen@hku.hk)
---|---
**Teachers Involved** | (Prof S Q Shen, Physics)
---|---
**Course Objectives** | This course introduces postgraduates and senior undergraduates to theory and advanced techniques in quantum mechanics, and their applications to select topics in condensed matter physics.
---|---
**Course Contents & Topics** | The course will cover the following topics: Dirac notation, quantum dynamics, the second quantization, symmetry and conservation laws, permutation symmetry and identical particles, perturbation and scattering theory, introduction of relativistic quantum mechanics.
---|---
**Course Learning Outcomes** | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
---|---
**Pre-requisites** | Pass in PHYS4351
---|---
**Offer in 2017 - 2018** | Y 2nd sem | Offer in 2018 - 2019 | Y | Examination | May
---|---|---|---|---|---
**Grade Descriptors** | A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
---|---|---|---|---|---
B | Demonstrate substantial command of the knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
---|---|---|---|---|---
C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
---|---|---|---|---|---
D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
---|---|---|---|---|---
Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
---|---|---|---|---|---
**Course Type** | Lecture-based course
---|---
**Course Teaching & Learning Activities** | Activities | Details | No. of Hours
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
---|---|---|---
Required/recommended reading and online materials | Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator  
J. J. Sakurai: Modern Quantum Mechanics (Addison-Wesley, 1994)  
---|---|---|---

**PHYS7450**  
**Graduate electromagnetism (6 credits)**  
**Offering Department** | Physics
---|---
**Course Co-ordinator** | Prof Z D Wang, Physics (zwang@hku.hk)
---|---
**Teachers Involved** | (Prof Z D Wang, Physics)
---|---
**Course Objectives** | The aim of this course is to provide students with the advanced level of comprehending on the theory of classic electromagnetic field, enabling them to master key analytical tools for solving real physics problems.
---|---
**Course Contents & Topics** | This course will introduce and discuss the following topics: Boundary-value problems in electrostatics and Green Function method, Electrostatics of Media, Magnetostatics, Maxwell's equations and conservation laws, Gauge transformations, Electromagnetic waves and wave guides.
---|---
**Course Learning Outcomes** | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
---|---
**Pre-requisites** | Pass in PHYS4450
Course Type: Lecture-based course

Offer in 2017 - 2018: Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Objectives
This course intends to introduce some advanced topics in the field of equilibrium statistical physics.

Course Contents & Topics
- Ensemble theory: the micro-canonical ensemble, the canonical ensemble, and the grand canonical ensemble.
- Quantum mechanical ensemble theory. Theory of simple gases, ideal Bose systems, ideal Fermi systems.
- Statistical mechanics of interacting systems. Some topics in the theory of phase transition may be selected.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1: Discuss the various classical ensembles and quantum ensembles
- CLO 2: Solve the statistical mechanics problems using ensemble theory
- CLO 3: Explain the connection between classical statistical mechanics and quantum statistical mechanics
- CLO 4: Explain the concept of density matrix

Assessment Methods and Weights
- Assignments: 15
- Examination: 3-hour written exam
- Total: 100%

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials
- J.D. Jackson: Classical Electrodynamics (John Wiley & Sons, 1999)
- M. Plischke and B. Bergersen: Equilibrium statistical physics

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator
- R.K. Pathria: Statistical mechanics
- M. Plischke and B. Bergersen: Equilibrium statistical physics

Course Co-ordinator
Prof J Wang, Physics
(jianwang@hku.hk)
Course Objectives
To provide students with an understanding of more advanced topics in selected areas of solid state physics.

Course Contents
Bloch theory. Nearly free electrons and tight binding model. Band structure calculations for realistic systems. The semi-classical model of electron dynamics. Ab initio total energy calculations and other advanced topics.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

1. Discuss various methods to calculate the band structures and the major approximations that have been used
2. Discuss various minimization methods
3. Discuss the concepts of density functional theory
4. Explain the concept of first principle calculation and various approximations used

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in PHYS3551 and PHYS4351

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A
B
C
D
Fail

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 80

Methods
Details
Weighting in final course grade (%)
Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments
15
CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination
70
CLO 1,2,3,4
Test
15
CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator


PHYS7650 Stellar atmospheres (6 credits) 2017
Oferring Department Physics
Quota ---

Teachers Involved TBC, Physics (TBC, Physics)

Course Objectives TBC
Course Contents TBC
Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) TBC

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A
B
C
D
Fail

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
No. of Hours
Activities Details
Examinations
15
CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials
TBC

Department of Physics
Environmental radiation (6 credits)  

**Offering Department**  
Physics  

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Prof S J Xu, Physics (sjxu@hku.hk)  

**Teachers Involved**  
(Prof S J Xu, Physics)  

**Course Objectives**  
This course is designed to let fresh postgraduate students know fundamental concepts and principles of nano physics, such as two-dimensional electron gas, quantum Hall effects, one-dimensional electron system, quantum wires and nanotubes, zero-dimensional electron systems, single electron effects and quantum dots.  

**Course Contents & Topics**  
Introduction to nano physics and quantum size effect. Dimensionalities and density of states. Optical and transport properties of two-dimensional electron gas formed at heterostructures and within novel graphene monolayers with external fields. Quantum Hall Effects. Physics of one-dimensional electron systems including carbon nanotubes and semiconductor nanowires. Fundamental physics of zero-dimensional electron systems. Single electron effects. Quantum dots and nanocrystals. Fundamental principles and applications of scanning tunneling microscopy in the study of nano physics. If time permits, the making and application aspects of nanomaterials will also be discussed.  

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  

- CLO 1 recall basic concepts and knowledge of dimensionality, density of states, quantum size effect  
- CLO 2 identify and compare optical and transport properties of two-dimensional electron gas with external fields, especially quantum Hall effects  
- CLO 3 recognize the fundamental principles and important applications of scanning tunneling microscopy in the study of nano physics  
- CLO 4 describe the basic physics of one-dimensional electron systems including carbon nanotubes and semiconductor nanowires  
- CLO 5 understand the central physics of zero-dimensional quantum dots and nanocrystals, single electron effects  

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**  
Pass in PHYS3551 and PHYS4351  

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**  
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N  

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Fail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presenational skills.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**  
Lecture-based course  

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Essay</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**  
Lecture notes prepared by Course Coordinator  

---  

Environmental radiation (6 credits)  

**Offering Department**  
Physics  

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Dr J K C Leung, Physics (jkleung@hku.hk)  

**Teachers Involved**  
(Dr J K C Leung, Physics)  

**Course Objectives**  
The course will cover naturally occurring radiation sources and man-made radiation sources including nuclear power plants; transport models for radionuclides in the environment; nuclear accidents and its impact to the environment; radiation risk assessment and emergency preparedness; techniques for measuring low level radioactivities; nuclear techniques in ecology; concept of radiation protection to human species and non-human species.  

**Course Contents & Topics**  
The course will cover naturally occurring radiation sources and man-made radiation sources including nuclear power plants; transport models for radionuclides in the environment; nuclear accidents and its impact to the environment; radiation risk assessment and emergency preparedness; techniques for measuring low level radioactivities; nuclear techniques in ecology; concept of radiation protection to human species and non-human species.  

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  

- CLO 1 realise sources and transport of radionuclides in the environment  
- CLO 2 explain and assess the impact to the environment from the use of nuclear energies  
- CLO 3 detect and measure low level radioactivities in environmental samples  
- CLO 4 justify, optimize, and assess the risk of using radiation and nuclear technologies  
- CLO 5 compare and contrast the environmental impacts from nuclear energy and other forms of energy  

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**  
Pass in CHEM2041 or ENVS2001 or ENVS2002 or PHYS2265
Course Title: ENVS3010 Sustainable energy and environment (6 credits)

Offering Department: Physics
Course Co-ordinator: Prof A B Djurisic, Physics (dalek@hku.hk)

Course Objectives:
In this course, the students will learn about sustainability and environmental impact of different energy technologies, including conventional energy sources as well as renewable and/or clean energy sources. The technological challenges, potential for future development, and environmental impacts (community, regional, and global) will be discussed.

Course Contents & Topics:
The course will cover energy production and use, environmental impact of energy use, fossil fuels and methods for making them more sustainable, clean fuels, electricity generation, renewable energy technologies (with emphasis on biomass, wind and solar energy), hydrogen, energy storage, and energy conservation.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: define the concept of sustainable development
- CLO 2: explain the challenges and potential for development of various energy technologies
- CLO 3: compare the environmental impact of conventional and new energy technologies

Pre-requisites:
Pass in CHEM2041 or ENVS2001 or ENVS2002 or PHYS2260

Assessment:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods (Details)</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4,5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory reports</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Reading / Self study: 80

Course Website:
http://moodle.hku.hk

EMPLOYMENT OUTLOOK

- Students will be well equipped to pursue careers in the energy industry, environmental consulting, policy development, and education.
- Opportunities in areas such as renewable energy, sustainability management, and climate science.


dalek@hku.hk

Department of Physics
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Assignments</th>
<th>debate questions performance</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>CLO 1,2,3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>2-hour written exam</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

Lecture notes provided by Course Coordinator


**Course Website**

http://moodle.hku.hk
SCNC1111 Scientific method and reasoning (6 credits)  Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Faculty  Quota ---

Course Co-ordinator Dr K F Lam, Statistics & Actuarial Science (hrtlkf@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Dr K F Lam, Statistics & Actuarial Science) (Dr R K W Lui, Faculty of Science) (Dr W M Y Cheung, Faculty of Science)

Course Objectives The objectives are to give students a holistic view of the science discipline in terms of its nature, concepts and impact on civilization and society; to equip students with basic skills of logical and quantitative reasoning; and to introduce to students mathematical and statistical methods for science studies and research.

Course Contents & Topics

Part I: The nature and methodology of science
- Demarcation between science and non-science
- Shared features of the sciences
- Scientific method
- The role of mathematics in the historical development of science

Part II: Quantitative reasoning
a. Mathematics with topics selected from
- Foundation of mathematics,
- Mathematics and advancement of science - an introduction,
- Mathematical modelling - an introduction,
- Guessimation,
- Difference equations,
- Linear algebra and matrices,
- Calculus and differential equations, and/or
- Fractals and Chaos.
b. Statistics
- Probability rules
- Probabilistic methods
- Statistical inference
- Confidence intervals estimation
- Hypothesis testing
- Decision making with statistics
- Statistical modelling, and use and misuse of statistics

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 describe key aspects of scientific methodology
CLO 2 describe the key elements of the foundation of mathematics and statistics
CLO 3 identify the mathematics that underlies scientific problems
CLO 4 apply logical and quantitative reasoning to re-formulate both real life and scientific problems in mathematical terms, and to interpret their solutions

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and impermissible combinations) NIL


Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar situations. Carry out computations carefully and correctly. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Carry out computations mostly in a careful and correct way, but commit some minor computational errors. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Commit a number of minor computational errors. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Commit some substantial computational errors. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Commit serious computational errors. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments coursework includes projects, class tests, and participation in tutorials 60 CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination 2-hour examination 40 CLO 1,2,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials TBC

SCNC1112 Fundamentals of modern science (6 credits)  Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Faculty  Quota ---

Course Co-ordinator Dr J C S Pun, Physics (jcspun@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Dr G W Porter, Faculty of Science) (Dr J C S Pun, Physics)
### Course Objectives

This course aims to provide students an overview of the giant web of knowledge that makes up science. This course adopts an integrated approach and encompasses physics, astronomy, earth sciences, chemistry, and biology, and focuses on the general principles and unifying concepts of science used in various disciplines to describe the diverse phenomena and objects in the natural world. The fundamental laws of each discipline, the historical developments and the modern frontiers, and the interconnectedness of different science disciplines will be introduced and highlighted.

### Course Contents & Topics

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(1) Universal principles and unifying concepts of science</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(2) Fundamental structure of matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Structure of matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The quantum world</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Elementary particles and standard model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) Atoms and molecules</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Atoms and atoms: The periodic table</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Chemical bonds and chemical reactions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Important molecules: water, carbon, molecular cluster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Nanoscience and nanotechnology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4) DNA/Genetic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Molecules of life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Genomics and DNA; Genetics and inheritance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(5) Cells and systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(6) Organism and environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- The origin and evolution of life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Ecology and environment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(7) Earth and Beyond</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Solid Earth, Earth's atmosphere and hydrosphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Earth's motion in space</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Planets, the Sun, and the solar system</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Cosmology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** acquire an understanding of the historical development of modern science, the essence and spirit of scientific inquiry methods, and the role of science in the advancement of civilization over time
- **CLO 2** understand and be familiar with the fundamental scientific principles and concepts
- **CLO 3** appreciate the diversity of different scientific disciplines and develop multidisciplinary and interdisciplinary perspectives on scientific issues
- **CLO 4** critically and creatively appraise received ideas and established knowledge
- **CLO 5** develop curiosity in science and an appreciation of sciences as related to different Science Majors and as a form of life-long learning

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

**NIL**

(This course is compulsory for all students taking a Science major offered by the Faculty of Science. Students should take this course in their first year.)

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>1st sem</th>
<th>2nd sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>Dec May</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective lab skills and techniques. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective lab skills and techniques. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective lab skills and techniques. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply partially effective lab skills and techniques. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply minimally effective or ineffective lab / fieldwork skills and techniques. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture with laboratory component course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour in-class quiz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>tutorials and homework</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td>project presentation</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Test</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### SCNC1113

The big history of our planet: a scientific perspective on everything that has ever happened (6 credits)

### Academic Year

2017
By exploring the Big History of our planet; from the Big Bang of the Universe, the synthesis of different chemical substances, through the evolution of various species on Earth, to the establishment of modern human society, the course aims to:
(1) discuss the process of scientific discovery, and how our current body of knowledge about Nature was established;
(2) develop students’ understanding of the multi-disciplinary nature of science;
(3) develop students’ understanding of the importance of science and technology to our society, in formulating policies in the society, and solving the future problems of our planet;
(4) increase scientific literacy.

Main theme: How fundamental interactions between the building blocks of matter shape the Universe today as we know it; Topics include: Big bang, nucleosynthesis, cosmic expansion, cooling of the universe, star formation, and thermal equilibrium of our planet Earth.

Main theme: How we understand the transition from non-living matter to the diversified biosphere on earth today; Topics include: Origin of life, evolution, natural selection and tree of life.

Main theme: How our modern civilised society emerges through the development of intelligence and accumulation of knowledge; how science, technology, human society and environment influence one another; Topics include: Neural network and the emergence of intelligence, historical development of modern science, the role of science in human civilisation and the contemporary world.

Main theme: Outlook on the future of science, technology, human society and environment; key challenges to be faced by humankind that could be addressed by science and technology; Topics include: Students will attend one of several parallel modules on topics that suit their interests, such as nanotechnology, climate change, energy crisis, bioethics and artificial intelligence.
The MacMillan building, home of the UBC Faculty of Land and Food Systems, will be the site of the major farming activities, including afternoon group discussions, harvest Fridays and market Saturdays. Students will have a chance to explore the UBC campus sustainability hot-spots, including the LFS orchard garden, the world-class GRS green building, Place Vanier, home of an innovative campus chef, Steve Goleib, and the wiggle worm project in the Student Union Building/SUB. Students will also venture off-campus to two of the Vancouver Farmers’ Market and to Granville Island Public Market to provide a comparative view of marketing systems and the regionally grounded food system context.

The main approach to learning with this course is student-centered learning and hands-on experience. To meet course learning objectives, students are expected to attend and participate in all sessions, to contribute to group discussions and the group oral presentation, and to complete a series of reflective journals on each of the four main course themes-soils, biodiversity, seeds, marketing.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** connect underlying agroecosystem concepts and soil science fundamentals with principles and practices of sustainable farming.
- **CLO 2** observe and compare multiple models of agricultural food production in an urban and campus farm setting.
- **CLO 3** identify multiple strategies for creating on-farm biodiversity.
- **CLO 4** demonstrate a basic understanding of composting fundamentals.
- **CLO 5** demonstrate the ability to perform a select set of basic crop maintenance, harvest, washing, and packing techniques in a sustainable campus farm setting.
- **CLO 6** demonstrate best practices with post-harvest handling and food safety protocols.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Students are expected to have passed at least 30 credits of level 1 and/or level 2 science courses. Students will also need to pass an interview in order to be enrolled in the course.

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>N</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear understanding of the basics from sustainable farming to marketing strategies used by sustainable farming operations. Ability to perform crop maintenance, harvest, washing, and packing in a sustainable campus farm setting. Ability to demonstrate solid team-based skills for performance of fieldwork, and distinct performance in different assessment components. Ability to synthesize the lessons learned during the course and articulate individual learning objectives for further studies in agriculture, food and human health.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>B</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Clear understanding of the basics from sustainable farming to marketing strategies used by sustainable farming operations. Ability to perform crop maintenance, harvest, washing, and packing in a sustainable campus farm setting. Ability to demonstrate solid team-based skills for performance of fieldwork, and distinct performance in different assessment components.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>C</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Understanding of the basics from sustainable farming to marketing strategies used by sustainable farming operations. Ability to perform crop maintenance, harvest, washing, and packing in a sustainable campus farm setting. Satisfactory demonstration of team-based skills for performance of fieldwork, and satisfactory performance in different assessment components.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>D</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Knowing some of the basics of sustainable farming. Active participation in team-based fieldwork, and satisfactory performance in different assessment components.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fail</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail to follow the basics of sustainable farming as demonstrated by unsatisfactory performance in assignments and/or fieldwork.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type
- **Field camps**

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field work</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Presentation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group discussion / Project</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End of trip report</td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>To be announced by UBC Faculty of Land and Food Systems</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report</td>
<td>Students will be divided into groups of 3-4. Each group will submit a 7-10 pages report (not including the references). Please refer to Remarks for format requirements.</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 3, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
- UBC Faculty of Land and Food Systems will give reading materials to students.

### Course Contents & Topics
This course is designed to provide students with the opportunity to experience the inner-workings of a sustainable, campus farming operation, and to make connections between the ecosystems that nourish the thriving, urban communities surrounding the farm. Students will participate in plenary sessions with course instructors and guest lecturers from the UBC Faculty of Land and Food Systems, in guided group discussions, field trips on and off-campus, and in a variety of seasonal, hands-on farming activities.

### Course Objectives
This course is designed to provide students with the opportunity to experience the inner-workings of a sustainable, campus farming operation, and to make connections between the ecosystems that nourish the thriving, urban communities surrounding the farm. Students will participate in plenary sessions with course instructors and guest lecturers from the UBC Faculty of Land and Food Systems, in guided group discussions, field trips on and off-campus, and in a variety of seasonal, hands-on farming activities.
SCNC2122 Marine life science: a North East Pacific perspective (6 credits)  Academic Year 2017

Offering Department
Faculty

Course Co-ordinator
Dr T Vengatesen, Biological Sciences (rajan@hku.hk)

Course Involved
(Dr T Vengatesen,Biological Sciences)
(Prof G A Williams,Biological Sciences)
(Prof R S S Wu,Biological Sciences)
(Prof S Kwok,Earth Sciences)

Course Objectives
Marine Life Science is an integrated study of how the oceans influence large and small scale patterns of marine biology through physical interactions. By studying the temperate biogeographic regions of the NE Pacific Ocean, students will learn marine habitats as habitable planet, to appreciate the dynamics of marine biodiversity, the complex interactions between the physical and biological components, fishery, and the services the coastal oceans provide to human. This course will provide an excellent opportunity for students to experience the diversity of marine life on the other side of the Pacific.

Course Contents & Topics
Lectures from both HKU and UBC teachers will introduce 'marine life science": with a focus on biodiversity, abundance and distribution of species, productivity, coastal pollution, fisheries, aquaculture and climate change. The course will also introduce the commercial aspects of marine life, i.e. eel-grass, aquaculture and climate change mitigation through management of coastal ecosystems. All these lectures will be discussed through a series of field observations, presentations from guest lecturers, and group discussions. There will be an excellent opportunity to touch and learn about Canada's wonderful marine life diversity in the Vancouver Aquarium, and northern Vancouver Fish Hatchery. Students will be learning Canada's coastal plankton biodiversity through visiting the Marine (Reed point marina) and the Sea-grass habitat. There will also be several opportunities to explore the intertidal zone, exposed and protected coastal habitats, sandy beaches and estuaries in the Vancouver Island. Marine biodiversity survey techniques and methods of studying marine life in the field will be emphasized. Students will be exposed to a different learning environment involving not only HKU teachers and students but also UBC teachers and students, bringing diverse range of expertise, cultures, and learning opportunities from both sides of the Pacific Ocean to focus on the diversity, dynamic interactions and threats to marine life.

Course Learning Outcomes
CLO 1 understand the basics of marine life science and the marine habitable planet
CLO 2 explain the major types, causes, and effects of marine threats such as pollution, overfishing, global warming and ocean acidification, and invasive species, as well as describe the consequences of these threats for marine communities and ecosystem services
CLO 3 describe the difference between coastal marine biodiversity and harbors in Hong Kong and Canada
CLO 4 discover the reasons why marine biodiversity and ecosystem services in Hong Kong are so different from the North Pacific coastal ecosystems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Students are expected to have passed at least 30 credits of level 1 and/or level 2 science courses. Students will also need to pass an interview in order to be enrolled in the course.


Grade Descriptors (A to F)
A Demonstrate through knowledge in basics of marine science and clearly understand why and how coastal biodiversity in sub-tropical Hong Kong is different from the North Pacific coastal areas. Ability to explain how marine organisms have adapted to their particular environments. Showing strong abilities, and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, to examine reasons why the diversity of marine life and their habitats are so important to human society. Independent critique on how human induced threats such as climate change, pollution and habitat change will affect marine life, its diversity and their ecosystem services.
B Clear understanding of the basics of marine science. Ability to explain how marine organisms have adapted to their particular environments. Knowing the common views on the reasons why the diversity of marine life and their habitats are so important to human society. Knowing the common views on how human induced threats such as climate change, pollution and habitat change will affect marine life, its diversity and their ecosystem services.
C Demonstrate partial and limited command of knowledge and understanding of the basics of marine science, biodiversity and coastal ecosystem services. Develop little ability to explain how marine organisms have adapted to their particular environments. Knowing the common views on the reasons why the diversity of marine life and their habitats are so important to human society. Knowing the common views on how human induced threats such as climate change, pollution and habitat change will affect marine life, its diversity and their ecosystem services.
D Knowing some of the basics of marine science. Developing ability to explain how marine organisms have adapted to their particular environments.
Fail Fail to follow the basics of marine science and/or how marine organisms have adapted to their particular environments.

Course Type
Field camps

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 10 sessions x 2.5 hours 25
Field work Field observation and work: about 5 to 6 field study 36
Presentation Group discussion / Project: 1 group project with presentation 10
Reading / Self study 70

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments Group project work (30-mins presentation) 25 CLO 2
SCNC3111  Frontiers of science honours seminar course (6 credits)  Academic Year  2017
Offering Department  Faculty  Quota  120
Course Co-ordinator  Dr R K W Lui, Faculty (lui2012@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved  (Dr K M Leung & Dr E J Pickett, Faculty of Science)
                  (Dr G W Porter & Dr D T Wotherspoon, Faculty of Science)
                  (Professors from different departments.)
Course Objectives
To introduce the research being done by our Faculty's professors
To broaden and enrich students' scientific knowledge in and outside of their chosen major
To foster intellectual discussions between our research professors and students
To observe how research is done and note the thinking processes and paths that lead to scientific discoveries
To enhance students' awareness of the importance of science to solve some of the problems facing the society
To collaborate with and learn from peers from different academic backgrounds in a scientific setting
To develop essential written and spoken communication skills
To serve as a potential mentor-mentee matching platform for faculty members and students
To develop an awareness of research ethics

Course Contents & Topics
Professors from different departments will be featured in the honours seminar course, and they will discuss their latest research with students. The topics will span the areas of Biological Sciences, Chemistry, Earth Sciences, Physics, as well as Mathematics/Statistics & Actuarial science. In addition, the following topics to prepare students for conducting and communicating research will also be introduced: Introduction to Different Search Engines for Scientific Journals and/or Decoding a Scientific Paper and/or Effective Communication for Scientists (Writing, Oral and Poster Presentations).

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1  describe and discuss in an informed manner the fields of research of some of our research professors
CLO 2  identify how professors with different scientific training solve their research problems
CLO 3  apply literature search skills to identify and develop a research topic
CLO 4  practice and master scientific writing and presentation skills
CLO 5  demonstrate interpersonal skills in collaborating with their peers in a scientific setting
CLO 6  devise a research proposal and evaluate their peers' works

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in SCNC1111, SCNC1112 and a level 2 science course.
Students who participated or will participate in ORF/SRF must take this course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018  Y  1st sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y  Examination  No Exam
Grade Descriptors  (A+ to F)
A  Demonstrate thorough mastery of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B  Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C  Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D  Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
Fail  Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type  Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities  Activities  Details  No. of Hours
Lectures  36
Tutorials  12
Reading / Self study  100
Assessment Methods and Weighting  Methods  Details  Weighting in final course grade (%)  Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments  A series of writing and reflection assignments will be given  40  CLO 1,2,4
Presentation  Students will give a 30-minute group presentation during the last week of the instruction  40  CLO 3,4,5,6
Project reports  In-class formative assessment; activities for students to work in groups  20  CLO 1,2,4,5

Required/recommended reading and online materials  TBC (suggested by the professors)
STAT1600  
Statistics: ideas and concepts (6 credits)  
Academic Year: 2017

Offering Department  
Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator  
Dr Y K Chung, Statistics & Actuarial Science
(ysuchung@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved  
(Dr E A L Li,Statistics & Actuarial Science)  
(Dr Y K Chung,Statistics & Actuarial Science)

Course Objectives  
The course aims at providing a broad overview of statistics for students who aspire to major in Statistics or Risk Management. It focuses on the roles of statistics as a scientific tool with applications to a wide spectrum of disciplines, and as a science of reasoning which has revolutionized modern intellectual endeavours. It lays a panoramic foundation for a formal study of statistics at the university level.

Course Contents & Topics  
- Data collection: observational studies versus designed experiments
- Data presentation: tables; graphs; frequency distributions; correlations; trends
- Probability: randomness; probability models; distributions; measures of central tendency and dispersion
- Inference: estimation; tests of significance and hypotheses; confidence intervals; regression; prediction
- Further issues: controversies; misuse of statistics; ethics.

Course Learning Outcomes  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand the role of statistics as a tool for scientific reasoning
CLO 2 present data in a useful and informative way
CLO 3 acquire basic concepts and perspectives of statistical modelling and inference
CLO 4 distinguish between good and bad statistical practices
CLO 5 pursue a major study in Statistics or Risk Management with a well-established conceptual foundation

Pre-requisites  
(NIL)

Offer in 2017 - 2018  
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A to F)  
A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Program and organizational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes.

Course Type  
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities  
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting  
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments Coursework (assignments, class test(s) and project(s)) 60 CLO 1,2,3,4,5
Examination One 2-hour written examination 40 CLO 1,2,3,4,5

Required/recommended reading and online materials  

Course Website  
moodle.hku.hk

STAT1601  
Elementary statistical methods (6 credits)  
Academic Year: 2017

Offering Department  
Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator  
TBC, Statistics & Actuarial Science (/)

Teachers Involved  
Research findings are usually supported by data. Data collected in an experiment/survey are often concerned with situations involving variability and uncertainty. They are used to estimate the true value of a certain quantity or to test the acceptability of a certain new hypothesis. Valid methods of analysing the data are thus essential to any successful investigation. The course aims to present the fundamentals of statistical methods widely used by researchers. Microsoft Excel might be used to carry out some statistical analysis. There is no demand of sophisticated technical mathematics.

Course Contents & Topics  
The course will introduce and study the following topics:
- Presentation of data, Measures of Central Tendency, Measures of Variability and Uncertainty, Basic Probability Laws, Common Probability Distributions such as Uniform, Binomial, Poisson, Hyper-geometric, Geometric and Normal distributions, Random Sampling, Distribution of the Mean, Normal Sampling Theorem, Point Estimation, Confidence Intervals, Sample Size Determination, Hypothesis Testing, Inferences for Mean and Proportion, Chi-squared tests, Simple Regression and Correlation

Course Learning Outcomes  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 select and use appropriate statistical methods to analyze data
CLO 2 perform statistical analysis with calculator and Microsoft Excel
CLO 3 understand and apply basic concepts of probability
CLO 4 gain familiarity with the fundamental concepts of random variables
CLO 5 make inferences on a population based on sample data
CLO 6 determine the most appropriate statistical method to use for a given statistical problem
CLO 7 write appropriate conclusions based on the statistical results
CLO 6 understand the basic principles of simple linear regression and correlation and their applications to practical problems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)  
Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics or equivalent; and
Not for students with Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics Extended Module 1 or 2; and
Not for students who have passed or already enrolled in any of the following courses: STAT2901, STAT1602, STAT2801, STAT1603, ECON1280

Offer in 2017 - 2018  
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A to F)  
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type  
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Chiu W. K.: Basic Statistics (Pearson (Asia), 2007)
Berk, K.N. & Carey, P.: Data Analysis with Microsoft EXCEL (Duxbury press, Update Office 2007)

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information
Calculator: CASIO fx-50FH (This model has SD-MODE, REG-MODE, nCr and Normal Probability Function which is very suitable for this course.)
familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities
Details
No. of Hours
Lectures
36
Tutorials
12
Reading / Self study
100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods
Details
Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments
Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)
25
CLO 1,2,3,4
Examination
One 2-hour written examination
75
CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7,8

Required/recommended reading and online materials
Gerald Keller: Managerial Statistics (Cengage Learning, 2009, 8th edition) Dr. J.K. F. Lam, Statistics & Actuarial Science (hmttlkkf@hku.hk)
Berk, K.N. & Carey, P.: Data Analysis with Microsoft EXCEL (Duxbury press, Update Office 2007)

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

STAT1603 Introductory statistics (6 credits)

Offering Department
Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator
Dr E K F Lam, Statistics & Actuarial Science (hmttlkkf@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
Dr E K F Lam, Statistics & Actuarial Science
(Mrs G Jing, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

Course Objectives
The discipline of statistics is concerned with situations involving uncertainty and variability. The interpretation of data needs special techniques when variability plays a role, as it usually does. Thus statistics forms an important descriptive and analytical tool of many scientific disciplines. Candidates with a mathematical background will find this course suitable, because the language of mathematics allows the subject of statistics to be presented with economy and clarity.

Course Contents & Topics

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 compute different measures of central tendency and dispersion
CLO 2 make use of the basic probability theory and techniques to solve practical problem
CLO 3 know how to construct confidence intervals and use hypotheses testing to carry out inference on the population
CLO 4 use linear regression and correlation methods to solve problems in science and in social and business environment

Pre-requisites
Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics Extended Module 1 or 2 or equivalent) or (Pass in MATH1009 Basic mathematics for business and economics or MATH1011 or MATH1013, or already enrolled in these courses); and Not for students who have passed or already enrolled in any of these courses: STAT1601, STAT1602, STAT2601, STAT2901

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y Examination: Dec May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A
Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities
Details
No. of Hours
Lectures
36
Tutorials
12
Reading / Self study
100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods
Details
Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments
Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)
25
CLO 1,2,3
Examination
One 2-hour written examination
75
CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials
### Course Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

### Additional Course Information

### STAT2601

#### Probability and statistics I (6 credits)

- **Offering Department**: Statistics & Actuarial Science
- **Course Co-ordinator**: Dr K P Wat, Statistics & Actuarial Science (watkp@hku.hk)
- **Teachers Involved**: (Dr K P Wat, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

#### Course Objectives
The discipline of statistics is concerned with situations in which uncertainty and variability play an essential role and forms an important descriptive and analytical tool in many practical problems. Against a background of motivating problems this course develops relevant probability models for the description of such uncertainty and variability.

#### Course Contents & Topics
Sample spaces; Operations of events; Probability and probability laws; Conditional probability; Independence; Discrete random variables; Cumulative distribution function (cdf); Probability mass function (pmf); Bernoulli, binomial, geometric, and Poisson distributions; Continuous random variables; Cumulative distribution function (cdf); Probability density function (pdf); Exponential, Gamma, and normal distributions; Functions of a random variable; Joint distributions; Marginal distributions; Independent random variables; Functions of jointly distributed random variables; Expected value; Variance and standard deviation; Covariance and correlation.

#### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1**: understand the basic concepts in probability theory
- **CLO 2**: gain some insights to statistics and inference
- **CLO 3**: solve real-world problem by using probability calculations
- **CLO 4**: pursue their further studies in statistics

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass or already enrolled in MATH2104, or (MATH2101 and MATH2211), for students admitted in 2014 or thereafter; or Pass in MATH1013, or already enrolled in this course, for students admitted in 2013 or before; or Pass in MATH1851 and MATH1853, for students admitted in 2013 or before; and Not for students who have passed in STAT1603, or already enrolled in this course; Not for students who have passed in STAT2901, or already enrolled in this course; and Not for BSc(ActuarSc) students.

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018

- **Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**
  - **A**: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
  - **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
  - **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
  - **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
  - **F**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

#### Course Type
Lecture-based course

#### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
- Activities: Lectures, Tutorials, Reading / Self study
- Details: No. of Hours
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

#### Assessment Methods and Weighting
- Methods: Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and class test(s))
- Weighting in final course grade (%):
  - Coursework: 25
- Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
  - CLO 1,2,3:
    - Examination: 75

#### Required/recommended reading and online materials

#### Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

### STAT2602

#### Probability and statistics II (6 credits)

- **Offering Department**: Statistics & Actuarial Science
- **Course Co-ordinator**: Dr K Zhu, Statistics & Actuarial Science (mazhuke@hku.hk)
- **Teachers Involved**: (Dr K Zhu, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

#### Course Objectives
This course builds on STAT2601, introducing further the concepts and methods of statistics. Emphasis is on the two major areas of statistical analysis: estimation and hypothesis testing. Through the disciplines of statistical modelling, inference and decision making, students will be equipped with both quantitative skills and qualitative perceptions essential for making rigorous statistical analysis of real-life data.

#### Course Contents
1. Overview: random sample, sampling distributions of statistics; moment generating function; large-sample theory:
Data management with SAS (6 credits)

**Offering Department**
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr G C S Lui, Statistics & Actuarial Science (csglui@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
(Dr G C S Lui, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Course Objectives**
This course is designed for students who want to learn the statistical software (SAS) for data management and elementary data analysis. This course focuses on using SAS to manage data set input and output, work with different data types, manipulate and transform data, perform random sampling and descriptive data analysis, and create summary reports and graphics.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Data management system for statistical projects. Data validation and cleaning techniques. SAS programming topics, including the following: Data set input and output, Working with different data types, Data manipulation, Data transformation, File manipulation. SAS data sets, PROC TABULATE, produce high-resolution graphics by PROC SGPLOT. HTML output by QDS, procedure SQL for structured query language.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** access online help and document
- **CLO 2** use Data Step to create data files
- **CLO 3** summarize data by PROC MEANS, PROC FREQ, and PROC UNIVARIATE
- **CLO 4** work with numeric, character, and date variables and functions in Data Step
- **CLO 5** perform conditional processing in Data Step
- **CLO 6** perform iterative processing in Data Step including the following: work with arrays in Data step; restructure SAS data sets by Data Step and PROC TRANSPOSE; subset and merge data sets by Data Step and PROC APPEND; present data in a readable way by PROC TABULATE; produce high-resolution graphics by PROC SGPLOT; produce high-resolution graphics by PROC SGPLOT; produce high-resolution graphics by PROC SGPLOT; HTML output by QDS, procedure SQL for structured query language

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in STAT1600 or MATH1821, or already enrolled in this course.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Assessment Methods**
- **Examination**: One 2-hour written examination 75
- **Assignments**: Coursework (assignments, tutorials and a class test) 75

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

**Grade Descriptors**
(A+ to F)

- **A** Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B** Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
### STAT2605
**Demographic and socio-economic statistics (6 credits)**

**Offering Department:** Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Academic Year:** 2017  
**Quote:** ---

**Course Co-ordinator:** Ms L M S Kwan, Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**lucykwan@hku.hk**

**Course Objectives:**
- The course covers the major methods for studying demographic and socio-economic statistics, which provide quantitative information on the essential aspects of the lives of citizens in a territory. The course aims to provide students with 1) essential knowledge including the underlying principles of the pertinent methods and statistical indicators; and 2) skills in the statistical descriptions of a territory and their interpretation and application to planning, policy-making and commercial endeavours.

**Course Contents & Topics:**
- Population structure, fertility, mortality, migration, life tables, population projections;  
- Social statistics on health, housing, labour, and social equity;  
- Economic statistics on prices and GDP;  
- Sources, theory and methods of official statistics;  
- Examples would be especially drawn from Hong Kong, and Mainland China.

**Course Learning Outcomes:**
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:  
  - CLO 1: describe and interpret major official & other publicly disseminated socio-economic statistics of a territory  
  - CLO 2: further appraise and analyse the socio-economic well-being of a territory with particular reference to Hong Kong and mainland China  
  - CLO 3: predict a future situation by assimilating and deriving from appropriate statistics  
  - CLO 4: critically assess statistics reporting

**Pre-requisites:** (Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics or Level 2 or above in HKDSE Mathematics Extended Module 1 or 2 or equivalent); and  
**Impermissible combinations:** Pass or already enrolled in BIOL2102, ECON1280, STAT1601, STAT1602, STAT2601, STAT1603, STAT2901

**Offer in 2017**: Y  
**2nd sem**  
**Offer in 2018 - 2019**: Y  
**Course Grade (%):**  
**Examination**: May

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials and a test)</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>65</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Course Website:** moodle.hku.hk

---

### Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science

---

654
Course Objectives
The purpose of this course is to develop knowledge of the fundamental tools in probability and statistics for quantitatively assessing risk. Applications of these tools to actuarial science problems will be emphasized. Students will have a thorough command of probability topics and the supporting calculations.

Course Contents & Topics
1. General Probability
   - Basic elements of probability in set notation
   - Mutually exclusive events
   - Addition and multiplication rules
   - Independence of events
   - Combinatorial probability
   - Conditional probability and expectations
   - Bayes Theorem / Law of total probability
   - Random variables
2. Univariate probability distributions (including binomial, negative binomial, geometric, hypergeometric, Poisson, uniform, exponential, chi-square, beta, Pareto, lognormal, gamma, Weibull and normal) and bivariate normal distribution
   - Probability functions and probability density functions
   - Cumulative distribution functions
   - Mode, median, percentiles and moments
   - Variance and measures of dispersion
   - Central Limit Theorem
3. Sampling distributions and introduction of estimation

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1: understand the mathematical theory underlying the modern practice of statistics
- CLO 2: develop skills in probabilistic analysis for problems involving randomness
- CLO 3: apply techniques in probability and statistics to solve actuarial science problems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in MATH1821 (for BSc(ActuarSc) students) or already enrolled in this course, or Pass in MATH1013 or already enrolled in this course [for students outside the BSc(ActuarSc) programme]; and Not for students who have passed or enrolled in any of these courses: STAT1601, STAT1602, STAT1603, STAT2801

Offer in 2017 - 2018
- Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Assessment Methods
- Examination
- CLO 1,2,3

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
- Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
- Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
- Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
- Lectures: 36 hours
- Tutorials: 12 hours
- Reading / Self study: 100 hours

Assessment Methods and Weighting
- Assignments: Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)
- Examination: One-hour written examination

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website
- moodle.hku.hk

STAT2902
- Financial mathematics (6 credits)

Offering Department
- Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator
- Prof K C Yuen, Statistics & Actuarial Science (kcyuen@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
- Prof K C Yuen, Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Objectives
This course introduces the fundamental concepts of financial mathematics which plays an important role in the development of basic actuarial techniques. Practical applications of these concepts are also covered.
Course Contents & Topics
Key topics include: measurement of interest, annuities certain; discounted cash flow analysis; yield rates; amortization schedules and sinking funds; bonds and related securities; practical applications such as real estate mortgage and short sales; stochastic approaches to interest; and key terms of financial analysis such as yield curves, spot rates, forward rates, duration, convexity, and immunization.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand the fundamental concepts of financial mathematics
- CLO 2 learn standard actuarial notations for a variety of annuities
- CLO 3 do simple discounted cashflow analysis using basic annuities
- CLO 4 learn the operations of some commonly-encountered financial instruments such as bonds, mortgages, short sales, and so on
- CLO 5 quote interest in various modes and determine interest rate based on a series of financial transactions
- CLO 6 deal with Exam FM of the Society of Actuaries

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in STAT2901, or already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3615, or already enrolled in this course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D
- Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail
- Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities
Details
No. of Hours
Lectures
36
Tutorials
tutorials/example classes
12
Reading / Self study
100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods
Details
Weighting in final course grade (%)
Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and class test(s)) 25 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6
Examination One 3-hour written examination 75 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

STAT3600 Linear statistical analysis (6 credits)

Offering Department Statistics & Actuarial Science

Academic Year 2017

Course Co-ordinator Dr F Jiang, Statistics & Actuarial Science (feijiang@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Dr F Jiang,Statistics & Actuarial Science)

Course Objectives
The analysis of variability is mainly concerned with locating the sources of the variability. Many statistical techniques investigate these sources through the use of 'linear' models. This course presents the theory and practice of these models.

Course Contents & Topics
- (1) Simple linear regression: least squares method, analysis of variance, coefficient of determination, hypothesis tests and confidence intervals for regression parameters, prediction.
- (2) Multiple linear regression: least squares method, analysis of variance, coefficient of determination, reduced vs full models, hypothesis tests and confidence intervals for regression parameters, prediction, polynomial regression.
- (3) One-way classification models: one-way ANOVA, analysis of treatment effects, contrasts.
- (4) Two-way classification models: interactions, two-way ANOVA for balanced data structures, analysis of treatment effects, contrasts, randomised complete block design.
- (5) Universal approach to linear modelling: dummy variables, 'multiple linear regression' representation of one-way and two-way (unbalanced) models, ANCOVA models, concomitant variables.
- (6) Regression diagnostics: leverage, residual plot, normal probability plot, outlier, studentized residual, influential observation, Cook's distance, multicollinearity, model transformation.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand linear regression model with one or multiple independent variables
- CLO 2 understand ANOVA models for one and two factors
- CLO 3 understand general linear model with categorical and continuous independent variables

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in STAT2602; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3907, or have already enrolled in this course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Grade Descriptors
A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Grade Descriptors
A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Statistical inference (6 credits)

### Course Objectives
This course covers the advanced theory of point estimation, interval estimation and hypothesis testing. Using a mathematically-oriented approach, the course provides a solid and rigorous treatment of inferential problems, statistical methodologies and the underlying concepts and theory. It is suitable in particular for students intending to further their studies or to develop a career in statistical research.

### Course Contents & Topics
1. Paradigms of inference: frequentist, Bayesian, Fisherian.
2. Decision theory: loss function; risk; decision rule; admissibility; minimaxity; unbiasedness; Bayes’ rule.
3. Estimation theory: exponential families; likelihood; sufficiency; minimal sufficient; ancillarity; completeness; UMVU estimators; information inequality; large-sample theory of maximum likelihood estimation.
4. Hypothesis testing: uniformly most powerful test; monotone likelihood ratio; unbiasedness; UMP unbiased test; maximal invariants; most powerful invariant test; large-sample theory of likelihood ratio.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1. form a panoramic view of classical developments in mathematical statistics
- CLO 2. gain thorough insight into the essentials of statistical inference
- CLO 3. build a solid foundation for future research studies in statistics and related areas

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3602

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem

### Grade Descriptors (A to F)

- **A** Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B** Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials and a test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/Recommended reading and online materials

### Course Website
moodle.hku.hk
STAT3603 Probability modelling (6 credits)

Offering Department
Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator
Dr K Zhu, Statistics & Actuarial Science (mazhuke@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
This is an introductory course in probability modelling. A range of important topics in stochastic processes will be discussed.

Course Contents & Topics
Introduction to probability theory, conditional probability and expectation, Markov chains, random walk models, classification of states in a Markov chain, calculation of limiting probabilities and mean time spent in transient states, Poisson process, distribution of inter-arrival time and waiting time, conditional distribution of the arrival time, Brownian Motion, hitting time and maximum variable, geometric Brownian motion, the Black-Scholes option pricing formula, Gaussian bridge, and stationary processes. Birth-and-death process, branching process and renewal process may also be covered (if time permits).

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 apply the conditioning method to calculate the mean and probability
CLO 2 understand the essentials of Markov chains, the Poisson process, and Brownian motion
CLO 3 understand how stochastic models can be applied to the study of real-life phenomena

Pre-requisites
Pass in STAT2601; and Not for students who have passed in MATH3603, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3003, or have already enrolled in this course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods
Examination One 2-hour written examination 75

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test) 25 CLO 1, 2, 3
Examination One 2-hour written examination 75 CLO 1, 2, 3

Required/recommended reading and online materials
S. M. Ross: Introduction to Probability Models (9th edition)

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

STAT3604 Design and analysis of experiments (6 credits)

Offering Department
Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator
Dr R W L Wong, Statistics & Actuarial Science (rwong@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
Scientific research often requires proper design and analysis of experiments. This course aims to introduce the basic principles of experimental design; to explain the concepts and to develop the statistical skills in model-based analysis of experiment.

Course Contents & Topics
Basic principles and guidelines for designing experiments. Analysis for experiments with a single factor, randomised block, crossed and nested factorial structure. Balanced incomplete factorial experiments. Latin squares and related designs. Fixed/random effects models.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 develop a conceptual understanding of experimental design
CLO 2 acquire the fundamental statistical tools of experimental design and the understanding to use them appropriately
CLO 3 select appropriate experimental designs for different problems
CLO 4 select appropriate statistical model and to know how to validate the model

Pre-requisites
Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3611 or STAT3902

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods
Examination One 2-hour written examination 75

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test) 25 CLO 1, 2, 3
Examination One 2-hour written examination 75 CLO 1, 2, 3

Required/recommended reading and online materials
S. M. Ross: Introduction to Probability Models (9th edition)

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk
### Course Overview
The successful control of quality in production is a matter of primary importance to a company's prosperity. This course provides an overview of quality compromise which involves both the producer and the consumer. It presents a variety of statistical solutions including control charts, acceptance and sequential sampling plans, reliability, and life-testing. Contemporary quality management systems such as total quality control, zero defects, six-sigma, and ISO-9000 will be introduced. The student is brought to the frontier of today's quality control and management ideas.

### Course Objectives
- Demonstrate appreciation for statistical solutions in quality control and management.
- Understand the importance of statistical concepts and methods in quality assurance.
- Know the traditional and modern systems of quality management.

### Course Contents & Topics
- Probability distributions and their applications, process variability, and statistical inference.
- Process control, variables and attributes control charts, and sequential sampling plans.
- MIL-STD-105D and Dodge-Romig schemes.
- Reliability and life-testing.
- Elementary experimental designs.

### Course Learning Outcomes
- On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
  - CLO 1: appreciate the practicality of statistical concepts and methods in general.
  - CLO 2: understand how certain specific statistical methods can benefit various production situations.
  - CLO 3: know the traditional and modern systems of quality management.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
- Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2602 or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT3902.

### Assessment and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>----------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials
- D. R. Cox: Planning of Experiments (Wiley, 1958)
- P. W. M. John: Statistical Design and Analysis of Experiments (Macmillan, 1971)
- Moodle.hku.hk

### Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

### STAT3605 Quality control and management (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>TBC, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Teachers Involved
Course Objectives

Modern business corporations are increasingly using logistics as a management tool, for example, in capital budgeting problems, production planning, scheduling, transporting and deciding location for a new factory. This course addresses the business applications of logistics.

Course Contents & Topics

In this course, students will apply the analytical skills with aid of computer techniques in solving the business logistic problems. Topics include optimization techniques applied in allocation of resources, financial planning, transportation, assignment, inventory control and queueing problems.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 solve linear programming with Graphical approach, Simplex method and hands-on Excel Solving function
CLO 2 set-up and solve network flow problems using least-cost approach, MODI method and Vogel's approximation.
CLO 3 understand decision theory and its applications
CLO 4 evaluate the cost and effectiveness of service systems

Pre-requisites

Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601 or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2901; and Not for students who have passed MATH3901, or have already enrolled in this course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

Grade Descriptors

(A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presential skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presential skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presential skills.
Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials and a test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

F.S. Hillier and G. J. Lieberman: An Introduction to Operations Research
Robert F.V. Anderson, Holt, Rinehart and Winston: Introduction to Linear Algebra

Course Website

moodle.hku.hk
### Course Objectives

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. 
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. 
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. 
- Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. 

#### Grade Descriptors (A to F)

- **A:** Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B:** Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C:** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D:** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail:** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Reading and Self Study

- **Required/recommended reading and online materials**

### Course Website

- statutory.tfa.hku.hk

### Additional Course Information

- Other references:

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- **Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902**

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A to F)</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Examination

- **Examination:** One 2-hour written examination
- Weighting in final course grade (%) 75
- Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping CLO 1,2,3,4
The statistics of investment risk (6 credits)  

**Course Type**: Lecture-based course  

**Offering Department**: Statistics & Actuarial Science  

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr K P Wat, Statistics & Actuarial Science (watkp@hku.hk)  

**Course Objectives**: Most investments involve some risk. The decision to invest or not is usually made against a background of uncertainty. Whilst prediction of the future is difficult, there are statistical modelling techniques which provide a rational framework for investment decisions, particularly those relating to stock markets and the markets for interest rates, commodities and currencies. Building upon research, both in Hong Kong and abroad, this course presents the prevailing statistical theories for prices and price-change in these vital markets.

**Course Contents & Topics**: Concept of market efficiency, mean-variance portfolio theory, capital asset pricing model, arbitrage pricing theory, the rational framework for investment decisions, particularly those relating to stock markets and the markets for interest rates, commodities and currencies.

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 measure risk and return of portfolios
- CLO 2 apply different approaches in constructing optimal investment portfolios
- CLO 3 explain and apply asset pricing models and evaluate investment performance
- CLO 4 explain the concepts of market efficiency and apply appropriate testing procedures to assess different forms of market efficiency

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**: Pass in STAT2602, or already enrolled in this course; or Pass in (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT3611 or STAT3614; and Not for students who have passed in FINA2320, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for BSc(Actuarial Science) students

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**: 

- **Methods**: Assignments, Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test), Examination (One 2-hour written examination)
- **Details**: Assignments 25 CLO 1.2.3, Examination 75 CLO 1.2.3

**Course Website**: moodle.hku.hk

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**:


**Course Type**: Lecture-based course  

**Offering Department**: Statistics & Actuarial Science  

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr K P Wat, Statistics & Actuarial Science (watkp@hku.hk)  

**Course Objectives**: Most investments involve some risk. The decision to invest or not is usually made against a background of uncertainty. Whilst prediction of the future is difficult, there are statistical modelling techniques which provide a rational framework for investment decisions, particularly those relating to stock markets and the markets for interest rates, commodities and currencies. Building upon research, both in Hong Kong and abroad, this course presents the prevailing statistical theories for prices and price-change in these vital markets.

**Course Contents & Topics**: Concept of market efficiency, mean-variance portfolio theory, capital asset pricing model, arbitrage pricing theory, the rational framework for investment decisions, particularly those relating to stock markets and the markets for interest rates, commodities and currencies.

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 measure risk and return of portfolios
- CLO 2 apply different approaches in constructing optimal investment portfolios
- CLO 3 explain and apply asset pricing models and evaluate investment performance
- CLO 4 explain the concepts of market efficiency and apply appropriate testing procedures to assess different forms of market efficiency

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**: Pass in STAT2602, or already enrolled in this course; or Pass in (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT3611 or STAT3614; and Not for students who have passed in FINA2320, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for BSc(Actuarial Science) students

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**: 

- **Methods**: Assignments, Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test), Examination (One 2-hour written examination)
- **Details**: Assignments 25 CLO 1.2.3, Examination 75 CLO 1.2.3

**Course Website**: moodle.hku.hk

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**:

STAT3610  
**Risk management and insurance (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**  
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Dr R W L Wong, Statistics & Actuarial Science (rwong@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**  
(Dr R W L Wong, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Course Objectives**  
To provide knowledge on basic risk and its management, as well as basic financial planning though insurance products, to students. To allow students to understand the statistical, financial and legal principles underlying the techniques for managing the insurable risks faced by organisations and individuals. Aiming at students who have minimal background in quantitative methods, it involves very minimal quantitative calculations and is not available to students majoring in Actuarial Science.

**Course Contents & Topics**  
The course introduces and explains:  
- risk in our society,  
- insurance and risk,  
- introduction to risk management,  
- fundamental legal principles, and analysis of insurance contracts,  
- life insurance, their contractual provisions,  
- individual health insurance coverages.

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** understand the general risks faced by organisations and individuals and the generic risk management principle
- **CLO 2** demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the underlying financial and legal principles of the insurance industry
- **CLO 3** understand how risk can be managed through insurance
- **CLO 4** compare and contrast different types of commercial and personal insurance products
- **CLO 5** plan for and arrange their own personal insurance needs

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**  
Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601 or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2901.  
(Not available to Actuarial Science students)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**  
Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors (A to F)**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to some familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>Fail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**  
Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**  
Activities  
Details  
No. of Hours  
Lectures  
36  
Tutorials  
12  
Assignment  
100

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**  
Methods  
Details  
Weighting in final course grade (%)  
Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping  
Assignments  
Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)  
25  
CLO 1.3  
Examination  
One 2-hour written examination  
75  
CLO 1,2,3,4,5

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**  

**Course Website**  
moodle.hku.hk

STAT3611  
**Computer-aided data analysis (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**  
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Dr E K F Lam, Statistics & Actuarial Science (hmtlik@hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**  
(Dr E K F Lam, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Course Objectives**  
A wide range of statistical analyses and methods are presented using data sets from social sciences research and scientific studies. Measuring uncertainty, describing patterns of variability and the inter-relationship between several variables are essential aspects of scientific investigations that require good understanding of statistics. This computer-oriented but non-mathematical course develops the important concepts and methods of statistics. The course makes extensive use of computers through the user friendly statistical software JMP. No knowledge of a programming language is required.

**Course Contents & Topics**  
Data exploration, formulation of testable hypotheses, the evaluation of evidence and forecasting on the basis of past experience.

**Course Learning Outcomes**  
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** summarize and describe the quantitative and qualitative data using some simple statistical measures
- **CLO 2** describe the patterns of variability and the inter-relationship between several continuous or discrete variables
- **CLO 3** carry out simple statistical analyses based on some real life data, formulate testable hypotheses, make appropriate statistical inferences and make interpretations on the findings

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible)**  
Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2901 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2901 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT2901 and any University level 2 course); and Not for students who have passed in or have already enrolled in any of these courses: STAT2601, STAT2901, STAT3610.
### Course Information

**Course Code:** STAT3616  
**Offering Department:** Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Course Objective:** With an explosion in information technology in the past decade, vast amounts of data appear in a variety of fields. The challenge of understanding these data with the aim of creating new knowledge and finding new relationships among data attributes has led to the innovative use of statistical methodologies and development of new tools. In this process, a new area called data mining is spawned. This course provides a comprehensive and practical coverage of essential data mining concepts and statistical models for data mining.

**Required/recommended reading and online materials:**

- R. Hooke: How to tell the liars from the Statisticians (Marcel Dekker)
- J. T. McClave & F. H. Dietrich II: Statistics (Maxwell Macmillian, 5th edition)
- M. R. Middleton: Data Analysis Using Microsoft EXCEL 5.0 (Duxbury)
- J. G. Peatman: Introduction to Applied Statistics (Harper)
- J. E. Freund: Statistics: The Art and Science of Learning from Data (Pearson)
- J. E. Freund & G. J. Williams: Statistics: The Exploration of Data (Pearson)
- I. Olkin, L. J. Gleser, & C. Derman: Probability Models and Applications (Prentice-Hall, 2nd ed.)
- R. Hooke: How to tell the liars from the Statisticians (Marcel Dekker)
- J. T. McClave & F. H. Dietrich II: Statistics (Maxwell Macmillian, 5th edition)
- M. R. Middleton: Data Analysis Using Microsoft EXCEL 5.0 (Duxbury)
- J. E. Freund & G. J. Williams: Statistics: The Exploration of Data (Pearson)
- I. Olkin, L. J. Gleser, & C. Derman: Probability Models and Applications (Prentice-Hall, 2nd ed.)
- J. G. Peatman: Introduction to Applied Statistics (Harper)

**Assessment Methods & Weighting:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, practical work, and a term test)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Additional Course Information:** CogSc or CompSc students having taken STAT1301 should obtain approval from the dept.

**Other reference:**

- J. T. McClave & F. H. Dietrich II: Statistics (Maxwell Macmillian, 5th ed.)
- M. R. Middleton: Data Analysis Using Microsoft Excel 5.0 (Duxbury)
- I. Olkin, L. J. Gleser, & C. Derman: Probability Models and Applications (Prentice-Hall, 2nd ed.)
- J. G. Peatman: Introduction to Applied Statistics (Harper)

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):**

- Pass in STAT2602 or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT3902; and Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907, or already enrolled in these courses.

**Course Learning Outcomes:**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: implement data mining process summarized in the acronym SEMMA which stands for sampling, exploring, modifying, modeling, and assessing data.
- CLO 2: understand and apply a wide range of data mining techniques, and recognize their characteristics, strengths, and weaknesses.
- CLO 3: be proficient with the leading data mining software—SAS Enterprise Miner.
- CLO 4: identify and use appropriate data mining techniques for a data mining project, taking into account both the nature of the data to be mined and the goals of the user of the discovered knowledge.
- CLO 5: evaluate the quality of discovered knowledge, taking into account the requirements of the data mining task being solved and the goals of the user.

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities:**

- Activities: Details | No. of Hours
- Lectures: 36
- Tutorials: 12
- Reading / Self study: 100
- Online materials: moodle.hku.hk

**Course Contents & Topics:**

Data pre-processing, classification and regression trees, credit scoring, kNN classifier, cluster analysis and neural networks.

**Course Type:** Lecture-based course

**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr A J Zhan

**Teachers Involved:** (Dr A J Zhan, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018:** Y 2nd sem

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F):**

- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science

STAT3613  Marketing engineering (6 credits)  Academic Year: 2017
Offering Department: Statistics & Actuarial Science  Quota: 50
Course Co-ordinator: Dr C W Kwan, Statistics & Actuarial Science  (ckwkan@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved: (Dr C W Kwan, Statistics & Actuarial Science)
Course Objectives: This course is designed to provide an overview and practical application of trends, technology and methodology used in the marketing survey process including problem formulation, survey design, data collection and analysis, and report writing. Special emphasis will be put on statistical techniques particularly for analysing marketing data including market segmentation, market response models, consumer preference analysis and conjoint analysis. Students will analyse a variety of marketing case studies.
Course Contents & Topics: Marketing decision models, Market response models, Survey research, Statistical methods for segmentation, Statistical methods for positioning, Statistical methods for new product design
Course Learning Outcomes: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 develop hands-on skills of curve fitting and analyzing data with SAS procedures or R packages
- CLO 2 understand marketing decision models
- CLO 3 understand cluster analysis, factor analysis, multidimensional scaling, correspondence analysis, conjoint analysis, choice models, confirmatory factor analysis, and discriminant analysis in market segmentation, positioning and new product design
Pre-requisites and Co-requisites: Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601 or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2901
Offer in 2017-2018: Y  1st sem
Grade Descriptors (A to F): A
- Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B
- Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C
- Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D
- Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presenational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Fail
- Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Course Type: Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities: Activities  Details  No. of Hours
- Lectures: 36
- Tutorials: 12
- Reading / Self study: 100
Assessment Methods and Weighting: Methods  Details  Weighting in final course grade (%)  Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
- Assignments: 30  CLO 1,2,3,5
- Project reports: 30  CLO 1,2,3,4,5
- Test: 40  CLO 2,3
Required/recommended reading and online materials: Tan, P. N., Steinback, M. and Kumar, V.: Introduction to Data Mining (Addison Wesley, 2014, 3rd edition)
J. Han & M. Kamber: Data Mining: Concepts and Techniques (Morgan Kaufmann, 2011, 3rd edition)
Larose, D. T.: Discovering Knowledge in Data: An Introduction to Data Mining (Wiley, 2005)

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

STAT3614 Business forecasting (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Statistics & Actuarial Science Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr R W L Wong, Statistics & Actuarial Science (rwwong@hku.hk)

Course Objectives
In daily business operations, forecasts are routinely required on different aspects of the economy, the market and individual companies. Numerous statistical techniques have been developed in the past decades to provide forecasts for the business decision-maker. This course considers a wide range of such techniques that have proven useful to practitioners. The course will involve the use of computer software, EXCEL, in the teaching process.

Course Contents & Topics
Review of basic statistical concepts; autocorrelation analysis; evaluation and combination of forecasts; moving averages and smoothing methods; simple linear regression; multiple regression; growth curves; time series regression; the handling of seasonal cycles; decomposition methods.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand data patterns and choose a suitable forecasting techniques

CLO 2 understand forecasting methods: moving averages and smoothing methods, decomposition and winter's methods, simple and multiple linear regression

CLO 3 develop hands-on skills of analyzing business data with computer software, EXCEL, and its add-ins functions

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in BIOL2102 or (ECON1280 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course); and Not for students who have passed or already enrolled in any of these courses: STAT2601, STAT2901, STAT3907, STAT4601, ECON2280.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting
Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test) 40 CLO 1
Examination One 2-hour written examination 60 CLO 1,2,3

Required/recommended reading and online materials
P. Newbold & T. B: Introductory Business & Economic Forecasting (ITP, 1994)

Course Website moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information
Also available to CompSc students having taken STAT1301. Students should obtain approval from the course coordinator before choosing this course.

STAT3615 Practical mathematics for investment (6 credits) Academic Year 2017
Offering Department Statistics & Actuarial Science Quota ---
Course Co-ordinator Dr A G Bencichroil, Statistics & Actuarial Science (ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk)

Course Objectives
The main focus of this course is built on the concepts on financial mathematics. Practical applications of these concepts are also considered.

Course Contents & Topics
This course covers: simple and compound interest; annuities certain; discounted cash flow analysis; amortization schedules and sinking funds; yield rates; bonds and related securities; practical applications such as real estate mortgage, short sales and term structure of interest rates.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 solve practical problems relating to annuities certain, simple and compound interest

CLO 2 carry out discounted cash flow analysis

CLO 3 apply amortization schedules and sinking funds to the practical problems such as real estate mortgage

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in STAT1601 and any University level 2 course) or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2601 or (STAT1603 and any University level 2 course) or STAT2901; and Not for students who have passed in STAT2902, or have already enrolled in this course.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

Grade Descriptors (A to F)
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability
Advanced SAS programming (6 credits)

Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science

Use advanced SAS programming statements and techniques to solve complex problems

Offered in 2017 - 2018 (A+ to F)

Grade Descriptors

A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website: moodle.hku.hk

STAT3616

Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Course Website: moodle.hku.hk

STAT3617

Sample survey methods (6 credits)

Academic Year 2017
## Course Objectives

This course will cover design and implementation of sample surveys and analysis of statistical data thus obtained. Survey design includes overall survey design, design of sampling schemes and questionnaires, etc. Sampling methods include sample size determination, sampling and non-sampling errors and biases, methods of estimation of parameters from survey data, imputation for missing data etc.

## Course Contents & Topics

Topics may include: survey design and planning; survey quality and ethics; implementation matters like management of survey staff, respondent relationship and logistical issues ; and sampling methods like simple random sampling, systematic sampling, stratified sampling, cluster sampling, multi-stage sampling, sample size determination, post-stratification, ratio and regression estimation methods, non-sampling errors and biases, non-responses and missing data. Case studies of major applications of sample survey methods in the public and private sectors, with some examples on the analysis and application of the statistical data thus produced, will be discussed.

## Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the various steps to be taken in the planning and implementation of sample surveys
- CLO 2 design different sample schemes and select the most efficient and suitable one for adoption for a particular survey - make statistical inference on parameters based on a sample
- CLO 3 judge whether the statistics presented by other survey takers are trustworthy

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Paes or already enrolled in BIOL2102, or (ECON280 and any University level 2 course), or (STAT1601 and any University level 2 course), or (STAT1602 and any University level 2 course), or STAT2601, or (STAT1603and any University level 2 course), or STAT2901.

### Course Learning Outcomes Table

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>C</th>
<th>D</th>
<th>Fail</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1, CLO 2, CLO 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 2, CLO 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

- W. G. Cochran: Sampling Techniques (John Wiley & Sons Ltd., 1997)

### Course Website

moodle.hku.hk
### STAT3620

**Offering Department**
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr P L H Yu, Statistics & Actuarial Science (plhyy@hku.hk)

**Course Objectives**
The course aims to acquaint students with the fundamentals, basic properties and use of classical and modern nonparametric statistical methods for data analysis.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Topics may include: order-statistics; goodness-of-fit tests; rank tests for single-sample and two-independent samples; tests for designed experiments; permutation tests; tests for trends and association; jackknife and bootstrapping methods; nonparametric regression.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 identify appropriate nonparametric methods for analyzing data
- CLO 2 perform a variety of nonparametric statistical analyses
- CLO 3 gain a working proficiency in the use of statistical software for data management and performing basic nonparametric statistical analyses
- CLO 4 effectively communicate findings and conclusions

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk
Course Name: STAT3621 Data visualization (6 credits)

Course Website: moodle.hku.hk

Offering Department: Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator: Dr S K C Cheung, Statistics & Actuarial Science (simonkc@hku.hk)

Course Objectives:
Building on prior coursework in statistical methods and modeling, students will get a deeper understanding of the entire process of data analysis. The course aims to develop skills of model selection and hypotheses formulation so that questions of interest can be properly formulated and answered. An important element deals with model review and improvement, when one's first attempt does not adequately fit the data. Students will learn how to explore the data, to build reliable models, and to communicate the results of data analysis to a variety of audiences.

Course Contents & Topics:
Descriptive statistics, presentation and visualization of data; Simple statistical analyses for the one-sample and two-sample case using parametric and nonparametric methods; Regression analyses: model fitting; variable selection and model diagnostic checking; Analysis of Variance (ANOVA): 1-way, two-way and higher-way ANOVA; Covariance analysis; Categorical and count data: binary logistic regression, Poisson regression.

Real data sets will be presented for modelling and analysis using statistical software for gaining hands-on experience.

Course Learning Outcomes:
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 make good sense of the problem and identify what to measure for the question of interest
- CLO 2 summarize and describe the quantitative and qualitative data using some simple appropriate statistical measures
- CLO 3 identify the association among several continuous or discrete variables
- CLO 4 carry out appropriate and comprehensive statistical analyses based on real life data including model selection, perform model diagnostics, formulate testable hypotheses, make appropriate statistical inferences, make interpretations on the findings and report writing

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations):
Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907
(Students are strongly recommended to take STAT2603 prior to taking this course.)

Grade Descriptors:
A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Show limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods and Weighting:
- Examination One 3-hour written examination 50 CLO 1,2,3
- Assignments Coursework (assignments and a class test) 50 CLO 1,2,3
- Examination One 2-hour written examination 50 CLO 1,2,3

Course Website: moodle.hku.hk

Required/recommended reading and online materials:
Course Objectives

To enhance students' knowledge of a particular topic and students' self-directed learning and critical thinking skills.

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. [Work of A+ should show considerable additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.]

CLO 2 Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

CLO 3 Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

CLO 4 Demonstrate partial but limited grasp of the subject. Retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Pre-requisites

Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

F Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Assessment Methods & Weighting

Presentations oral presentation and in-class discussion 40 CLO 1,2,3,4

Reports written report 60 CLO 1,2,3,4

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Activities Details No. of Hours

Lectures 36

Tutorials

Reading / Self study 100

Activities Details No. of Hours

Lectures

Tutorials

Reading / Self study

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination No Exam

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Methods Details

Presentation oral presentation and in-class discussion 40 CLO 1,2,3,4

Reports written report 60 CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination No Exam

Course Description

This course is aimed at students majoring in Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics Majors; and Not for students who have already enrolled in STAT4799 in this academic year. This capstone course is only for students majoring in Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics; and subject to the consent of course coordinator. This course is mutually exclusive with STAT4710. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics Majors; and Not for students who have already enrolled in STAT4799 in this academic year.

CLO 1 make concise oral presentation of the findings of a research study. Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of visualizing texts.
### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Course Website
- moodle.hku.hk

---

### STAT3902
#### Statistical models (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</th>
<th>Quota</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| Course Co-ordinator | Dr G C S Lui, Statistics & Actuarial Science (csglui@hku.hk) |

| Course Objectives | This course is on the basis of 'STAT2901 Probability and Statistics: Foundation of Actuarial Science'. It will further study the concepts and methods of statistics. The course will lay emphasis on the estimation and hypothesis testing, the two major areas of statistical inference. Through the study of this course, students will be equipped with both quantitative skills and qualitative perceptions essential for making rigorous statistical analysis of data. |

| Course Contents & Topics | Distribution and density function of random variables; Order statistics, central limit theorem, Maximum likelihood estimator (MLE), moment estimator, Bayesian estimator, properties of estimators, limiting properties of MLE; Confidence interval estimations for normal mean, the difference of two normal means, normal variance, the ratio of |

| Course Website | moodle.hku.hk |
two normal variances, and large-sample confidence intervals; Power function, Neyman-Pearson Lemma, likelihood ratio test, and goodness of fit test.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** understand the importance of sufficient statistic(s) in data reduction and statistical inferences such as point estimation, confidence interval estimation, and testing hypothesis
- **CLO 2** derive maximum likelihood estimators of parameters to calculate maximum likelihood estimates
- **CLO 3** locate pivotal quantity to construct confidence intervals of parameters
- **CLO 4** find testing statistic to test hypotheses associated with one-sample and/or two-sample normal distributions with small sample sizes and non-normal distributions with large sample sizes

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in STAT2901;
- Not for students who have passed in STAT2602, or already enrolled in this course; and
- For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.

#### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Y</th>
<th>1st sem</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Dec</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### Course Website

moodle.hku.hk
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required/recommended reading and online materials</td>
<td>S. M. Ross: Introduction to Probability Models (9th edition)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td>moodle.hku.hk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**STAT3904**

**Offering Department**: Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr D Lee, Statistics & Actuarial Science (leeedv@hku.hk)

**Course Objectives**: This course is designed for actuarial science students to receive VEE-Corporate Finance from Society of Actuaries. The objective of this course is to introduce students to the fundamental principles of corporate finance. The course will provide students with a systematic framework within which to evaluate investment and financing decisions for corporations.

**Course Contents & Topics**: The first part of the course will give an introduction to corporate finance and provide an overview of some topics covered in STAT2902 and STAT3615. These include: financial markets and companies; present value and net present value, financial instruments and dividends derivatives market, no-arbitrage pricing theory, binomial model and Black-Scholes option pricing formula. The main part of the course will focus on some important topics of corporate finance including: capital structure and dividend policy, financial leverage and firm value, market efficiency, risk and return, investment decision using Markowitz mean variance analysis, CAPM, long term financing, measures and performance assessment of financial performance using various measures.

**Course Learning Outcomes**: On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the factors to be considered by a company when deciding on its capital structure and dividend policy, and also the impact of financial leverage and long/short term financing policies on capital structure
- CLO 2 calculate the value of bonds and stocks
- CLO 3 assess financial performance using various measures
- CLO 4 understand the mean-variance portfolio theory

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**: [Pass in ACCT1101 and STAT2902] or [Pass in STAT3610 and STAT3615]; and Not for students who have passed in FINA1310, or have already enrolled in this course.


**Examination**: May

**Course Type**: Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


**Course Website**: moodle.hku.hk

**STAT3905**

**Offering Department**: Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**: Dr K C Cheung, Statistics & Actuarial Science (kkcg@hku.hk)

**Course Objectives**: This course aims at providing an understanding of the fundamental concepts of financial derivatives. Emphases
are on basic trading and hedging strategies, and the concept of no-arbitrage.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 define and recognize the definitions of terms commonly used in derivatives markets
CLO 2 evaluate the payoff and profit of basic derivative contracts, including forwards, futures, options, and swaps
CLO 3 explain how derivative securities can be used as tools to manage financial risk

Pre-requisites
Pass in STAT2902; and
For students who have passed in STAT3618, or have already enrolled in this course; and
For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.

Risk theory I (6 credits)

Offering in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y
Examination Dec

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test) 25 CLO 1,2,3
Examination One 3-hour written examination 75 CLO 1,2,3

Reading / Self study reading and online materials


Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

STAT3906
Risk theory I (6 credits)
Academic Year 2017
Quota ---

Offering Department Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator Dr K C Cheung, Statistics & Actuarial Science (kccg@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Dr K C Cheung, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

Course Objectives
Risk theory is one of the main topics in actuarial science. Risk theory is the applications of statistical models and stochastic processes to insurance problems such as the premium calculation.

Course Contents & Topics
Severity models; frequency models; collective risk models; coverage modifications; risk measures; simulation.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand the individual risk model and the collective risk model, evaluate the distribution and expectation of the total claim amounts
CLO 2 estimate the premium of a policyholder and the total claim amounts made in previous years
CLO 3 calculate some commonly used risk measures and explain their use and limitation
CLO 4 apply simulation methods within the context of actuarial models

Pre-requisites
Pass in STAT3903, or already enrolled in this course; or
Pass in MATH3603 or STAT3603

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y
Examination May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Activities Details No. of Hours
Lectures 36
Tutorials 12
Reading / Self study 100
### STAT3907

**Linear models and forecasting (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr G Li, Statistics & Actuarial Science (gdl@hkuspace.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
(Dr G Li, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Course Objectives**
This course deals with applied statistical methods of linear models and investigates various forecasting procedures through using linear models and time series analysis.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Regression and multiple linear regression; predicting; generalised linear model; time series models including autoregressive, moving average, autoregressive-moving average and integrated models; forecasting.

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902, or already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3600, or have already enrolled in this course; and For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**
- **A**: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **F**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**
Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**
- **Activities**: Details | No. of Hours
  - Lectures: 36
  - Tutorials: 12
  - Reading / Self study: 100

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

---

### STAT3908

**Credibility theory and loss distributions (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**
Dr A G Benchimol, Statistics & Actuarial Science (ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**
(Dr A G Benchimol, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Course Objectives**
Credibility is an example of a statistical estimate. The idea of credibility is very useful in premium calculation. Insurance loss varies according to the business nature, what distribution should be used to fit a particular loss is both of theoretical interest and practical importance. This course covers important actuarial and statistical methods.

**Course Contents & Topics**
Limited fluctuation approach; Buhlman's approach; Bayesian approach; empirical Bayes parameter estimations; construction and selection of parametric models; properties and estimation of failure time and loss distributions, determination of the acceptability of a fitted model; comparison of fitted models; simulation of both discrete and continuous random variables.

**Course Learning Outcomes**
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 apply limited fluctuation (classical) credibility including criteria for both full and partial credibility
- CLO 2 perform Bayesian analysis using both discrete and continuous models
- CLO 3 apply Buhlmann and Buhlmann-Straub models and understand the relationship of these to the Bayesian...
model

CLO 4 apply conjugate priors in Bayesian analysis and in particular the Poisson-gamma model
CLO 5 apply empirical Bayesian methods in the nonparametric and semiparametric cases
CLO 6 construct and select empirical models
CLO 7 determine the acceptability of a fitted model and/or compare models

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902 or STAT3906</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>1st sem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Dec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffectual.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Website</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>moodle.hku.hk</td>
<td>Online materials</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Objectives

The objective of the course is to prepare students for the Non-traditional Life Insurance parts of the Models for Life Contingencies (MLC) course of the Society of Actuaries. Emphasis will be placed on applications of more advanced theories of life contingencies.

Course Contents & Topics

This course is a continuation of the materials covered in STAT3901. We shall discuss the following topics: Future loss random variable, Benefit reserves, Cash flow projection, Present value of cash flows, Expenses and asset shares.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 calculate benefit reserves for life insurances and annuities
CLO 2 incorporate expenses in gross premium and calculate policy value based on the gross premium for life insurances and annuities
CLO 3 understand multiple decrement models and calculate the life insurances and annuities in models with multi decrements
CLO 4 understand the multiple state model and the Kolmogorov forward equations
CLO 5 understand multiple life models and calculate the life insurances and annuities in multi-life models
CLO 6 understand the interest risk and calculate the life insurances and annuities when the interest rate is not a constant, and understand profit testing

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in STAT3901, or already enrolled in this course; and For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Y</td>
<td>2nd sem</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffectual.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Course Teaching

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Graduation Year

2017

Quota

---
& Learning Activities | Lectures | 36 | Tutorials | 12 | Reading / Self study | 100
---|---|---|---|---|---|---
Assessment Methods and Weighting | Methods | Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments | Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test) | 25 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Examination | One 3-hour written examination | 75 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
---|---|---|---|---|---|---
Course Website | moodle.hku.hk
---|---|---|---|---|---|---
STAT3910 | Financial economics I (6 credits) | Academic Year | 2017
Offering Department | Statistics & Actuarial Science
Course Co-ordinator | Prof H L Yang, Statistics & Actuarial Science (hlyang@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved | (Prof H L Yang, Statistics & Actuarial Science)
Course Objectives | This course is a basic course on the derivative market. The course covers discrete-time models, volatility estimation, and Black-Scholes formula and its variations. The course also includes some basic risk management ideas and methods. This course and STAT3911 will cover all the concepts, principles and techniques needed for SoA Exam MFE.
Course Contents & Topics | Option market; European and American options; conditional expectation and discrete-time martingale, discrete-time option-pricing theory; binomial model and its Greeks; true probabilities vs. risk-neutral probabilities; estimating volatility; the Black-Scholes formula; implied volatility; Greeks again; market-making and hedging; exotic options.
Course Learning Outcomes | On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 calculate option price using binomial tree
CLO 2 understand the risk neutral probability
CLO 3 understand basic probability theory, include probability space, random variable, conditional probability, conditional expectation and discrete time martingale
CLO 4 understand the Black-Scholes formula and its assumptions, the option Greeks, option elasticity, and implied volatility
CLO 5 understand the hedging strategies and portfolio, market-maker risk, self-financing portfolio
CLO 6 understand exotic options
Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) | Pass in STAT2602 or STAT3902; and Not for students who have passed in STAT3618, or have already enrolled in this course; and Not for students who have passed in FINA2322, or have already enrolled in this course.
Offer in 2017 - 2018 | Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y
Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) | A | Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B | Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C | Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D | Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
Fail | Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Course Type | Lecture-based course
Course Teaching & Learning Activities | Activities | Details | No. of Hours
---|---|---|---
Lectures | 36
Tutorials | 12
Reading / Self study | 100
Assessment Methods and Weighting | Methods | Details | Weighting in final course grade (%) | Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping
Assignments | Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test) | 25 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Examination | One 3-hour written examination | 75 | CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6
Required/recommended reading and online materials | Robert L. McDonald: Derivatives Markets (2nd edition), Chapters 10-14
Lecture notes on conditional expectations and martingale
Course Website | moodle.hku.hk
---|---|---|---|---|---|---
STAT3911 | Financial economics II (6 credits) | Academic Year | 2017
Offering Department | Statistics & Actuarial Science
Course Co-ordinator | Prof H L Yang, Statistics & Actuarial Science (hlyang@hku.hk)
Teachers Involved | (Prof H L Yang, Statistics & Actuarial Science)
Course Objectives | This course is an advanced course on the option pricing theory. The course covers Black-Scholes equation and stochastic calculus, and interest models. This course and STAT3910 will cover all the concepts, principles and techniques needed for SoA Exam MFE.
Course Contents & Topics | Brownian motion; introduction to stochastic calculus; arithmetic and geometric Brownian motion; Ito formula; Sharpe ratio and risk premium; Black-Scholes equation; risk-neutral stock-price process and option pricing; option's elasticity and volatility; Vasicek, Cox-Ingersoll-Ross, and Black-Derman-Toy models; delta-hedging for
Advanced contingencies (6 credits)

CLO 1 understand Brownian motion and its properties
CLO 2 understand the Ito calculus and Ito formula
CLO 3 understand the Black-Scholes model and option pricing theory
CLO 4 understand the delta hedging and some basic risk management methods
CLO 5 understand some basic interest rate models

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in MATH3603 or STAT3603 or STAT3903 or STAT3910

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination May

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework, assignments, tutorials, and a class test</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials

Alison Etheridge: A Course in Financial Calculus (2002)
Steven Shreve: Stochastic Calculus for Finance II Continuous-Time Models (2008)

Course Website moodle.hku.hk

STAT3951 Advanced contingencies (6 credits) Academic Year 2017

Offering Department Statistics & Actuarial Science Quota ---

Course Co-ordinator Dr D Lee, Statistics & Actuarial Science (leedav@hku.hk)

Course Objectives

This course covers more advanced stochastic models and actuarial techniques used in the field of life and non-life insurance. [Students are reminded that this course is a part of the requirement for the exemption from the Subject CT5 Contingencies of the Institute and Faculty of Actuaries, U.K.]

Course Contents & Topics

Topic covers further analysis of the multiple state model, unit-linked contracts; cost of guarantees and options; applications of actuarial techniques to a wide range of insurance problems. Equity linked insurance products and valuation of these products. Simple dividend-ruin models for non-life insurance portfolio.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
CLO 1 understand how to use multiple state models to evaluate expected cashflows dependent upon state transitions
CLO 2 understand the equity linked insurance products, and the method and idea of valuing the equity linked insurance products
CLO 3 understand the Esscher transform and its application to option pricing
CLO 4 value equity-linked death benefits
CLO 5 evaluate ruin probabilities in simple risk processes for non-life insurance
CLO 6 evaluate expected discounted dividends in simple risk processes with dividends

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in STAT3903; and Pass in STAT3910, or already enrolled in this course; and For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination Dec

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Books

Steven Shreve: Stochastic Calculus for Finance II Continuous-Time Models (2008)
Alison Etheridge: A Course in Financial Calculus (2002)
Steven Shreve: Stochastic Calculus for Finance II Continuous-Time Models (2008)
This course provides an overview on the problems faced by actuaries when applying fundamental actuarial concepts to investment practice. This course will cover the following topics: Investment Management Process, Asset Allocation, Managing Fixed Income Portfolios and Performance Measurement.

The main objective of this course is to introduce students to some of the methods and procedures commonly used in the management of an investment portfolio. Emphasis will be placed on methods to tackle problems faced by insurance industry such as investment strategy formulation and interest rate risk management.

This course provides an overview on the problems faced by actuaries when applying fundamental actuarial concepts to investment practice. This course will cover the following topics: Investment Management Process, Asset Allocation, Managing Fixed Income Portfolios and Performance Measurement.

The main objective of this course is to introduce students to some of the methods and procedures commonly used in the management of an investment portfolio. Emphasis will be placed on methods to tackle problems faced by insurance industry such as investment strategy formulation and interest rate risk management.

This course provides an overview on the problems faced by actuaries when applying fundamental actuarial concepts to investment practice. This course will cover the following topics: Investment Management Process, Asset Allocation, Managing Fixed Income Portfolios and Performance Measurement.

The main objective of this course is to introduce students to some of the methods and procedures commonly used in the management of an investment portfolio. Emphasis will be placed on methods to tackle problems faced by insurance industry such as investment strategy formulation and interest rate risk management.
### STAT3953: Fundamentals of actuarial practice (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Mr P P Y Lau, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science (<a href="mailto:ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk">ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>Mr P P Y Lau, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science (<a href="mailto:ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk">ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>This course teaches students about the business environment and exposes them to practical real-world situations using the actuarial control cycle as a framework.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>This course provides an overview on selected materials relating to the following topics: Role of the Professional Actuary, External Forces, Risk in Actuarial Problems, Design and Pricing of Actuarial Solutions. Emphasis will be placed on applications to various financial security programmes including individual life insurance, group insurance, social security plans, retirement plans, investment funds and property &amp; casualty insurance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1 provide introductory description of financial security systems, common actuarial techniques and practical experiences</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 describe actuarial practices, principles, approaches, methods, commonalities, problems and solutions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 explain actuarial practices across the traditional areas of practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 4 explain actuarial practices as applied directly on behalf of financial security system providers or as a consultant to those providers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 5 apply actuarial skills in nontraditional and emerging areas of practice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 6 provide context for the specific mathematical and technical skills developed in the basic actuarial courses</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 7 prepare for the professional role as an Associate of the Society of Actuaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3909; and For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offer in 2017 - 2018</td>
<td>Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Type</td>
<td>Lecture-based course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Presentation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Project reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Test</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 4.5.6.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required/recommended reading and online materials</td>
<td>Klugman, S.: Understanding Actuarial Practice (Society of Actuaries, 2012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td>moodle.hku.hk</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### STAT3954: Current topics in actuarial science (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>TBC, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>TBC, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>This course aims at providing practical elements for actuarial students including daily life actuarial practice and the basic capability to understand, research in and handle the laws as and when situations would arise, which will benefit students in their coming future career.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>This course covers a full range of topics related to both areas including 1) Practical Actuarial Practice and 2) Actuaries' Legal Thinking.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For Practical Actuarial Practice: It covers the major practical topics in both Life and Casualty areas. For Life Insurance, it covers the full picture of actuarial control cycle including Product Pricing, Valuation, Financial Reporting and Experience Analysis. For General Insurance, it covers the backbone areas including Product Pricing and Valuation.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| | For Actuaries’ Legal Thinking: This is the 7th year of the course and the full start of a new course structure echoing changes in the market for basic legal and general insurance skills for actuaries. Intellectually stimulating recent legal materials with heavy involvement of actuarial and other general insurance expertise would dominate the
course, alongside with basic legal research skills and fundamental legal thinking. Sharing of experience from guests from the General Insurance Industry would also infiltrate the course.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 have a basic understanding regarding Actuarial Control Cycle from A to Z for Life Insurance and General Insurance

CLO 2 possess some experience regarding fundamental actuarial practice through practical project

CLO 3 possess basic understanding of the legal system in Hong Kong

CLO 4 possess fundamental knowledge in certain core legal aspects such as the law of contract and the law of tort

CLO 5 possess fundamental knowledge of the law of insurance

CLO 6 conduct elementary legal researches when facing with legal problems

CLO 7 understand the basic elements of a routine judgment, the matrix of the facts and the law involved

Pass in STAT3901, or already enrolled in this course; or

Pass in STAT3909, or already enrolled in this course; and

For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.

N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : N Examination ---

Course Type Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities Activities Details No. of Hours

Lectures 36

Tutorials 12

Reading / Self study 100

Assessment Methods and Weighting Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Assignments Coursework (assignments, practical project & class test(s)) 100 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6,7

Course Website moodle.hku.hk

STAT395 Survival analysis (6 credits)

Offering Department Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator Dr J F Xu, Statistics & Actuarial Science (jxfj@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved (Dr J F Xu,Statistics & Actuarial Science)

Course Objectives This course is concerned with how models which predict the survival pattern of humans or other entities are established. This exercise is sometimes referred to as survival-model construction.

The nature and properties of parametric and nonparametric survival models will be studied. Topics to be covered include: the introduction of some important basic quantities like the hazard function and survival function; some commonly used parametric survival models; concepts of censoring and/or truncation; parametric estimation of the survival distribution by maximum likelihood estimation method; nonparametric estimation of the survival functions from possibly censored samples by means of the Kaplan-Meier estimator, the Nelson-Aalen estimator, and the kernel density estimator or the Ramlau-Hansen estimator and comparisons of k independent survival functions by means of the generalized log-rank test; parametric regression models; Cox's semiparametric proportional hazards regression model; and multivariate survival analysis.

Course Contents & Topics

Course Learning Outcomes On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 acquire a clear understanding of the nature of failure time data or survival data, a generalization of the concept of death and life

CLO 2 perform estimation for some commonly used survival models under different types of censoring mechanisms

CLO 3 analyze survival data using the Cox's semiparametric proportional hazards model

CLO 4 extend the Cox's model to a multivariate setup to accommodate multivariate survival data

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations) Pass in STAT3902. or already enrolled in this course; or

Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3901


Grade Descriptors (A+ to F) A

Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B

Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C

Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, but with limited ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D

Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail

Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Grade Descriptors

Course Type

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Course Website

Offering Department

Course Co-ordinator

Teachers Involved

Course Objectives

Course Contents & Topics

Course Learning Outcomes

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Offer in 2017 - 2018

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)
of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Type</th>
<th>Lecture-based course</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination One 3-hour written examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td>moodle.hku.hk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STAT3956</td>
<td>Pension funds and pension mathematics (6 credits)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Offering Department</td>
<td>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Prof G Ma, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science (<a href="mailto:gma328@hku.hk">gma328@hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>(Prof G Ma, Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Objectives</td>
<td>This course covers the basics of pension plan design and pension fund management, as well as the fundamentals of pension plan valuations using different actuarial cost methods. The students will be introduced to the application of actuarial valuation techniques to the funding and accounting of pension plans.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Contents &amp; Topics</td>
<td>The following topics will be covered: Fundamentals of private pension plans; pricing and valuation of pension obligations; actuarial cost methods and their effects on cost patterns; selection of actuarial assumptions; principles of asset and liability management.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Learning Outcomes</td>
<td>On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 1 calculate the pension benefits in accordance with the provisions of a pension plan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 2 calculate the normal cost and actuarial liabilities using different actuarial cost methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 3 perform gain and loss analyses for pension valuations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 4 select appropriate assumptions and methods for funding or accounting purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 5 interpret the valuation results presented in actuarial valuation reports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CLO 6 understand the principles of asset and liability modeling as related to pension plans</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pre-requisites and Co-requisites (and Impermissible combinations)</td>
<td>Pass in STAT3909; and For BSc(Actuarial Science) students only.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</td>
<td>A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Failing Demonstrates little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>Examination One 3-hour written examination 75 CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</td>
<td>2017</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Type</td>
<td>Lecture-based course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</td>
<td>Activities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assessment Methods and Weighting</td>
<td>Methods</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination One 3-hour written examination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actuarial Standard of Practice No. 27, Selection of Economic Assumptions for Measuring Pension Obligations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actuarial Standard of Practice No. 35, Selection of Demographic and Other Noneconomic Assumptions for Measuring Pension Obligations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Actuarial Standard of Practice No. 44, Selection and Use of Asset Valuation Methods for Pension Valuations</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2001 Supplement to Actuarial Cost Methods-A Review, ACTEX Publications</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Course Website</td>
<td><a href="http://moodle.hku.hk">http://moodle.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Time-series analysis (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Quota</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT4601</td>
<td>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Time-series analysis</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Offering Department:** Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr G Li, Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Teachers Involved:** (Dr G Li, Statistics & Actuarial Science)  
**Course Objectives:** A time series consists of a set of observations on a random variable taken over time. Time series arise naturally in climatology, economics, environment studies, finance and many other disciplines. The observations in a time series are usually correlated; the course establishes a framework to discuss this. This course distinguishes different type of time series, investigates various representations for the processes and studies the relative merits of different forecasting procedures. Students will analyse real time-series data on the computer.

**Course Contents & Topics:** Stationarity and the autocorrelation functions; linear stationary models; linear non-stationary models; model identification; estimation and diagnostic checking; seasonal models and forecasting methods for time series.

**Course Learning Outcomes:** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 recognize a stationary vs non-stationary time series
- CLO 2 understand some basic properties of commonly used time series models such as AR (autoregressive), MA (moving average) and ARMA models
- CLO 3 transform non-stationary time series into stationary ones
- CLO 4 identify different time series models based on autocorrelation functions
- CLO 5 fit a suitable AR, MA or ARMA model to real data using SAS (after transforming to stationarity if necessary)
- CLO 6 perform goodness of fit tests for such models
- CLO 7 do forecasting with these fitted time series models

**Pre-requisites:**
- Pass in STAT3600, and
- Not for students who have passed in STAT3614, or have already enrolled in this course;
- Not for students who have passed in STAT3907, or have already enrolled in this course.

**Offer in 2017 - 2018 Grade Descriptors (A to F):**
- A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- E: Demonstrate very little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities and logical coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Assessment Methods and Weighting:**
- Examination (One 2-hour written examination): 60%
- Assignments (coursework, assignments, tutorials, and a class test): 40%

**Required/recommended reading and online materials:**

**Course Website:** moodle.hku.hk

---

# Multivariate data analysis (6 credits)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Code</th>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Course Title</th>
<th>Academic Year</th>
<th>Quota</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>STAT6402</td>
<td>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</td>
<td>Multivariate data analysis</td>
<td>2017</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Offering Department:** Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Prof T W K Fung, Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Teachers Involved:** (Prof T W K Fung, Statistics & Actuarial Science)  
**Course Objectives:** In many designed experiments or observational studies, the researchers are dealing with multivariate data, where each observation is a set of measurements taken on the same individual. These measurements are often correlated. The correlation prevents the use of univariate statistics to draw inferences. This course develops the statistical methods for analysing multivariate data through examples in various fields of application and hands-on experience with the statistical software SAS.


**Course Learning Outcomes:** On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 analyze multivariate data with main SAS procedures, such as PROC IML, PROC REG, PROC CORR, PROC CANCORR, PROC PRINCOMP, PROC FACTOR, PROC DISCRIM, PROC CANDISC and etc
- CLO 2 compare the mean structure of multiple measurements for one or more than one population(s) by multivariate MANOVA and profile analysis
- CLO 3 investigate the linear associations among one/two group(s) of variables by multiple, partial and canonical correlation and multivariate regression
- CLO 4 explore the latent linear structure of a data set with multiple measurements by principal components
## Course Description

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

- Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>2018</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>May</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Teachers Involved**

Dr K P Wat, Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- Srivastava M. S.: Methods of Multivariate Statistics (John Wiley and Sons, 2002)
- SAS Manuals on-line: Use the HELP button.

**Course Website**

moodle.hku.hk

**Course Contents & Topics**

- Liquidity risk; Operational risk; Model risk; Enterprise risk management; Cutting edge risk analytics and innovations in risk management.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1** gain insights into current advances in risk management
- **CLO 2** understand current risk management pitfalls and development
- **CLO 3** make effective use of models and techniques for managing various kinds of risk

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in STAT3618 and STAT4601

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>2018</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>May</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods Details**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade Descriptors**

- **A** Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B** Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.
Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assignments</th>
<th>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, class test(s) and project(s))</th>
<th>50</th>
<th>CLO 1,2,3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

- Basel Committee on Banking Supervision: Basel III: A global regulatory framework for more resilient banks and banking systems (BIS, 2010)

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

---

**STAT4606**

**Risk management and Basel Accords in banking and finance (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**

Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**

Mr P K Y Pang, Statistics & Actuarial Science (the_pang@yahoo.com)

**Teachers Involved**

(Mr P K Y Pang, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Course Objectives**

To provide comprehensive knowledge and in-depth understanding of risk management in the banking and finance industry to students. The focus is on business with basic measurement fundamentals only forming part of the course. Accordingly, minimal background in quantitative methods will be required and involved. However, basic financial product (eg: bonds, swaps, options) knowledge will be required.

**Course Contents & Topics**

The course introduces and explains:

- the importance of risk management,
- risk nature and types,
- design and establishment of a risk management framework,
- the importance of people and corporate culture,
- the complete risk management cycle,
- measurement and management of credit, market and operational risks,
- Basel accords and the capital treatments for credit, market and operational risks,
- key developments (eg: Know-Your-Customers, Anti-Money laundering, Sarbanes-Oxley) and critical issues,
- the importance of business continuity,
- design and implementation of a business continuity plan.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the importance, nature and classification of various risks, and the risk management principle and cycle
- CLO 2 design and establish a risk management framework
- CLO 3 demonstrate knowledge and understanding of the measurements of credit, market and operational risks
- CLO 4 explain and describe Basel accords and its capital treatments for credit, market and operational risks
- CLO 5 appreciate the importance of, design and implement a business continuity plan

**Pre-requisites and Co-requisites (and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in STAT3618 or STAT3910 or STAT3905 or (FINA2322 and any University level 3 course)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- **A** Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B** Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

**Methods**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assignments</th>
<th>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</th>
<th>40</th>
<th>CLO 1,2,3,4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**


**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

**Additional Course Information**

This course is previously called STAT2320 as the prerequisite changed to STAT3303.

**STAT4607**

**Credit risk analysis (6 credits)**

**Academic Year**

2017
## Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science

### Course Details

**Offering Department:** Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Course Co-ordinator:** Dr K P Wat, Statistics & Actuarial Science (watkp@hku.hk)  
**Teachers Involved:** (Dr K P Wat, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

### Course Objectives
For a commercial bank, credit risk has always been the most significant. It is the risk of default on debt, swap, or other counterparty instruments. Credit risk may also result from a change in the value of an asset resulting from a change in the counterparty's creditworthiness. This course will introduce students to quantitative models for measuring and managing credit risk. It also aims to provide students with an understanding of the credit risk methodology used in the financial industry and the regulatory framework in which the credit risk models operate.

### Course Contents & Topics
Probabilities of default, recovery rates and loss given default; Default and credit migration; credit scoring and internal rating models; Credit portfolio models such as CreditMetrics, CreditPortfolioView, KMV and actuarial approach; Credit derivatives.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand the Basel requirements for credit risk
- CLO 2 estimate credit scores using the logit model
- CLO 3 understand and estimate default probabilities using various approaches such as Moody’s KMV and the mortality model
- CLO 4 understand the concept of credit value-at-risk and the CreditMetrics approach
- CLO 5 understand default correlations
- CLO 6 assess rating systems

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in STAT3618 or STAT3905 or STAT3910 or (FINA2322 and any University level 3 course)

### Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

### Grade Descriptors (A to F)
- **A** Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B** Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C** Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D** Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **F** Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Course Type
Lecture-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and class test(s))</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

### Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

### STAT4608
**Offering Department:** Statistics & Actuarial Science  
**Teachers Involved:** (Dr Z Zhang, Statistics & Actuarial Science (zhangz08@hku.hk))  
**Quota** ---

### Course Objectives
Financial risk management has experienced a revolution in the last decade thanks to the introduction of new methods for measuring risk, particularly Value-at-Risk (VaR). This course introduces modern risk management techniques covering the measurement of market risk using VaR models and financial time series models, and stress testing.

### Course Contents & Topics
Risk Measures; Value-at-Risk (VaR) models (parametric, Monte Carlo simulation and Historical simulation); Risk factor mapping; Advanced VaR models (GARCH-type models, extreme-value theory and normal-mixture); Principal Component Analysis and VaR; Backtesting and stress testing.

### Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:
- CLO 1 understand VaR and expected shortfall as risk measures
- CLO 2 compute VaR and expected shortfall
- CLO 3 model volatility using GARCH-type models
- CLO 4 understand extreme-value theory
- CLO 5 understand backtesting and stress testing
### STAT4609 Big data analytics (6 credits)

**Offering Department**
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Academic Year**
2017

**Quota**
50

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors**
(A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**
Pass in STAT3907 and STAT3910, or Pass in STAT4601 and (FINA2320 or STAT3609)

**Course Type**
Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

---

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in STAT3907 and STAT3910, or Pass in STAT4601 and (FINA2320 or STAT3609)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors**
(A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**
Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

---

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in STAT3907 and STAT3910, or Pass in STAT4601 and (FINA2320 or STAT3609)

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**
Y 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y

**Grade Descriptors**
(A+ to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Details</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Course Type**
Lecture-based course

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## STAT4711

### Capstone experience for actuarial science undergraduates (6 credits)

**Offering Department**  
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Website**  
moodle.hku.hk

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Prof G Yin, Statistics & Actuarial Science  
(ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk)

**Teachers Involved**  
(Prof G Yin, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

This project-based course aims to provide students with capstone experience to formulate and investigate real life problems in the area of statistics, risk management, finance, climate, social science, medicine and scientific research by integrating and applying the statistical theories and quantitative techniques learnt in their junior university years.

### Course Contents & Topics

No formal teaching. Students are expected to devote 120-140 hours working on this project. Students will work in groups of four or five under the supervision of a teacher. Students are required to give a presentation on their work two to three weeks before the end of the semester, and submit their final report at the end of the semester.

It aims to help the students to establish a good and solid foundation of life-long learning skills, and to enable students to equip with hands-on experience in solving real life problems starting from identification of the key variable(s) of interest, literature search, model formulation, data analysis or simulation, technical report writing and presentation of the results. Students will need to find an interesting topic of their own, conduct literature search regarding the most recent research related to the problem, make suggestions to improve the current situations or even solve the problem identified in their project.

### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 formulate a problem using statistical or risk management ideas for a particular issue we are facing with and determine ways in which statistics/risk management can be used to solve the problems or to make predictions.
- CLO 2 integrate theory and practice, and to understand limitations of their current knowledge.
- CLO 3 work in a team and to collaborate with people with different background.
- CLO 4 express ideas effectively in both written and oral forms.
- CLO 5 develop further logical, critical thinking, creativity, technical report writing, communication and consultation skills.
- CLO 6 advocate to others the appreciation of statistics/risk management as to its relevance to our daily life.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Students are expected to have satisfactorily completed at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics Majors. Students who are interested in taking the course should submit their applications to the Department.

This capstone course is only for students majoring in Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics, and is mutually exclusive with STAT3799, STAT4766 and STAT4799.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

Y  
1st sem  2nd sem  Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y  
Examination  No Exam

### Grade Descriptors (A to F)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Type

Project-based course

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>Tutorials, group work/project, reading/self-study</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>oral presentation, progress, attendance, and in-class discussion</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research report</td>
<td>written report</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials

No specific list of textbooks and references. Students are encouraged to obtain information via various channels (main library, e-journals, internet, and discussions with classmates and teachers, etc.).

**Course Website**  
moodle.hku.hk

**STAT4711**  
Capstone experience for actuarial science undergraduates (6 credits)

**Offering Department**  
Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**  
Prof G Yin, Statistics & Actuarial Science  
(ug_enquiry@saas.hku.hk)
### Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1**: define a practical problem, discuss the issues faced by different stakeholders, and design workable solutions for the problems.
- **CLO 2**: integrate theoretical results and practical approaches, and to specify limitations of current developments.
- **CLO 3**: work in a team and to collaborate with members with different backgrounds.
- **CLO 4**: deliver actuarial results effectively in a written report and in oral presentations.
- **CLO 5**: develop further logical, critical thinking, creativity, technical report writing, communication and consultation skills.
- **CLO 6**: explain to a non-actuarial audience the approaches of actuarial science as applied to problems in a financial security system.

### Course Contents & Topics

No formal teaching will be given for this course. Students are expected to devote 120-140 hours working on this project. Students will work in groups of four or five under the supervision of a teacher and/or an industry supervisor. Students are required to give a presentation on their work two to three weeks before the end of the semester, and submit their final report at the end of the semester.

Topics acceptable for projects in this course can be related to any of the traditional actuarial areas of practice such as life insurance, pension, finance, investment, enterprise risk management, and general insurance. Students are also encouraged to suggest topics in non-traditional actuarial areas provided they can find a suitable teacher and/or industry supervisor. All topics for this course will be subject to final approval by the Department to ensure relevance to actuarial science.

Students will need to decide on the topic for a practical project, conduct market research regarding industry activities related to the topic, and make suggestions on a solution of the problem identified in their project.

Students are also encouraged to suggest topics in non-traditional actuarial areas provided they can find a suitable teacher and/or industry supervisor. All topics for this course will be subject to final approval by the Department to ensure relevance to actuarial science.

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

- Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in BSc(Actuarial Science) programme including (Pass in STAT3901, or already enrolled in this course; or Pass in STAT3909, or already enrolled in this course); and
- This capstone course is only for BSc(Actuarial Science) students, and is mutually exclusive with STAT4767 and STAT4798.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

### Grade Descriptors

- **A**: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.
- **Fail**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Assessment Methods

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>written report</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4, 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Observation

This project-based course aims to provide students with capstone experience to formulate and investigate practical problems in actuarial science by integrating and applying actuarial theories and techniques learnt in their university years. It aims to help the students to establish a good and solid foundation of self-learning skills, and to enable students to equip with hands-on experience in solving practical problems including definition of the problem, designing the solution, and presentation of the results.

This capstone course is only for BSc(Actuarial Science) students, and is mutually exclusive with STAT4767 and STAT4798.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics Majors. This capstone course is only for students majoring in Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics; and is mutually exclusive with STAT4710. The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

**Grade Descriptors (Pass /Pass with distinction /Fail)**
- **Pass**: Able to apply knowledge to solve problems in the workplace. Successfully handles and carries out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Establishes effective collaboration and communication with supervisor(s), colleagues, and clients in the job. Successfully fulfills the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, and evaluation by supervisor(s), etc. Students demonstrating excellent performance in the above would be awarded a grade of "Distinction".
- **Fail**: Very limited or no ability to solve problems in the workplace. Fails to handle or carry out the work required in the job or assigned by supervisor(s). Fails to establish effective collaboration or communication with supervisor(s), other colleagues, or clients in the job. Fails to satisfy the requirements set out in the Course Description regarding working hours, written and oral report, or evaluation by supervisor(s), etc.

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**
- **Activities**: Internship work
- **Details**: It is expected that students are to work at least 160 hours (or equivalent to 4 weeks full-time)
- **No. of Hours**: 160

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**
- **Methods**: Oral presentation, written report
- **Details**: Oral presentation and in-class discussion, written report
- **Weighting in final course grade (%)**: 40, 60
- **Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**: CLO 1, 2, 3, 4

**Course Website**: moodle.hku.hk

**Additional Course Information**
- Upon completion of the internship, each student is required to submit a written report and to give an oral presentation on their internship experience. Supervisors will assess the students based on their performance during the internship period (in the case of internships outside the university, the internal supervisor will assess the student based on the feedback by the external supervisor).
- Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on "Pass/Fail" basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval. Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.

**Course Type**: Internship

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**
- **Activities**: Internship work
- **Details**: It is expected that students are to work at least 6 months (or 120 working days 960)
- **No. of Hours**: 960

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**
- **Methods**: Oral presentation, Written report
- **Details**: Oral presentation and in-class discussion, written report
- **Weighting in final course grade (%)**: 40, 60
- **Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping**: CLO 1, 2, 3, 4

**Course Website**: moodle.hku.hk

**Additional Course Information**
- Despite no weighting for this assessment component, the completion of the employer's evaluation form by the employer/direct supervisor is required for passing the course. Satisfactory completion of this course can be counted towards the Capstone requirement. Details of internship will be recorded on the student's transcript. This course will be assessed on "Pass/Fail" basis. Students who are interested to enrol in this course should contact the Department to obtain the approval. Enrolment of this course is not conducted via the online course selection system and should be made through the relevant Department/School office after approval has been obtained from the course coordinator.
STAT4798

Offering Department
Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator
Prof S M S Lee, Statistics & Actuarial Science (smslee@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Various teachers as the assessors of oral presentations and written reports, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

Course Objectives
Each year a few projects suitable for Actuarial Science students will be offered to provide students with practical experience in approaching a real problem, in report writing and in oral presentation.

Course Contents & Topics
These projects, under the supervision of individual staff members, involve the applications of statistics and/or probability in a wide range of problems of practical and/or academic interests.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 formulate meaningful research problems
- CLO 2 learn and apply advanced techniques in probability and/or statistics to solve real life problems
- CLO 3 summarize and present research findings in a professional manner

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)
Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in BSc(Actuarial Science) programme including STAT3902 and STAT3907; and Pass or already enrolled in at least one of the following courses: STAT3616, STAT3911, STAT4602; and This capstone course is only for BSc(Actuarial Science) students; and subject to the consent of course coordinator. This course is mutually exclusive with STAT4711.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y 1st sem 2nd sem Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

- A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high-quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. (Work of A+ should show considerable additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.)

- B: Demonstrate substantial grasp of the subject. Evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Critical use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make meaningful comparisons between different secondary interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Correct use of data of results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- C: Demonstrate general but incomplete grasp of the subject. Evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking. Use of relevant information from sources, showing ability to make comparisons between different interpretations and to quote/reference aptly. Mostly correct but some erroneous use of data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- D: Demonstrate partial but limited grasp, with retention of some relevant information, of the subject. Evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Demonstrate use and reference of several sources, but mainly through summary rather than analysis and comparison. Limited ability to use data and results to draw appropriate conclusions. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- Fail: Demonstrate evidence of little or no grasp of the knowledge and understanding of the subject. Evidence of little or lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Limited use of secondary sources and no critical comparison of them. Misuse of data and results and/or unable to draw appropriate conclusions. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type
Project-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities
Activities Details No. of Hours
Reading / Self study 120

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Research report</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1.2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website
moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information
Approval is subject to past academic performance.

STAT4799

Offering Department
Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator
Prof S M S Lee, Statistics & Actuarial Science (smslee@hku.hk)

Teachers Involved
(Various teachers as the assessors of oral presentations and written reports, Statistics & Actuarial Science)

Course Objectives
Each year a few projects suitable for students majoring in Decision Analytics/ Risk Management/ Statistics will be offered to provide students with practical experience in approaching a real problem, in report writing and in oral presentation.

Course Contents & Topics
These projects, under the supervision of individual staff members, involve the applications of statistics and/or probability in a wide range of problems of practical and/or academic interests.

Course Learning Outcomes
On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 gain first-hand experience in solving a research or applied problem in statistics or related areas
- CLO 2 develop skills in important technical tools, including the use of computer software or programs, for typical statistical research and data analyses
- CLO 3 write succinct reports on the findings of a research study
- CLO 4 make concise oral presentation of the findings of a research study
- Pass in at least 24 credits of advanced level disciplinary core/elective courses in the Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics Majors including STAT3600; and
- Pass or already enrolled in at least one of the following courses: STAT3612, STAT3911, STAT4601, STAT4602; and
- Not for students who have already enrolled in STAT3799 in this academic year.

This capstone course is only for students majoring in Decision Analytics/Risk Management/Statistics; and subject to the consent of course coordinator. This course is mutually exclusive with STAT4710.

The earliest that a student is allowed to take this capstone course is their year 3 study.

Offer in 2017 - 2018
Y Year long Offer in 2018 - 2019: Y Examination No Exam

Grade Descriptors
(A+ to F)

- A: Demonstrate thorough grasp of the subject. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought. Insightful use and critical analysis / evaluation of information drawn from a full range of high-quality sources and to quote/reference aptly. Critical use of data and results to draw appropriate and insightful conclusions. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills. (Work of A+ should show considerable additional work beyond that is required in wider areas relevant to the topic.)
the student is expected to meet & discuss with a supervisor regularly in the course of the project.

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dissertation</td>
<td>written report</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oral presentation &amp; in-class discussion</td>
<td>oral presentation &amp; in-class discussion</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

Additional Course Information

Approval is subject to past academic performance.

STAT4901

Risk theory II (6 credits)

Offering Department Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Co-ordinator TBC, Statistics & Actuarial Science

Course Objectives

This course is an advanced course in risk theory which extends various topics discussed in STAT3906. It discusses utility theory, ruin theory, aggregate claims process, and related topics.

Course Contents & Topics

Utility theory; discrete ruin model; compound Poisson risk model; ruin probability; reinsurance; adjustment coefficient; Lundbergs inequality; Tijms approximation; non-homogeneous birth process; contagion model; mixed Poisson process; inflation model; IBNR (Incurred But Not Reported) claims; mixed Erlang distributions; stop-loss moments; equilibrium distributions.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand utility theory including some commonly used utility functions, Jensens inequality, risk aversion and utility maximization
- CLO 2 define discrete and continuous ruin models
- CLO 3 calculate the adjustment coefficient, Lundbergs inequality and Tijms approximation in ruin theory
- CLO 4 understand the effect of reinsurance and change of parameters on ruin probability
- CLO 5 understand non-homogeneous birth process and its applications as contagion models for claim frequencies
- CLO 6 understand mixed Poisson process and its applications including the inflation model and the IBNR model
- CLO 7 derive the relationship between stop-loss moments and equilibrium distributions

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in STAT3906

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N Offer in 2018 - 2019 : Y Examination ---

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A  Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B  Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C  Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D  Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail  Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 3-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3,4,5,6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


A

Actuarial techniques for general insurance (6 credits)

TBC, Statistics & Actuarial Science

Academic Year: 2017

Course Objectives

This course is designed to develop knowledge of the basic techniques for ratemaking and estimating claim liabilities for general insurance. It focuses on tools that are in the forefront of actuarial science.

Course Contents & Topics

The contents will be chosen from the following topics:

- Coherent risk measures
- Premium calculation principles
- Copulas
- Extreme value theory
- Stochastic dominance
- Ordering of risks
- Renewal equations with insurance applications
- Reliability properties
- Generalized linear models
- Comonotonicity
- Measures of dependency
- Phase-type distributions

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1: Understand the mathematical tools useful for further research and applications
- CLO 2: Apply the tools to solve potentially unseen problems

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in STAT3906

Offer in 2017 - 2018

N N

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials and class test(s))</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td></td>
<td>60</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website

moodle.hku.hk
### Course Objectives
This course introduces some statistical concepts and methods which potential graduate students will find useful in preparing for work on a research degree in statistics. Focus is on applications of state-of-the-art statistical techniques and their underlying theory.

### Course Contents & Topics
- Basic asymptotic methods: modes of convergence; stochastic orders; laws of large numbers; central limit theorems; delta method; Edgeworth expansions; saddlepoint approximations.
- Parametric and nonparametric likelihood methods: high-order approximations; profile likelihood and its variants; signed likelihood ratio statistics; empirical likelihood.
- Nonparametric statistical inference: sign and rank tests; Kolmogorov-Smirnov test; nonparametric regression; density estimation; kernel methods.
- Computationally-intensive methods: cross-validation; bootstrap; permutation methods.
- Robust methods: measures of robustness; M-estimator; L-estimator; R-estimator; estimating functions.
- Sequential analysis: sequential probability ratio test; sequential estimation.
- Model selection using information criteria.
- Other topics as determined by the instructor.
### Course Objectives

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- **CLO 1**: Comprehend the language and technicalities found in statistical research literature
- **CLO 2**: Understand the use of standard mathematical tools for conducting statistical research
- **CLO 3**: Apply a variety of research tools to solve standard statistical problems
- **CLO 4**: Acquire exposure to some developments in contemporary statistical research

### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907

### Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

### Course Teaching & Learning Activities

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Assessment Methods and Weighting

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1, 2, 3, 4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Required/recommended reading and online materials


### Course Type

Lecture-based course

### Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

- **A**: Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B**: Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C**: Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D**: Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **Fail**: Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

### Course Contents & Topics

Contents include: sigma-algebra, measurable space, measure and probability, measure space and probability space, measurable functions, random variables, integration theory, characteristic functions, convergence of random variables, Hilbert spaces, conditional expectation, martingales.

### Course Learning Outcomes

- **CLO 1**: Understand the fundamental measure theory and probability theory
- **CLO 2**: Learn the general concept of integration, understand the monotone convergence theorem, Fatou’s lemma and dominated convergence theorem
- **CLO 3**: Understand the concept of conditional expectation
- **CLO 4**: Have some elementary knowledge of martingale

### Offer in 2017 - 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018 : Y</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Examination Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Examination Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Examination Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Examination Dec</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>Examination Dec</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Course Website

moodle.hku.hk

---

### STAT7610

**Advanced probability (6 credits)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Offering Department</th>
<th>Statistics &amp; Actuarial Science</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Course Co-ordinator</td>
<td>Dr J Song, Mathematics (<a href="mailto:jiansong@maths.hku.hk">jiansong@maths.hku.hk</a>)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Teachers Involved</td>
<td>Dr J Song, Mathematics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Course Objectives

This course provides an introduction to measure theory and probability. The course will focus on some basic concepts in theoretical probability which are important for students to do research in actuarial science, probability and statistics.

#### Course Contents & Topics

Contents include: sigma-algebra, measurable space, measure and probability, measure space and probability space, measurable functions, random variables, integration theory, characteristic functions, convergence of random variables, Hilbert spaces, conditional expectation, martingales.

#### Course Learning Outcomes

- **CLO 1**: Understand the fundamental measure theory and probability theory
- **CLO 2**: Learn the general concept of integration, understand the monotone convergence theorem, Fatou’s lemma and dominated convergence theorem
- **CLO 3**: Understand the concept of conditional expectation
- **CLO 4**: Have some elementary knowledge of martingale

#### Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in STAT3603 or STAT3903

---

### Course Type

Lecture-based course

### Activities Details No. of Hours

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Course Objectives

This course aims to give undergraduate and postgraduate students in statistics a background in modern computationally intensive methods in statistics. It emphasizes the role of computation as a fundamental tool of discovery in data analysis, of statistical inference, and for development of statistical theory and methods.

Course Contents & Topics

Contents include: Bayesian statistics, Markov chain Monte Carlo methods including Gibbs sampler, the Metropolis-Hastings algorithm, and data augmentation; Generation of random variables including the inversion methods, rejection sampling, the sampling/importance resampling method; Optimization techniques including Newton’s method, expectation-maximization (EM) algorithm and its variants, and minorization-maximization (MM) algorithms; Integration including Laplace approximations, Gaussian quadrature, the importance sampling method; and other topics such as Hidden Markov models, neural networks, and Bootstrap methods.

Course Learning Outcomes

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

CLO 1 understand the importance of the technique for generating random variables in Bayesian statistics, Monte Carlo integration and bootstrapping methods

CLO 2 realize the advantages and disadvantages of the Newton-Raphson algorithm and the Fisher scoring algorithm and apply them to fit generalized linear models

CLO 3 understand the essence and basic principle of the EM-type algorithms and MM-type algorithms, realize their range of application, and apply them to solve practical problems

CLO 4 apply EM-type algorithms to find the posterior mode and apply Markov chain Monte Carlo methods to generate posterior samples

CLO 5 apply Bootstrap methods to obtain estimated standard errors of estimators and confidence intervals of parameters for both parametric and non-parametric cases

Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)

Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907

Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)

A Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

B Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

C Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

D Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

Fail Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

Course Type

Lecture-based course

Assessment Methods and Weighting

Methods Details Weighting in final course grade (%) Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping

Assignments Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test) 25 CLO 1,2,3,4

Examination One 2-hour written examination 75 CLO 1,2,3,4

Required/recommended reading and online materials


Course Website

moodle.hku.hk
**Course Contents & Topics**

Topics from: (i) Generalized linear models; (ii) Mixed models; (iii) Kernel and local polynomial regression; selection of smoothing parameters; (iv) Generalized additive models; (v) Hidden Markov model and Bayesian network.

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 understand the definition and basic characteristics of each statistical model
- CLO 2 identify for a given set of data the most suitable statistical model and tools to use
- CLO 3 develop skills of building a scoring model for various management and prediction, problems involving a binary response; employing the powerful tool of kernel density estimation using SAS or R for real data mining problems; and analysing data with SAS procedures PROC LOGISTIC, PROC GENMOD, PROC GLM, PROC UNIVARIATE (option KERNEL) or equivalent R Packages.

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in STAT3600 or STAT3907

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>May</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- **A**
  - Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B**
  - Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C**
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D**
  - Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **Fail**
  - Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course

**Course Teaching & Learning Activities**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Assessment Methods and Weighting**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments and class test(s))</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>1 Two-hour written examination</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Required/recommended reading and online materials**

1. Recommend Reading : R.H. Myers et al., 2010: Generalized Linear Models (2nd ed.), Wiley

**Course Website**
moodle.hku.hk

---

**Department of Statistics & Actuarial Science**

---

**STAT7615**

**Advanced quantitative risk management and finance (6 credits)**

**Offering Department**

Statistics & Actuarial Science

**Course Co-ordinator**

Prof W K Li, Statistics & Actuarial Science (hrmtkwk@hku.hk)

(Dr J Song,Mathmatics)

(Prof W K Li,Statistics & Actuarial Science)

**Course Objectives**

This course covers statistical methods and models of importance to risk management and finance and links finance theory to market practice via statistical modeling and decision making. Emphases will be put on empirical analyses to address the discrepancy between finance theory and market data.

**Course Contents & Topics**

Contents include: Elementary Stochastic Calculus; Basic Monte Carlo and Quasi-Monte Carlo Methods; Variance Reduction Techniques; Simulating the value of options and the value-at-risk for risk management; Review of univariate volatility models; multivariate volatility models; Value-at-risk and expected shortfall; estimation, back-testing and stress testing; Extreme value theory for risk management.

**Course Learning Outcomes**

On successful completion of this course, students should be able to:

- CLO 1 apply Monte Carlo methods to determine the value of options and other derivative securities
- CLO 2 predict volatility of a set of securities using appropriate models
- CLO 3 estimate the value-at-risk under extreme value theory

**Pre-requisites (and Co-requisites and Impermissible combinations)**

Pass in STAT4608

**Offer in 2017 - 2018**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Offer in 2017 - 2018</th>
<th>Offer in 2018 - 2019</th>
<th>Examination</th>
<th>May</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Y</td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>May</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Grade Descriptors (A+ to F)**

- **A**
  - Demonstrate thorough mastery at an advanced level of extensive knowledge and skills required for attaining all the course learning outcomes. Show strong analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, with evidence of original thought, and ability to apply knowledge to a wide range of complex, familiar and unfamiliar situations. Apply highly effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **B**
  - Demonstrate substantial command of a broad range of knowledge and skills required for attaining at least most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to familiar and some unfamiliar situations. Apply effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **C**
  - Demonstrate general but incomplete command of knowledge and skills required for attaining most of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some analytical and critical abilities and logical thinking, and ability to apply knowledge to most familiar situations. Apply moderately effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **D**
  - Demonstrate partial but limited command of knowledge and skills required for attaining some of the course learning outcomes. Show evidence of some coherent and logical thinking, but with limited analytical and critical abilities. Show limited ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Apply limited or barely effective organizational and presentational skills.

- **Fail**
  - Demonstrate little or no evidence of command of knowledge and skills required for attaining the course learning outcomes. Lack of analytical and critical abilities, logical and coherent thinking. Show very little or no ability to apply knowledge to solve problems. Organization and presentational skills are minimally effective or ineffective.

**Course Type**

Lecture-based course
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Course Teaching &amp; Learning Activities</th>
<th>Activities</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>No. of Hours</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lectures</td>
<td></td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Tutorials</td>
<td></td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading / Self study</td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Assessment Methods and Weighting</th>
<th>Methods</th>
<th>Details</th>
<th>Weighting in final course grade (%)</th>
<th>Assessment Methods to CLO Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assignments</td>
<td>Coursework (assignments, tutorials, and a class test)</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Examination</td>
<td>One 2-hour written examination</td>
<td>75</td>
<td>CLO 1,2,3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


| Course Website | moodle.hku.hk |
SECTION X  Degree Regulations

REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF
BACHELOR OF SCIENCE
(BSc)

These regulations apply to students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ to the BSc degree curriculum to the first year in the academic year 2017-18 and thereafter.

(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)

Definitions

Sci¹ For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BSc degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

“Science course” means any course offered by the Faculty of Science, and the School of Biomedical Sciences.

“Advanced Science course” means any level 3, 4 or above course offered by the Faculty of Science and the School of Biomedical Sciences.

“Course” means a course of study, with a credit value expressed as a number of credit-units as specified in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

“Syllabus” means courses taught by departments, centres, and schools, offered under a degree curriculum.

“Credits” or “credit-units” means the value assigned to each course to indicate its study load relative to the total study load under a degree curriculum. The study load refers to the hours of student learning activities and experiences, both within and outside the classroom, and includes contact hours and time spent on assessment tasks and examinations. Candidates who satisfactorily complete courses with a credit value earn the credits assigned to these courses.

Admission to the BSc degree

Sc2 To be eligible for admission to the BSc degree, candidates shall:

(a) comply with the General Regulations;

(b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and

(c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

Period of study

Sc3 The curriculum for the BSc degree shall normally require eight semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than four academic years, and shall include any assessment to be held during and/or at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to extend their studies beyond the maximum period of registration of six academic years.

¹ This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.
Selection of courses

Sc4 Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Any change to the selection of courses shall be made only during the add/drop period of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the designated add/drop period of the semester shall not be considered.

Curriculum requirements and progression in curriculum

Sc5

(a) Candidates shall satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG5 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula.

(b) Candidates shall take not fewer than 240 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

(c) Candidates shall take at least 96 credits of Science courses including all required courses of the major programme of the BSc degree curriculum.

(d) Candidates shall normally be required to take not fewer than 24 credits nor more than 30 credits in any one semester (except the summer semester) unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty, or except in the last semester of study when the number of outstanding credits required to complete the curriculum requirements may be fewer than 24 credits.

(e) Candidates may, of their own volition, take additional credits not exceeding 6 credits in each semester, and/or further credits during the summer semester, accumulating up to a maximum of 72 credits in one academic year. With the special permission of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may exceed the annual study load of 72 credits in a given academic year provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 288 credits for the normative period of study specified in the curriculum regulations, save as provided for under Sc5(f).

(f) Where candidates are required to make up for failed credits, the Board of the Faculty may give permission for candidates to exceed the annual study load of 72 credits provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 432 credits for the maximum period of registration specified in the curriculum regulations.

(g) Candidates may, with the approval of the Board of the Faculty, transfer credits for courses completed at other institutions at any time during their candidature. The number of transferred credits will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate, but the results of courses completed at other institutions shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA. The number of credits to be transferred shall not exceed half of the total credits normally required under the degree curricula of the candidates during their candidature at the University.

(h) Candidates shall be recommended for discontinuation of their studies if they have:

(i) failed to complete successfully 36 or more credits in two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), except where they are not required to take such a number of credits in the two given semesters, or

(ii) failed to achieve an average Semester GPA of 1.0 or higher for two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), or

(iii) exceeded the maximum period of registration specified in Sc3, unless otherwise permitted by the Board of the Faculty.
Advanced standing

Sc6 Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully before admission to the curriculum in accordance with UG2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. Credits granted for advanced standing will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate but shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA.

Assessment

Sc7

(a) Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of continuous assessment of coursework, written examinations and/or any other assessable activities. Only passed courses will earn credits.

(b) Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate’s absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year’s examinations, and the provisions made in the regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

(c) Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for the purpose of upgrading.

(d) Candidates are required to make up for failed courses in the following manner: repeating the failed course by undergoing instruction and satisfying the assessment, or for elective courses, taking another course in lieu and satisfying the assessment requirements.

(e) There shall be no appeal against the results of examinations and all other forms of assessment.

Award of BSc Degree

Sc8 To be eligible for the award of the BSc degree, candidates shall have:

(a) satisfied the requirements in UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;

(b) passed not fewer than 240 credits, comprising 96 credits of the required courses as prescribed in the major programme of the BSc degree curriculum.
Honours classification

(a) Honours classifications shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of Examiners for the Degree of BSc in accordance with the following Graduation GPA scores, with all courses taken (including failed courses, but not including courses approved by the Senate graded as ‘Pass’, ‘Fail’ or ‘Distinction’) carrying weightings which are proportionate to their credit values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of honours</th>
<th>GGPA range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class Honours</td>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class Honours</td>
<td>(2.40 – 3.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division One</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division Two</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Class Honours</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate’s Graduation GPA and the Board of Examiners for the Degree of BSc may, at its absolute discretion and with justification, award a higher class of honours to a candidate deemed to have demonstrated meritorious academic achievement but whose Graduation GPA falls below the range stipulated in UG9(a) of the higher classification by not more than 0.1 Grade Point.

(c) A list of candidates who have successfully completed all degree requirements shall be posted on Faculty noticeboards.

---

2 For students in the 2017-18 intake and thereafter who have successfully completed six Common Core courses, the calculation of Graduation GPA is subject to the proviso that either five Common Core course with the highest grades (covering all four Areas of Inquiry), or all six courses will be counted towards Graduation GPA, depending on which generates the higher Graduation GPA.
REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF
BACHELOR OF SCIENCE
(BSc)

These regulations apply to students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ to the BSc degree curriculum to the first year in the academic years 2014-15, 2015-16 and 2016-17, and students admitted directly to the third year in the academic years 2016-17, 2017-18 and 2018-19.

(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)

Definitions

Sc1 For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BSc degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

“Science course” means any course offered by the Faculty of Science, and the School of Biomedical Sciences.

“Advanced Science course” means any level 3, 4 or above course offered by the Faculty of Science and the School of Biomedical Sciences.

“Course” means a course of study, with a credit value expressed as a number of credit-units as specified in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

“Syllabus” means courses taught by departments, centres, and schools, offered under a degree curriculum.

“Credits” or “credit-units” means the value assigned to each course to indicate its study load relative to the total study load under a degree curriculum. The study load refers to the hours of student learning activities and experiences, both within and outside the classroom, and includes contact hours and time spent on assessment tasks and examinations. Candidates who satisfactorily complete courses with a credit value earn the credits assigned to these courses.

Admission to the BSc degree

Sc2 To be eligible for admission to the BSc degree, candidates shall:

(a) comply with the General Regulations;
(b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and
(c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

Period of study

Sc3 The curriculum for the BSc degree shall normally require eight semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than four academic years, and shall include any assessment to be held during and/or at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to extend their studies beyond the maximum period of registration of six academic years.

1 This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.
Selection of courses

**Sc4**  Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Any change to the selection of courses shall be made only during the add/drop period of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the designated add/drop period of the semester shall not be considered.

Curriculum requirements and progression in curriculum

**Sc5**

(a) Candidates shall satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG5 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula.

(b) Candidates shall take not fewer than 240 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

(c) Candidates shall take at least 96 credits of Science courses including all required courses of the major programme of the BSc degree curriculum.

(d) Candidates shall normally be required to take not fewer than 24 credits nor more than 30 credits in any one semester (except the summer semester) unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty, or except in the last semester of study when the number of outstanding credits required to complete the curriculum requirements may be fewer than 24 credits.

(e) Candidates may, of their own volition, take additional credits not exceeding 6 credits in each semester, and/or further credits during the summer semester, accumulating up to a maximum of 72 credits in one academic year. With the special permission of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may exceed the annual study load of 72 credits in a given academic year provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 288 credits for the normative period of study specified in the curriculum regulations, save as provided for under Sc5(f).

(f) Where candidates are required to make up for failed credits, the Board of the Faculty may give permission for candidates to exceed the annual study load of 72 credits provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 432 credits for the maximum period of registration specified in the curriculum regulations.

(g) Candidates may, with the approval of the Board of the Faculty, transfer credits for courses completed at other institutions at any time during their candidature. The number of transferred credits will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate, but the results of courses completed at other institutions shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA. The number of credits to be transferred shall not exceed half of the total credits normally required under the degree curricula of the candidates during their candidature at the University.

(h) Candidates shall be recommended for discontinuation of their studies if they have:

   (i) failed to complete successfully 36 or more credits in two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), except where they are not required to take such a number of credits in the two given semesters, or
   (ii) failed to achieve an average Semester GPA of 1.0 or higher for two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), or
   (iii) exceeded the maximum period of registration specified in Sc3, unless otherwise permitted by the Board of the Faculty.
Advanced standing

Sc6 Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully before admission to the curriculum in accordance with UG2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. Credits granted for advanced standing will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate but shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA.

Assessment

Sc7

(a) Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of continuous assessment of coursework, written examinations and/or any other assessable activities. Only passed courses will earn credits.

(b) Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate’s absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year’s examinations, and the provisions made in the regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

(c) Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for the purpose of upgrading.

(d) Candidates are required to make up for failed courses in the following manner: repeating the failed course by undergoing instruction and satisfying the assessment, or for elective courses, taking another course in lieu and satisfying the assessment requirements.

(e) There shall be no appeal against the results of examinations and all other forms of assessment.

Award of BSc Degree

Sc8 To be eligible for the award of the BSc degree, candidates shall have:

(a) satisfied the requirements in UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;

(b) passed not fewer than 240 credits, comprising 96 credits of the required courses as prescribed in the major programme of the BSc degree curriculum.
Honours classification

Sc9

(a) Honours classifications shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of Examiners for the Degree of BSc in accordance with the following Cumulative GPA scores, with all courses taken (including failed courses, but not including courses approved by the Senate graded as ‘Pass’, ‘Fail’ or ‘Distinction’) carrying equal weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of honours</th>
<th>CGPA range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class Honours</td>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class Honours</td>
<td>(2.40 – 3.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division One</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division Two</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Class Honours</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate’s Cumulative GPA and the Board of Examiners for the Degree of BSc may, at its absolute discretion and with justification, award a higher class of honours to a candidate deemed to have demonstrated meritorious academic achievement but whose Cumulative GPA falls below the range stipulated in UG9(a) of the higher classification by not more than 0.1 Grade Point.

(c) A list of candidates who have successfully completed all degree requirements shall be posted on Faculty noticeboards.
REGULATIONS FOR THE DEGREE OF
BACHELOR OF SCIENCE
(BSc)

These regulations apply to students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ to the BSc degree curriculum to the first year in the academic years 2012-13 and 2013-14, and students admitted directly to the third year in the academic years 2014-15 and 2015-16.

(See also General Regulations and Regulations for First Degree Curricula)

Definitions

Sc1 For the purpose of these regulations and the syllabuses for the BSc degree, unless the context otherwise requires:

“Science course” means any course offered by the Faculty of Science, and the School of Biomedical Sciences.

“Advanced Science course” means any level 3, 4 or above course offered by the Faculty of Science and the School of Biomedical Sciences.

“Course” means a course of study, with a credit value expressed as a number of credit-units as specified in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

“Syllabus” means courses taught by departments, centres, and schools, offered under a degree curriculum.

“Credits” or “credit-units” means the value assigned to each course to indicate its study load relative to the total study load under a degree curriculum. The study load refers to the hours of student learning activities and experiences, both within and outside the classroom, and includes contact hours and time spent on assessment tasks and examinations. Candidates who satisfactorily complete courses with a credit value earn the credits assigned to these courses.

Admission to the BSc degree

Sc2 To be eligible for admission to the BSc degree, candidates shall:

(a) comply with the General Regulations;

(b) comply with the Regulations for First Degree Curricula; and

(c) satisfy all the requirements of the curriculum in accordance with these regulations and the syllabuses.

Period of study

Sc3 The curriculum for the BSc degree shall normally require eight semesters of full-time study, extending over not fewer than four academic years, and shall include any assessment to be held during and/or at the end of each semester. Candidates shall not in any case be permitted to extend their studies beyond the maximum period of registration of six academic years.

1 This regulation should be read in conjunction with UG1 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula.
Selection of courses

Sc4 Candidates shall select their courses in accordance with these regulations and the guidelines specified in the syllabuses before the beginning of each semester. Any change to the selection of courses shall be made only during the add/drop period of the semester in which the course begins, and such changes shall not be reflected in the transcript of the candidate. Requests for changes after the designated add/drop period of the semester shall not be considered.

Curriculum requirements and progression in curriculum

Sc5

(a) Candidates shall satisfy the requirements prescribed in UG5 of the Regulations of First Degree Curricula.

(b) Candidates shall take not fewer than 240 credits, in the manner specified in these regulations and the syllabuses.

(c) Candidates shall take at least 96 credits of Science courses including all required courses of the major programme of the BSc degree curriculum.

(d) Candidates shall normally be required to take not fewer than 24 credits nor more than 30 credits in any one semester (except the summer semester) unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty, or except in the last semester of study when the number of outstanding credits required to complete the curriculum requirements may be fewer than 24 credits.

(e) Candidates may, of their own volition, take additional credits not exceeding 6 credits in each semester, and/or further credits during the summer semester, accumulating up to a maximum of 72 credits in one academic year. With the special permission of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may exceed the annual study load of 72 credits in a given academic year provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 288 credits for the normative period of study specified in the curriculum regulations, save as provided for under Sc5(f).

(f) Where candidates are required to make up for failed credits, the Board of the Faculty may give permission for candidates to exceed the annual study load of 72 credits provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load of 432 credits for the maximum period of registration specified in the curriculum regulations.

(g) Candidates may, with the approval of the Board of the Faculty, transfer credits for courses completed at other institutions at any time during their candidature. The number of transferred credits will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate, but the results of courses completed at other institutions shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA. The number of credits to be transferred shall not exceed half of the total credits normally required under the degree curricula of the candidates during their candidature at the University.

(h) Candidates shall be recommended for discontinuation of their studies if they have:

(i) failed to complete successfully 36 or more credits in two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), except where they are not required to take such a number of credits in the two given semesters, or

(ii) failed to achieve an average Semester GPA of 1.0 or higher for two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), or

(iii) exceeded the maximum period of registration specified in Sc3, unless otherwise permitted by the Board of the Faculty.
Advanced standing

Sc6 Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere in accordance with UG2 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula. Credits granted for advanced standing will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate but shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA.

Assessment

Sc7

(a) Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of continuous assessment of coursework, written examinations and/or any other assessable activities. Only passed courses will earn credits.

(b) Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate’s absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year’s examinations, and the provisions made in the regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

(c) Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for the purpose of upgrading.

(d) Candidates are required to make up for failed courses in the following manner: repeating the failed course by undergoing instruction and satisfying the assessment, or for elective courses, taking another course in lieu and satisfying the assessment requirements.

(e) There shall be no appeal against the results of examinations and all other forms of assessment.

Award of BSc Degree

Sc8 To be eligible for the award of the BSc degree, candidates shall have:

(a) satisfied the requirements in UG5 of the Regulations for First Degree Curricula;

(b) passed not fewer than 240 credits, comprising 96 credits of the required courses as prescribed in the major programme of the BSc degree curriculum.
Honours classification

Sc9

(a) Honours classifications shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of Examiners for the Degree of BSc in accordance with the following Cumulative GPA scores, with all courses taken (including failed courses, but not including courses approved by the Senate graded as ‘Pass’, ‘Fail’ or ‘Distinction’) carrying equal weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of honours</th>
<th>CGPA range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class Honours</td>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class Honours</td>
<td>(2.40 – 3.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division One</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division Two</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Class Honours</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate’s Cumulative GPA and the Board of Examiners for the Degree of BSc may, at its absolute discretion and with justification, award a higher class of honours to a candidate deemed to have demonstrated meritorious academic achievement but whose Cumulative GPA falls below the range stipulated in UG9(a) of the higher classification by not more than 0.1 Grade Point.

(c) A list of candidates who have successfully completed all degree requirements shall be posted on Faculty noticeboards.
REGULATIONS FOR FIRST DEGREE CURRICULA

Regulations for First Degree Curricula (for students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ to the first year in the academic year 2017-18 and thereafter)

(See also General Regulations)

UG 1 Definitions:

For the purpose of regulations and syllabuses for all first degree curricula unless otherwise defined —

An ‘academic year’ comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence in January and end in May/June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. For some curricula, a ‘summer semester’ may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters. Clinical curricula have extended semesters.

A ‘summer semester’ normally comprises seven to eight weeks of intensive timetabled teaching and assessment to commence four weeks after the end of the second semester assessment period, and to conclude about one week before the start of the next academic year.

The ‘maximum period of registration’ is equivalent to a period which is 150% of the curriculum’s normative period of study as specified in the degree regulations, provided that where this results in a residual fraction of an academic year, the fractional period shall be extended to one full academic year.

‘Degree curriculum’ means the entire study requirements for the award of an undergraduate degree.

‘Major programme’ means the study requirements, including a capstone experience, for a single major area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 72 credits nor more than 96 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Minor programme’ means the study requirements for a single minor area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 36 credits nor more than 48 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Professional core’ refers to the study requirements, including a capstone experience, prescribed in the regulations and syllabuses for disciplinary studies in degree curricula which are not structured as major/minor programmes for reasons relating to professional qualification and/or accreditation.

‘Course’ means a course of study, with a credit value expressed as a number of credit-units.

1 These regulations are applicable to candidates admitted from 2016-17 onwards to the first year of first degree curricula under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’, the 2-year curriculum in respect of the BSc(IM), the 5-year curriculum in respect of the BA&BED(LangEd), BEd&BSc, BEd&BSocSc, BSc(Sp&HearSc), and BNurs, and the 6-year curriculum in respect of the BChinMed, BDS and MBBS. Reference in these regulations to the powers of the Boards of Faculties shall be applicable to Senate Boards of Studies which administer first degree curricula.

(The Regulations for First Degree Curricula applicable to cohorts admitted in 2012-13 and 2013-14 under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ can be found in the Calendar for 2013-14, and in the Calendar for 2014-15 for the cohorts admitted in 2014-15 and 2015-16.)
as specified in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Disciplinary elective course’ or ‘Disciplinary Elective’ means any course offered in the same major or minor programme or the professional core which can be taken by candidates to fulfill the curriculum requirements as specified in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

‘Elective course’ or ‘Elective’ means any course offered within the same or another curriculum, other than compulsory courses in the candidate’s degree curriculum, that can be taken by the candidate in order to complete the credit requirements of the degree curriculum.

‘Capstone experience’ refers to one or more courses within the major programme or professional core which are approved by the Board of the Faculty for the purpose of integrating knowledge and skills acquired, and which are prescribed in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

‘Syllabus’ means courses taught by departments, centres, and schools, offered under a degree curriculum.

‘Prerequisite’ means a course or a group of courses which candidates must have completed successfully or a requirement which candidates must have fulfilled before being permitted to take the course in question.

‘Corequisite’ means a course which candidates must take in conjunction with the course in question.

‘Credits’ or ‘credit-units’ means the value assigned to each course to indicate its study load relative to the total study load under a degree curriculum. The study load refers to the hours of student learning activities and experiences, both within and outside the classroom, and includes contact hours and time spent on assessment tasks and examinations. Candidates who satisfactorily complete courses with a credit value earn the credits assigned to these courses.

‘Grade Points’ are standardized measurements of candidates’ academic achievement in courses taken to satisfy the requirements of the degree curriculum and are expressed as a scale prescribed in these regulations.

‘Grade Point Average’ is a numerical measure of a candidate’s academic achievement over a specified period of time. Each course attempted (including each failed course) is assigned a numerical value, with all courses carrying equal weighting. This numerical value is the product of grade points earned for the course and the credit value of that course. The ‘Grade Point Average’ is the sum of these numerical values divided by the total number of credits attempted:

\[
GPA = \frac{\sum_i \text{Course Grade Point} \times \text{Course Credit Value}}{\sum_i \text{Course Credit Value}}
\]

(where ‘i’ stands for all passed and failed courses taken by the student over a specified period).

‘Semester Grade Point Average’ or ‘Semester GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) during a given semester.

‘Year Grade Point Average’ or ‘Year GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) during a given academic year.

‘Cumulative Grade Point Average’ or ‘Cumulative GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) at the time of calculation.

‘Graduation Grade Point Average’ or ‘Graduation GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) at the point of graduation. For students in the 2017-18 intake and thereafter who have successfully completed six Common Core courses, the calculation of Graduation GPA is subject to the proviso that either five Common Core courses with the highest grades (covering all four Areas of Inquiry), or all six
courses will be counted towards Graduation GPA, depending on which generates the higher Graduation GPA.

‘Assessment’ refers to judgment about the quality and extent to which a student has achieved the stated learning objectives or learning outcomes. It includes all types of assessment activities which allow for such a judgment to be made. For the purpose of interpreting the relevant provisions of the Ordinance and the Statutes and where appropriate, reference to ‘examination’ or ‘examinations' in the Ordinance and the Statutes shall include and cover all forms of ‘assessment’ and its related processes.

A ‘transcript’ refers to a transcript of the record of study of a candidate, issued by the Registry of the University.

UG 2 Advanced standing:

Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully before admission to the curriculum. Candidates who are awarded Advanced Standing will not be granted any further credit transfer for those studies for which Advanced Standing has been granted. The amount of credits to be granted for advanced standing shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty, in accordance with the following principles:

(a) at least half the number of credits of the degree curriculum normally required for award of the degree shall be accumulated through study at this University or from transfer of credits for courses completed at other institutions in accordance with Regulation UG 4(d); and

(b) in accordance with Statute III.5 and notwithstanding the granting of advanced and/or transfer credits, a minimum of two semesters of study at this University shall be required before a candidate is considered for the award of a first degree, other than a degree in medicine or surgery, and a minimum of four semesters of study at this University shall be required before a candidate is considered for a first degree in medicine or surgery.

Credits granted for advanced standing shall not normally be included in the calculation of the GPA unless permitted by the Board of the Faculty but will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate.

UG 3 Period of study:

The period of study of the curriculum shall be specified in the regulations governing the degree. To be eligible for award of the degree, a candidate shall fulfill all curriculum requirements within the maximum period of registration, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

UG 4 Progression in curriculum:

(a) Candidates shall normally be required to take not fewer than 24 credits nor more than 30 credits in any one semester (except the summer semester) unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty, or except in the last semester of study when the number of outstanding credits required to complete the curriculum requirements is fewer than 24 credits.

(b) Candidates may, of their own volition, take additional credits not exceeding 6 credits in each semester, and/or further credits during the summer semester, accumulating up to a maximum of 72 credits in one academic year. With the special permission of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may exceed the annual study load of 72 credits in a given academic year provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load for the normative period of study specified in the curriculum regulations, save as provided for under UG4(e).
(c) Where candidates are required to make up for failed credits, the Board of the Faculty may give permission for candidates to exceed the annual study load of 72 credits provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load for the maximum period of registration specified in the curriculum regulations.

(d) Candidates may, with the approval of the Board of the Faculty, transfer credits for courses completed at other institutions at any time during their candidature. The number of transferred credits may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but the results of courses completed at other institutions shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA. The number of credits to be transferred shall not exceed half of the total credits normally required under the degree curricula of the candidates during their candidature at the University.

(e) Unless otherwise permitted by the Board of the Faculty, candidates shall be recommended for discontinuation of their studies if they have:

(i) failed to complete successfully 36 or more credits in two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), except where they are not required to take such a number of credits in the two given semesters, or
(ii) failed to achieve an average Semester GPA of 1.0 or higher for two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), or
(iii) exceeded the maximum period of registration specified in the regulations of the degree.

UG 5 Requirements for graduation:

To be eligible for admission to the degree, candidates shall fulfill the following requirements in addition to the requirements prescribed in the regulations and syllabuses governing the degree curriculum within the maximum period of registration:

(a) successful completion of 12 credits in English language enhancement, including 6 credits in Core University English and 6 credits in an English in the Discipline course;
(b) successful completion of 6 credits in Chinese language enhancement;
(c) successful completion of 36 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, comprising at least one and not more than two courses from each Area of Inquiry with not more than 24 credits of course being selected within one academic year except where candidates are required to make up for failed credits; and
(d) successful completion of a capstone experience as specified in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

2 Candidates who have achieved Level 5** in English Language in the Hong Kong Diploma of Secondary Education Examination, or equivalent, may at the discretion of the Faculty be exempted from this requirement and should take an elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6.

3 (a) To satisfy the English in the Discipline (ED) requirement, candidates who have passed the ED course for a Major but subsequently change that Major are required to pass the ED course for the new Major, or either of the double Majors finally declared upon graduation irrespective of whether the second Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.
(b) Candidates declaring double Majors can, if they fail in the ED course for one of the Majors, either (i) re-take and successfully complete that failed ED course, or (ii) successfully complete the ED course for the other Major, irrespective of whether the Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.
(c) Candidates who undertake studies in double Majors or double degrees are not required to take a second ED course but may be advised by the Faculty to do so.

4 Candidates who have not studied Chinese language during their secondary education may be exempted from this requirement and should take an elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6.

5 Candidates registered for double degree studies are required to successfully complete 24 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, selecting one course from each Area of Inquiry, within the curriculum of the first degree, as appropriate.
UG 6 Exemption:

Candidates may be exempted, with or without special conditions attached, from any of the requirements in UG 5 by the Senate in exceptional circumstances. Candidates who are so exempted must replace the number of exempted credits with courses of the same credit value.

UG 7 Assessment:

(a) Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of continuous assessment of coursework, written examinations and/or any other assessable activities. Only passed courses will earn credits.

(b) Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate’s absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year’s examinations, and the provisions made in the regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

(c) Candidates suspended under Statute XXXI shall not be allowed to take, present themselves for, and participate in any assessments during the period of suspension, unless otherwise permitted by the Senate.

(d) Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for the purpose of upgrading.

(e) Candidates are required to make up for failed courses in the following manner as prescribed in the curriculum regulations:
   (i) undergoing re-assessment/re-examination in the failed course to be held no later than the end of the following semester (not including the summer semester); or
   (ii) re-submitting failed coursework, without having to repeat the same course of instruction; or
   (iii) repeating the failed course by undergoing instruction and satisfying the assessments; or
   (iv) for elective courses, taking another course in lieu and satisfying the assessment requirements.

(f) There shall be no appeal against the results of examinations and all other forms of assessment.
UG 8 Grading system:

(a) The grades, their standards and the grade points for assessment shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Grade Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A+</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B+</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-</td>
<td>2.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C+</td>
<td>2.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-</td>
<td>1.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D+</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Special permission may be given by Senate for courses in individual curricula to be graded as ‘Pass’, ‘Fail’ or ‘Distinction’. Such courses will not be included in the calculation of the GPA.

UG 9 Honours classifications:

(a) Honours classifications shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of Examiners for the degree in accordance with the following Graduate GPA scores, with all courses taken (including failed courses) carrying equal weighting which are proportionate to their credit values:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of honours</th>
<th>GGPA range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class Honours</td>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class Honours</td>
<td>(2.40 – 3.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division One</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division Two</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Class Honours</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate’s Graduation GPA and the Board of Examiners for the degree may, at its absolute discretion and with justification, award a higher class of honours to a candidate deemed to have demonstrated meritorious academic achievement but whose Graduation GPA falls below the range stipulated in UG9(a) of the higher classification by not more than 0.1 Grade Point.

---

6 UG 8 is not applicable to the respective Professional Core of the BDS and MBBS curricula.
7 UG 9 is not applicable to the BChinMed, BDS and MBBS curricula.
8 For students in the 2017-18 intake and thereafter who have successfully completed six Common Core courses, the calculation of Graduation GPA is subject to the proviso that either five Common Core course with the highest grades (covering all four Areas of Inquiry), or all six courses will be counted towards Graduation GPA, depending on which generates the higher Graduation GPA.
(c) A list of candidates who have successfully completed all degree requirements shall be posted on Faculty noticeboards.
REGULATIONS FOR FIRST DEGREE CURricula

Regulations for First Degree Curricula (for students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ to the first year in the academic years in 2014-15, 2015-16 and 2016-17, and students admitted directed to the third year in the academic years 2016-17, 2017-18 and 2018-19)

(See also General Regulations)

UG 1 Definitions:

For the purpose of regulations and syllabuses for all first degree curricula unless otherwise defined —

An ‘academic year’ comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence in January and end in May/June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. For some curricula, a ‘summer semester’ may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters. Clinical curricula have extended semesters.

A ‘summer semester’ normally comprises seven to eight weeks of intensive timetabled teaching and assessment to commence four weeks after the end of the second semester assessment period, and to conclude about one week before the start of the next academic year.

The ‘maximum period of registration’ is equivalent to a period which is 150% of the curriculum’s normative period of study as specified in the degree regulations, provided that where this results in a residual fraction of an academic year, the fractional period shall be extended to one full academic year.

‘Degree curriculum’ means the entire study requirements for the award of an undergraduate degree.

‘Major programme’ means the study requirements, including a capstone experience, for a single major area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 72 credits nor more than 96 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Minor programme’ means the study requirements for a single minor area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 36 credits nor more than 48 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Professional core’ refers to the study requirements, including a capstone experience, prescribed in the regulations and syllabuses for disciplinary studies in degree curricula which are not structured as major/minor programmes for reasons relating to professional qualification and/or accreditation.

1 These regulations are applicable to candidates admitted from 2016-17 onwards to the first year of first degree curricula under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’, the 2-year curriculum in respect of the BSc(IM), the 5-year curriculum in respect of the BA&BED(LangEd), BED&BSc, BED&BSoCSc, BSc(Sp&HearSc), and BNurs, and the 6-year curriculum in respect of the BChinMed, BDS and MBBS. Reference in these regulations to the powers of the Boards of Faculties shall be applicable to Senate Boards of Studies which administer first degree curricula.

(The Regulations for First Degree Curricula applicable to cohorts admitted in 2012-13 and 2013-14 under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ can be found in the Calendar for 2013-14, and in the Calendar for 2014-15 for the cohorts admitted in 2014-15 and 2015-16.)
‘Course’ means a course of study, with a credit value expressed as a number of credit-units as specified in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Disciplinary elective course’ or ‘Disciplinary Elective’ means any course offered in the same major or minor programme or the professional core which can be taken by candidates to fulfill the curriculum requirements as specified in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

‘Elective course’ or ‘Elective’ means any course offered within the same or another curriculum, other than compulsory courses in the candidate’s degree curriculum, that can be taken by the candidate in order to complete the credit requirements of the degree curriculum.

‘Capstone experience’ refers to one or more courses within the major programme or professional core which are approved by the Board of the Faculty for the purpose of integrating knowledge and skills acquired, and which are prescribed in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

‘Syllabus’ means courses taught by departments, centres, and schools, offered under a degree curriculum.

‘Prerequisite’ means a course or a group of courses which candidates must have completed successfully or a requirement which candidates must have fulfilled before being permitted to take the course in question.

‘Corequisite’ means a course which candidates must take in conjunction with the course in question.

‘Credits’ or ‘credit-units’ means the value assigned to each course to indicate its study load relative to the total study load under a degree curriculum. The study load refers to the hours of student learning activities and experiences, both within and outside the classroom, and includes contact hours and time spent on assessment tasks and examinations. Candidates who satisfactorily complete courses with a credit value earn the credits assigned to these courses.

‘Grade Points’ are standardized measurements of candidates’ academic achievement in courses taken to satisfy the requirements of the degree curriculum and are expressed as a scale prescribed in these regulations.

‘Grade Point Average’ is a numerical measure of a candidate’s academic achievement over a specified period of time. Each course attempted (including each failed course) is assigned a numerical value, with all courses carrying equal weighting. This numerical value is the product of grade points earned for the course and the credit value of that course. The ‘Grade Point Average’ is the sum of these numerical values divided by the total number of credits attempted:

$$GPA = \frac{\sum_{i} \text{Course Grade Point} \times \text{Course Credit Value}}{\sum_{i} \text{Course Credit Value}}$$

(where ‘i’ stands for all passed and failed courses taken by the student over a specified period)

‘Semester Grade Point Average’ or ‘Semester GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) during a given semester.

‘Year Grade Point Average’ or ‘Year GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) during a given academic year.

‘Cumulative Grade Point Average’ or ‘Cumulative GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) at the time of calculation.

‘Assessment’ refers to judgment about the quality and extent to which a student has achieved the stated learning objectives or learning outcomes. It includes all types of assessment activities which allow for such a judgment to be made. For the purpose of interpreting the relevant provisions of the Ordinance and the Statutes and where appropriate,
reference to ‘examination’ or ‘examinations’ in the Ordinance and the Statutes shall include and cover all forms of ‘assessment’ and its related processes.

A ‘transcript’ refers to a transcript of the record of study of a candidate, issued by the Registry of the University.

**UG 2 Advanced standing:**

Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully before admission to the curriculum. Candidates who are awarded Advanced Standing will not be granted any further credit transfer for those studies for which Advanced Standing has been granted. The amount of credits to be granted for advanced standing shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty, in accordance with the following principles:

(a) at least half the number of credits of the degree curriculum normally required for award of the degree shall be accumulated through study at this University or from transfer of credits for courses completed at other institutions in accordance with Regulation UG 4(d); and

(b) in accordance with Statute III.5 and notwithstanding the granting of advanced and/or transfer credits, a minimum of two semesters of study at this University shall be required before a candidate is considered for the award of a first degree, other than a degree in medicine or surgery, and a minimum of four semesters of study at this University shall be required before a candidate is considered for a first degree in medicine or surgery.

Credits granted for advanced standing shall not normally be included in the calculation of the GPA unless permitted by the Board of the Faculty but will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate.

**UG 3 Period of study:**

The period of study of the curriculum shall be specified in the regulations governing the degree. To be eligible for award of the degree, a candidate shall fulfill all curriculum requirements within the maximum period of registration, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

**UG 4 Progression in curriculum:**

(a) Candidates shall normally be required to take not fewer than 24 credits nor more than 30 credits in any one semester (except the summer semester) unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty, or except in the last semester of study when the number of outstanding credits required to complete the curriculum requirements is fewer than 24 credits.

(b) Candidates may, of their own volition, take additional credits not exceeding 6 credits in each semester, and/or further credits during the summer semester, accumulating up to a maximum of 72 credits in one academic year. With the special permission of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may exceed the annual study load of 72 credits in a given academic year provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load for the normative period of study specified in the curriculum regulations, save as provided for under UG4(c).

(c) Where candidates are required to make up for failed credits, the Board of the Faculty may give permission for candidates to exceed the annual study load of 72 credits provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load for the maximum period of registration specified in the curriculum regulations.

(d) Candidates may, with the approval of the Board of the Faculty, transfer credits for courses completed at other institutions at any time during their candidature. The
number of transferred credits may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but the results of courses completed at other institutions shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA. The number of credits to be transferred shall not exceed half of the total credits normally required under the degree curricula of the candidates during their candidature at the University.

(e) Unless otherwise permitted by the Board of the Faculty, candidates shall be recommended for discontinuation of their studies if they have:

(i) failed to complete successfully 36 or more credits in two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), except where they are not required to take such a number of credits in the two given semesters, or
(ii) failed to achieve an average Semester GPA of 1.0 or higher for two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), or
(iii) exceeded the maximum period of registration specified in the regulations of the degree.

UG 5 Requirements for graduation:

To be eligible for admission to the degree, candidates shall fulfill the following requirements in addition to the requirements prescribed in the regulations and syllabuses governing the degree curriculum within the maximum period of registration:

(a) successful completion of 12 credits in English language enhancement, including 6 credits in Core University English² and 6 credits in an English in the Discipline course³;
(b) successful completion of 6 credits in Chinese language enhancement⁴;
(c) successful completion of 36 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, comprising at least one and not more than two courses from each Area of Inquiry⁵ with not more than 24 credits of course being selected within one academic year except where candidates are required to make up for failed credits; and
(d) successful completion of a capstone experience as specified in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

UG 6 Exemption:

Candidates may be exempted, with or without special conditions attached, from any of the

³ Candidates who have achieved Level 5** in English Language in the Hong Kong Diploma of Secondary Education Examination, or equivalent, may at the discretion of the Faculty be exempted from this requirement and should take an elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6.

³ (a) To satisfy the English in the Discipline (ED) requirement, candidates who have passed the ED course for a Major but subsequently change that Major are required to pass the ED course for the new Major, or either of the double Majors finally declared upon graduation irrespective of whether the second Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.

(b) Candidates declaring double Majors can, if they fail in the ED course for one of the Majors, either (i) re-take and successfully complete that failed ED course, or (ii) successfully complete the ED course for the other Major, irrespective of whether the Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.

(c) Candidates who undertake studies in double Majors or double degrees are not required to take a second ED course but may be advised by the Faculty to do so.

⁴ Candidates who have not studied Chinese language during their secondary education may be exempted from this requirement and should take an elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6.

⁵ Candidates registered for double degree studies are required to successfully complete 24 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, selecting one course from each Area of Inquiry, within the curriculum of the first degree, as appropriate.
requirements in UG 5 by the Senate in exceptional circumstances. Candidates who are so exempted must replace the number of exempted credits with courses of the same credit value.

**UG 7 Assessment:**

(a) Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of continuous assessment of coursework, written examinations and/or any other assessable activities. Only passed courses will earn credits.

(b) Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate’s absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year’s examinations, and the provisions made in the regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

(c) Candidates suspended under Statute XXXI shall not be allowed to take, present themselves for, and participate in any assessments during the period of suspension, unless otherwise permitted by the Senate.

(d) Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for the purpose of upgrading.

(e) Candidates are required to make up for failed courses in the following manner as prescribed in the curriculum regulations:

(i) undergoing re-assessment/re-examination in the failed course to be held no later than the end of the following semester (not including the summer semester); or

(ii) re-submitting failed coursework, without having to repeat the same course of instruction; or

(iii) repeating the failed course by undergoing instruction and satisfying the assessments; or

(iv) for elective courses, taking another course in lieu and satisfying the assessment requirements.

(f) There shall be no appeal against the results of examinations and all other forms of assessment.

**UG 8 Grading system:**

(a) The grades, their standards and the grade points for assessment shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Grade Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A+</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B+</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C+</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D+</td>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 UG 8 is not applicable to the respective Professional Core of the BDS and MBBS curricula.
(b) Special permission may be given by Senate for courses in individual curricula to be graded as ‘Pass’, ‘Fail’ or ‘Distinction’. Such courses will not be included in the calculation of the GPA.

**UG 9 Honours classifications:**

(a) Honours classifications shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of Examiners for the degree in accordance with the following Cumulative GPA scores, with all courses taken (including failed courses) carrying equal weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of Honours</th>
<th>CGPA Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class Honours</td>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class Honours</td>
<td>(2.40 – 3.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division One</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division Two</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Class Honours</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate’s Cumulative GPA and the Board of Examiners for the degree may, at its absolute discretion and with justification, award a higher class of honours to a candidate deemed to have demonstrated meritorious academic achievement but whose Cumulative GPA falls below the range stipulated in UG9(a) of the higher classification by not more than 0.1 Grade Point.

(c) A list of candidates who have successfully completed all degree requirements shall be posted on Faculty noticeboards.

---

7 UG 9 is not applicable to the BChinMed, BDS and MBBS curricula.
REGULATIONS FOR FIRST DEGREE CURRICULA

Regulations for First Degree Curricula (for students admitted under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ to the first year in the academic years 2012-13 and 2013-14, and students admitted directly to the third year in 2014-15 and 2015-16)

(See also General Regulations)

UG 1 Definitions:

For the purpose of regulations and syllabuses for all first degree curricula unless otherwise defined —

An ‘academic year’ comprises two semesters, the first semester to commence in September and end in December, and the second semester to commence in January and end in May/June, on dates as prescribed by the Senate. It includes, normally at the end of each semester, a period during which candidates are assessed. For some curricula, a ‘summer semester’ may be organized in addition to the normal two semesters. Clinical curricula have extended semesters.

A ‘summer semester’ normally comprises seven to eight weeks of intensive timetabled teaching and assessment to commence four weeks after the end of the second semester assessment period, and to conclude about one week before the start of the next academic year.

The ‘maximum period of registration’ is equivalent to a period which is 150% of the curriculum’s normative period of study as specified in the degree regulations, provided that where this results in a residual fraction of an academic year, the fractional period shall be extended to one full academic year.

‘Degree curriculum’ means the entire study requirements for the award of an undergraduate degree.

‘Major programme’ means the study requirements, including a capstone experience, for a single major area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 72 credits nor more than 96 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Minor programme’ means the study requirements for a single minor area of disciplinary, interdisciplinary or multidisciplinary study, accumulating not fewer than 36 credits nor more than 48 credits, as prescribed in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Professional core’ refers to the study requirements, including a capstone experience, prescribed in the regulations and syllabuses for disciplinary studies in degree curricula which are not structured as major/minor programmes for reasons relating to professional qualification and/or accreditation.

These regulations are applicable to candidates admitted from 2016-17 onwards to the first year of first degree curricula under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’, the 2-year curriculum in respect of the BSc(IM), the 5-year curriculum in respect of the BA&BED(LangEd), BEd&BSc, BEd&BSocSc, BSc(Sp&HearSc), and BNurs, and the 6-year curriculum in respect of the BChinMed, BDS and MBBS. Reference in these regulations to the powers of the Boards of Faculties shall be applicable to Senate Boards of Studies which administer first degree curricula.

(The Regulations for First Degree Curricula applicable to cohorts admitted in 2012-13 and 2013-14 under the 4-year ‘2012 curriculum’ can be found in the Calendar for 2013-14, and in the Calendar for 2014-15 for the cohorts admitted in 2014-15 and 2015-16.)
‘Course’ means a course of study, with a credit value expressed as a number of credit-units as specified in the syllabuses for a degree curriculum.

‘Disciplinary elective course’ or ‘Disciplinary Elective’ means any course offered in the same major or minor programme or the professional core which can be taken by candidates to fulfill the curriculum requirements as specified in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

‘Elective course’ or ‘Elective’ means any course offered within the same or another curriculum, other than compulsory courses in the candidate’s degree curriculum, that can be taken by the candidate in order to complete the credit requirements of the degree curriculum.

‘Capstone experience’ refers to one or more courses within the major programme or professional core which are approved by the Board of the Faculty for the purpose of integrating knowledge and skills acquired, and which are prescribed in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

‘Syllabus’ means courses taught by departments, centres, and schools, offered under a degree curriculum.

‘Prerequisite’ means a course or a group of courses which candidates must have completed successfully or a requirement which candidates must have fulfilled before being permitted to take the course in question.

‘Corequisite’ means a course which candidates must take in conjunction with the course in question.

‘Credits’ or ‘credit-units’ means the value assigned to each course to indicate its study load relative to the total study load under a degree curriculum. The study load refers to the hours of student learning activities and experiences, both within and outside the classroom, and includes contact hours and time spent on assessment tasks and examinations. Candidates who satisfactorily complete courses with a credit value earn the credits assigned to these courses.

‘Grade Points’ are standardized measurements of candidates’ academic achievement in courses taken to satisfy the requirements of the degree curriculum and are expressed as a scale prescribed in these regulations.

‘Grade Point Average’ is a numerical measure of a candidate’s academic achievement over a specified period of time. Each course attempted (including each failed course) is assigned a numerical value, with all courses carrying equal weighting. This numerical value is the product of grade points earned for the course and the credit value of that course. The ‘Grade Point Average’ is the sum of these numerical values divided by the total number of credits attempted:

$$ \text{GPA} = \frac{\sum_i \text{Course Grade Point} \times \text{Course Credit Value}}{\sum_i \text{Course Credit Value}} $$

(where ‘i’ stands for all passed and failed courses taken by the student over a specified period)

‘Semester Grade Point Average’ or ‘Semester GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) during a given semester.

‘Year Grade Point Average’ or ‘Year GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) during a given academic year.

‘Cumulative Grade Point Average’ or ‘Cumulative GPA’ is the GPA in respect of courses attempted by a candidate (including failed courses) at the time of calculation.

‘Assessment’ refers to judgment about the quality and extent to which a student has achieved the stated learning objectives or learning outcomes. It includes all types of assessment activities which allow for such a judgment to be made. For the purpose of interpreting the relevant provisions of the Ordinance and the Statutes and where appropriate,
reference to ‘examination’ or ‘examinations’ in the Ordinance and the Statutes shall include and cover all forms of ‘assessment’ and its related processes.

A ‘transcript’ refers to a transcript of the record of study of a candidate, issued by the Registry of the University.

UG 2 Advanced standing:

Advanced standing may be granted to candidates in recognition of studies completed successfully in an approved institution of higher education elsewhere. Candidates who are awarded Advanced Standing will not be granted any further credit transfer for those studies for which Advanced Standing has been granted. The amount of credits to be granted for advanced standing shall be determined by the Board of the Faculty, in accordance with the following principles:

(a) at least half the number of credits of the degree curriculum normally required for award of the degree shall be accumulated through study at this University or from transfer of credits for courses completed at other institutions in accordance with Regulation UG 4(d); and

(b) in accordance with Statute III.5 and notwithstanding the granting of advanced and/or transfer credits, a minimum of two semesters of study at this University shall be required before a candidate is considered for the award of a first degree, other than a degree in medicine or surgery, and a minimum of four semesters of study at this University shall be required before a candidate is considered for a first degree in medicine or surgery.

Credits granted for advanced standing shall not normally be included in the calculation of the GPA unless permitted by the Board of the Faculty but will be recorded on the transcript of the candidate.

UG 3 Period of study:

The period of study of the curriculum shall be specified in the regulations governing the degree. To be eligible for award of the degree, a candidate shall fulfill all curriculum requirements within the maximum period of registration, unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty.

UG 4 Progression in curriculum:

(a) Candidates shall normally be required to take not fewer than 24 credits nor more than 30 credits in any one semester (except the summer semester) unless otherwise permitted or required by the Board of the Faculty, or except in the last semester of study when the number of outstanding credits required to complete the curriculum requirements is fewer than 24 credits.

(b) Candidates may, of their own volition, take additional credits not exceeding 6 credits in each semester, and/or further credits during the summer semester, accumulating up to a maximum of 72 credits in one academic year. With the special permission of the Board of the Faculty, candidates may exceed the annual study load of 72 credits in a given academic year provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load for the normative period of study specified in the curriculum regulations, save as provided for under UG4(c).

(c) Where candidates are required to make up for failed credits, the Board of the Faculty may give permission for candidates to exceed the annual study load of 72 credits provided that the total number of credits taken does not exceed the maximum curriculum study load for the maximum period of registration specified in the curriculum regulations.
Candidates may, with the approval of the Board of the Faculty, transfer credits for courses completed at other institutions at any time during their candidature. The number of transferred credits may be recorded in the transcript of the candidate, but the results of courses completed at other institutions shall not be included in the calculation of the GPA. The number of credits to be transferred shall not exceed half of the total credits normally required under the degree curricula of the candidates during their candidature at the University.

Unless otherwise permitted by the Board of the Faculty, candidates shall be recommended for discontinuation of their studies if they have:

(i) failed to complete successfully 36 or more credits in two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), except where they are not required to take such a number of credits in the two given semesters, or
(ii) failed to achieve an average Semester GPA of 1.0 or higher for two consecutive semesters (not including the summer semester), or
(iii) exceeded the maximum period of registration specified in the regulations of the degree.

UG 5 Requirements for graduation:

To be eligible for admission to the degree, candidates shall fulfill the following requirements in addition to the requirements prescribed in the regulations and syllabuses governing the degree curriculum within the maximum period of registration:

(a) successful completion of 12 credits in English language enhancement, including 6 credits in Core University English\(^2\) and 6 credits in an English in the Discipline course\(^3\);
(b) successful completion of 6 credits in Chinese language enhancement\(^4\);
(c) successful completion of 36 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, comprising at least one and not more than two courses from each Area of Inquiry\(^5\) with not more than 24 credits of courses being selected within one academic year except where candidates are required to make up for failed credits; and
(d) successful completion of a capstone experience as specified in the syllabuses of the degree curriculum.

---

\(^2\) Candidates who have achieved Level 5** in English Language in the Hong Kong Diploma of Secondary Education Examination, or equivalent, may at the discretion of the Faculty be exempted from this requirement and should take an elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6.

\(^3\) (a) To satisfy the English in the Discipline (ED) requirement, candidates who have passed the ED course for a Major but subsequently change that Major are required to pass the ED course for the new Major, or either of the double Majors finally declared upon graduation irrespective of whether the second Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.

(b) Candidates declaring double Majors can, if they fail in the ED course for one of the Majors, either (i) re-take and successfully complete that failed ED course, or (ii) successfully complete the ED course for the other Major, irrespective of whether the Major is offered within or outside of the candidates’ home Faculty.

(c) Candidates who undertake studies in double Majors or double degrees are not required to take a second ED course but may be advised by the Faculty to do so.

\(^4\) Candidates who have not studied Chinese language during their secondary education may be exempted from this requirement and should take an elective course in lieu, see Regulation UG6.

\(^5\) Candidates registered for double degree studies are required to successfully complete 24 credits of courses in the Common Core Curriculum, selecting one course from each Area of Inquiry, within the curriculum of the first degree, as appropriate.
UG 6 Exemption:

Candidates may be exempted, with or without special conditions attached, from any of the requirements in UG 5 by the Senate in exceptional circumstances. Candidates who are so exempted must replace the number of exempted credits with courses of the same credit value.

UG 7 Assessment:

(a) Candidates shall be assessed for each of the courses for which they have registered, and assessment may be conducted in any combination of continuous assessment of coursework, written examinations and/or any other assessable activities. Only passed courses will earn credits.

(b) Candidates who are unable, because of illness, to be present at the written examination of any course may apply for permission to present themselves at a supplementary examination of the same course to be held before the beginning of the First Semester of the following academic year. Any such application shall be made on the form prescribed within two weeks of the first day of the candidate’s absence from any examination. Any supplementary examination shall be part of that academic year’s examinations, and the provisions made in the regulations for failure at the first attempt shall apply accordingly.

(c) Candidates shall not be permitted to repeat a course for which they have received a D grade or above for the purpose of upgrading.

(d) Candidates are required to make up for failed courses in the following manner as prescribed in the curriculum regulations:

(i) undergoing re-assessment/re-examination in the failed course to be held no later than the end of the following semester (not including the summer semester); or

(ii) re-submitting failed coursework, without having to repeat the same course of instruction; or

(iii) repeating the failed course by undergoing instruction and satisfying the assessments; or

(iv) for elective courses, taking another course in lieu and satisfying the assessment requirements.

(e) There shall be no appeal against the results of examinations and all other forms of assessment.

UG 8 Grading system:

(a) The grades, their standards and the grade points for assessment shall be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Grade</th>
<th>Standard</th>
<th>Grade Point</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A+</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>Excellent</td>
<td>4.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A-</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>3.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B+</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>3.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>Good</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B-</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C+</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>Satisfactory</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C-</td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D+</td>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>Fail</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6 UG 8 is not applicable to the respective Professional Core of the BDS and MBBS curricula.
(b) Special permission may be given by Senate for courses in individual curricula to be graded as ‘Pass’, ‘Fail’ or ‘Distinction’. Such courses will not be included in the calculation of the GPA.

UG 9 Honours classifications:

(a) Honours classifications shall be awarded in five divisions: First Class Honours, Second Class Honours Division One, Second Class Honours Division Two, Third Class Honours, and Pass. The classification of honours shall be determined by the Board of Examiners for the degree in accordance with the following Cumulative GPA scores, with all courses taken (including failed courses) carrying equal weighting:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of honours</th>
<th>CGPA range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>First Class Honours</td>
<td>3.60 – 4.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second Class Honours</td>
<td>(2.40 – 3.59)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division One</td>
<td>3.00 – 3.59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Division Two</td>
<td>2.40 – 2.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Third Class Honours</td>
<td>1.70 – 2.39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pass</td>
<td>1.00 – 1.69</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Honours classification may not be determined solely on the basis of a candidate’s Cumulative GPA and the Board of Examiners for the degree may, at its absolute discretion and with justification, award a higher class of honours to a candidate deemed to have demonstrated meritorious academic achievement but whose Cumulative GPA falls below the range stipulated in UG9(a) of the higher classification by not more than 0.1 Grade Point.

(c) A list of candidates who have successfully completed all degree requirements shall be posted on Faculty noticeboards.

7 UG 9 is not applicable to the BChinMed, BDS and MBBS curricula.
# SECTION XI  Teaching Weeks

## Teaching Weeks 2017-18 for Undergraduate and Taught Postgraduate Students

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SUN</th>
<th>MON</th>
<th>TUE</th>
<th>WED</th>
<th>THUR</th>
<th>FRI</th>
<th>SAT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIRST SEMESTER: SEP 1 - DEC 23, 2017

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Sep 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Oct 16 - 21, 2017 (Reading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Dec 1 - 7, 2017 (Revision)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SECOND SEMESTER: JAN 15 - MAY 26, 2018

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Jan 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Feb 16 - 22, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Mar 5 - 10, 2018 (Reading)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Apr 30 - May 5, 2018 (Revision)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### OPTIONAL SUMMER SEMESTER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Week</th>
<th>Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>JUN 25 - AUG 18, 2018</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
- First Semester: 11 Mondays, 12 Tuesdays and Wednesdays, 11 Thursdays, 12 Fridays and 11 Saturdays
- Second Semester: 12 Mondays, 13 Tuesdays and Wednesdays, 11.5 Thursdays, 11 Fridays and 12 Saturdays

---

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>[ ]</th>
<th>General Holiday</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Reading/ Field Trip Week</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( )</td>
<td>University Holiday (Full Day)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; &gt;</td>
<td>University Holiday (afternoon only)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Class Suspension Period for the Lunar New Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assessment Period</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

731
Useful contacts and websites
# Useful contacts and websites

## Faculty of Science

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Office Location</th>
<th>Tel</th>
<th>Fax</th>
<th>Email</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ground Floor, Chong Yuet Ming Physics Building</td>
<td>3917 2683</td>
<td>2858 4620</td>
<td><a href="mailto:science@hku.hk">science@hku.hk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.scifac.hku.hk">http://www.scifac.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*(Please visit [http://www.scifac.hku.hk](http://www.scifac.hku.hk) for the latest updates of BSc courses, timetables, notices and forms)*

## Departments/Schools

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Department</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Biological Sciences</td>
<td><a href="http://www.biosch.hku.hk">http://www.biosch.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biomedical Sciences</td>
<td><a href="http://www.sbms.hku.hk">http://www.sbms.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chemistry</td>
<td><a href="http://www.chemistry.hku.hk">http://www.chemistry.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Earth Sciences</td>
<td><a href="http://www.earthsciences.hku.hk">http://www.earthsciences.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Academic Advising Office

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tel</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2219 4686</td>
<td><a href="http://aa0.hku.hk">http://aa0.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Academic Services Office

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Office Location</th>
<th>Tel</th>
<th>Fax</th>
<th>Email</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>G04, Run Run Shaw Building</td>
<td>2859 2433</td>
<td>2540 1405</td>
<td><a href="mailto:asoffice@hku.hk">asoffice@hku.hk</a></td>
<td><a href="http://www.ase.hku.hk">http://www.ase.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Common Core courses

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://commoncore.hku.hk">http://commoncore.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## HKU Worldwide Undergraduate Exchange Programme

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.als.hku.hk/admission/exchange">http://www.als.hku.hk/admission/exchange</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Centre of Development and Resources for Students (CEDARS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tel</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2859 2305</td>
<td><a href="http://cedars.hku.hk">http://cedars.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## University Health Service

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tel</th>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2859 2501 (General enquiries)</td>
<td><a href="http://www.uhs.hku.hk">http://www.uhs.hku.hk</a></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2549 4686 (Medical appointments only)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Plagiarism

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Website</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><a href="http://www.hku.hk/plagiarism">http://www.hku.hk/plagiarism</a></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>